Canon

LBP7210Cdn

[A] Important Safety Instructions 6
[A-01] Installation 7
[A-02] Power Supply 9
[A-03] Handling 11
[A-04] Maintenance and Inspections 13
[A-05] Consumables 16
[B] Legal Notices 17
[B-01] Legal Notices 18
[B-02] Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images 22
[C] Using the e-Manual 23
[C-02] How to Use the e-Manual 24
[C-03] Installing the e-Manual 27
[C-04] Viewing the e-Manual 31
[C-05] Searching for Information 33
[C-06] Uninstalling the e-Manual 40
[D] Specifications and Parts 44
[D-02] Parts and Their Functions 45
[D-03] Optional Accessories 51
[D-04] Dimensions of Each Part 52
[D-05] Printer Specifications 53
[D-06] Consumables 57
[D-07] Location of the Serial Number 58
[E] Printer Installation and Software Installation 59
[E-02] Installation Conditions of the Printer 60
[E-03] Confirming the Supplied Accessories 63
[E-04] Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing the Packing Materials 66
[E-05] Preparing the Toner Cartridges 71
[E-06] Connecting the Power Cord 76
[E-07] Loading Paper and Registering the Paper Size 77
[E-08] Paper Feeder 89
[E-09] Printer Driver System Requirements 101
[E-10] Installing from CD-ROM Setup 103
[E-11] Installing with Plug and Play 112
[E-12] The Tasks That Should Be Performed to Print in a Network Environment 123
[E-13] Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing) 124
[E-14] Configuring the Print Server 126
[E-15] Installation on Clients 139
[E-16] To Check the Processor Version of Windows Vista or Server 2008 155
[E-17] Printing Configuration Page Print 156
[E-18] Printing a Test Page in Windows 158
[E-19] Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller] 160
[E-20] Uninstalling the Printer Driver in [Control Panel] 164
[E-21] Uninstalling the USB Class Driver 168
[F] Printing 171
[F-02] Installing the Printer Driver 172
[F-03] Turning the Printer On/Off 174
[F-04] Printing (Basic Procedure) 177
[F-05] Canceling a Job 183
[F-06] Changing the Default Values for Printing Preferences 189

[F-07] Various Sheets in the Printer Driver 191
[F-08] Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window 199
[F-09] Checking by the Remote UI 203
[F-10] How to Use Help 207
[F-11] Usable Paper and Unusable Paper 213
[F-12] Printable Area 220
[F-13] Storing Paper or Printouts 222
[F-14] Paper Loading Orientation 224
[F-15] Paper Source 226
[F-16] Output Tray 229
[F-17] Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) 231
[F-18] Loading Index Cards 243
[F-19] Loading Envelopes 247
[F-20] Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper) 259
[F-21] 1-sided Printing and 2-sided Printing 273
[F-22] Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet 279
[F-23] Printing a Color Document in Black and White 282
[F-24] Printing Data with Different Orientations in the Same Job 285
[F-25] Printing with a Gutter 288
[F-26] Selecting the Paper Output Method 291
[F-27] Printing with the Page 180 Degrees Rotated 294
[F-28] Selecting Paper for Each Page 297
[F-29] Scaling Print Output 300
[F-30] Printing an Image Larger than A4 Size (Poster Printing) 305
[F-31] Adding a Watermark to a Document to Be Printed (Watermark Printing) 308
[F-32] Printing Borders, the Printing Date, etc. 313
[F-33] Booklet Printing 316
[F-34] Combining Jobs before Printing 319
[F-35] Performing Printing Appropriate for Particular Print Data 324
[F-36] Correcting Rough-Textured Images 326
[F-37] Adjusting the Toner Density 329
[F-38] Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted 332
[F-39] Adjusting the Color 335
[F-40] Matching the Color on the Display 338
[F-41] Calibrating the Printer 344
[F-42] Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors" 348
[F-43] Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences 352
[F-44] Saving Frequently Used Printing Preferences (Profiles) 355
[G] Maintenance 361
[G-02] Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window 362
[G-03] Checking by the Remote UI 363
[G-04] When a Message Appears 364
[G-05] Replacing Toner Cartridges 366
[G-06] Handling Toner Cartridges 375
[G-07] Storing Toner Cartridges 378
[G-08] Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) 379
[G-09] Loading Index Cards 380
[G-10] Loading Envelopes 381
[G-11] Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper) 382

[G-12] Performing Printing Appropriate for Particular Print Data 383
[G-13] Correcting Rough-Textured Images 384
[G-14] Adjusting the Toner Density 385
[G-15] Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted 386
[G-16] Adjusting the Color 387
[G-17] Matching the Color on the Display 388
[G-18] Calibrating the Printer 389
[G-19] Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors" 390
[G-20] Cleaning the Inside of the Printer 391
[G-21] Cleaning the Outside of the Printer 394
[G-22] Moving the Printer 396
[G-23] Paper Feeder 401
[G-24] Handling the Printer 402
[G-25] Location of the Serial Number 404
[H] Troubleshooting 405
[H-02] The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled 406
[H-03] When Installing the Printer Diver from the CD-ROM, the Printer Is Not Recognized Automatically after Connecting the USB Cable 408
[H-04] When the Printer Driver Is Installed by Auto Setup, the Printer Cannot Be Searched for 409
[H-05] The Printer to Be Used Cannot Be Searched for in NetSpot Device Installer 410
[H-06] The Print Server for Connection Cannot Be Found 411
[H-07] The Shared Printer Cannot Be Accessed 412
[H-08] Printing Does Not Work 413
[H-09] There Is a Problem with the Printer Power Supply 428
[H-10] Checking the USB Port 429
[H-11] Checking Bi-directional Communication 430
[H-12] All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off 432
[H-13] The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On 433
[H-14] The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times 434
[H-15] The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking 435
[H-16] Checking the IP Address 436
[H-17] Checking Standard TCP/IP Port 438
[H-18] Specifying Standard TCP/IP Port 439
[H-19] Checking the Printer on the Print Server 443
[H-20] A Message Appears in the Printer Status Window 444
[H-21] Registering the Paper Size for the Paper Drawer 450
[H-22] The Printer Cannot Be Connected to the Network 452
[H-23] Paper Curls or Creases 458
[H-24] Poor Print Quality 462
[H-25] Streaks (lines) Appear 463
[H-26] Unevenness, Smudge Marks, etc. Appear 465
[H-27] Printing Is Faint, Is Faded, Has a Problem with Color, etc. 474
[H-28] Printout Is Skewed, Missing, or Has Unneeded Space 480
[H-29] Data Is Printed Diagonally 483
[H-30] Adjusting the Color or Image Quality 484
[H-31] Paper Jams 486
[H-32] Precautions When Removing Jammed Paper 488
[H-33] Clearing Paper Jams (Drawer Area) 490
[H-34] Clearing Paper Jams (Multi-purpose Tray Area) 496

[H-35] Clearing Paper Jams (Output Area) 500
[H-36] The Alarm Indicator Is On or Blinking 503
[H-37] The Alarm Indicator Is On 504
[H-38] The Alarm Indicator Is Blinking 508
[H-39] Miscellaneous Problems 509
[H-40] Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host 513
[H-41] Allow Profile Selection or Editing 515
[I] Network Settings 517
[I-02] Auto Setup (Recommended Method) 519
[I-03] Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only) 535
[I-04] Setting the IP Address 546
[I-05] Configuring the Protocol Settings 564
[I-06] Setting Items 575
[I-07] Initializing the Network Settings 580
[I-08] Settings for Adding a Port 585
[I-09] Changing the Network Transmission Speed or Transfer Mode 587
[I-10] Changing the Port Name of the Printer 591
[I-11] Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode 594
[I-12] Checking the MAC Address 597
[I-13] Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing) 599
[I-14] Configuring the Print Server 600
[I-15] Installation on Clients 601
[J] Managing and Configuring the Printer 602
[J-02] Printer Status Window 603
[J-03] Remote UI 606
[J-04] FTP Client 621
[J-05] NetSpot Device Installer 625
[J-06] Setting and Changing the Administrator Password 636
[J-07] Specifying and Changing the Device Name or Administrator Information 643
[J-08] Checking by the Remote UI 647
[J-09] Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status 653
[J-10] Setting the Energy-saving Mode 657
[J-11] Updating the Network Board Firmware 662
[J-12] Restricting the Users Who Can Print with IP Addresses 668
[J-13] Restricting the Users Who Can Monitor and Change the Settings Using the SNMP Protocol 674
[J-14] Restricting the Users Who Can Perform Multicast Discovery 681
[J-15] Restricting the Users Who Can Access with MAC Addresses 687
[J-16] Restricting the FTP Access from End-users 693
[J-17] Obtaining and Checking the Security Access Logs 697

[A] Important Safety Instructions

Please read these "Important Safety Instructions" thoroughly before operating the printer.
As these instructions are intended to prevent injury to the user and other persons or destruction of property, always pay attention to these instructions.
Also, as it may result in unexpected accidents or injuries, do not perform any operation unless otherwise specified in the manual. Improper operation or use of this machine could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.

Descriptions of Warnings and Cautions

The following are descriptions of warnings and cautions used in this e-Manual to explain handling restrictions, precautions, and instructions that should be observed for your safety.

⚠ WARNING

Indicates a warning about operations that can result in death or serious injury if not performed correctly.
You must follow the information in this warning to ensure safe use of the printer.

⚠ CAUTION

Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons, or damage to property if not performed correctly.
You must follow the information in this caution to ensure safe use of the printer.

Important Safety Instructions

Important Safety Instructions

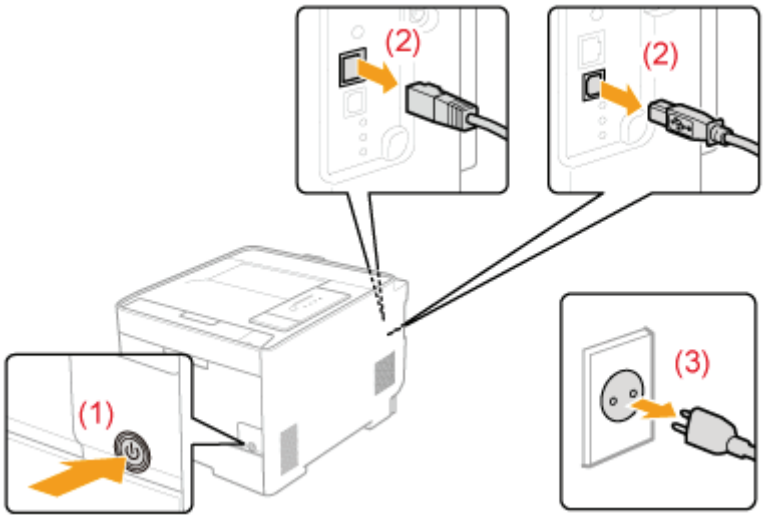
- Installation
- Power Supply
- Handling
- Maintenance and Inspections
- Consumables

[A-01] Installation

⚠ WARNING

- Do not install the printer in a location near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not place the following items on the printer.
  - Necklaces and other metal objects
  - Cups, vases, flowerpots, and other containers filled with water or liquids

  If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
  If these items are dropped or spilled inside the printer, immediately turn off the power switch (1) and disconnect the interface cables if they are connected (2). Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet (3) and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.



- When installing or removing the optional accessories, be sure to turn the printer off, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer. Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not install the printer in unstable locations, such as on unsteady platforms or inclined floors, or in locations subject to excessive vibrations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.
- The ventilation slots are provided for proper ventilation of working parts inside the printer. Never place the printer on a soft surface, such as a bed, sofa, or rug. Blocking the slots can cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire.
- Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

- A damp or dusty location
- A location exposed to smoke and steam, such as near a cookery or humidifier
- A location exposed to rain or snow
- A location near a water faucet or water
- A location exposed to direct sunlight
- A location subject to high temperatures
- A location near open flames

- When installing the printer, gently lower the printer to the installation site so as not to catch your hands between the printer and the floor or between the printer and other equipment, as this may result in personal injury.
- When connecting the interface cable, connect it properly by following the instructions in the e-Manual. If not connected properly, this may result in malfunction or electrical shock.
- When moving the printer, follow the instructions in the e-Manual to hold it correctly. Failure to do so may cause you to drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.
  "Moving the Printer"
  "Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing the Packing Materials"

[A-02] Power Supply

⚠ WARNING

- Do not damage or modify the power cord. Also, do not place heavy objects on the power cord or pull on or excessively bend it, as this can cause electrical damage, resulting in fire or electrical shock.
- Keep the power cord away from all heat sources. Failure to do so can cause the power cord insulation to melt, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- The power cord should not be taut, as this may lead to a loose connection and cause overheating, which could result in a fire.
- The power cord may become damaged if it is stepped on, fixed with staples, or if heavy objects are placed on it. Continued use of a damaged power cord can lead to an accident, such as a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power plug with wet hands, as this can result in electrical shock.
- Do not plug the power cord into a multiplug power strip, as this can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not bundle up or tie up the power cord in a knot, as this can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Insert the power plug completely into the AC power outlet. Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- If excessive stress is applied to the connection part of the power cord, it may damage the power cord or the wires inside the machine may disconnect. This could result in a fire. Avoid the following situations:
    - Connecting and disconnecting the power cord frequently.
    - Tripping over the power cord.
    - The power cord is bent near the connection part, and continuous stress is being applied to the power outlet or the connection part.
    - Applying a shock to the power connector.
- Do not use power cords other than the one provided, as this can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- As a general rule, do not use extension cords. Using an extension cord may result in a fire or electrical shock.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use a power supply voltage other than that listed herein, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always grasp the power plug when unplugging the power plug. Do not pull on the power cord, as this may expose the core wire of the power cord or damage the cord insulation, causing electricity to leak, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily. If objects are placed around the power plug, you may be unable to unplug it in an emergency.

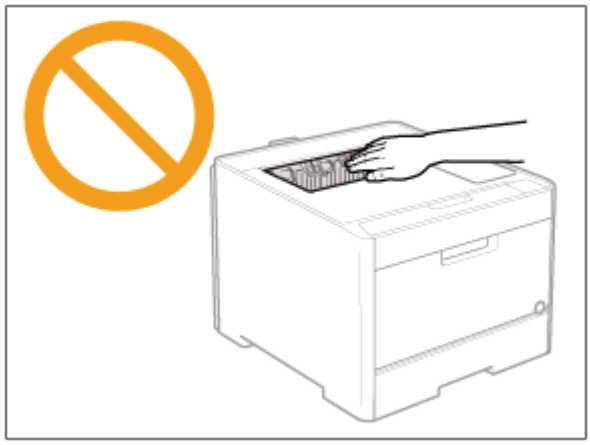
[A-03] Handling

⚠ WARNING

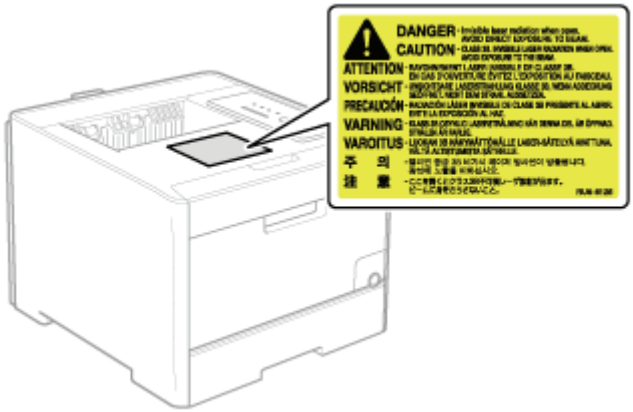
- Do not disassemble or modify the printer. There are high-temperature and high-voltage components inside the printer which may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Electrical equipment can be hazardous if not used properly. Do not allow children to touch the power cord, cables, internal gears, or electrical parts.
- If the printer makes an unusual noise or emits smoke, heat, or an unusual smell, immediately turn off the power switch and disconnect the interface cables if they are connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Continued use can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not use flammable sprays near the printer. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Always turn off the power switch and unplug the power plug and interface cables before moving the printer. Failure to do so can damage the cables or cords, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.
- Confirm that the power plug or power connecter is inserted completely after moving the printer. Failure to do so can result in an overheating and fire.
- Do not drop paper clips, staples, or other metal objects inside the printer. Also, do not spill water, liquids, or other flammable substances (alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, etc.) inside the printer. If these items come into contact with a high-voltage area inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock. If these items are dropped or spilled inside the printer, immediately turn off the power switch and disconnect the interface cables if they are connected. Then, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet and contact your local authorized Canon dealer.
- When plugging or unplugging a USB cable when the power plug is plugged into an AC power outlet, do not touch the metal part of the connector, as this can result in electrical shock.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place heavy objects on the printer. The object or the printer may fall, resulting in personal injury.
- Turn off the power switch when the printer will not be used for a long period of time, such as overnight. Turn off the printer and unplug the power plug if the printer will not be used for an extended period of time, such as for several days.
- Open or close covers and install or remove drawers gently and carefully. Be careful not to hurt your fingers.
- Keep your hands and clothing away from the roller in the output area. Even if the printer is not printing, the roller may suddenly rotate and catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.
- The output slot is hot during and immediately after printing. Do not touch the area surrounding the output slot, as this may result in burns.



- Printed paper may be hot immediately after being output. Be careful when removing the paper and aligning the removed paper, especially after continuous printing. Failure to do so may result in burns.
- The laser beam used in the printer can be harmful to human bodies. The laser beam is confined in the laser scanner unit by a cover, so there is no danger of the laser beam escaping during normal printer operation. Read the following remarks and instructions for safety.
    - Never open covers other than those indicated in this manual.
    - Do not remove the caution label attached to the cover of the laser scanner unit.



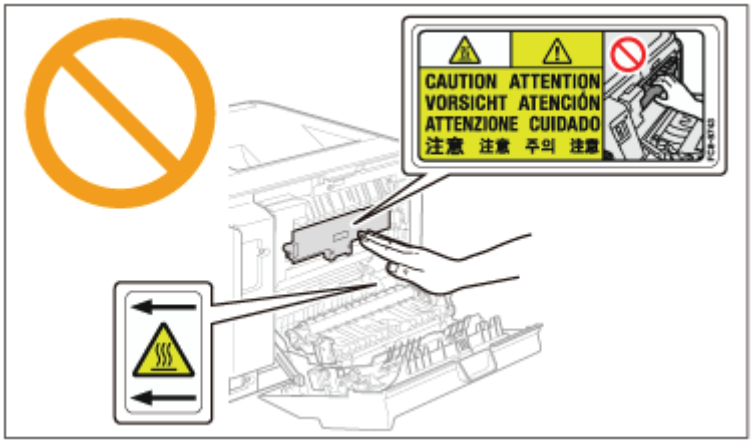
    - If the laser beam should escape and enter your eyes, exposure may cause damage to your eyes.

⚠ WARNING

- When cleaning the printer, turn off the printer and computer, remove the interface cables, and then unplug the power plug. Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet periodically and clean the area around the base of the power plug's metal pins and the AC power outlet with a dry cloth to remove all dust and grime. In damp, dusty, or smoky locations, dust can build up around the power plug and become damp, which can cause a short circuit, resulting in a fire.
- Clean the printer with a well wrung out cloth dampened with water or mild detergent diluted with water. Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances. If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.
- Some areas inside the printer are subject to high voltage. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, be careful not to allow necklaces, bracelets, or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer, as this can result in burns or electrical shock.
- Do not dispose of used toner cartridges in open flames. This may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridges to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.
- If you accidentally spill or scatter toner, carefully gather the toner particles together or wipe them up with a soft, damp cloth in a way that prevents inhalation. Never use a vacuum cleaner that does not have safeguards against dust explosions to clean up spilled toner. Doing so may cause a malfunction in the vacuum cleaner, or result in a dust explosion due to static discharge.
- Confirm that the power plug or power connecter is inserted completely after cleaning the printer. Failure to do so can result in an overheating and fire.
- Check the power cord and plug regularly. The following conditions may result in fire, so contact your local authorized Canon dealer or the Canon help line.
    - There are burn marks on the power plug.
    - The blade on the power plug is deformed or broken.
    - The power is turned OFF or ON when bending the power cord.
    - The coating of the power cord is damaged, cracked, or dented.
    - A part of the power cord becomes hot.
- Check regularly that the power cord, plug, and connector are not handled in the following manner. Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.
    - The power connector is loosened.
    - The power plug is loosened.
    - Stress is being applied to the power cord by a heavy object or by fixing it with staples.
    - The power cord is tied in a bundle.
    - A part of the power cord is put in an aisle.
    - The power cord is put in front of the heating appliance.

⚠CAUTION

- Never attempt to service this printer yourself, except as explained in this manual. There are no user serviceable parts inside the printer. Adjust only those controls that are covered in the operating instructions. Improper adjustment could result in personal injury and/or damage requiring extensive repair that may not be covered under your Limited Warranty.
- The fixing unit and its surroundings inside the printer become hot during use. When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the printer, do not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings, as this may result in burns.



- When removing jammed paper or when inspecting the inside of the machine, do not expose yourself to the heat emitted from the fixing unit and its surroundings for a prolonged period of time. Doing so may result in low temperature burns, even though you did not touch the fixing unit and its surroundings directly, as this may result in burns.
- If paper is jammed, remove the jammed paper so that any pieces of paper do not remain inside the printer according to the displayed message. Also, do not put your hands forcibly in the parts other than those directed on the screen. Failure to do so may result in burns or injuries.
- When removing jammed paper or replacing a toner cartridge, be careful not to get any toner on your hands or clothing, as this will dirty your hands or clothing. If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing jammed paper, be careful not to allow the toner on the paper to scatter. The toner may get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- When loading paper or removing jammed paper, be careful not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.
- When removing a toner cartridge, remove the toner cartridge carefully so as to prevent the toner from scattering and getting into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- Do not attempt to disassemble the toner cartridge. The toner may scatter and get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them

immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

- If toner leaks from the toner cartridge, be careful not to inhale the toner or allow it to come into direct contact with your skin. If the toner comes into contact with your skin, wash with soap. If the skin becomes irritated or you inhale the toner, consult a physician immediately.

[A-05] Consumables

⚠ WARNING

- Do not dispose of used toner cartridges in open flames. This may cause the toner to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.
- Do not store toner cartridges or paper in a location exposed to open flames. This may cause the toner or paper to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.
- When disposing of a toner cartridge, place the toner cartridge into a bag to prevent the toner from scattering, and then dispose of the toner cartridge according to local regulations.
- If you accidentally spill or scatter toner, carefully gather the toner particles together or wipe them up with a soft, damp cloth in a way that prevents inhalation. Never use a vacuum cleaner that does not have safeguards against dust explosions to clean up spilled toner. Doing so may cause a malfunction in the vacuum cleaner, or result in a dust explosion due to static discharge.

⚠ CAUTION

- Keep the toner cartridges and other consumables out of the reach of small children. If the toner or other parts are ingested, consult a physician immediately.
- Do not attempt to disassemble the toner cartridge. The toner may scatter and get into your eyes or mouth. If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- If toner leaks from the toner cartridge, be careful not to inhale the toner or allow it to come into direct contact with your skin. If the toner comes into contact with your skin, wash with soap. If the skin becomes irritated or you inhale the toner, consult a physician immediately.
- If the sealing tape is pulled out forcefully or stopped at midpoint, toner may spill out. If the toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and immediately consult a physician.

[B] Legal Notices

This section describes regulations regarding use and disposal of the printer, classification of the printer under the International ENERGY STAR Program, and legal notices and trademarks used in the e-Manual. Please read this information thoroughly before operating the printer.

Legal Notices

Legal Notices

- Legal Notices

Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

- Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

[B-01] Legal Notices

- Product Name
- EMC requirements of EC Directive
- Laser Safety
- International Energy Star-Program
- WEEE Directive
- Trademarks
- Copyright
- Disclaimer

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered.
In some regions where this product is sold, the following name(s) in parentheses ( ) may be registered instead.
LBP7210Cdn (F159800)

EMC requirements of EC Directive

This equipment conforms with the essential EMC requirements of EC Directive. We declare that this product conforms with the EMC requirements of EC Directive at nominal mains input 230 V, 50 Hz although the rated input of the product is 220 to 240 V, 50/60 Hz. Use of shielded cable is necessary to comply with the technical EMC requirements of EC Directive.

Laser Safety

This product is certified as a Class 1 laser product under IEC60825-1:2007 and EN60825-1:2007. This means that the product does not produce hazardous laser radiation.

Since radiation emitted inside the product is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape from the machine during any phase of user operation. Do not remove protective housings or external covers, except as directed by the equipment's manuals.

The label shown below is attached to the laser scanner unit inside the machine.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
LASER KLASSE 1
APPAREIL À LASER DE CLASSE 1
APPARECCHIO LASER DI CLASSE 1
PRODUCTO LÁSER DE CLASE 1
APARELHO A LASER DE CLASSE 1
LUOKAN 1 LASER-TUOTE
LASERPRODUKT KLASS 1

CAUTION

Use of controls, adjustments, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

International ENERGY STAR Program

As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR Program for energy efficiency.

The International ENERGY STAR Office Equipment Program is an international program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment.

The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption. It is an open system in which business proprietors can participate voluntarily.

The targeted products are office equipment, such as computers, displays, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. The standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.

WEEE Directive

European Union (and EEA) only.

This symbol indicates that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2002/96/EC) and your national law. This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE). Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible negative impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. At the same time, your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about where you can drop off your waste equipment for recycling, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved WEEE scheme or your household waste disposal service. For more information regarding return and recycling of WEEE products, please visit www.canon-europe.com/environment.

(EEA: Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)

Trademarks

- Canon, the Canon Logo, LBP, NetSpot, and PageComposer are trademarks of Canon Inc.
- Adobe, Adobe Acrobat, and Adobe Reader are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server and Internet Explorer are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Ethernet is a trademark of Xerox Corporation.
- Other product and company names herein may be the trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright

- Copyright 2012 by Canon Inc. All rights reserved.
- No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without the prior written permission of Canon Inc.

Disclaimer

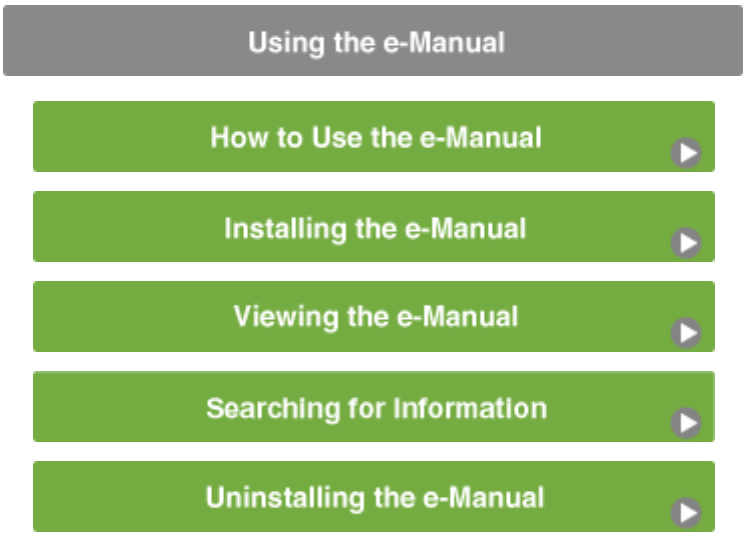
- The information in this manual is subject to change without notice.
- CANON INC. MAKES NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WITH REGARD TO THIS MATERIAL, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, EXCEPT AS PROVIDED HEREIN, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THEREOF, WARRANTIES AS TO MARKETABILITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OF USE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT OF ANY PATENT. CANON INC. SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE, OR LOSSES OR EXPENSES RESULTING FROM THE USE OF THIS MATERIAL.

[B-02] Legal Limitations on the Usage of Your Product and the Use of Images

Using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce certain documents, and the use of such images as scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced by your product, may be prohibited by law and may result in criminal and/or civil liability. A non-exhaustive list of these documents is set forth below. This list is intended to be a guide only. If you are uncertain about the legality of using your product to scan, print or otherwise reproduce any particular document, and/or of the use of the images scanned, printed or otherwise reproduced, you should consult in advance with your legal advisor for guidance.

- Paper Money
- Travelers Checks
- Money Orders
- Food Stamps
- Certificates of Deposit
- Passports
- Postage Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Immigration Papers
- Identifying Badges or Insignias
- Internal Revenue Stamps (canceled or uncanceled)
- Selective Service or Draft Papers
- Bonds or Other Certificates of Indebtedness
- Checks or Drafts Issued by Governmental Agencies
- Stock Certificates
- Motor Vehicle Licenses and Certificates of Title
- Copyrighted Works/Works of Art without Permission of Copyright Owner

[C] Using the e-Manual



[C-02] How to Use the e-Manual

- Symbols Used in the e-Manual
- Keys and Buttons Used in the e-Manual
- Displays Used in the e-Manual
- Illustrations Used in This Manual
- Abbreviations Used in the e-Manual

Symbols Used in the e-Manual

The following are descriptions of warnings and cautions used in the e-Manual to explain handling restrictions, precautions, and instructions that should be observed for your safety.

WARNING

Indicates a warning about operations that can result in death or serious injury if not performed correctly.
You must follow the information in this warning to ensure safe use of the printer.

CAUTION

Indicates a caution concerning operations that may lead to injury to persons, or damage to property if not performed correctly.
You must follow the information in this caution to ensure safe use of the printer.

IMPORTANT

Indicates operational requirements and restrictions.
Be sure to read these items carefully to ensure correct printer operation and avoid printer damage.

NOTE

Indicates a clarification of an operation.
It is recommended that you read this note.

INFORMATION

Indicates additional useful information about an operation.
It is recommended that you read this information.

Keys and Buttons Used in the e-Manual

The following are examples of how control panel keys and on-screen buttons are depicted in the e-Manual.

Control panel keys

<Key icon> + (Key name)

Example: Press the (Cancel Job) key.

Buttons and items on the computer display

[Names of buttons and items]

Example: Click [OK].
Select [Paper Source].

Displays Used in the e-Manual

Most of the operations in the e-Manual are described using screenshots from Windows XP Professional. Displayed screens may differ from those in the e-Manual depending on your environment.

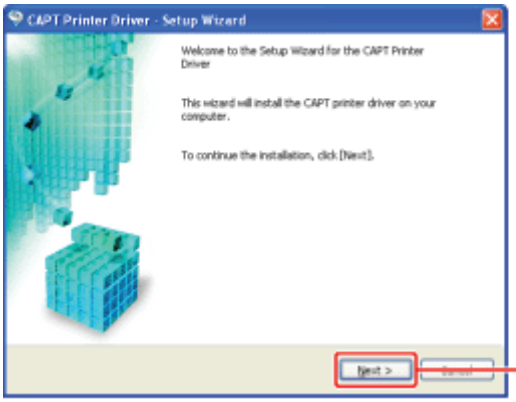
Items that should be selected or buttons that should be clicked are enclosed in a red frame ( ).
When multiple items or buttons can be clicked on the screen shot of computer operation screen, all buttons are marked. Select the button which suits your needs.

NOTE

Example Screenshot

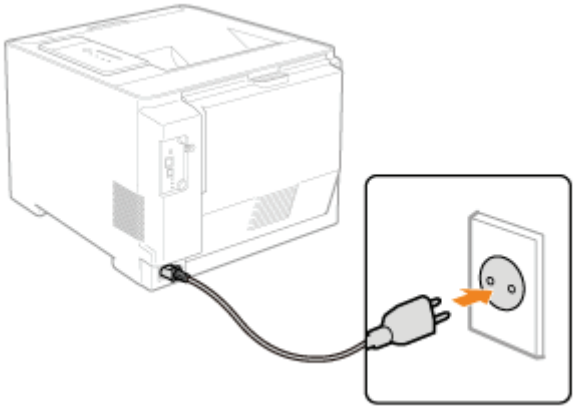
---

7. **Click [Next].**



Illustrations Used in This Manual

Although the power cord used in this manual is as the one in the following illustration, the form of the power cord may differ depending on the country or region.



Abbreviations Used in the e-Manual

Abbreviations of Operating Systems

In the e-Manual, operating systems are abbreviated as follows.

- Microsoft Windows XP operating system: **Windows XP**
- Microsoft Windows Server 2003 operating system: **Windows Server 2003**
- Microsoft Windows Vista operating system: **Windows Vista**
- Microsoft Windows Server 2008 operating system: **Windows Server 2008**
- Microsoft Windows 7 operating system: **Windows 7**
- Microsoft Windows operating system: **Windows**

[C-03] Installing the e-Manual

Install the e-Manual included in the supplied CD-ROM on your computer using the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

If your hard disk does not have sufficient space to install the printer driver
A message indicating that your hard disk does not have sufficient space appears during installation.
Cancel the installation, free up space on your hard disk, and then reinstall the software.

1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

3. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**
If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.
† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear
Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

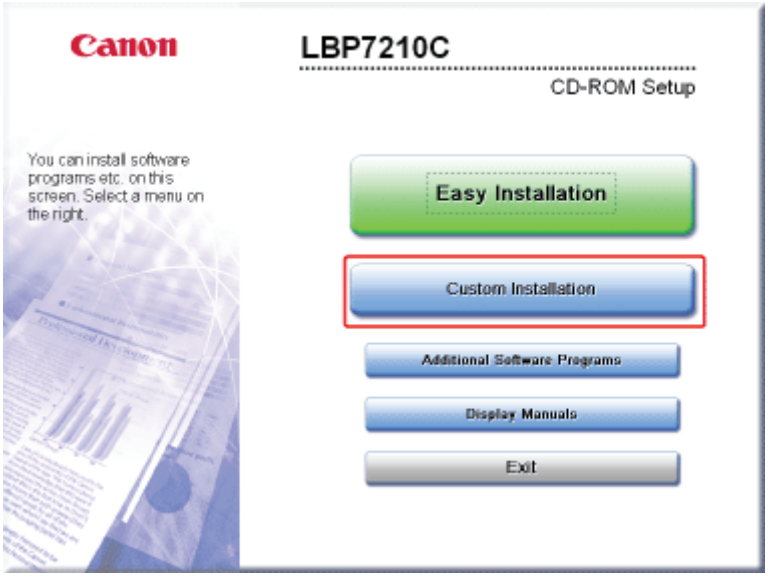
- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

---

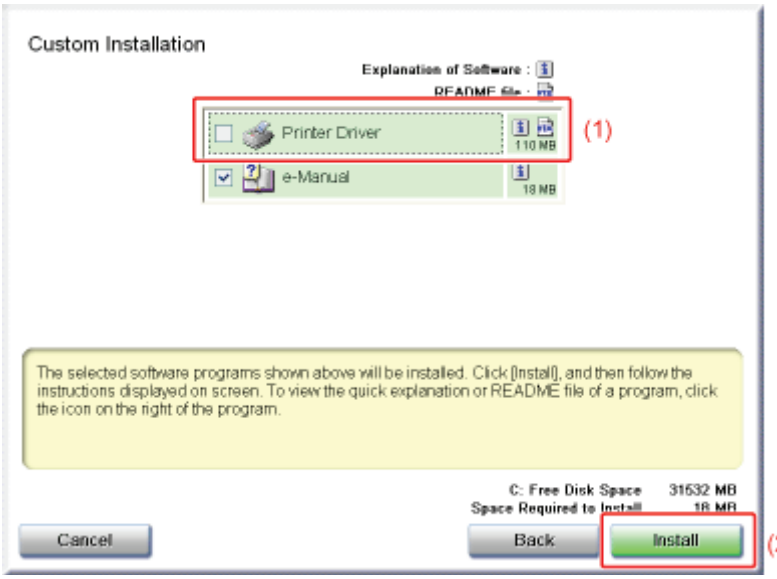
4. Click [Custom Installation].



---

5. Perform the following procedure.

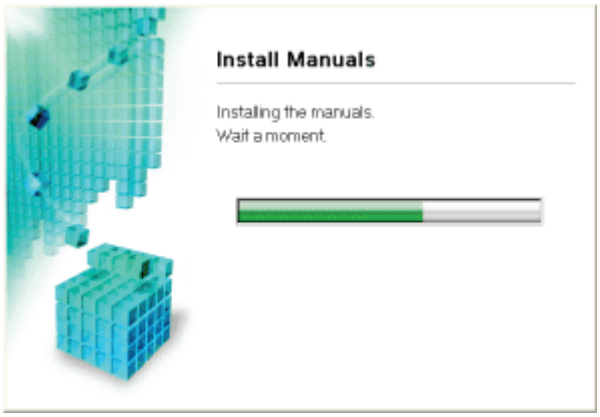
(1) Clear the [Printer Driver] check box.
(2) Click [Install].



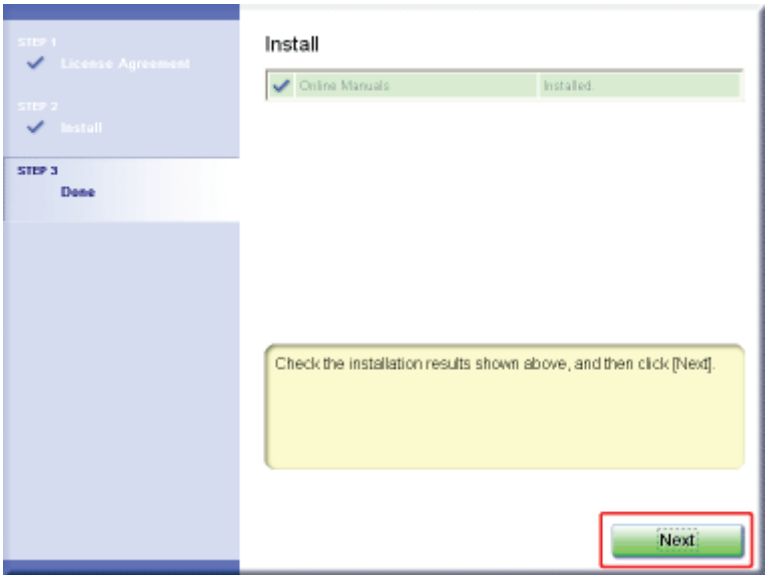
---

6. Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].

→ The installation starts.
Wait until the following screen disappears.
† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.

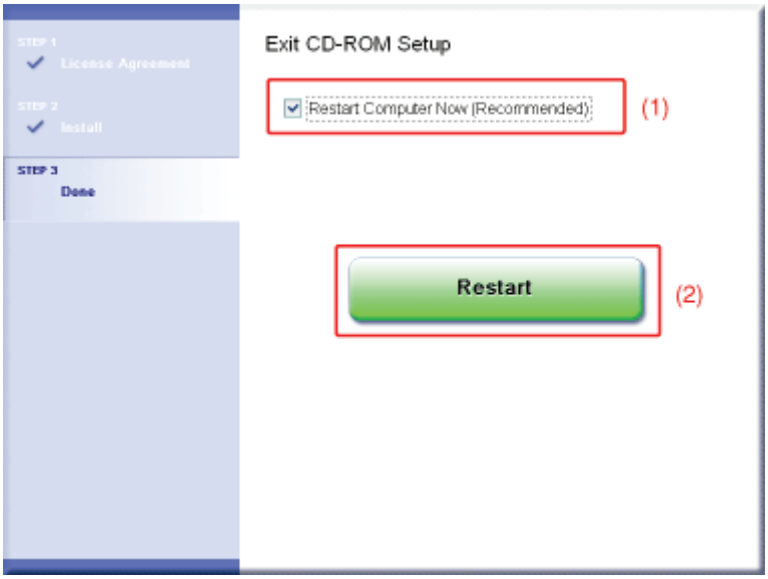


7. Check the installation results, and then click [Next].



8. Restart your computer.

(1) Select the [Restart Computer Now (Recommended)] check box.
(2) Click [Restart].



NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

When viewing the e-Manual
"Viewing the e-Manual"
"Searching for Information"

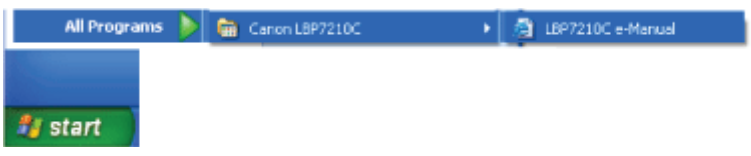
After Installation
The following shortcut icon and folders are added to the following locations.

- Desktop

  [LBP7210C e-Manual]

- [All Programs] under the [Start] menu

  [Canon LBP7210C] - [LBP7210C e-Manual]

[C-04] Viewing the e-Manual

Read the e-Manual to find information on the printer operations and familiarize yourself with the more detailed features. You can view the e-Manual using either of the following methods.

- Viewing the e-Manual Installed on a Computer
- Viewing the e-Manual from the CD-ROM

Viewing the e-Manual Installed on a Computer

1. **Double-click the icon of the e-Manual on the desktop.**

NOTE

Viewing the e-Manual from the [Start] menu

- Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Canon LBP7210C] → [LBP7210C e-Manual].

Installing the e-Manual

"Installing the e-Manual"

Viewing the e-Manual from the CD-ROM

1. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**
   If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.
† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear
Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP, and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].

2. Enter "\D:English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].

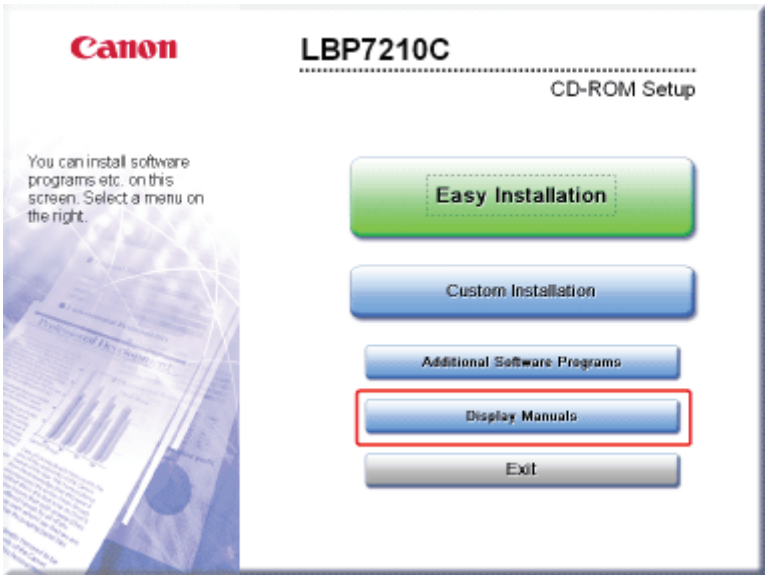
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

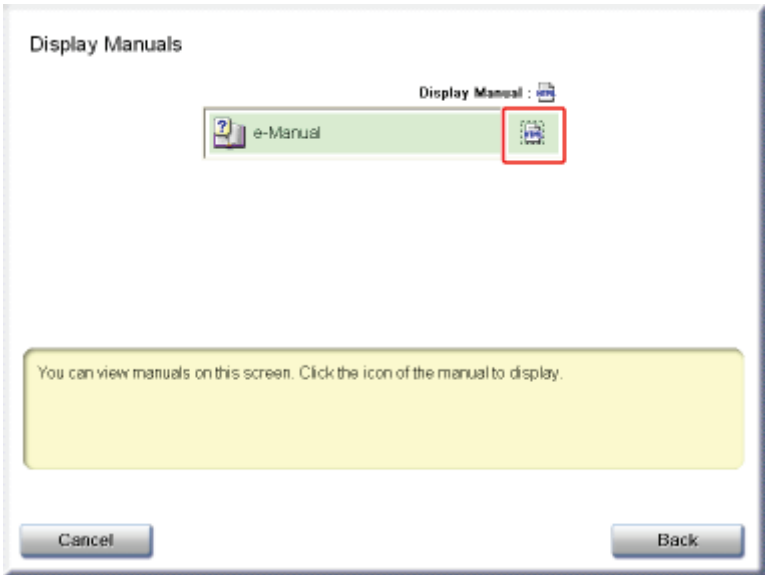
---

2. Click [Display Manuals].



---

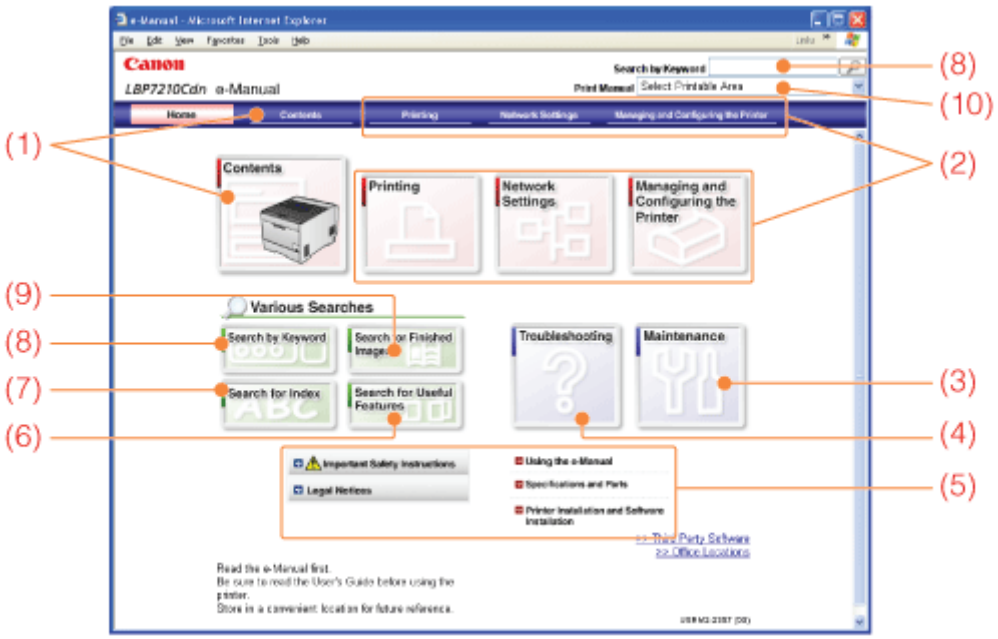
3. Click [ ].



→ The e-Manual is displayed.

[C-05] Searching for Information

You can search for the desired information by clicking the buttons or entering keywords on the top page.

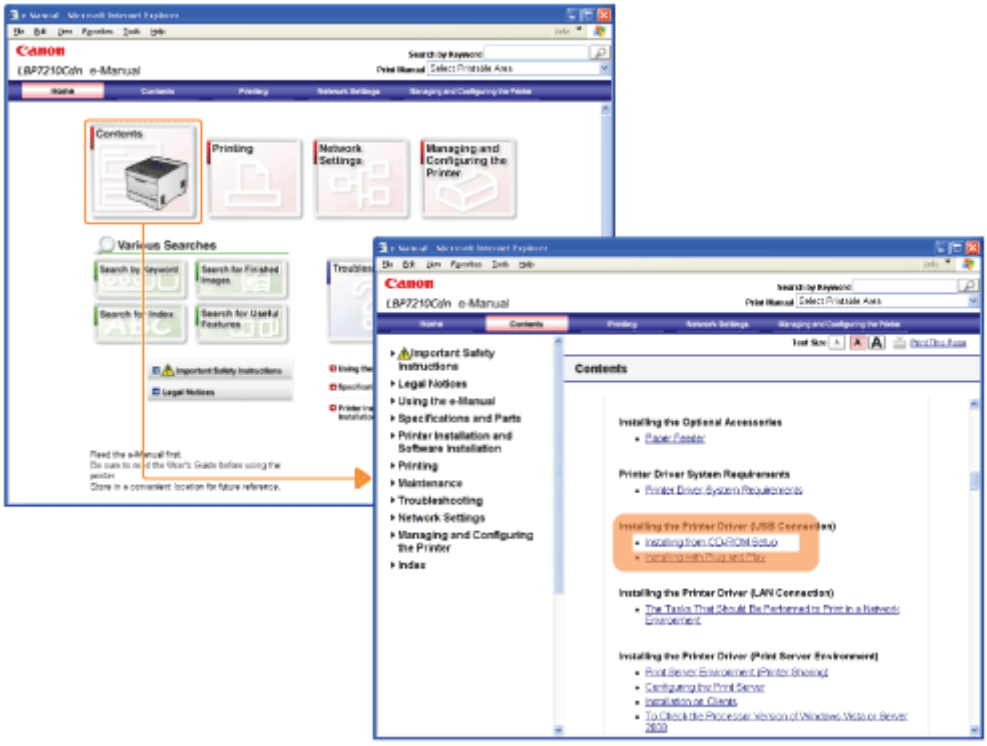


(1) Contents

You can search for a topic from the contents in which all the items are listed.

(Example)

If you want to search for an installation procedure of the printer driver

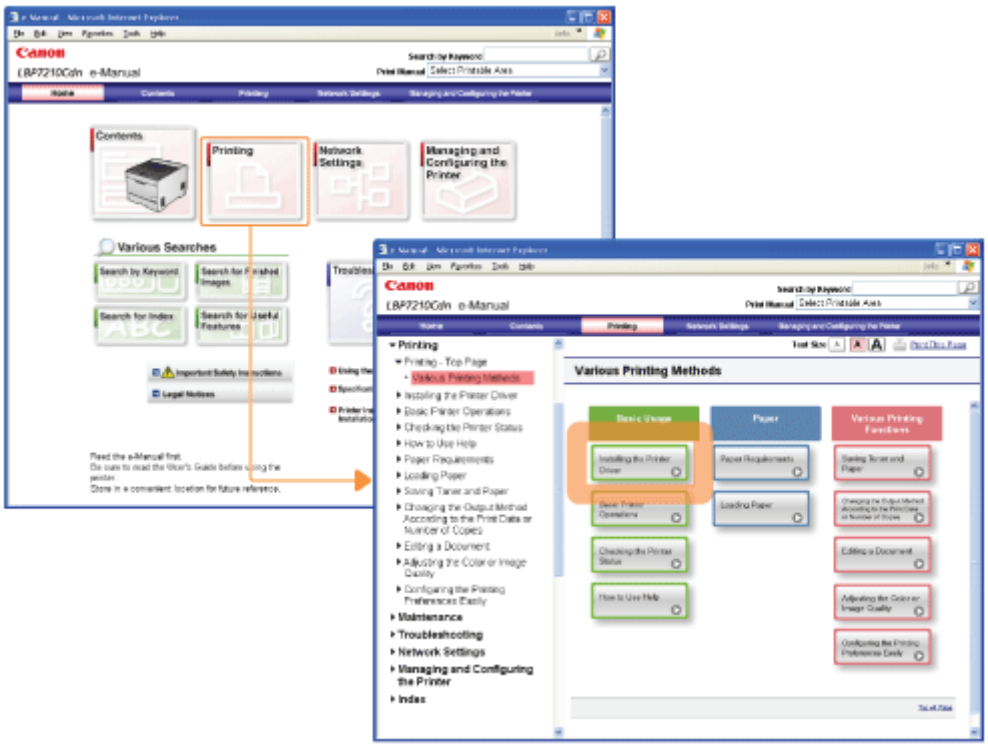


(2) Printing, Network Settings, Managing and Configuring the Printer

You can search for a topic from the list classified into respective operations.

(Example)

If you want to search for a basic printing procedure

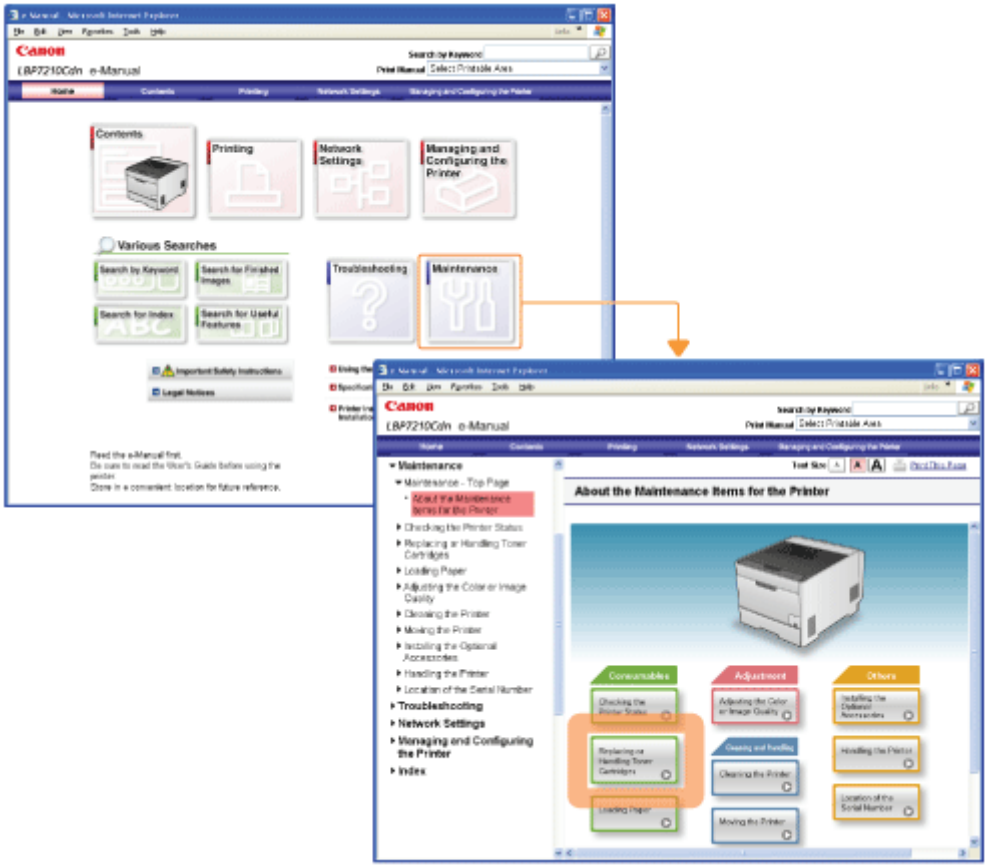


(3) Maintenance

You can search for a topic from the list of various maintenance for the printer.

(Example)

If you want to search for the procedure for replacing toner cartridges

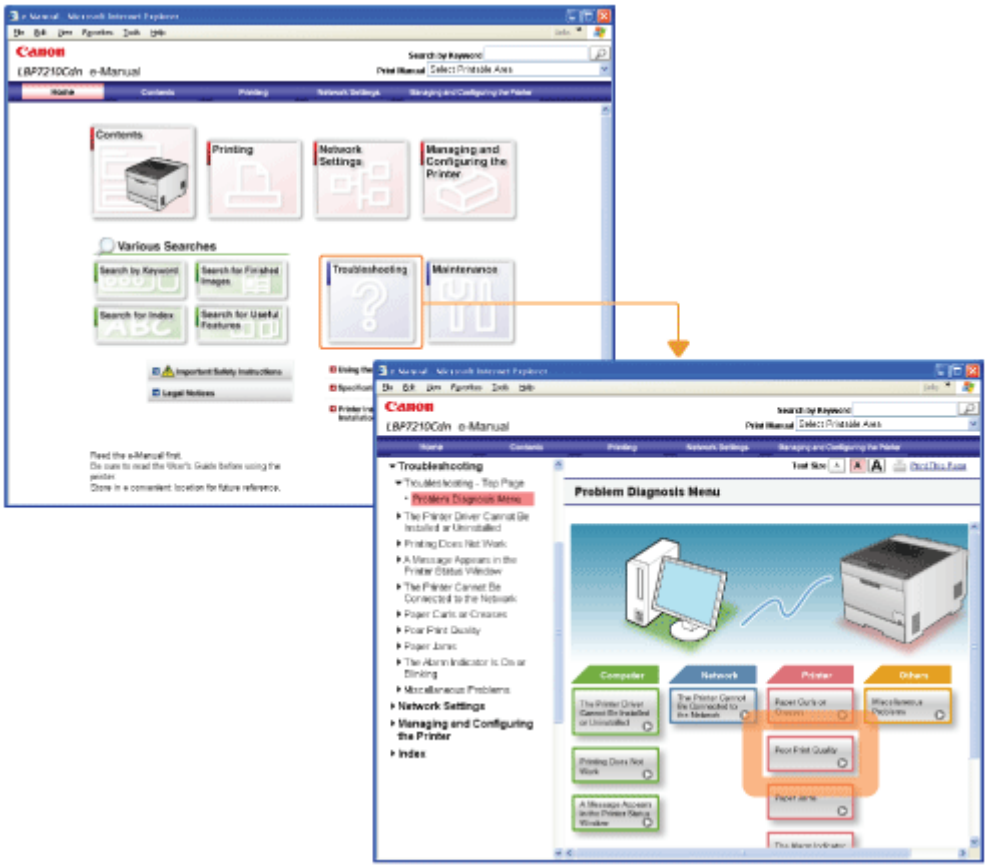


(4) Troubleshooting

You can search for troubleshooting.

(Example)

If you want to search for a procedure for clearing a paper jam

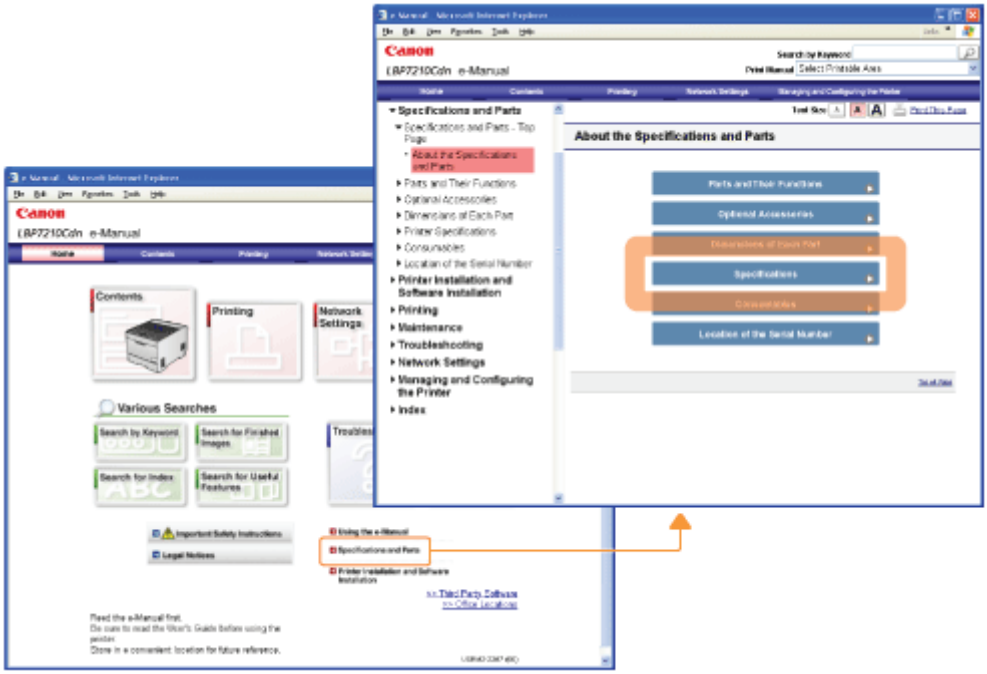


(5) Basic Information

If you want to search for basic printer information etc.

(Example)

If you want to search for the printer specifications

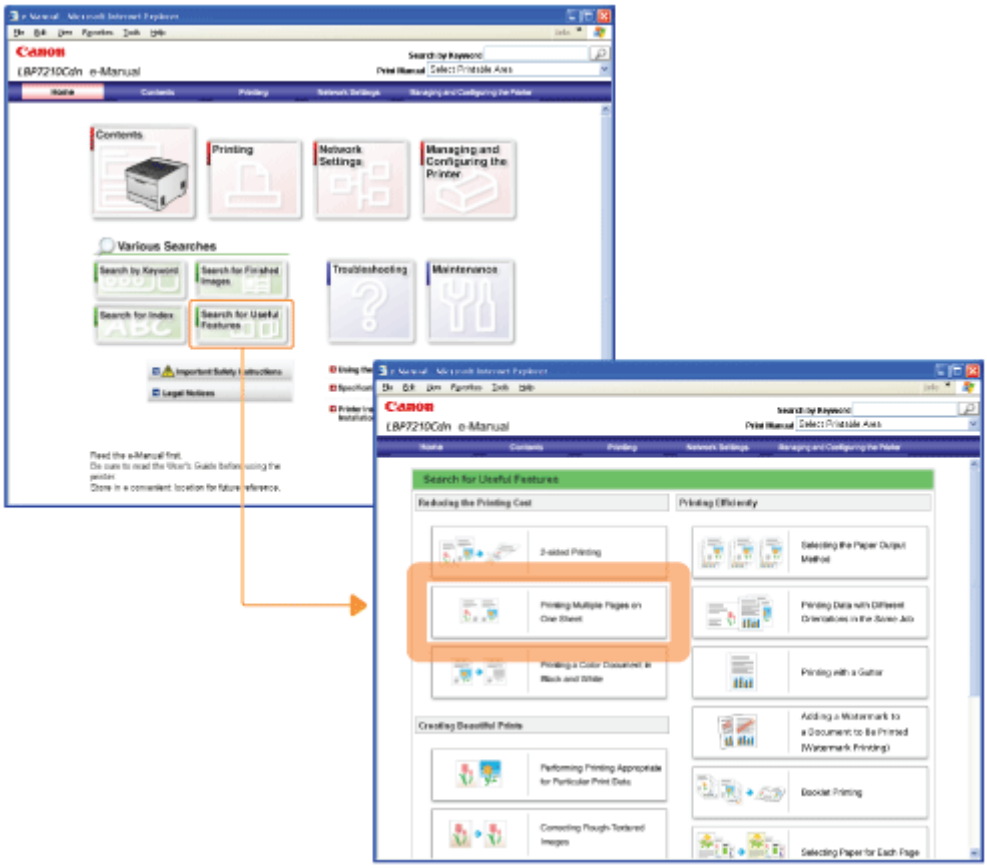


(6) Search for Useful Features

You can search for a topic from the list of Useful Features.

(Example)

If you want to search for the procedure to print multiple pages on one sheet

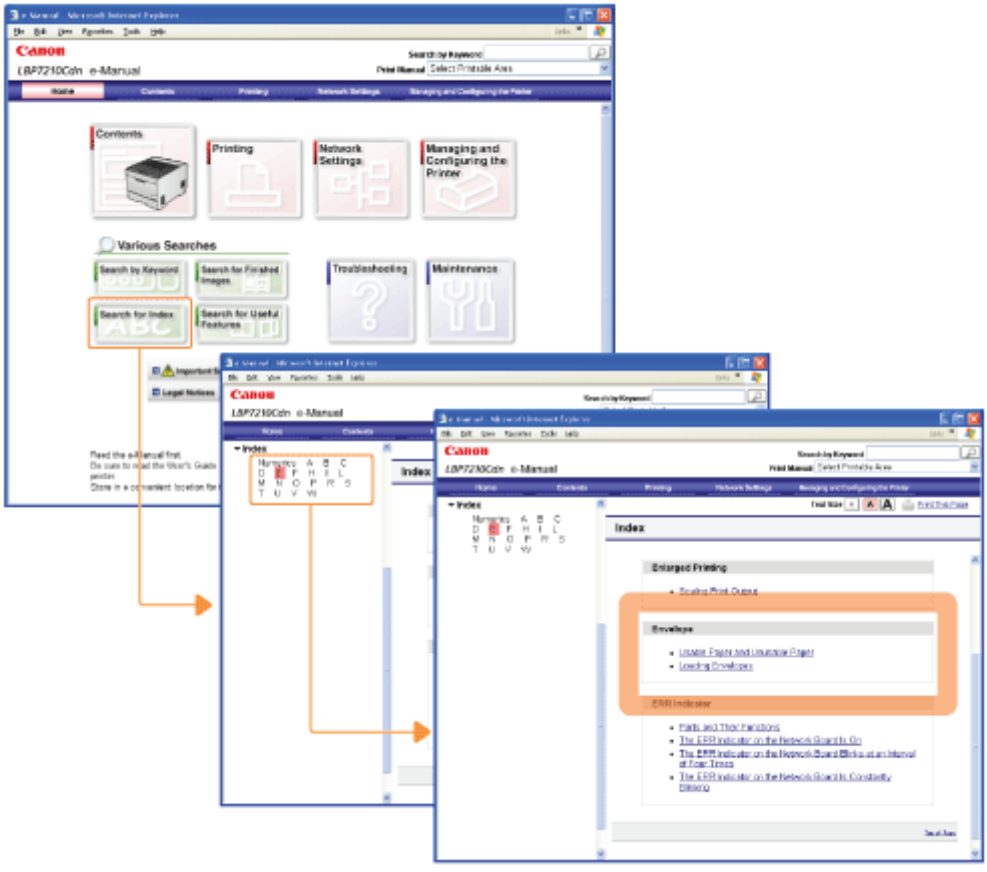


(7) Search for Index

You can search for printer terms.

(Example)

If you want to search for the procedure for loading Envelopes

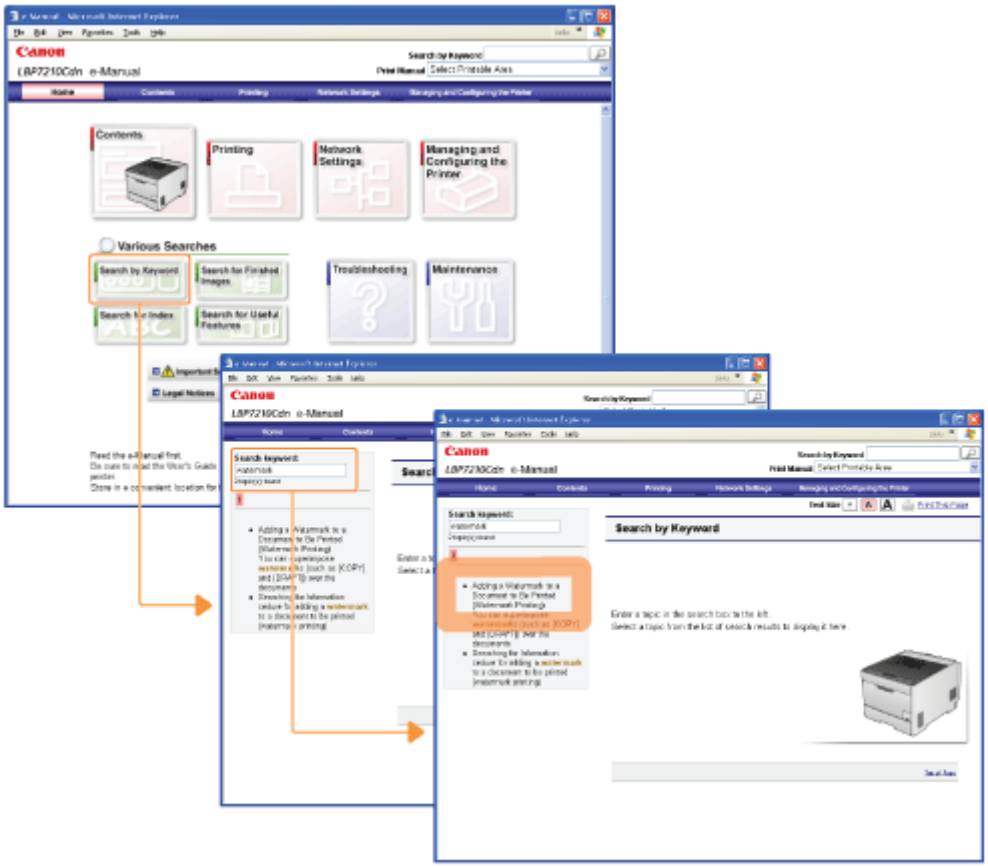


(8) Search by Keyword

You can search for a topic by entering keywords.

(Example)

If you want to search for the procedure for adding a watermark to a document to be printed (watermark printing)

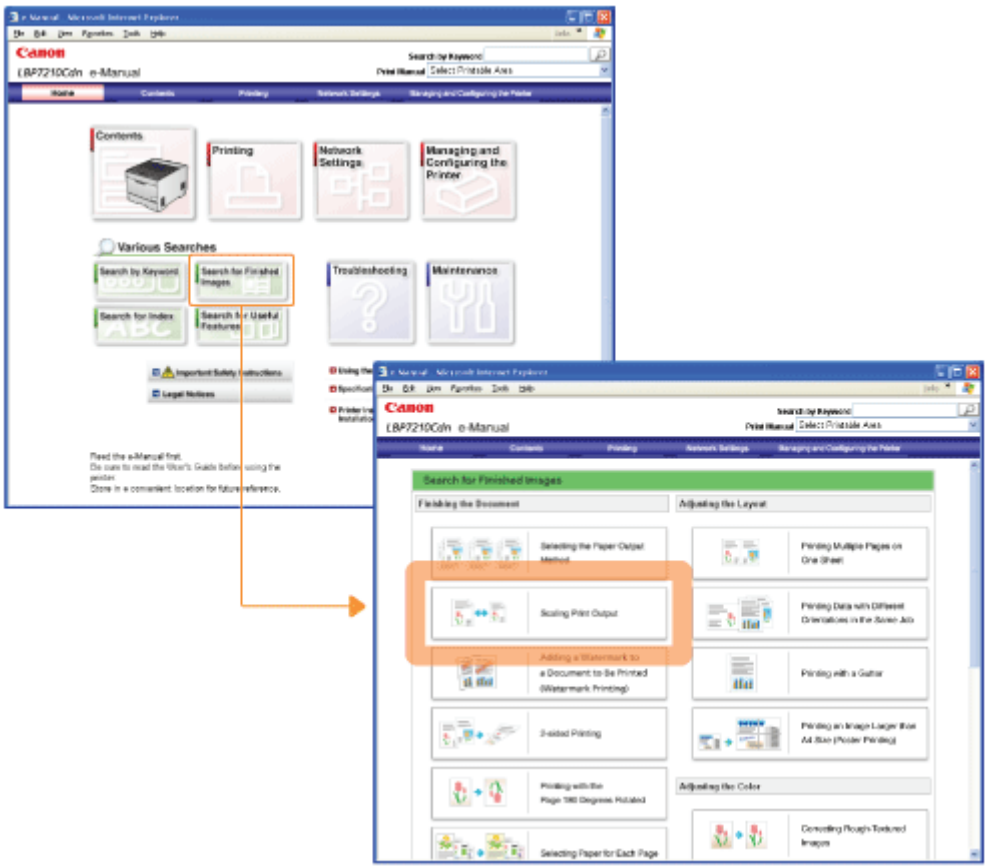


(9) Search for Finished Images

You can search for a topic from the list of finished images of printout results.

(Example)

If you want to search for the procedure for enlarging or reducing pages to be printed

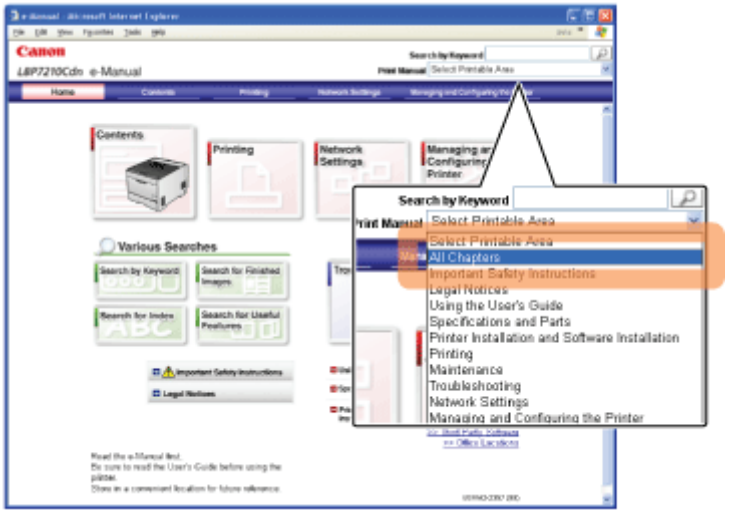


(10) Print Manual

You can print the e-Manual.

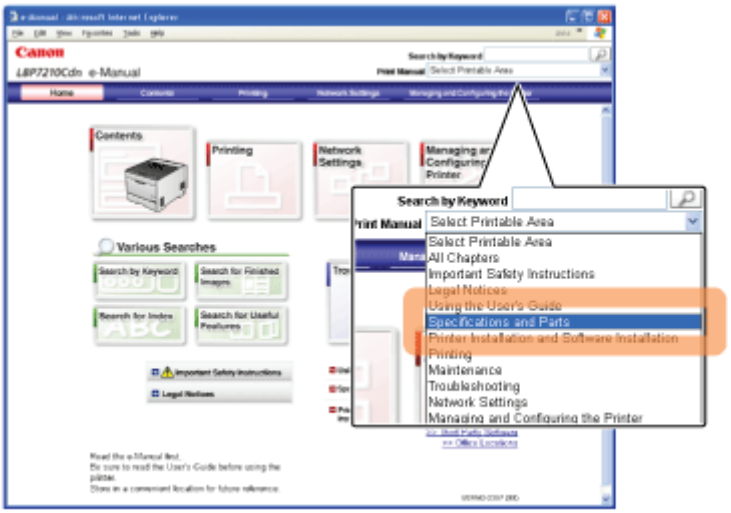
- If you want to print all pages of the e-Manual

  Select [All Chapters].



- If you want to print all pages for one category of the e-Manual

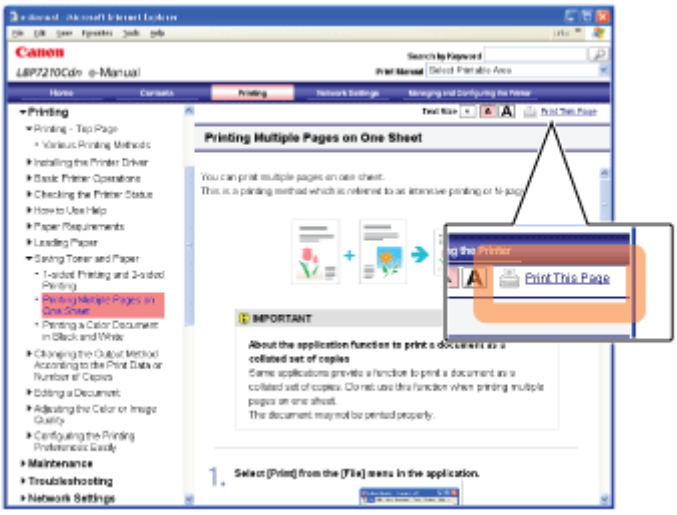
  Select the desired category.



NOTE

If you want to print selected pages

Display the page you want to print, and then click [Print This Page].



[C-06] Uninstalling the e-Manual

The process of removing the e-Manual to restore the computer to the same state as before the e-Manual was installed is referred to as uninstallation. To uninstall the e-Manual, perform the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

Uninstallation by a user with administrative rights
A user without administrative rights cannot perform the uninstallation. To perform the uninstallation, be sure to log on as a user with administrative rights.

† Contact your system administrator if you are not sure about your administrative rights.

---

1. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**
If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.
† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear
Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

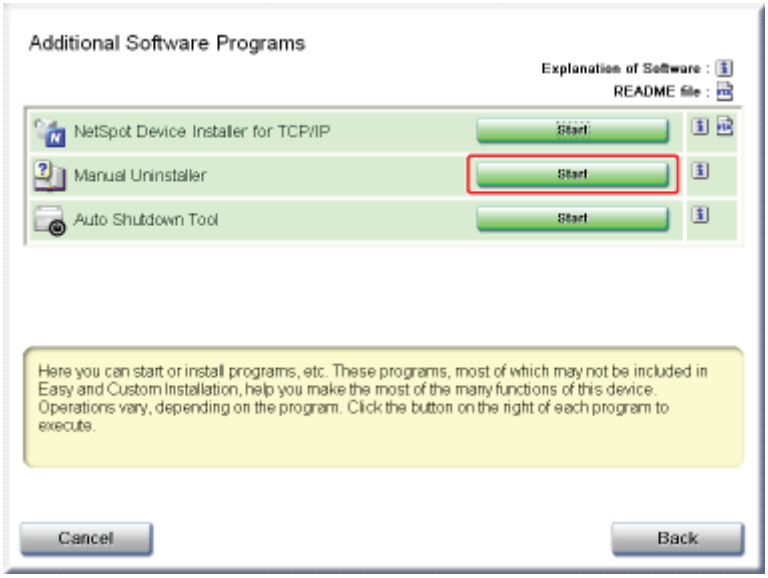
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

---

2. **Click [Additional Software Programs].**

---

3. Click [Start] in [Manual Uninstaller].



---

4. Click [Uninstall].

→ The uninstallation starts. Please wait a moment.

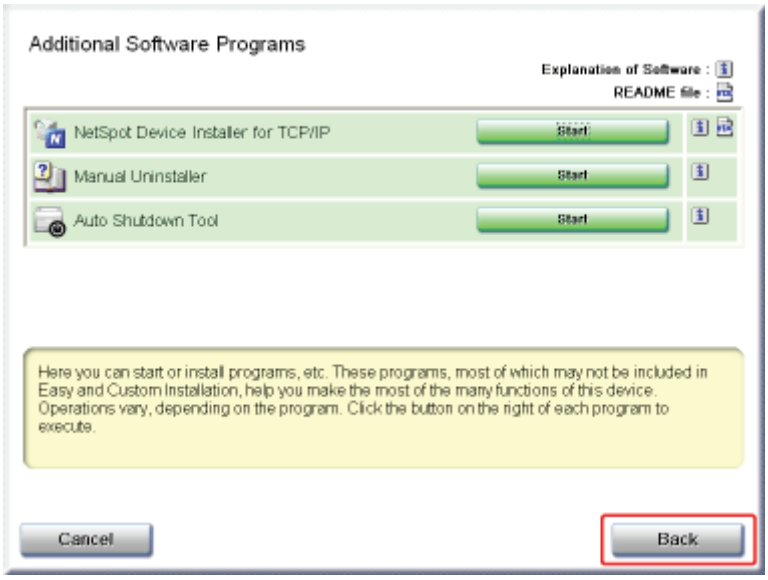
† Depending on your environment, the uninstallation may take a long time.

---

5. **Click [Exit].**

---

6. **Click [Back].**



---

7. **Click [Exit].**

NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM

You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the uninstallation is completed.

[D] Specifications and Parts

- Parts and Their Functions
- Optional Accessories
- Dimensions of Each Part
- Specifications
- Consumables
- Location of the Serial Number

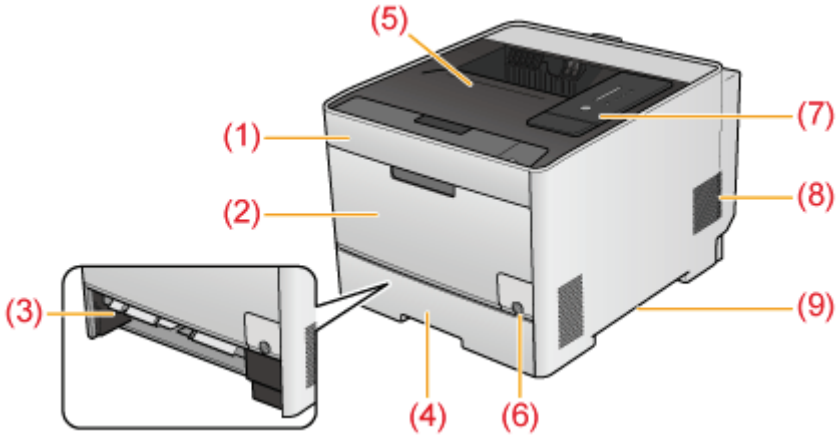
[D-02] Parts and Their Functions

- Front View
- Rear View
- Interior View
- Multi-purpose Tray
- Paper Drawer
- Control Panel

⚠CAUTION

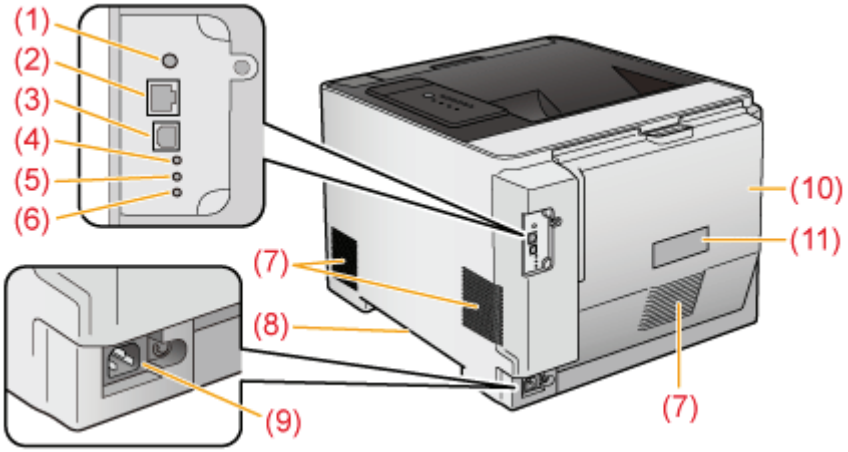
Do not block the ventilation slots.
Blocking the ventilation slots may cause the printer to overheat, resulting in a fire.

Front View



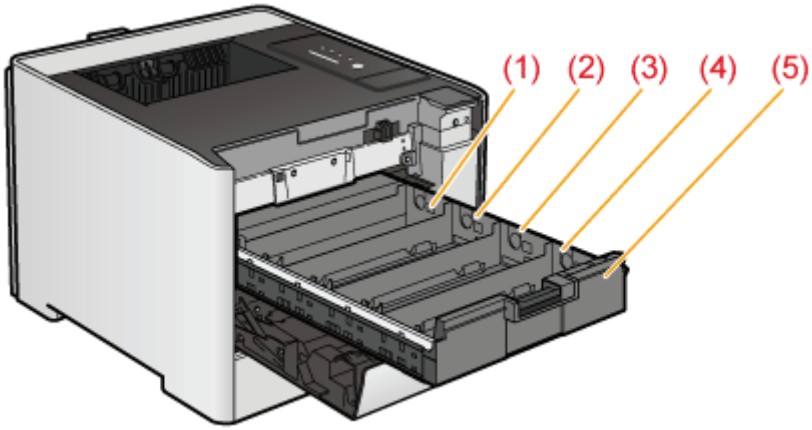
(1) **Front Cover**
Open when replacing toner cartridges.
"Replacing Toner Cartridges"
(2) **Multi-purpose Tray**
(3) **Manual Feed Transport Guide**
Open when removing paper jammed in the multi-purpose tray.
"Clearing Paper Jams (Multi-purpose Tray Area)"
(4) **Paper Drawer**
(5) **Output Tray**
(6) **Power Switch**
(7) **Control Panel**
The control panel has the indicators which show the printer status and the key which can cancel a job.
(8) **Ventilation Slots**
Ventilate air to cool the insides of the printer.
Provide sufficient clearance around the ventilation slots so that heat can dissipate.
(9) **Lift Handles**

Rear View



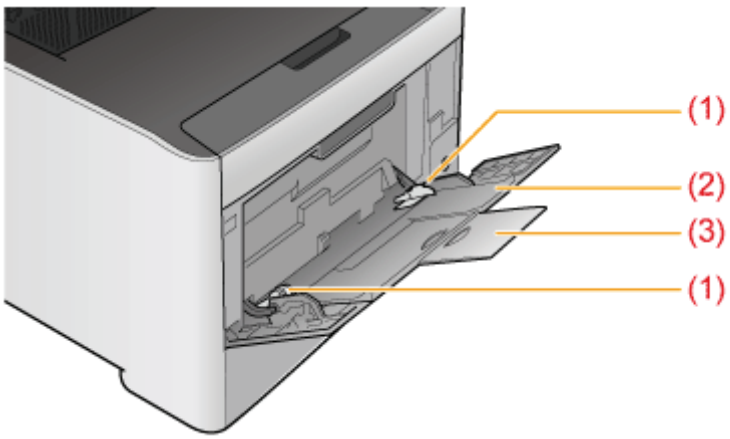
(1) **Reset Button**
To initialize the network settings, turn on the printer while pressing this button.
"Initializing the Network Settings"
(2) **LAN Connector**
(3) **USB Connector**
(4) **100 Indicator (Green)**
Turns on when the printer is connected to the network by 100BASE-TX.
(Does not turn on when connected by 10BASE-T.)
(5) **LNK Indicator (Green)**
Turns on when the printer is connected to the network properly.
(6) **ERR Indicator (Orange)**
Turns on or blinks if the network board of the printer is not operating properly.
(7) **Ventilation Slots**
Ventilate air to cool the insides of the printer.
Provide sufficient clearance around the ventilation slots so that heat can dissipate.
(8) **Lift Handles**
(9) **Power Socket**
(10) **Rear Cover**
Open when removing paper jammed inside the printer.
"Paper Jams"
(11) **Rating Label**
The current value indicated in this rating label shows the average power current consumption.

Interior View



(1) **Y (Yellow) Toner Cartridge Slot**
The Y (yellow) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.
(2) **M (Magenta) Toner Cartridge Slot**
The M (magenta) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.
(3) **C (Cyan) Toner Cartridge Slot**
The C (cyan) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.
(4) **K (Black) Toner Cartridge Slot**
The K (black) toner cartridge is installed in this slot.
(5) **Toner Cartridge Tray**
Tray for installing the toner cartridges.
"Replacing Toner Cartridges"

Multi-purpose Tray



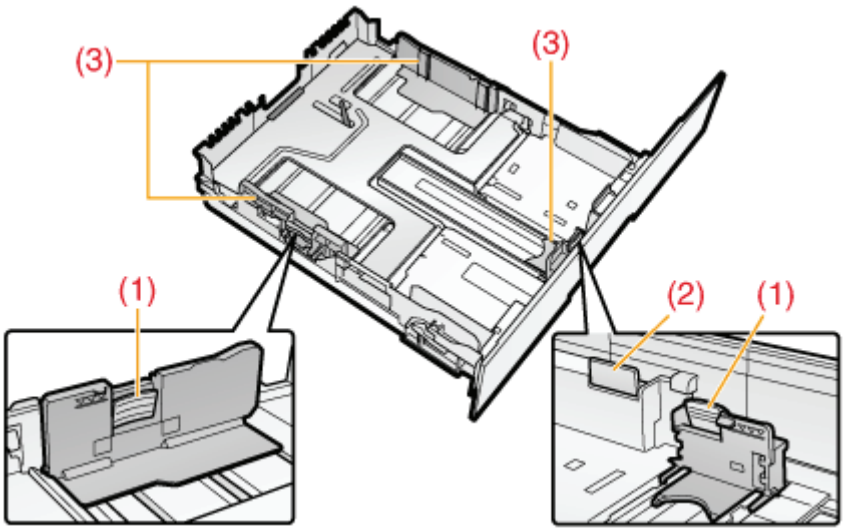
(1) **Paper Guides**
Adjust the guides to match the width of the paper.
(2) **Auxiliary Tray**
Be sure to pull out this tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.
(3) **Tray Extension**
Open to prevent the paper from hanging out of the multi-purpose tray when loading long-size paper, such as A4.

NOTE

How to load paper

"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"
"Loading Index Cards"
"Loading Envelopes"
"Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

Paper Drawer



(1) **Lock Release Lever**
Hold this lever to slide the paper guides.
(2) **Lock Release Lever**
While holding this lever, pull out the paper drawer when loading paper longer than A4 size.
(3) **Paper Guides**
Adjust the position of the paper guides to the paper size.

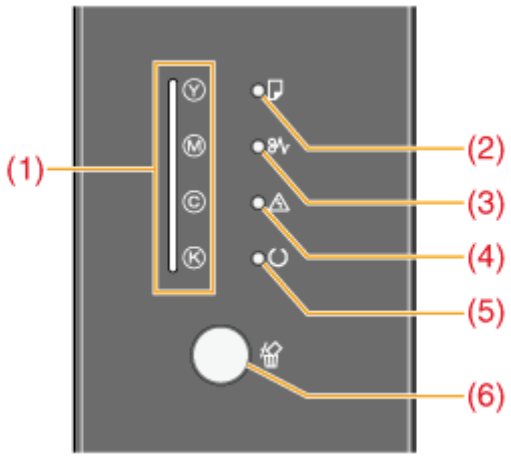
NOTE

How to load paper

"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"
"Loading Index Cards"
"Loading Envelopes"
"Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

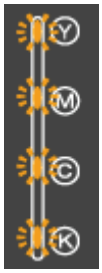
Control Panel

The control panel has the indicator lights which show the printer status and the button which can cancel a job.



* Unlike in the above illustration, the indicator names are indicated above the respective icons depending on the country or region.

Indicators

Number	Name	Status		Refer to
(1)	Toner Indicator (Orange)	(On)	A toner cartridge needs to be replaced.	"Replacing Toner Cartridges"
		 (Blinking)	The printer cannot print because a toner cartridge needs to be replaced. One or more toner cartridges are not installed in the correct positions.	
(2)	Load Paper Indicator (Orange)	(Blinking)	Printing cannot be performed because no paper is loaded. Paper of the correct size is not loaded.	"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)" "Loading Index Cards" "Loading Envelopes" "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"
(3)	Paper Jam Indicator (Orange)	(Blinking)	A paper jam has occurred and printing cannot be performed.	"Paper Jams"

(4)	Alarm Indicator (Orange)	(On)	A service call has occurred and printing cannot be performed.	"The Alarm Indicator Is On"
		(Blinking)	An error has occurred and printing cannot be performed.	"The Alarm Indicator Is Blinking"
(5)	Ready Indicator (Green)	(On)	The printer is ready to print.	-
		(Blinking)	The printer is busy printing, preparing to print, shutting down or cleaning.	-
(6)	Cancel Job Indicator (Orange)	(On)	The (Cancel Job) key has been pressed.	"Canceling a Job"
		(Blinking)	A job is being canceled.	

Key

Number	Name	Function	Refer to
(6)	Cancel Job Key	Press this key to cancel the job that is currently being printed or a job with an error.	"Canceling a Job"

NOTE

Checking detailed information about the printer status

You can check detailed information about the printer status using the Printer Status Window from your computer.

"Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window"

[D-03] Optional Accessories

The following optional accessories are available in order to make full use of the printer functions. Purchase them in accordance to your needs.
For the optional accessories, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Paper Feeder

In addition to the supplied multi-purpose tray and paper drawer, up to three paper sources can be used by installing the optional paper feeder.

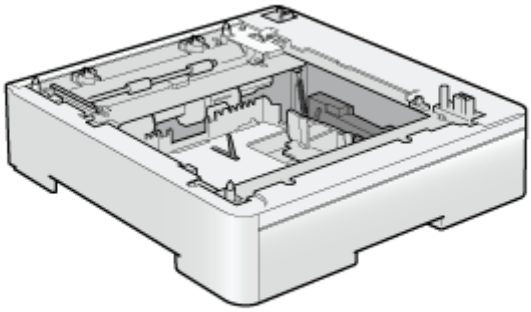
The paper feeder can be loaded with up to 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m^2) of the following sizes.

- Standard sizes

  A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, Envelope DL, Envelope No.10 (COM10), Envelope C5, and Envelope B5

- Custom paper size

  Width 100.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 148.0 to 355.6 mm



Paper Feeder Unit PF-701

IMPORTANT

Use a paper feeder designed for this printer.
Be sure to use a paper feeder designed for this printer.

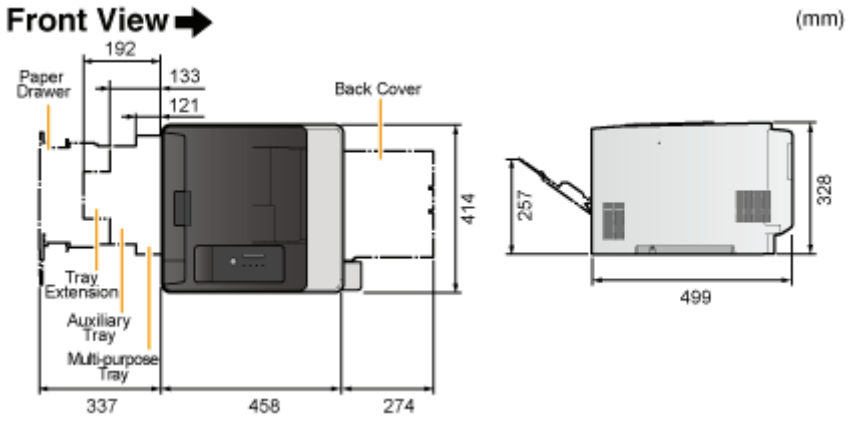
NOTE

How to Install the Paper Feeder
"Paper Feeder"

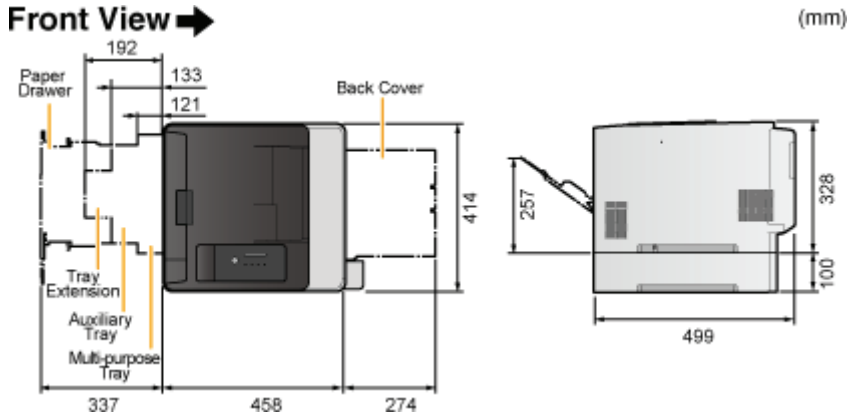
[D-04] Dimensions of Each Part

Printer unit

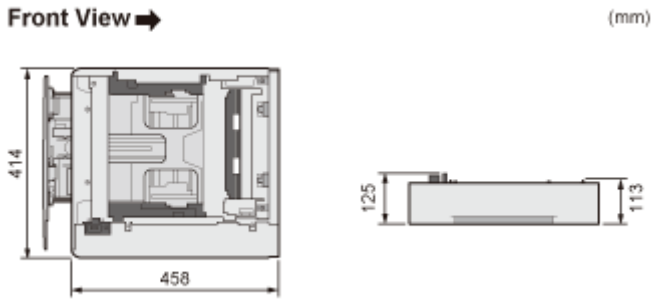
- Standard configuration



- With the paper feeder installed



Paper Feeder Unit PF-701



[D-05] Printer Specifications

- Hardware Specifications
- Software Specifications

Hardware Specifications

Type		Desktop page printer
Printing method		Electrophoto method (On-demand fixing)

Printing speed
(Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2), when printing A4 paper continuously)
		• Black and white printing:
		  • 20 pages/min. (1-sided printing)*1*2
		  • 10 pages/min. / 5 sheets/min. (2-sided printing)*1*2
		• Color printing:
		  • 20 pages/min. (1-sided printing)*1*2
		  • 10 pages/min. / 5 sheets/min. (2-sided printing)*1*2

Warm up time (Time from power on to printer ready)		22 seconds or less*3
Recovery time (Time from power save mode to printer ready)		Approx. 9 seconds*4
First print time (When printing A4 paper)		• Black and white printing: 16 seconds or less*4 • Color printing: 16 seconds or less*4
Paper size	Drawer 1	• Standard sizes: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, Envelope DL, Envelope No.10 (COM10), Envelope C5, and Envelope B5 • Custom paper sizes: 100.0 to 215.9 mm wide and 148.0 to 355.6 mm long
	Drawer 2 (Optional)	
	Multi-purpose tray	• Standard sizes: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Statement, Foolscap, Envelope DL, Envelope No.10 (COM10), Envelope C5, Envelope B5, Envelope Monarch, and Index Card • Custom paper sizes: 76.2 to 215.9 mm wide and 127.0 to 355.6 mm long

Paper capacity	Drawer 1	Approx. 250 sheets
	Drawer 2 (Optional)	
	Multi-purpose tray	Approx. 50 sheets
Automatic 2-sided printing		A4, B5, Legal, Letter, Executive, and Foolscap
Paper output method		Face-down
Output tray capacity		Approx. 125 sheets

Noise
(measured in accordance with ISO 7779, declared noise emission in accordance with ISO 9296)
		• LwAd (declared A-weighted sound power level (1 B = 10 dB))
		  • During standby: 4.3 B or less
		  • During operation: 6.7 B or less
		• LpAm (declared A-weighted sound pressure level (bystander position))
		  • During standby: Approx. 24 dB
		  • During operation: Approx. 52 dB

Operating environment (Printer unit only)		• Operating environment
		  • Temperature range: 10 to 30 °C (50 to 86 °F)
		  • Humidity range: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)

Host interface	USB interface	Hi-Speed USB/USB
	Network interface	Shared 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX (RJ-45) Full duplex/Half duplex
User interface		Nine LED indicators one operation key
Power supply		220 to 240 V (±10%), 50/60 Hz (±2 Hz)
Power consumption (at 20 °C (68 °F))		• Maximum: 1,170 W or less • Average during operation: 430 W or less • Average during standby: Approx. 20 W • Average during sleep mode: Approx. 3.2 W † Even if the power of the printer is turned OFF, power is consumed only slightly while the power plug is inserted into the AC power outlet. To cut the power consumption completely, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
Consumables	Toner Cartridges	• Canon Cartridge 718 Black[*5] • Canon Cartridge 718 Yellow[*5] • Canon Cartridge 718 Magenta[*5]

		• Canon Cartridge 718 Cyan[*5]
Weight	Printer unit and included parts	• Printer unit (excluding toner cartridges): Approx. 22.3 kg • Toner cartridge (each): Approx. 0.7 kg
	Consumables and optional accessories	• Toner cartridge (each)[*6]: Approx. 0.7 kg • Paper Feeder Unit PF-701 (including the drawer): Approx. 4.0 kg

*1 The print speed may slow depending on the paper settings for the size, type, and number of copies.

*2 If the printer is used continuously for an extended period of time, the internal temperature of the printer may increase, activating a safety mechanism and pausing printing temporarily.

*3 May vary depending on the usage conditions, such as the availability of the optional accessories and installation environment.

*4 May vary depending on the output environment.

*5 The average yield of the toner cartridges is as follows.

- Replacement toner cartridges
  - Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 3,400 pages
  - Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 2,900 pages
- Toner cartridges included with this printer
  - Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 1,200 pages
  - Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 1,400 pages

The average yield is on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19798"* when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

* "ISO/IEC 19798" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for color printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).

*6 Weight of genuine Canon toner cartridges (Black, Yellow, Magenta, and Cyan)

- Canon Cartridge 718 Black
- Canon Cartridge 718 Yellow
- Canon Cartridge 718 Magenta
- Canon Cartridge 718 Cyan

Software Specifications

Printing software		Canon Advanced Printing Technology (CAPT) software
Printable area		Data can be printed with a margin of 5.0 mm. (10 mm for envelopes)[*1]
	Supported protocol	TCP/IP

Network board	TCP/IP	Frame type: Ethernet II
	Printing software	Windows Standard TCP/IP Port (Port 9100)*2

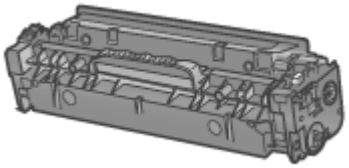
*1 When printing data in the entire printable area of an envelope, you may not be able to obtain the optimum print quality.
It is recommended that you configure the document to print the data smaller than the printable area.

*2 This printer supports Raw only. It does not support LPR.

[D-06] Consumables

The following consumables are provided for this printer. Purchase them at your local authorized Canon dealer.
Use the following table as rough guides to replace consumables. However, you may need the replacement earlier than the described lifetimes depending on the printer installation environment or paper size.

Consumables	Replacement Timing	Use

Toner Cartridges
 
	Canon Cartridge 718 Black
	Canon Cartridge 718 Yellow
	Canon Cartridge 718 Magenta
	Canon Cartridge 718 Cyan
	
	Average yield of the toner cartridges
	• Replacement toner cartridges
	  • Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 3,400 pages
	  • Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 2,900 pages
	• Toner cartridges included with this printer
	  • Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 1,200 pages
	  • Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 1,400 pages
	
	The average yield is on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19798"* when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.
	
	* "ISO/IEC 19798" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for color printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).
		There are four types of cartridges. Each cartridge consists of one color toner.
		"Replacing Toner Cartridges"

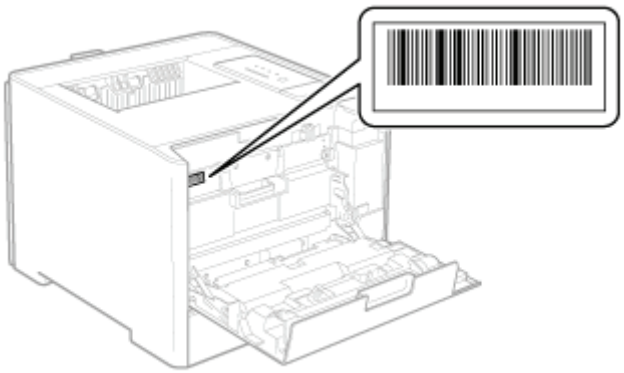
NOTE

Toner and Toner Cartridge Availability
Toner cartridge for this machine will be available for at least seven (7) years (or any such longer period as required by applicable laws) after production of this machine model has been discontinued.

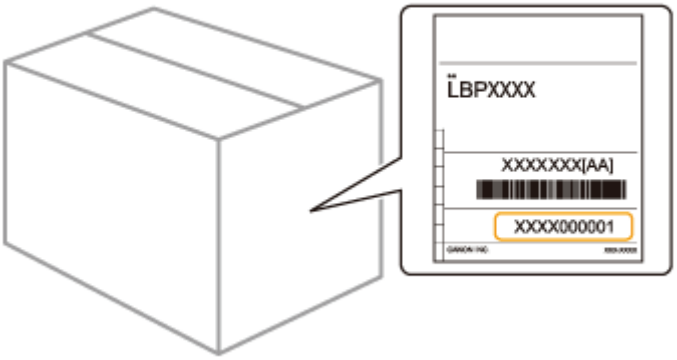
[D-07] Location of the Serial Number

The serial number for this printer can be found at the location shown in the following figure.

Inside of the Printer Unit



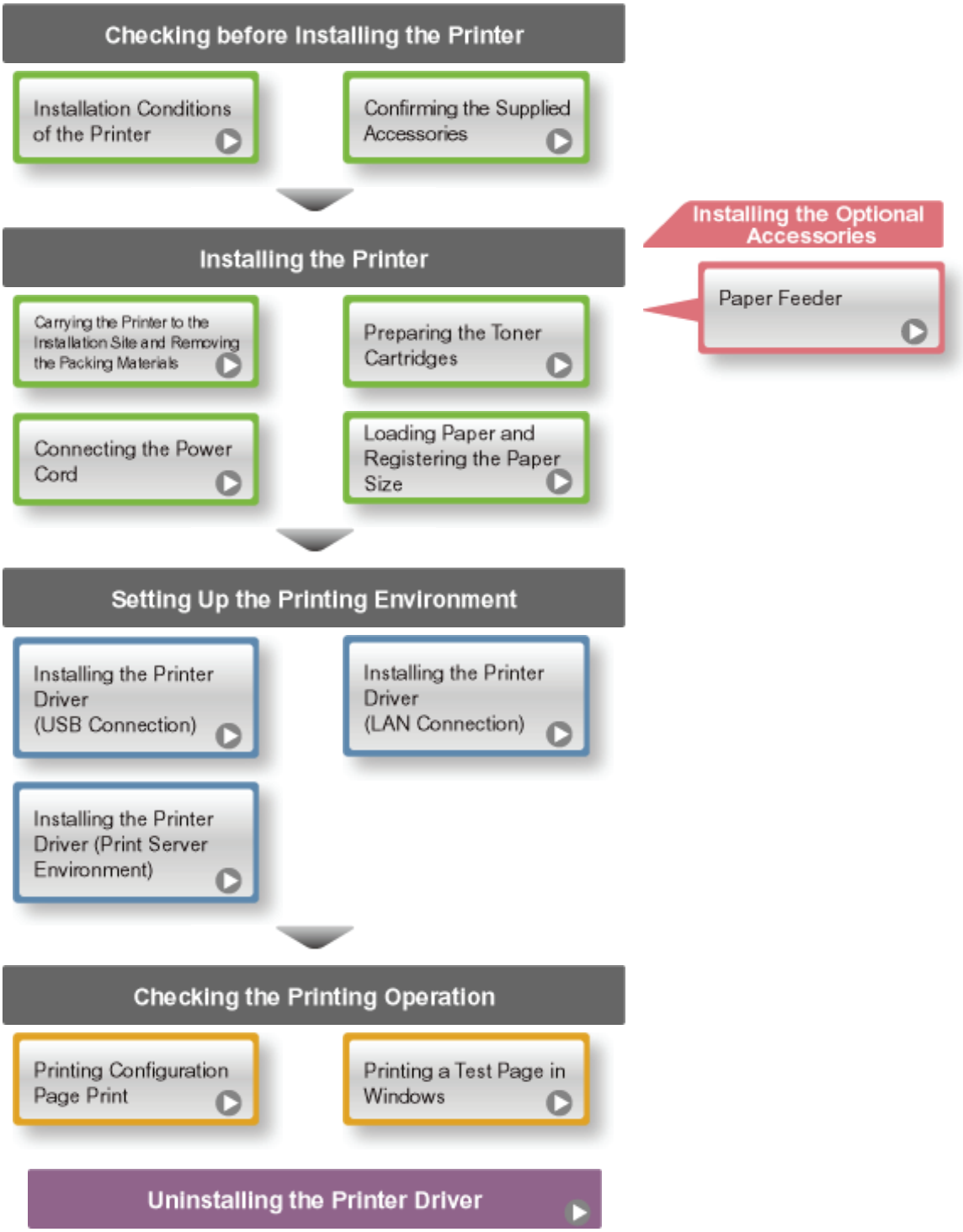
Outside View of the Packaging Box



IMPORTANT

The serial number is required for receiving maintenance service.
The labels on which the serial number is indicated are required for printer service or maintenance. Do not remove them.

[E] Printer Installation and Software Installation



[E-02] Installation Conditions of the Printer

In order to use this printer in a safe and trouble-free manner, install the printer in a place that fulfills the following conditions.

- Temperature and Humidity Conditions
- Power Supply Requirements
- Installation Requirements
- Installation Space

IMPORTANT

Important Safety Instructions
Before installing the printer, be sure to read "Important Safety Instructions".

Temperature and Humidity Conditions

- **Temperature range: 10 to 30 °C (50 to 86 °F)**
- **Humidity range: 20 to 80 % RH (no condensation)**

IMPORTANT

Protecting the printer from condensation

- To prevent condensation from forming inside the printer in the following cases, let the printer adjust to the ambient temperature and humidity for at least two hours before use.
  - When the room where the printer is installed is heated rapidly
  - When the printer is moved from a cool or dry location to a hot or humid location
- If water droplets (condensation) form inside the printer, this can result in paper jams or poor print quality.

When using an ultrasonic humidifier
When you are using an ultrasonic humidifier, it is therefore recommended that you use purified water or other water that is free of impurities.
If you use tap water or well water, impurities in the water will be dispersed through the air. This can be trapped inside the printer, causing degradation in print quality.

Power Supply Requirements

- **220 to 240 V (±10%), 50/60 Hz (±2 Hz)**

IMPORTANT

Precautions when connecting the power cord

- Use an AC power outlet exclusively for the printer. Do not use the other sockets of the AC power outlet.
- Do not plug the power plug into the auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- Do not use the same AC power outlet for both the printer and any of the following equipment.
  - Copy machine
  - Air conditioner
  - Shredder
  - Equipment that consumes a large amount of electricity
  - Equipment that generates electrical noise

Miscellaneous precautions

- The following is the maximum power consumption of the printer.
  - 1,170 W or less for the 220 to 240 V model
- Electrical noise or a dramatic drop in mains voltage may cause the printer or computer to operate incorrectly or lose data.

Installation Requirements

- **A location with sufficient space**
- **A location with good ventilation**
- **A location with a flat, even surface**
- **A location able to fully support the weight of the printer**

WARNING

Do not install the printer in a location near alcohol, paint thinner, or other flammable substances.
If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, it may result in a fire or electrical shock.

CAUTION

Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

- A damp or dusty location
- A location exposed to smoke and steam, such as near a cookery or humidifier
- A location exposed to rain or snow

- A location near a water faucet or water
- A location exposed to direct sunlight
- A location subject to high temperatures
- A location near open flames

Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may cause the printer to fall or tip over, resulting in personal injury.

- Unstable surface
- A location subject to excessive vibrations

IMPORTANT

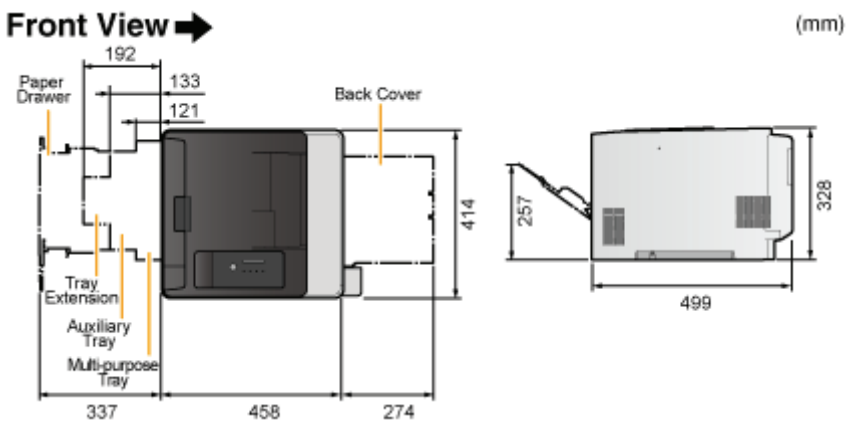
Do not install the printer in the following locations, as this may result in damage to the printer.

- A location subject to dramatic changes in temperature or humidity
- A location subject to condensation
- A poorly ventilated location
  (If you use the printer for a long time or to perform a large amount of printing in a poorly ventilated room, the ozone or other odors generated by the printer may create an uncomfortable working environment. In addition, chemical particles are dispersed during printing; therefore, it is important to provide adequate ventilation.)
- A location near equipment that generates magnetic or electromagnetic waves
- A laboratory or location where chemical reactions occur
- A location exposed to salt air, corrosive gases, or toxic gases
- A location, such as on a carpet or mat, that may warp from the weight of the printer or where the printer is liable to sink

Installation Space

Required installation space

† Refer to the following dimensions of each part and ensure the installation space.



[E-03] Confirming the Supplied Accessories

- Confirming the Contents of the Box
- CD-ROM Setup

Confirming the Contents of the Box

Make sure that all the following items are contained in the box before installing the printer.
If an item is missing or damaged, please contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

☐ Printer
The following parts are already installed.
-Paper Drawer
-Toner Cartridges

☐ Power Cord
(The form of the supplied power cord may differ from the one in the above illustration.)

☐ CD-ROMs: " User Software"
The following are included.
-Printer Driver
-e-Manual
-NetSpot Device Installer
-Auto Shutdown Tool

☐ Quick Setup Guide

☐ Ferrite core

☐ CD-ROM: "Multi-lingual Starter Guide"
- Getting Started Guide
(Arabic, Bulgarian, Croatian, Czech, Estonian, Greek, Hungarian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Persian, Portuguese, Romanian, Slovakian, Slovenian, Turkish, Ukrainian)

NOTE

This printer includes two "User Software" CD-ROMs.
You can use either CD-ROM.

About the toner cartridges included with this printer

- The average yield of the included toner cartridges is as follows.
  - Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 1,200 pages

- Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 1,400 pages

The average yield is on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19798"* when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

* "ISO/IEC 19798" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for color printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).

- The included toner cartridges differ from replacement toner cartridges.

For purchasing replacement toner cartridges, see "When a Message Appears".

About interface cables

- This printer does not come with an interface cable.
- Have an appropriate one available for the computer you are using or the connecting method.
- Use a USB cable with the following symbol.

CD-ROM Setup

When the supplied CD-ROM is inserted into the CD-ROM drive, the following CD-ROM Setup appears automatically. Operations such as software installation can be performed from the CD-ROM Setup.

Easy Installation

Installs the printer driver and the e-Manual at the same time.

Custom Installation

Allows you to install the printer driver only or the e-Manual only.

Additional Software Programs

Allows you to start the following software program.

• NetSpot Device Installer
"NetSpot Device Installer"
• Manual Uninstaller
"Uninstalling the e-Manual"
• Auto Shutdown Tool
"Setting the Energy-saving Mode"

Display Manuals

Allows you to view the HTML e-Manual.
You can click the [ ] button next to [e-Manual] to display the e-Manual.

Exit

Closes CD-ROM Setup.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear
Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

[E-04] Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing the Packing Materials

Step 1: Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site
Step 2: Removing the Packing Materials of the Printer

CAUTION

Unpack the printer unit in a location with sufficient space.
Be sure to unpack the printer in a location with sufficient space.

IMPORTANT

When installing the optional paper feeder
Install the paper feeder before taking the printer out of the box.
For details on installing the paper feeder, see "Paper Feeder".

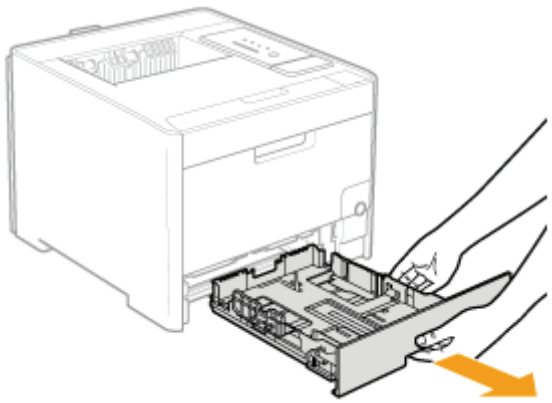
Store the removed packing materials.
They are required when transporting the printer for relocation or maintenance.

NOTE

About the packing materials
The packing materials may be changed in form or placement, or may be added or removed without notice.

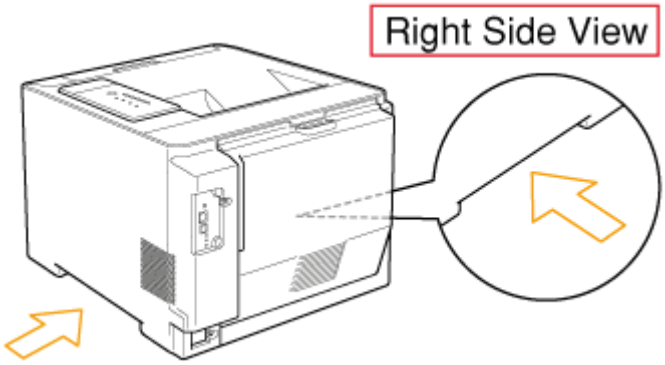
Step 1: Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site

1. **Pull out the drawer.**



2. **Carry the printer to the installation site.**

Carry the printer with two or more people by holding the lift handles on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.

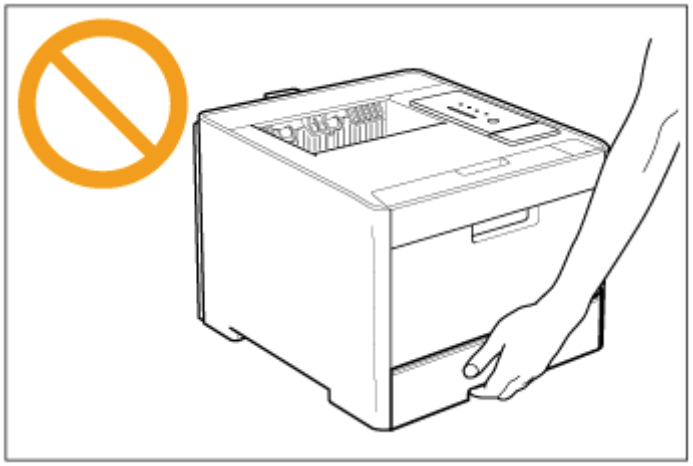


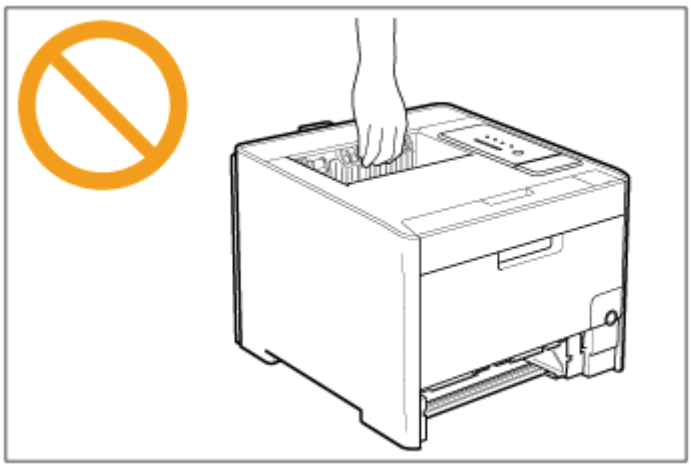
CAUTION

Be sure to take the printer out of the plastic bag
Do not place the printer in the plastic bag when carrying it. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.

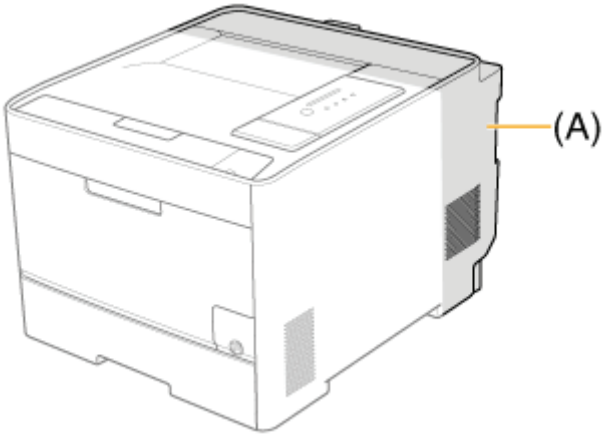
Carry the printer with two or more people.
This printer weighs approximately 25.1 kg. Please be careful not to hurt your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.

Be sure to hold the lift handles.
Do not hold the printer by the front portion, output area, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.





Pay attention to the balance.
The rear portion (A) of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to become off-balance when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.



3. **Put the printer down at the installation site.**

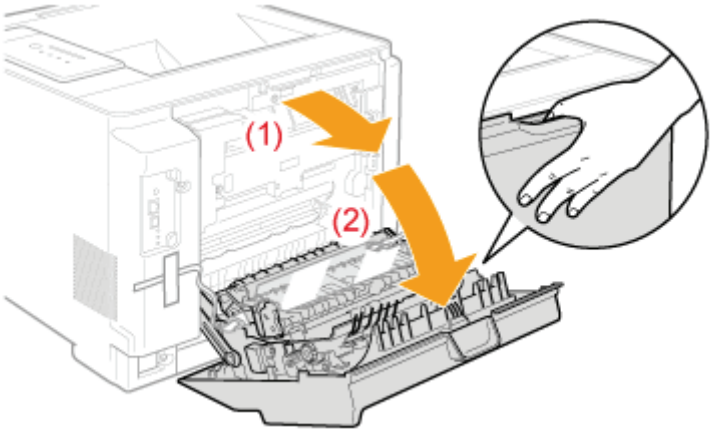
⚠CAUTION

Put the printer down slowly and carefully.
Be careful not to hurt your hands or fingers.

Step 2: Removing the Packing Materials of the Printer

Remove all the orange tape if it is attached to the printer when performing the following procedure.

1. **Open the rear cover.**
Open it completely.



IMPORTANT

If a loud noise occurs when you open the rear cover

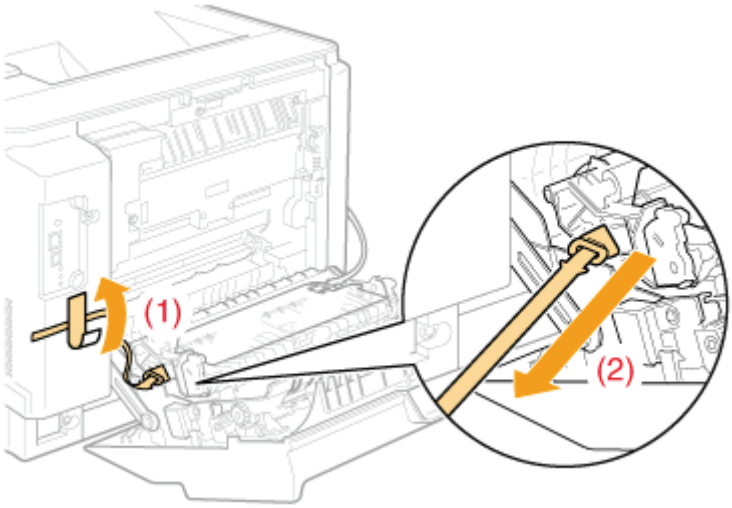
If the packing materials inside the printer come off when you open the rear cover, a loud noise occurs. However, this is not a printer malfunction. Proceed to the following procedure.

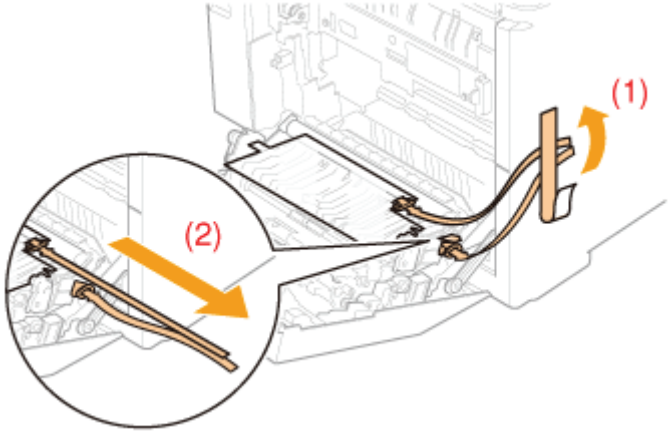
---

2. Remove the two packing materials with tape.

(1) Remove the tape.

(2) Remove the packing materials with tape gently and firmly in the direction of the arrow.





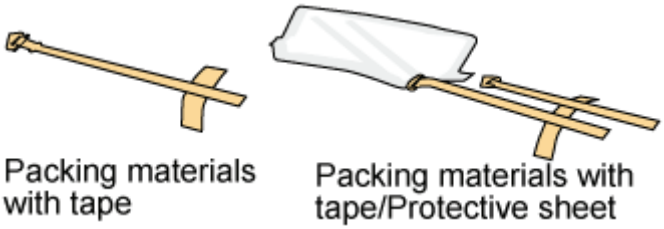
IMPORTANT

If a loud noise occurs when you remove the packing materials with tape

A loud noise occurs when you remove the packing materials with tape. However, this is not a printer malfunction.

Remove the packing materials completely.

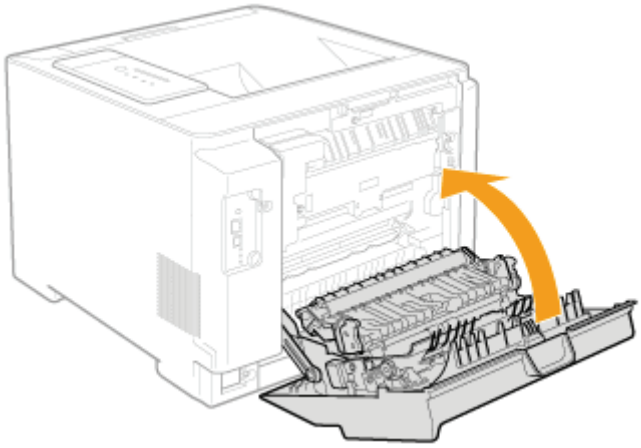
Make sure that the following packing materials are completely removed.



---

3. **Close the rear cover.**

Close it securely.



[E-05] Preparing the Toner Cartridges

Before using the printer, pull out the sealing tape of the toner cartridges installed in the printer.

- Precautions when Preparing the Toner Cartridges
- Preparing the Toner Cartridges

Precautions when Preparing the Toner Cartridges

CAUTION

Precautions if you get toner on your hands or clothing
If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.
Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains.

IMPORTANT

About disposal of the removed packing materials
Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges
Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.

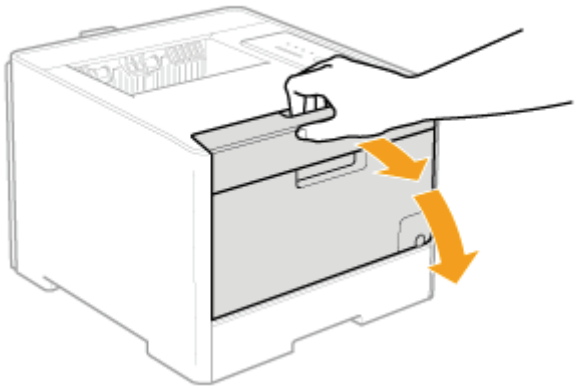
For more information, see **http://www.canon.com/counterfeit**.

NOTE

Handling toner cartridges
"Handling Toner Cartridges"

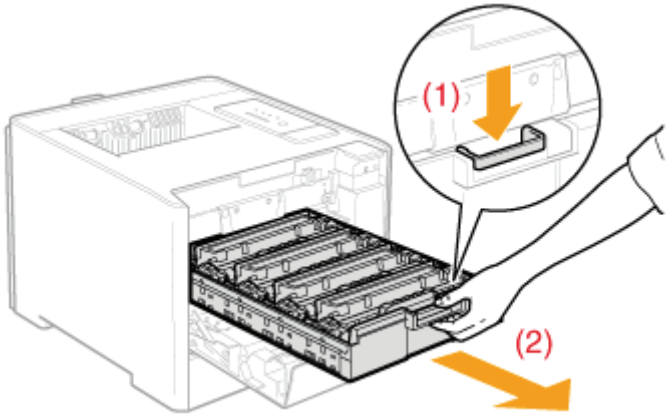
Preparing the Toner Cartridges

1. **Gently open the front cover.**



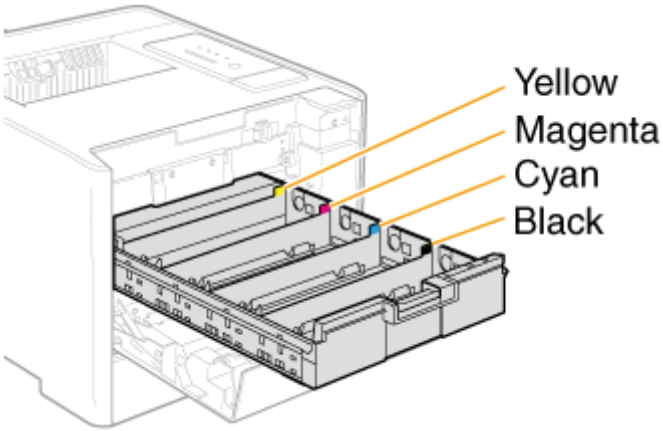
2. Pull out the toner cartridge tray.

(1) Press the lever on the handle.
(2) Pull out the toner cartridge tray until it stops.



NOTE

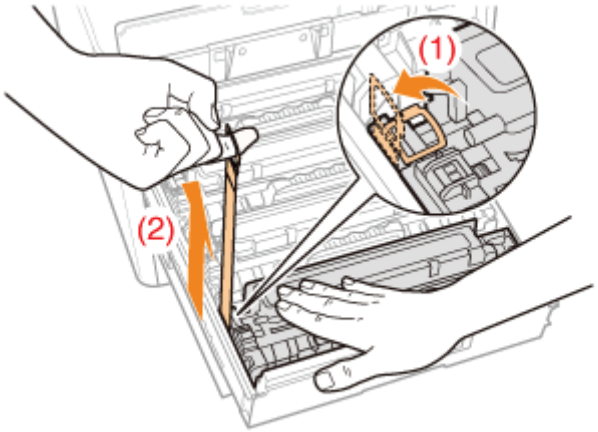
Order of the toner cartridges



3. Hold down the toner cartridge as shown in the figure.

4. Pull out the sealing tape.

(1) While holding the toner cartridge, hook your finger into the tab to remove it.
(2) Pull out the sealing tape (approx. 50 cm long) straight in the direction of the arrow gently.



CAUTION

Be careful not to allow the toner to scatter.
Do not pull out the sealing tape forcefully or stop at midpoint, as this may cause toner to spill out.

If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

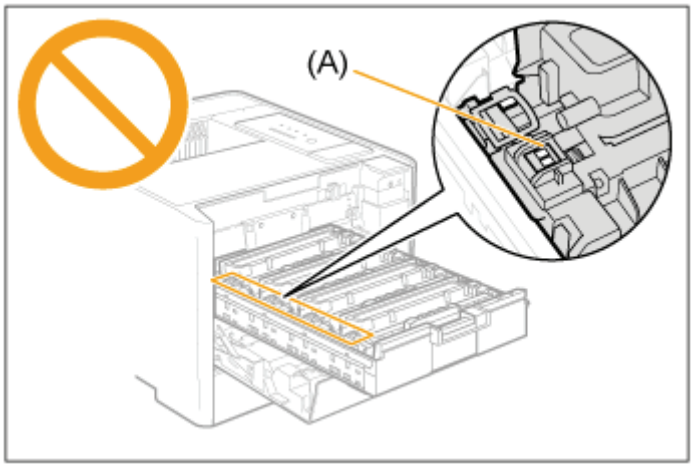
IMPORTANT

Pull the sealing tape completely out of the toner cartridge.

- Do not pull out the sealing tape in the direction other than the arrow. If the tape is severed, this may become difficult to pull out completely.
- If the sealing tape stops at midpoint, pull it out of the toner cartridge completely.
- If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality.

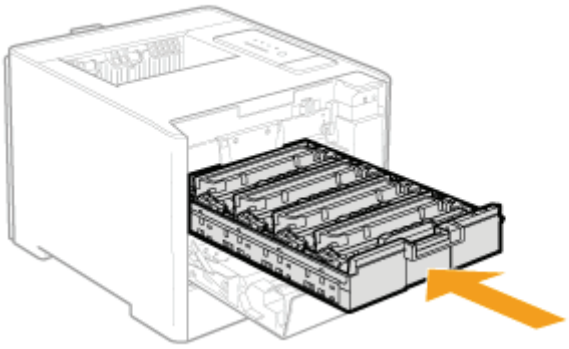
Do not touch the toner cartridge memory (A).

This may result in damage to the cartridge.

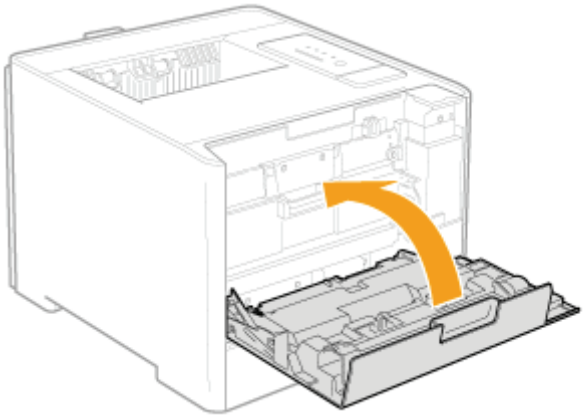


5. **Pull out the sealing tapes of all the toner cartridges.**
Make sure that all four sealing tapes have been removed.

6. **Close the toner cartridge tray.**
Push it into the printer firmly.



7. **Gently close the front cover.**



CAUTION

Precautions when closing the front cover
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

IMPORTANT

If you cannot close the front cover
Make sure that the toner cartridge tray is closed.
Do not try to forcefully close the front cover, as this may damage the printer.

Do not leave the front cover open for a long time with the toner cartridges installed.
This may result in deterioration in print quality.

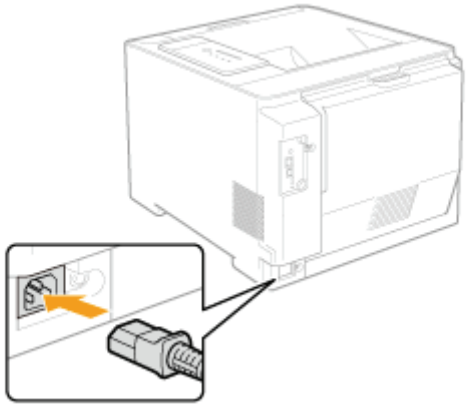
[E-06] Connecting the Power Cord

IMPORTANT

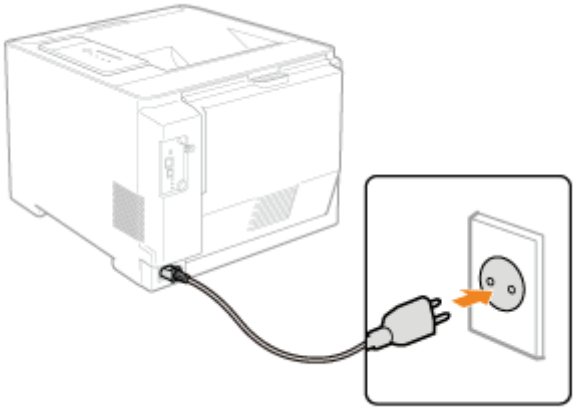
Precautions when connecting the power cord

- Do not plug the power plug of the printer into an auxiliary outlet on a computer.
- One AC power outlet should be used exclusively for the printer.
- Do not connect this printer to an uninterruptible power source.
  This may cause printer malfunction or breakdown in the event of a power failure.

1. **Plug the supplied power cord into the power socket firmly.**



2. **Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.**



NOTE

The form of the supplied power cord

The form of the supplied power cord may differ from the one in the above illustration.

[E-07] Loading Paper and Registering the Paper Size

This section describes only the procedure for loading standard size paper (other than Index Cards and envelopes) in the paper drawer and multi-purpose tray.

- Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Paper Drawer
- Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Multi-purpose Tray

See the following items when loading non-standard size paper.

- "Loading Index Cards"
- "Loading Envelopes"
- "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Paper Drawer

The following standard size paper (other than Index Cards and envelopes) can be loaded in the paper drawer.

Paper Type	Paper Size
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Heavy paper (86 to 163 g/m^2)	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) B5 (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm) A5 (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm) Legal (8.50 in. x 14.00 in.) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.) Executive (7.25 in. x 10.50 in.) Foolscap (8.50 in. x 13.00 in.) Statement (5.50 in. x 8.50 in.)
Label Coated paper	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.)

Step 1: Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer
Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper

IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

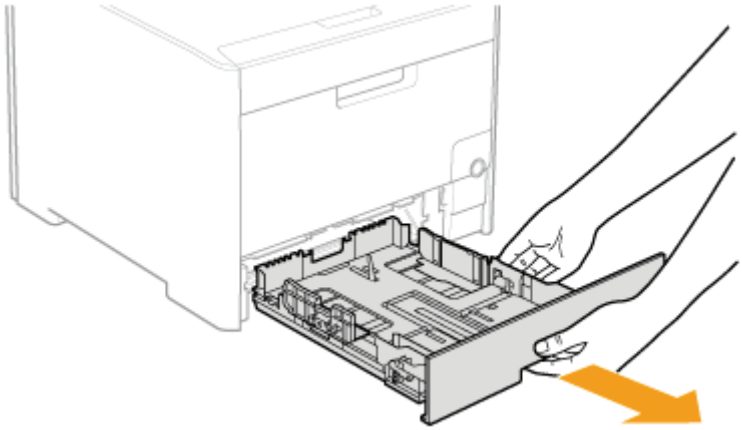
Handling the paper drawer
"Paper Source"

NOTE

How to load paper in Drawer 2 (optional paper feeder)
Load the paper in Drawer 2 in the same manner as you load the paper in Drawer 1.

Step 1: Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer

1. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



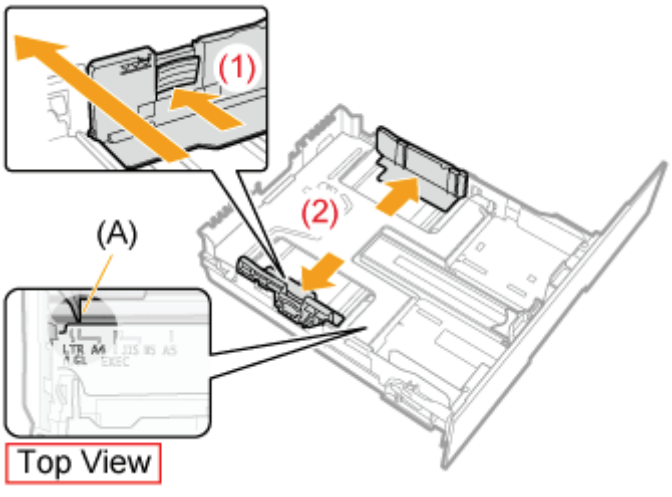
CAUTION

Be sure to remove the paper drawer.
If paper is loaded while the paper drawer is partially pulled out, the paper drawer may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.

2. **Slide the paper guides to the position of the size of the paper to be loaded.**

Slide the side paper guides.

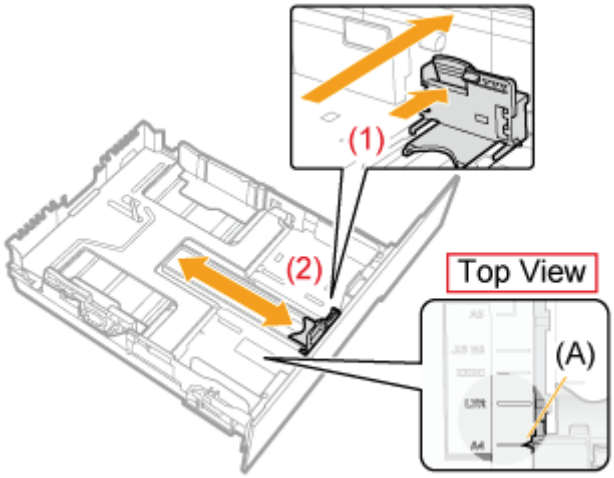
(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to the position of the size of the paper to be loaded.
- Align the position of (A) with the size mark of the paper to be loaded.
- The side paper guides move together.



Slide the paper guide at the front center.

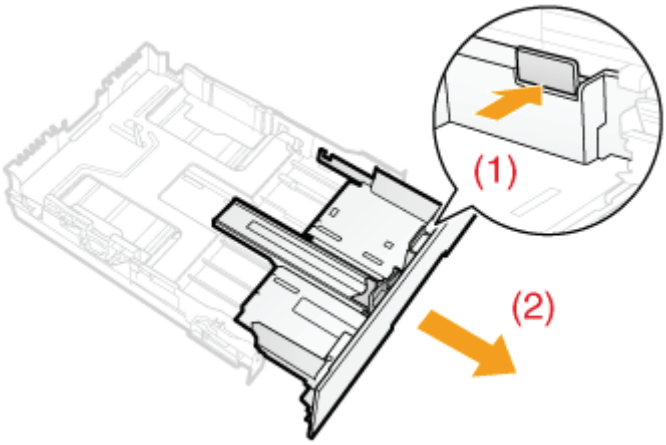
(1) Hold the lock release lever.

(2) Slide the paper guides to the position of the size of the paper to be loaded.
† Align the position of (A) with the size mark of the paper to be loaded.



Pull out the paper drawer before loading Legal size paper.

(1) Hold the lock release lever at the front right.
(2) Adjust the length of the paper drawer.

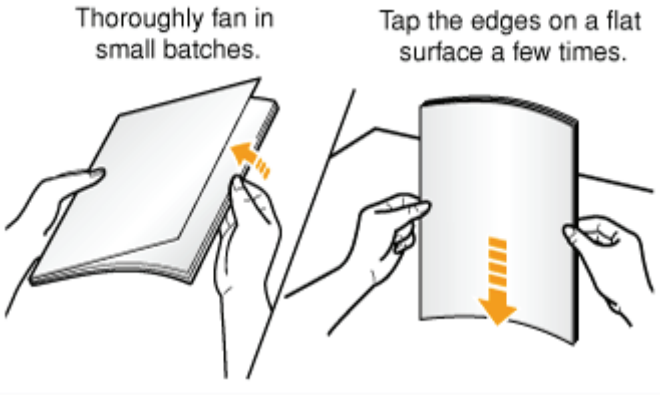


NOTE

Size abbreviation on the paper guides

Paper Size	Paper Guides
Legal	LGL
Letter	LTR
Executive	EXEC
B5	JIS B5

3. **When loading labels or coated paper, fan them a few sheets at a time, and then align the edges.**



CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

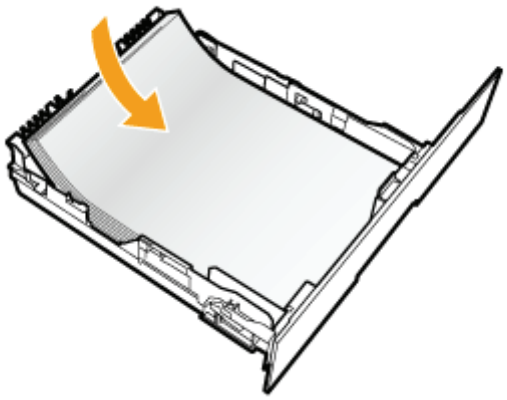
IMPORTANT

Be careful when handling labels or coated paper.

- If you are using labels or coated paper, fan them thoroughly and load them again. If they are not fanned enough, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once, causing paper jams.
- When fanning or aligning coated paper, try to hold the edges to avoid touching the printing surface.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of coated paper with fingerprints, dust, or oil. This may result in poor print quality.

---

4. **Load the paper so that the edges of the stacked paper are aligned with the front side of the paper drawer.**

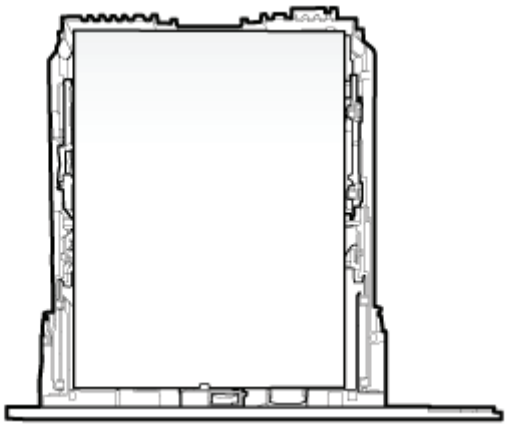


CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.



Be sure to check the position of the paper guides.
If the paper guide is set at a wrong position, this may result in misfeeds.

Paper drawer capacity

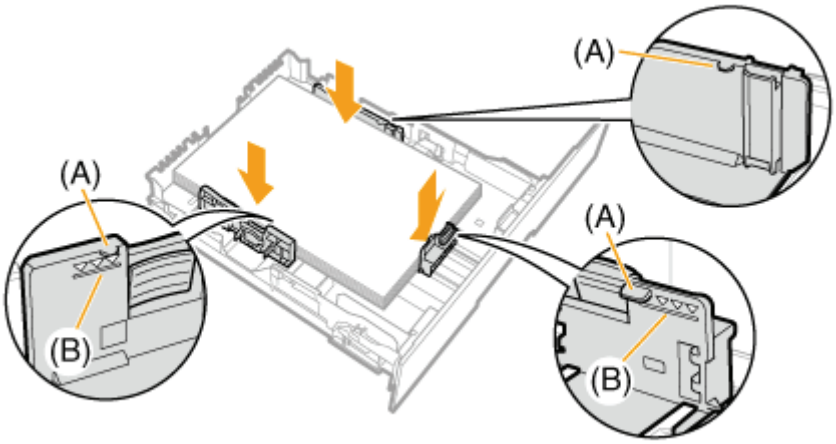
Paper Type	Paper Capacity
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 250 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 200 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 150 sheets
Label	Approx. 50 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 50 sheets

When using paper that has been poorly cut
If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

NOTE

When printing paper with a letterhead or logo
See "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

5. **Hold down the paper, then set it under the hooks (A) on the paper guides.**
Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).

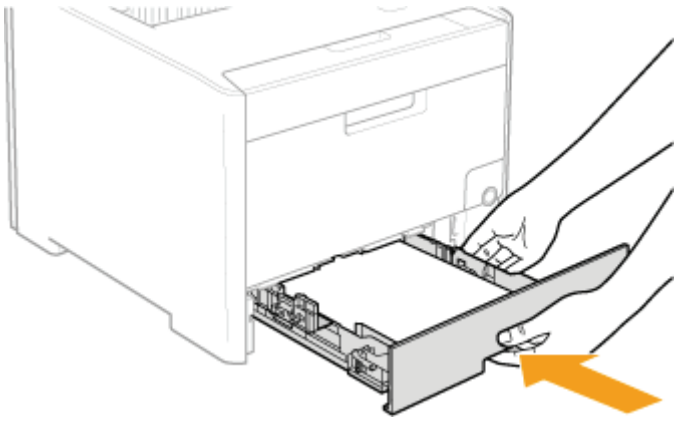


IMPORTANT

Do not load the paper stack which exceeds the load limit mark lines.
Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

---

6. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**
   Push it into the printer firmly.



CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

Step 2: Registering the Paper Size

This printer's paper drawer cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the loaded paper.
Install the printer driver, and then register the paper size using the following procedure.

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

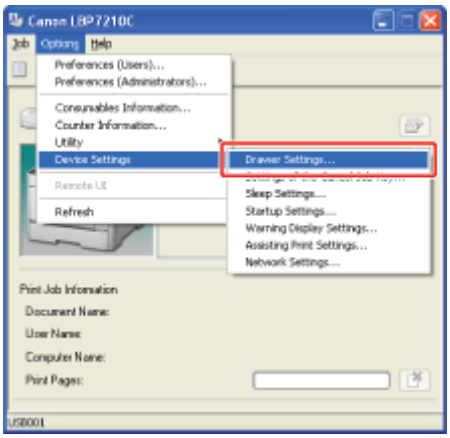
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].**



NOTE

When registering a paper size

As you cannot register a paper size while printing is in progress, make sure that the printer is idle before registering the paper size.

However, you can register a paper size while one of the following messages is displayed.

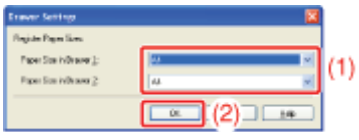
- <Specified Paper Different from Set Paper>
- <Out of Paper>

3. **Register the paper size.**

(1) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper drawer.

- Drawer 1: The paper drawer supplied with the printer unit
- Drawer 2: The paper drawer of the optional paper feeder

(2) Click [OK].



Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Multi-purpose Tray

The following standard size paper (other than Index Cards and envelopes) can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

Paper Type	Paper Size
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Heavy paper (86 to 176 g/m^2)	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) B5 (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm) A5 (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm) Legal (8.50 in. x 14.00 in.) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.) Executive (7.25 in. x 10.50 in.) Foolscap (8.50 in. x 13.00 in.) Statement (5.50 in. x 8.50 in.)
Transparency Label Coated paper	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.)

IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper

"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

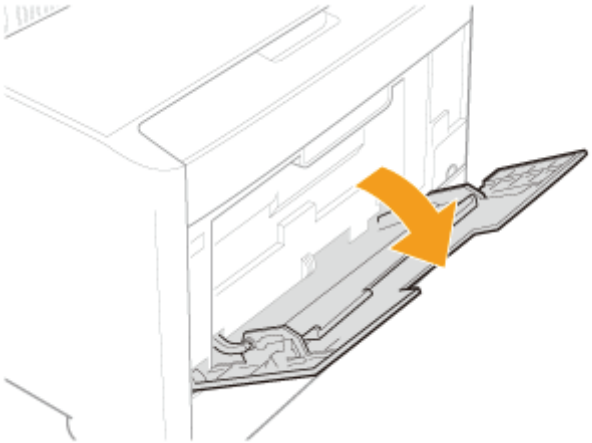
Handling the multi-purpose tray

"Paper Source"

---

1. **Open the multi-purpose tray.**

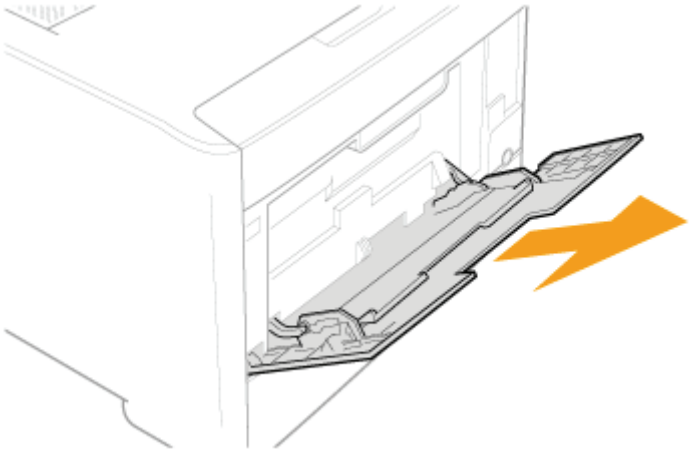
Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



IMPORTANT

Be sure to insert the paper drawer.
If the paper drawer is not inserted, you cannot print from the multi-purpose tray.

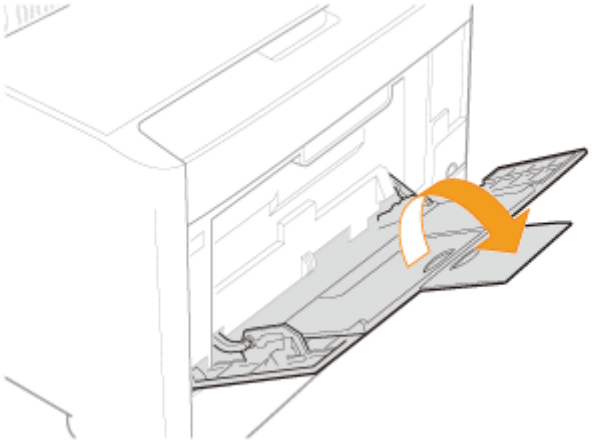
2. **Pull out the auxiliary tray.**



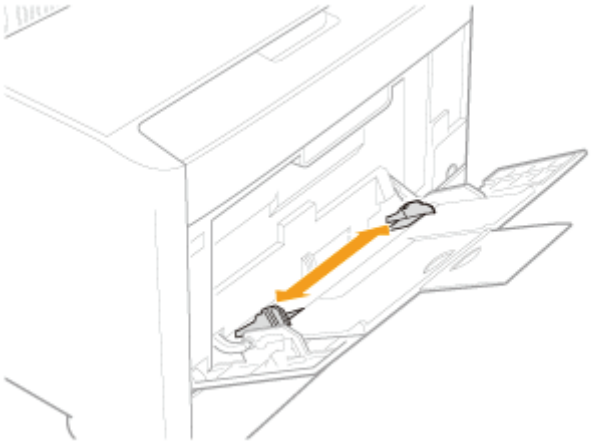
IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray.
Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

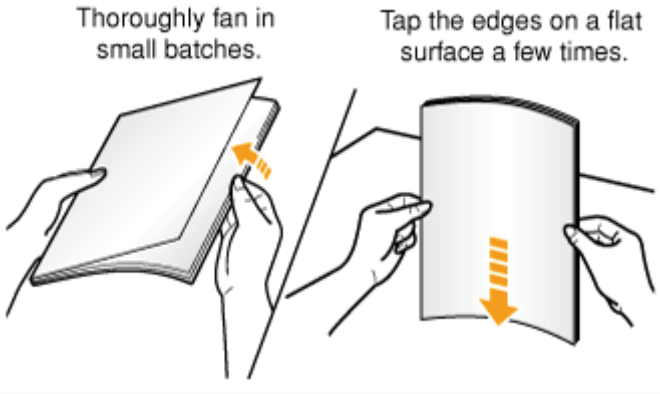
3. **When loading long-size paper such as A4 etc, open the tray extension.**



4. **Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.**



5. **When loading transparencies, labels, or coated paper, fan them a few sheets at a time, and then align the edges.**



CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

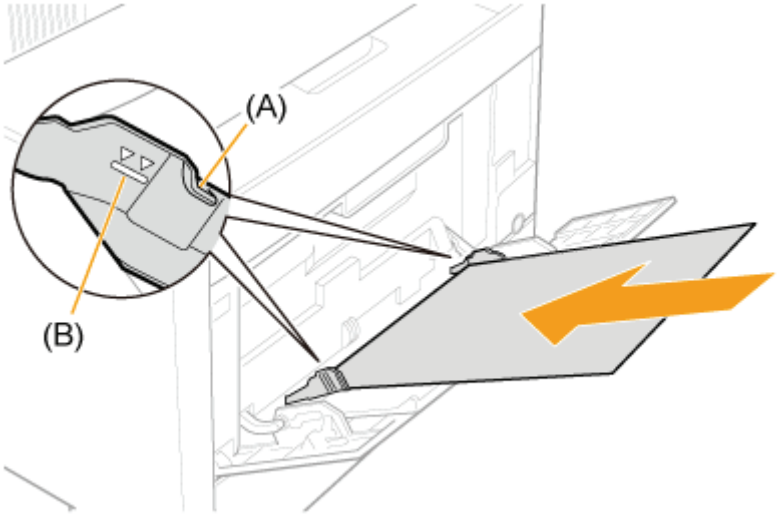
IMPORTANT

Be careful when handling transparencies, labels, or coated paper.

- Be sure to fan the transparencies, labels, or coated paper thoroughly before loading them. If they are not fanned enough, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once, causing paper jams.
- When fanning or aligning the transparencies or coated paper, try to hold the edges to avoid touching the printing surface.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of the transparencies or coated paper with fingerprints, dust, or oil. This may result in poor print quality.

6. **Gently load the paper stack under the load limit guides (A) until it touches the back of the tray.**

Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).

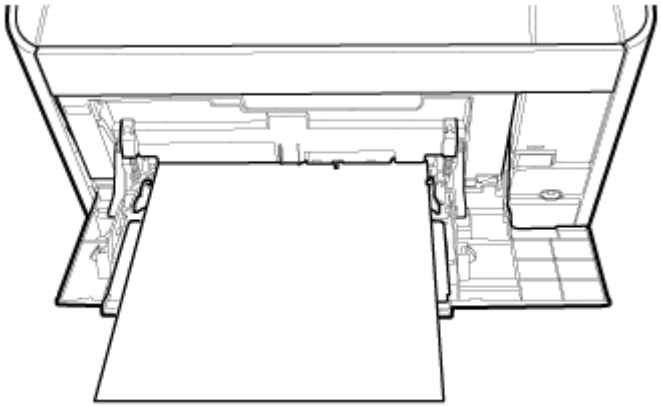


CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.



Multi-purpose tray capacity

Paper Type	Paper Capacity
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 50 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 30 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 20 sheets
Transparency (black-and-white printing only)	Approx. 20 sheets
Label	Approx. 20 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 20 sheets

Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

Precautions when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray

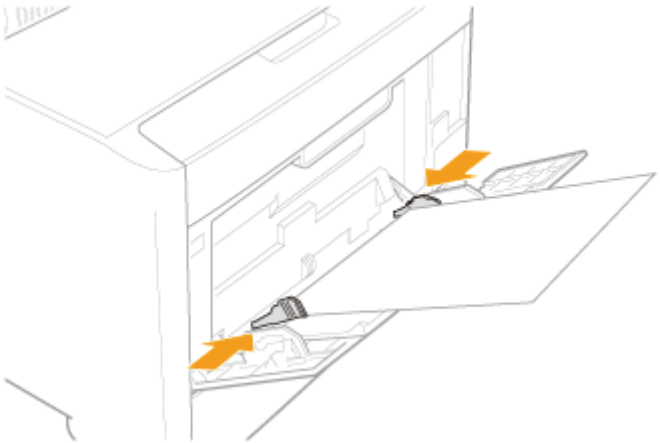
- Load the paper so that it is straight.
- If the rear edge of the paper stack is not properly aligned, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- If the paper is curled or folded at corners, flatten it before loading it in the printer.
- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

NOTE

When printing paper with a letterhead or logo
See "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

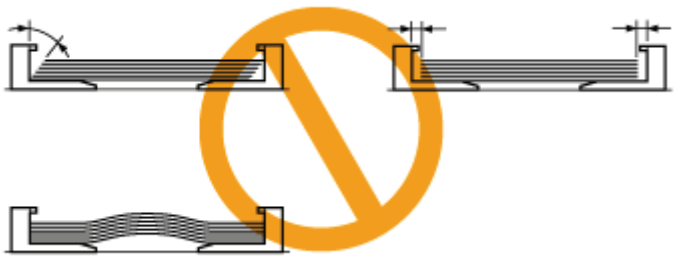
---

7. **Align the paper guides with the width of the paper.**



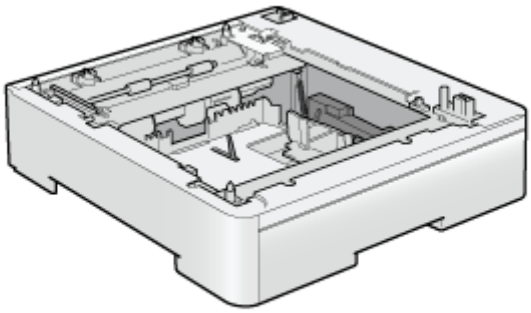
IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



[E-08] Paper Feeder

The paper feeder is to be installed at the bottom of the printer.



Paper Feeder Unit PF-701

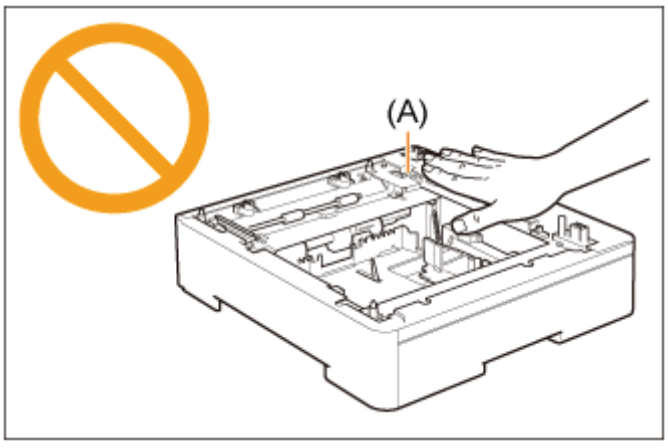
- Moving the Printer
- Removing the Packing Materials and Installing the Paper Feeder
- Specifying the Status of the Paper Feeder
- Loading Paper in the Paper Feeder and Registering the Paper Size
- Removing the Paper Feeder

⚠ WARNING

When installing the paper feeder
Be sure to turn the printer off, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer.
Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the connector (A) on the paper feeder.
This may result in damage to the printer or misfeeds.



When printing from Drawer 2 (paper feeder)
Make sure that Drawer 1 is set before printing from Drawer 2.

Moving the Printer

When installing the paper feeder in the printer after installing the printer, move the printer to an appropriate location temporarily using the following procedure.

⚠ WARNING

When moving the printer
Always turn off the power switch and unplug the power plug and interface cables.
Failure to do so can damage the cables or cords, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

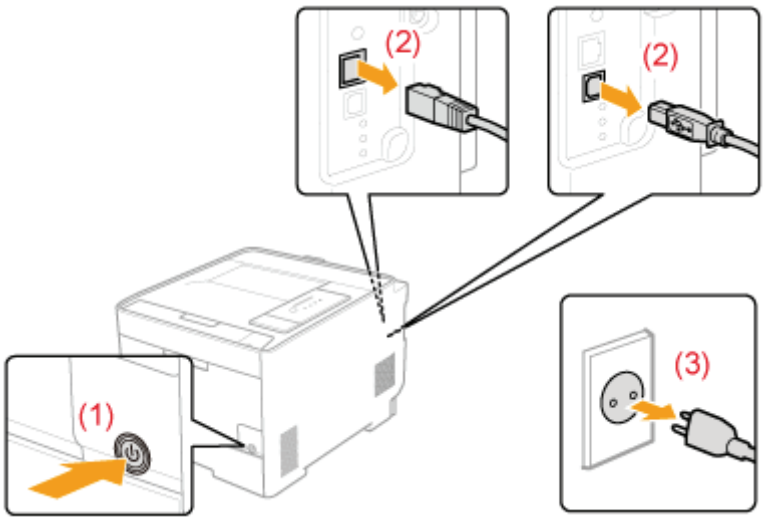
⚠ CAUTION

Do not carry the printer with the paper drawer installed.
If you do so, the paper drawer may drop, resulting in personal injury.

---

1. **Turn the printer off, then disconnect the cables from the printer.**

(1) Turn the printer off.
(2) If the interface cables are connected, turn the computer off, and then disconnect the interface cables from the printer.
(3) Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

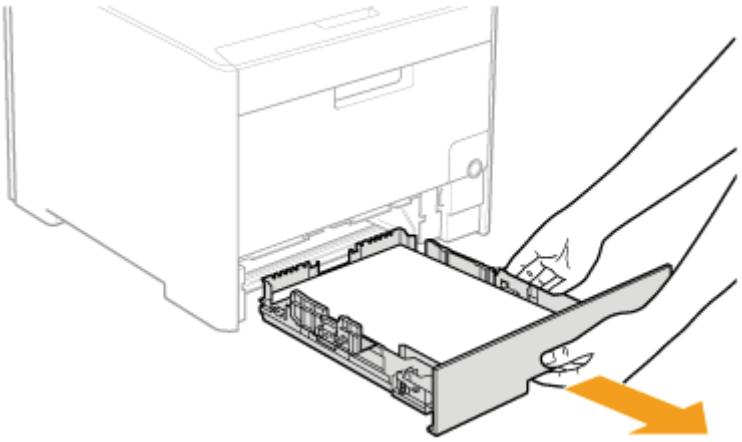


---

2. **Remove the power cord from the printer.**

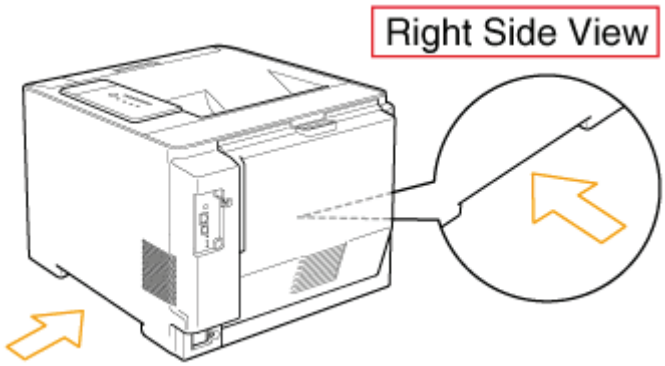
---

3. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



4. **Move the printer from the installation site.**

Carry the printer with two or more people by holding the lift handles on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.



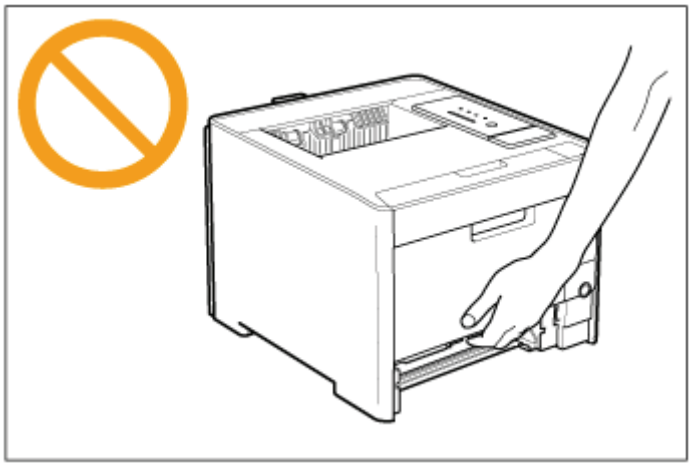
⚠CAUTION

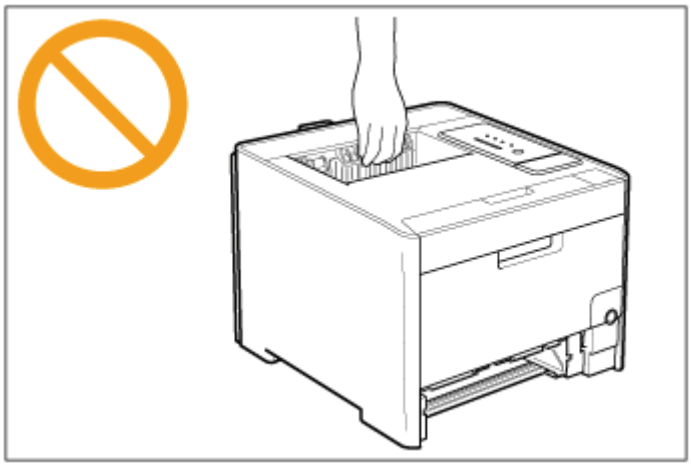
Carry the printer with two or more people.

This printer weighs approximately 25.1 kg. Please be careful not to hurt your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.

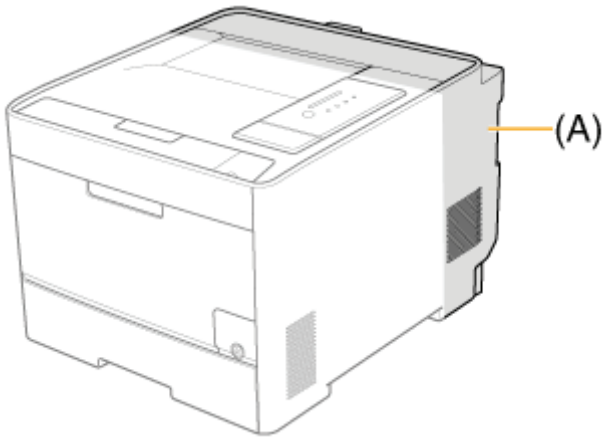
Be sure to hold the lift handles.

Do not hold the printer by the front portion, output area, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.





Pay attention to the balance.
The rear portion (A) of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to become off-balance when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.



IMPORTANT

Do not carry the printer with a cover or tray open.
Make sure that the front cover and multi-purpose tray are closed before carrying the printer.

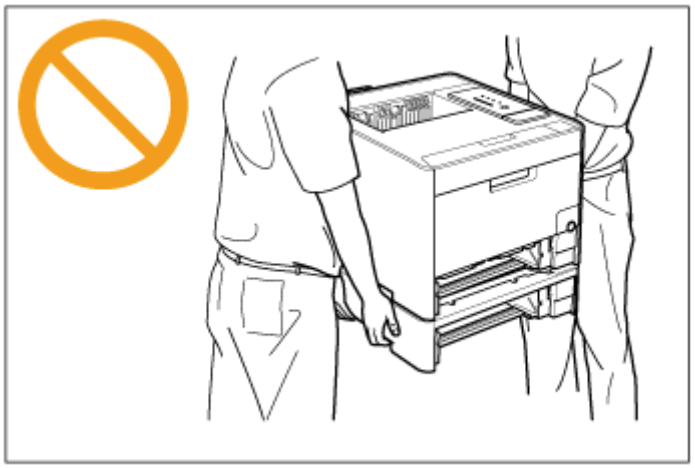
Removing the Packing Materials and Installing the Paper Feeder

CAUTION

Put the printer or paper feeder down slowly and carefully.
Be careful not to hurt your hands or fingers.

Do not carry the printer with the paper drawer installed.
If you do so, the paper drawer may drop, resulting in personal injury.

Do not carry the printer with the paper feeder installed.
If you do so, the paper feeder may drop resulting in personal injury.



IMPORTANT

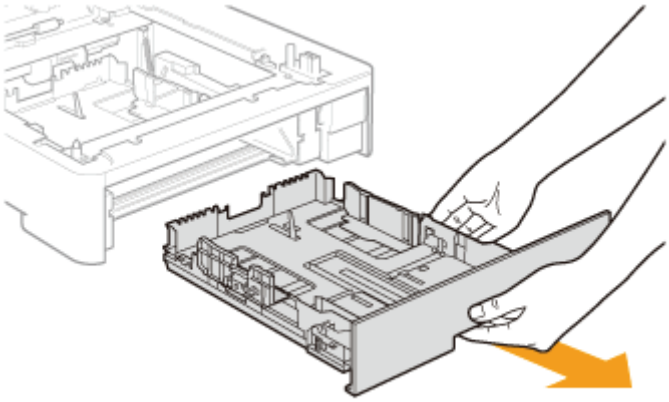
About disposal of the removed packing materials
Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.

About the packing materials
The packing materials may be changed in form or placement, or may be added or removed without notice.

Remove all the orange tape if it is attached to the paper feeder when performing the following procedure.

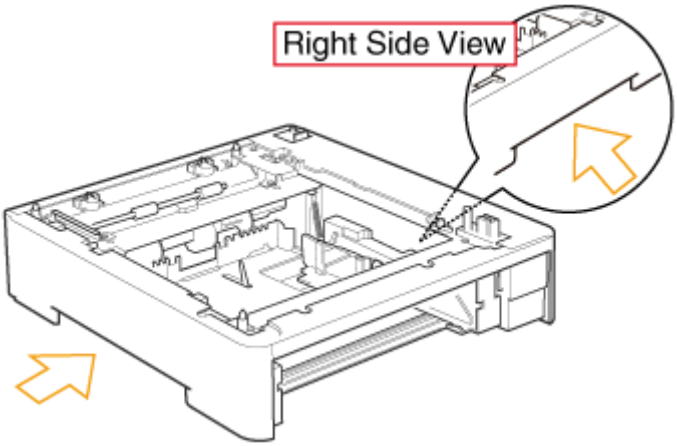
1. **Take the paper feeder out of the box.**

2. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



3. **Place the paper feeder at the installation site.**

When carrying the paper feeder, hold the lift handles on both sides with both hands as shown in the figure.

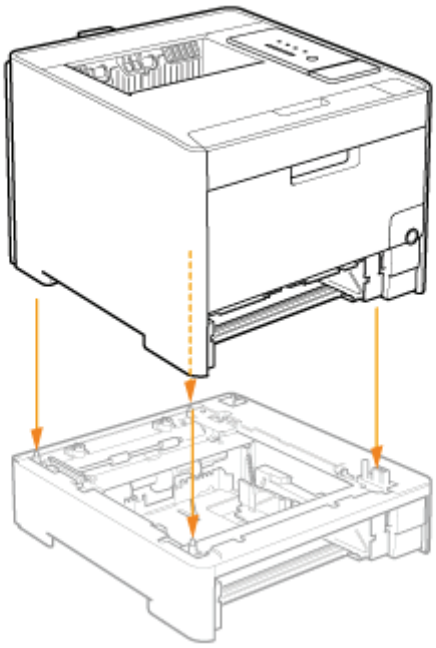


IMPORTANT

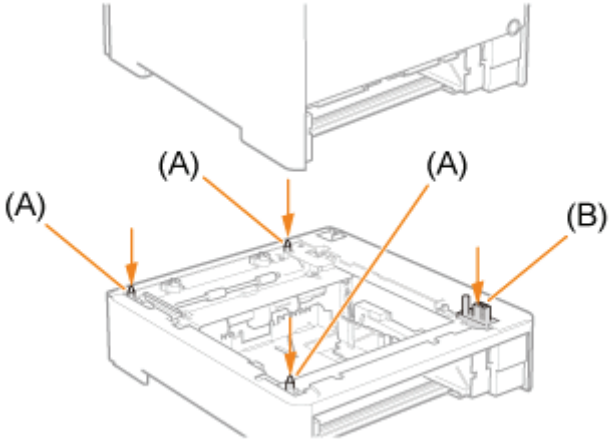
Precautions for the installation site

Do not install the paper feeder on a platform that may warp from the weight of the printer and optional accessories, or where the printer is liable to sink (such as a carpet or mat).

4. **Gently place the printer on the paper feeder so that each surface of the printer is flush with the front or side surfaces of the paper feeder.**



Also, match the positioning pins (A) and connector (B) when placing the printer.



IMPORTANT

If the printer cannot be placed on the paper feeder properly

If the printer cannot be placed on the paper feeder properly, lift the printer once, hold it horizontally, and place it again.

If you try to place the printer forcefully without lifting it, the connector and positioning pins may be broken.

5. Insert the paper drawers in the printer and paper feeder.

6. Connect the LAN cable to the printer as needed.

7. **Connect the power cord to the printer.**

8. **Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.**

9. **Connect the USB cable to the printer as needed.**

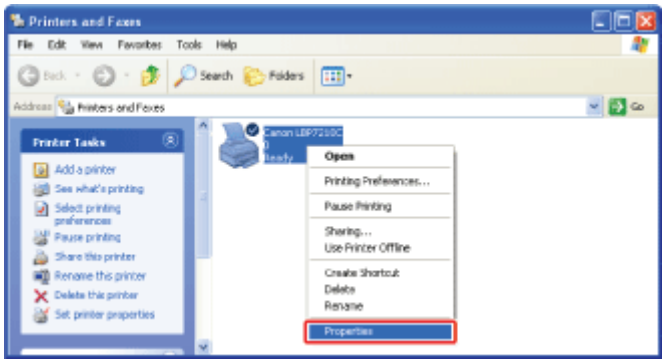
> **IMPORTANT**
>
> **When loading paper in the paper drawer for the first time after installing the paper feeder**
> Before loading paper, be sure to turn on the printer once.

Specifying the Status of the Paper Feeder

Specify the status of the paper feeder after installing it.

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

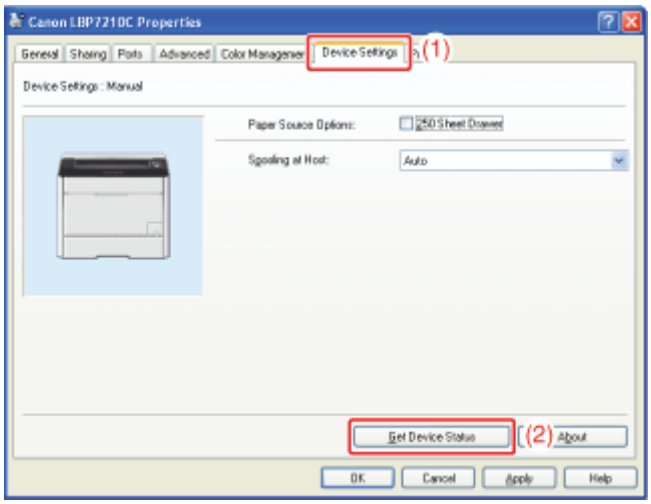
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**



---

3. Obtain the status of the paper feeder.

(1) Display the [Device Settings] sheet.
(2) Click [Get Device Status].



→ The status of the paper feeder is obtained automatically.

NOTE

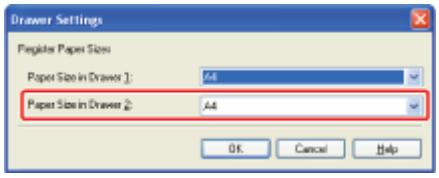
If the status of the paper feeder cannot be obtained automatically
Select the [250 Sheet Drawer] check box in [Paper Source Options].

Loading Paper in the Paper Feeder and Registering the Paper Size

Load paper in the paper drawer of the paper feeder (Drawer 2) in the same manner as you load paper in the paper drawer supplied with the printer unit (Drawer 1).
For details on the procedure for loading paper in the paper drawer, see the following procedures.

- "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"
- "Loading Envelopes"
- "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

† This printer's paper drawer cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the paper loaded in the paper drawer of the paper feeder (Drawer 2).



Removing the Paper Feeder

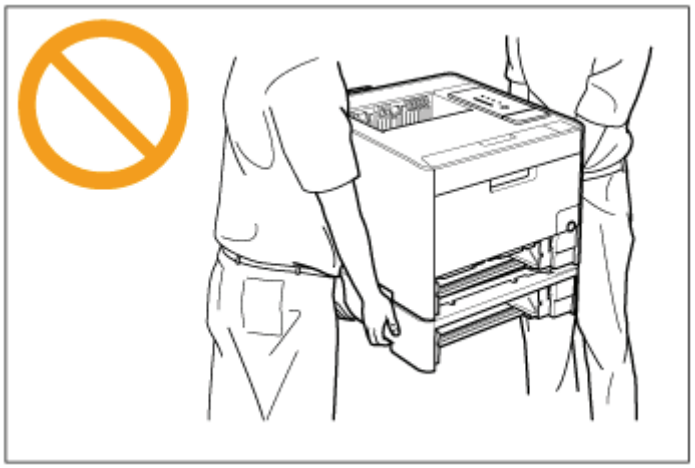
WARNING

When removing the paper feeder
Be sure to turn the printer off, unplug the power plug, and then disconnect all the interface cables and power cord from the printer.
Otherwise, the power cord or interface cables may be damaged, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

CAUTION

Do not carry the printer with the paper drawer installed.
If you do so, the paper drawer may drop, resulting in personal injury.

Do not carry the printer with the paper feeder installed.
If you do so, the paper feeder may drop resulting in personal injury.



IMPORTANT

When moving or servicing the printer
Remove the paper feeder and paper drawer.

1. **Turn the printer off.**

2. **If the interface cables are connected, turn the computer off, and then disconnect the interface cables from the printer.**

3. **Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.**

4. **Remove the power cord from the printer.**

5. **Pull out the paper drawers from the printer and paper feeder.**

6. **Lift the printer unit and remove it from the paper feeder.**

7. **Move the paper feeder.**

8. **Move back the printer to the installation site.**

9. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**

10. **Connect the LAN cable to the printer as needed.**

11. **Connect the power cord to the printer.**

12. **Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.**

---

13. **Connect the USB cable to the printer as needed.**

[E-09] Printer Driver System Requirements

The printer driver is software required for printing with this printer. Be sure to install the printer driver in the computer you are using.
The following system environment is required to use the printer driver.

Operating System

- Windows XP Professional or Home Edition
- Windows XP Professional x64 Edition
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions
- Windows Vista (32-bit or 64-bit version)
- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit or 64-bit version)
- Windows 7 (32-bit or 64-bit version)

† For details on the procedures, instructions, and so on for Windows 7, refer to those for Windows Vista.

† For details on the latest status of the supported operating systems and Service Pack, see the Canon Web site (http://www.canon.com/).

- Minimum System Requirements

	Windows XP and Server 2003	Windows Vista and Server 2008
CPU	300 MHz or more	CPU and RAM conforming to recommended system requirements for Windows Vista or Server 2008
Available memory (RAM)	128 MB or more	
Available hard disk space	The disk space displayed on the printer driver installation window	

- Recommended System Requirements

	Windows XP and Server 2003	Windows Vista and Server 2008
CPU	1.2 GHz or more	CPU and RAM conforming to recommended system requirements for Windows Vista or Server 2008
Available memory (RAM)	256 MB or more	

Interface

- When connecting with USB
  Hi-Speed USB/USB

- When connecting to a network
  Connector: 10BASE-T or 100BASE-TX
  Protocol: TCP/IP

NOTE

About available memory

The actual amount of available memory varies depending on the system configuration of your computer and the software currently in use.
In any of the above system environments, print quality is not guaranteed.

About unidirectional communication equipment

The printer performs bi-directional communication. Operation of the printer when connected via unidirectional communication equipment has not been tested, and as a result, Canon cannot guarantee printer operation if the printer is connected using unidirectional print servers, USB hubs or switching devices.

[E-10] Installing from CD-ROM Setup

This section describes the procedure for installing the printer driver from the supplied CD-ROM (CD-ROM Setup) on a computer connected to the printer with a USB cable.

Step 1: Connecting a USB Cable
Step 2: Installing the Printer Driver from CD-ROM
Step 3: After the Installation

IMPORTANT

If your hard disk does not have sufficient space to install the printer driver
A message indicating that your hard disk does not have sufficient space appears during installation.
Cancel the installation, free up space on your hard disk, and then reinstall the software.

Step 1: Connecting a USB Cable

WARNING

When the power plug is plugged into the AC power outlet
When plugging or unplugging a USB cable, do not touch the metal part of the connecter, as this may result in electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

Do not plug or unplug the USB cable while the printer or computer is on.
This may cause the printer to malfunction.

About unidirectional communication equipment
The printer performs bi-directional communication. Operation of the printer when connected via unidirectional communication equipment has not been tested, and as a result, Canon cannot guarantee printer operation if the printer is connected using unidirectional print servers, USB hubs or switching devices.

NOTE

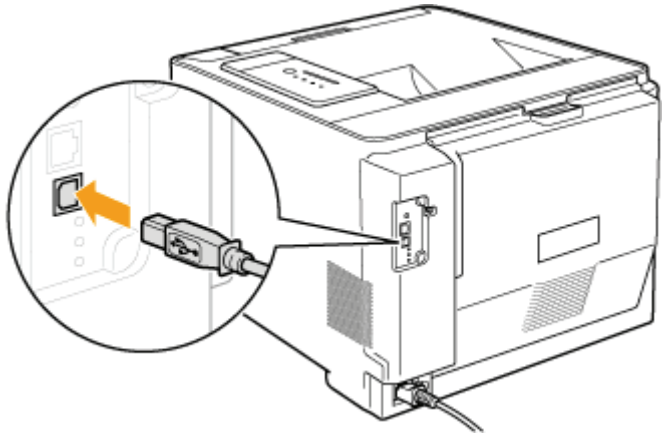
About the USB cable
This printer does not come with a USB cable. Have an appropriate one available for the computer you are using.
Use a USB cable with the following symbol.

1. **Make sure that the printer and computer are off.**

† Do not turn the printer on during the following procedure unless instructed.

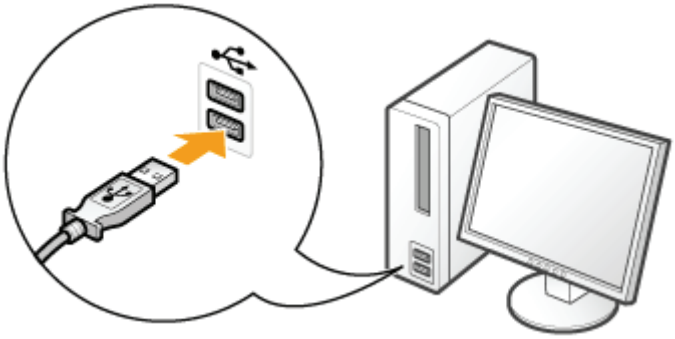
---

2. **Connect the B-type (square) end of the USB cable to the USB connector on the printer.**



---

3. **Connect the A-type (flat) end of the USB cable to the USB port on the computer.**



Step 2: Installing the Printer Driver from CD-ROM

1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

---

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

If a wizard or dialog box appears through the Plug and Play automatic setup
Click [Cancel], turn off the printer, and then use this procedure to install the printer driver.

3. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**

If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.

† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear

Display it using the following procedure.

(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

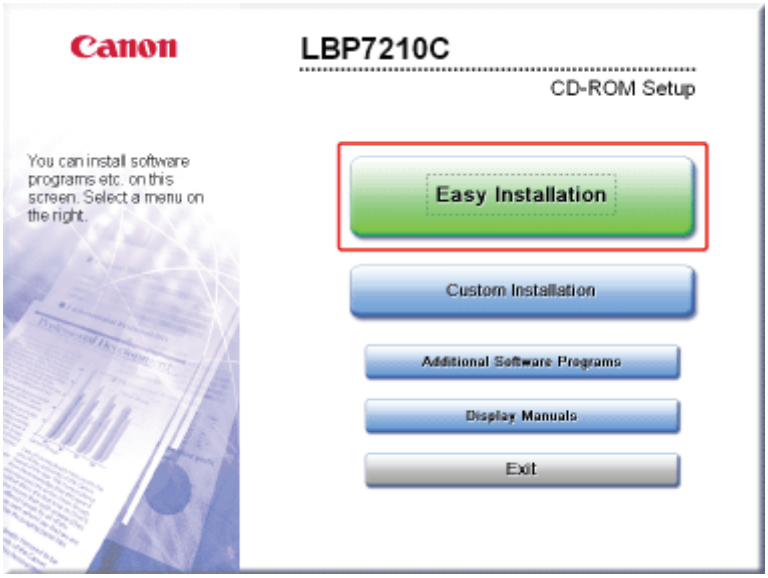
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

Click [Continue].

4. **Click [Easy Installation].**

The printer driver and the e-Manual are installed.

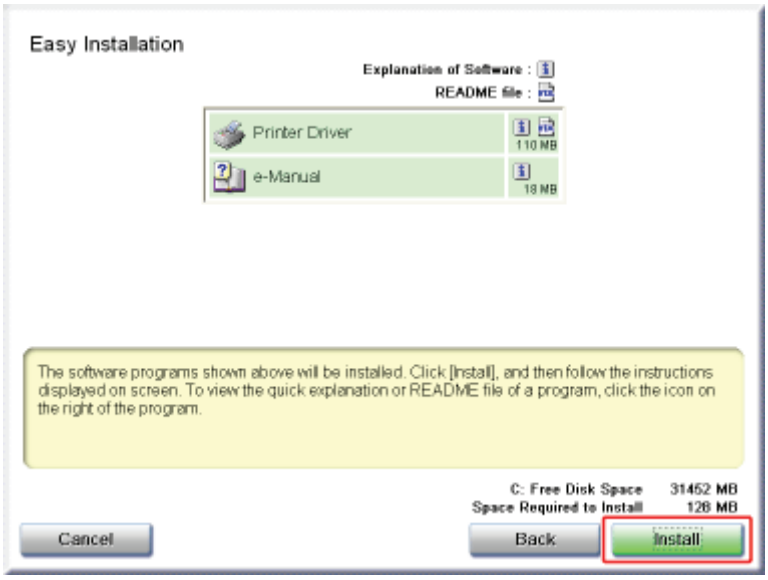


NOTE

If you do not want to install the e-Manual
Click [Custom Installation].

---

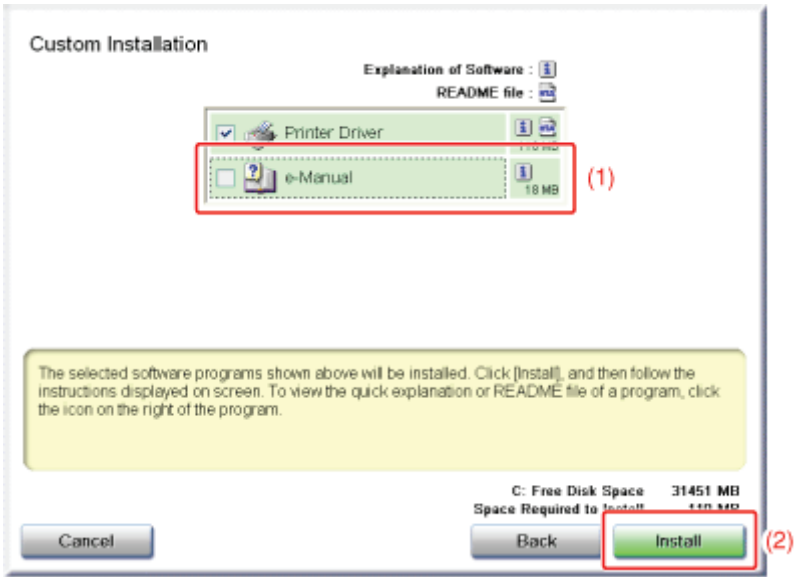
5. Click [Install].



NOTE

If you selected [Custom Installation] in Step 4

(1) Clear the [e-Manual] check box.
(2) Click [Install].

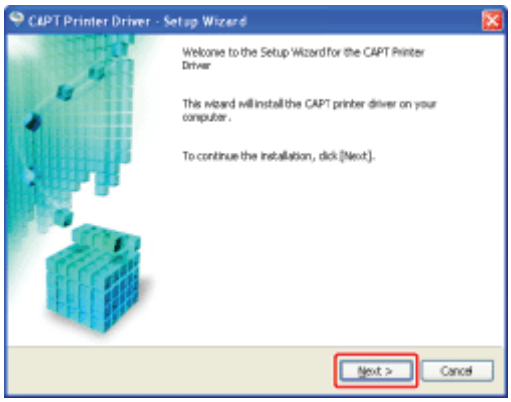


---

6. Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].

---

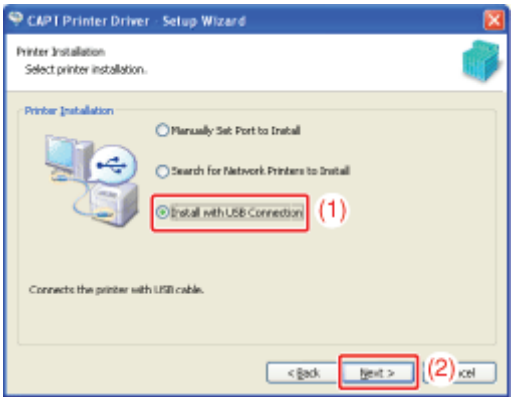
7. Click [Next].



---

8. Select the method of installation.

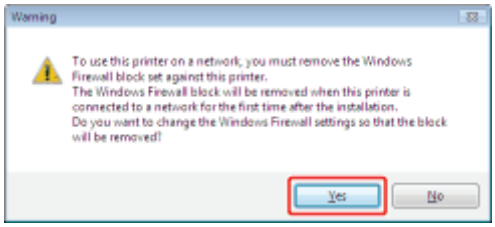
(1) Select [Install with USB Connection].
(2) Click [Next].



NOTE

If a message that prompts you to restart the computer appears
Restart the computer and install the printer driver again.

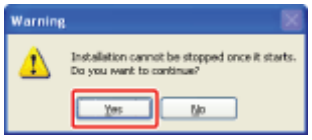
If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
The following screen appears. Click [Yes].



† Select [No] only if you do not use a LAN cable to connect the printer to a computer on which the printer driver is being installed.

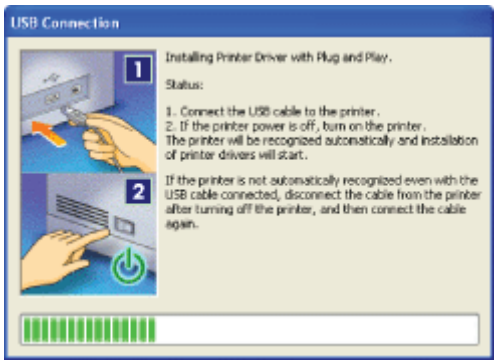
---

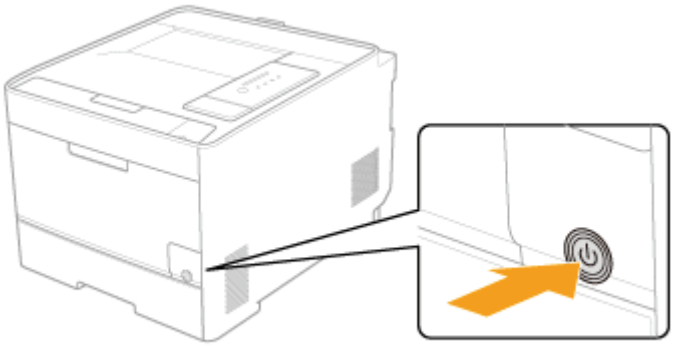
9. Click [Yes].



---

10. When the following screen is displayed, press the power switch to turn on the printer.

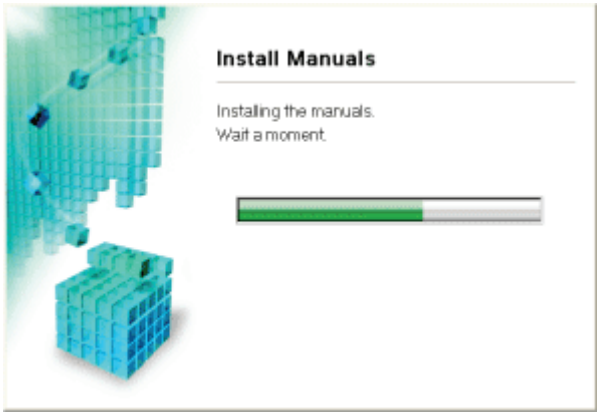




→ Installation of the printer driver starts automatically.
† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.

Installation of the e-Manual starts automatically after the printer driver installation.
Wait until the following screen disappears.

† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.



NOTE

If the USB cable is connected but the printer is not automatically recognized

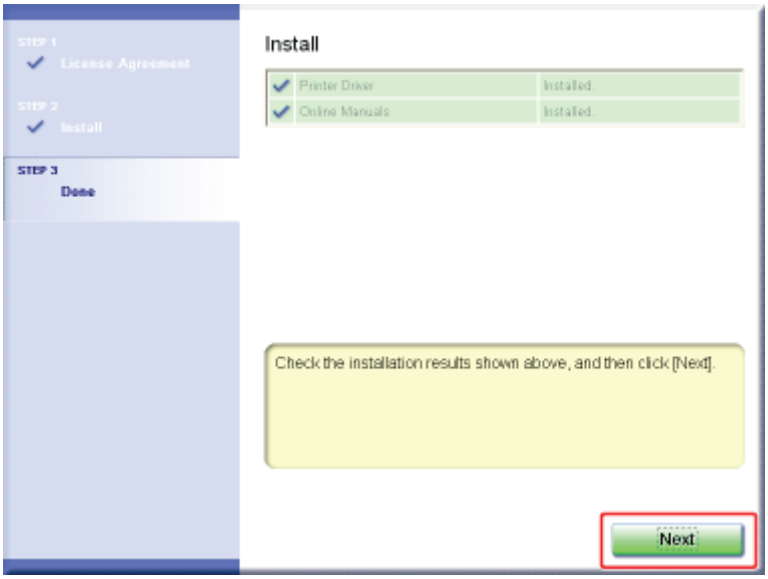
"The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled"

If you selected [Custom Installation] in Step 4

The e-Manual is not installed.

---

11. Check the installation results, and then click [Next].



NOTE

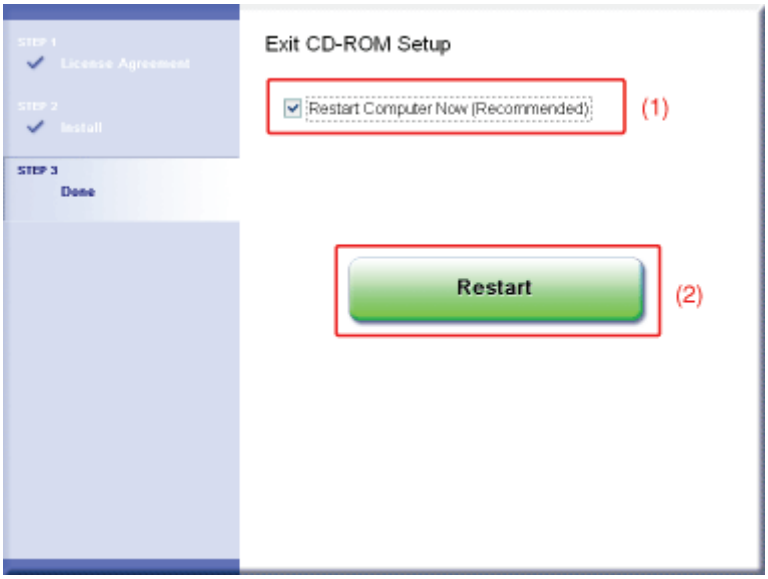
If the printer driver is not installed properly

"The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled"

---

12. Restart your computer.

(1) Select the [Restart Computer Now (Recommended)] check box.
(2) Click [Restart].



NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

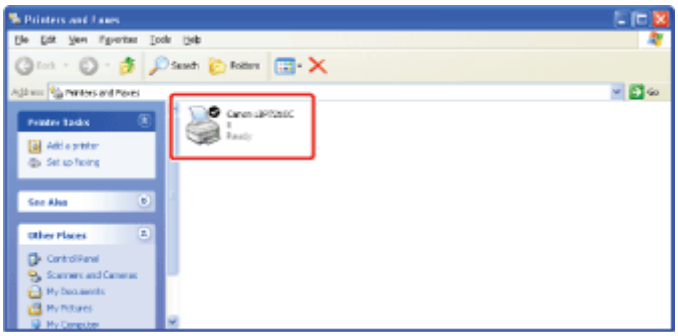
When viewing the e-Manual
"Viewing the e-Manual"
"Searching for Information"

Step 3: After the Installation

The following icons, folders, etc. are added to the following locations.

- **[Printers and Faxes] folder ([Printers] folder for Windows Vista and Server 2008)**

  Printer icon for this printer



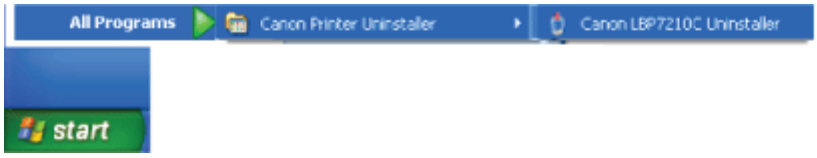
- **Task tray**

  Printer Status Window icon

† The icon does not appear if you did not restart your computer after the printer driver installation.

- **[All Programs] under the [Start] menu**

  [Canon Printer Uninstaller] - [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]



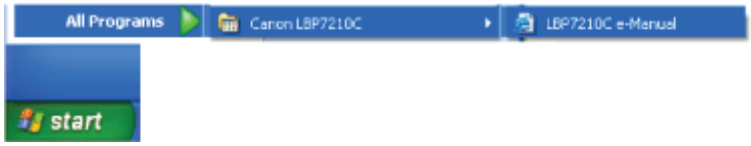
- **Desktop**

  [LBP7210C e-Manual]

  † The icon does not appear if you did not install the e-Manual.

- **[All Programs] under the [Start] menu**

  [Canon LBP7210C] - [LBP7210C e-Manual]



  † The icon does not appear if you did not install the e-Manual.

[E-11] Installing with Plug and Play

This section describes the procedure for installing the printer driver with Plug and Play on a computer connected to the printer with a USB cable.

Step 1: **Connecting a USB Cable**
Step 2: **Installing the Printer Driver with Plug and Play**
Step 3: **After the Installation**

IMPORTANT

If your hard disk does not have sufficient space to install the printer driver
A message indicating that your hard disk does not have sufficient space appears during installation.
Cancel the installation, free up space on your hard disk, and then reinstall the software.

Step 1: Connecting a USB Cable

WARNING

When the power plug is plugged into the AC power outlet
When plugging or unplugging a USB cable, do not touch the metal part of the connecter, as this may result in electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

Do not plug or unplug the USB cable while the printer or computer is on.
This may cause the printer to malfunction.

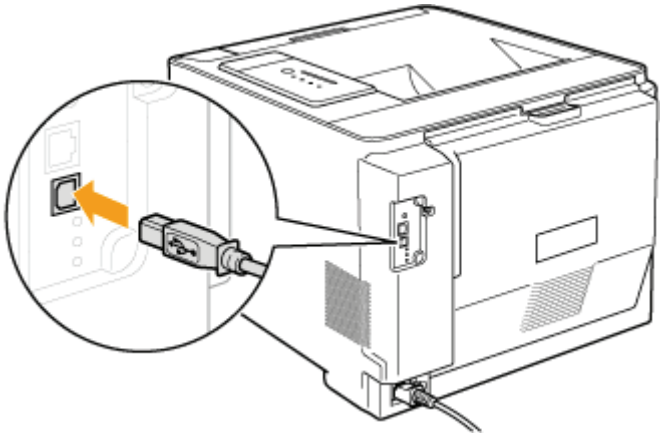
About unidirectional communication equipment
The printer performs bi-directional communication. Operation of the printer when connected via unidirectional communication equipment has not been tested, and as a result, Canon cannot guarantee printer operation if the printer is connected using unidirectional print servers, USB hubs or switching devices.

NOTE

About the USB cable
This printer does not come with a USB cable. Have an appropriate one available for the computer you are using.
Use a USB cable with the following symbol.

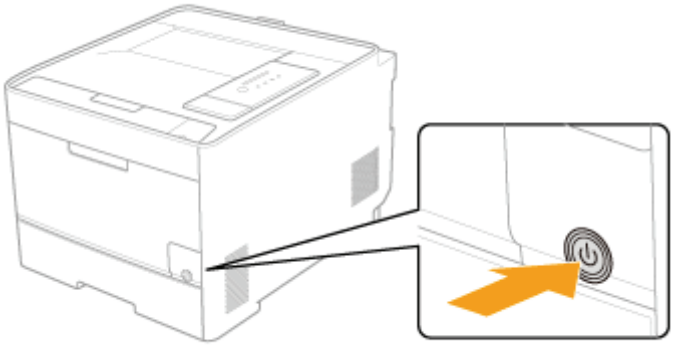
1. **Make sure that the printer and computer are off.**

2. **Connect the B-type (square) end of the USB cable to the USB connector on the printer.**



3. **Connect the A-type (flat) end of the USB cable to the USB port on the computer.**

4. **Press the power switch to turn the printer on.**



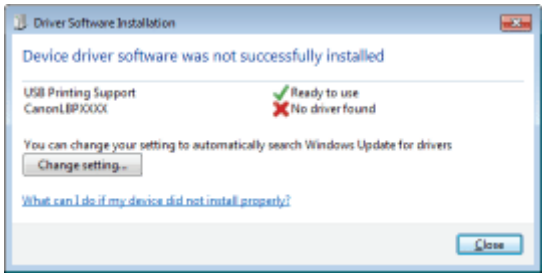
Step 2: Installing the Printer Driver with Plug and Play

The procedure for installing the printer driver with Plug and Play varies depending on your operating system. See the following according to your operating system.

- Windows Vista and Server 2008
- Windows XP and Server 2003

IMPORTANT

If you cannot install the printer driver with Plug and Play (Windows 7)
You may not be able to install the printer driver properly due to the Windows restriction even after detecting the printer with Plug and Play.



Click [What can I do if my device did not install properly?], and then see Windows Help or reinstall the printer driver in "Installing from CD-ROM Setup."

Windows Vista and Server 2008

NOTE

About the screenshots
This procedure is described using screenshots from Windows Vista.

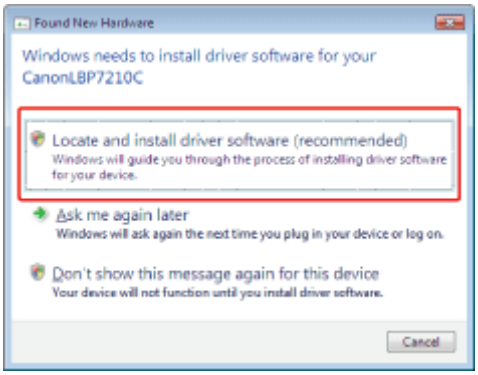
1. **Turn the computer on and start up Windows Vista or Server 2008.**

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

3. **Click [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].**



IMPORTANT

If you have previously installed the printer driver for this printer to your computer
The printer driver is installed automatically without displaying the preceding dialog box.
If you want to update the printer driver (or want to install it manually), install the printer driver after uninstalling it once.
"Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]"

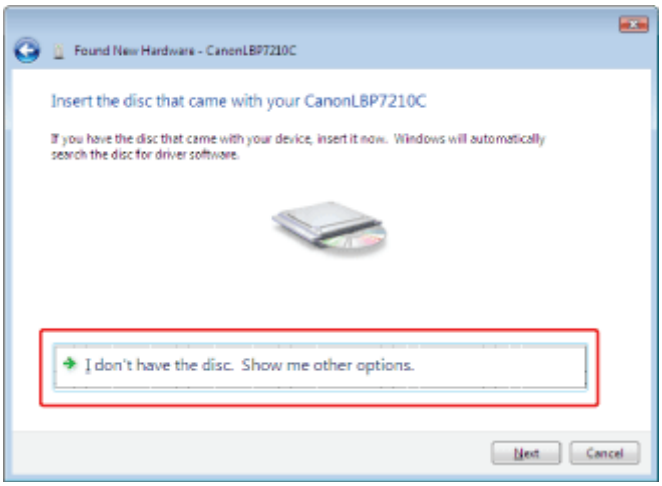
NOTE

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears
Click [Continue].

If [Allow Windows to search online for driver software for your CanonLBP7210C?] appears
Click [Don't search online].

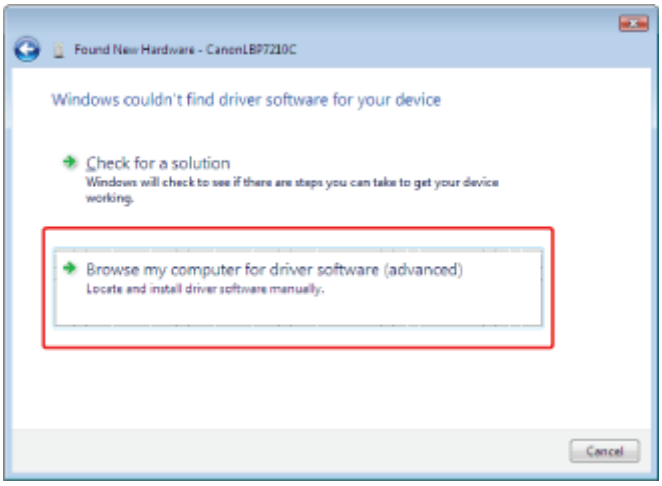
---

4. **Click [I don't have the disc. Show me other options.].**



---

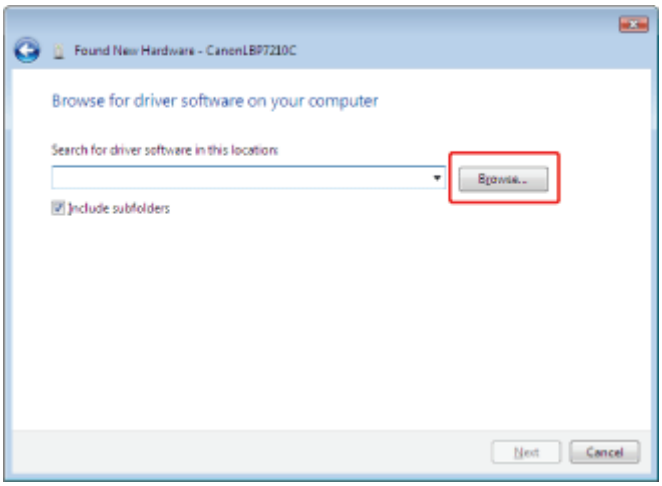
5. **Click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].**



---

6. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer, and then click [Browse].**

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].

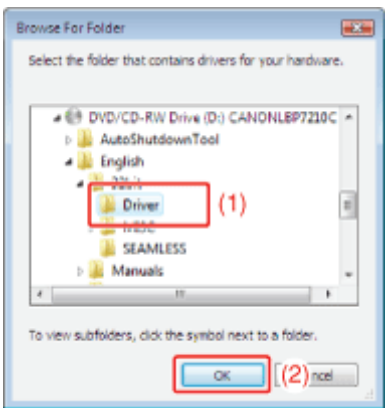


---

7. **Select the folder in which the printer driver is included.**

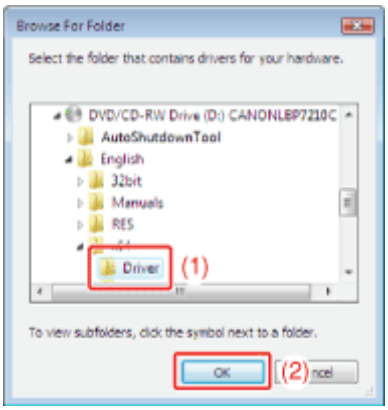
If you are using 32-bit Windows Vista or Server 2008

(1) Select the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [32bit] - [Driver].
(2) Click [OK].



If you are using 64-bit Windows Vista or Server 2008

(1) Select the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [x64] - [Driver].
(2) Click [OK].



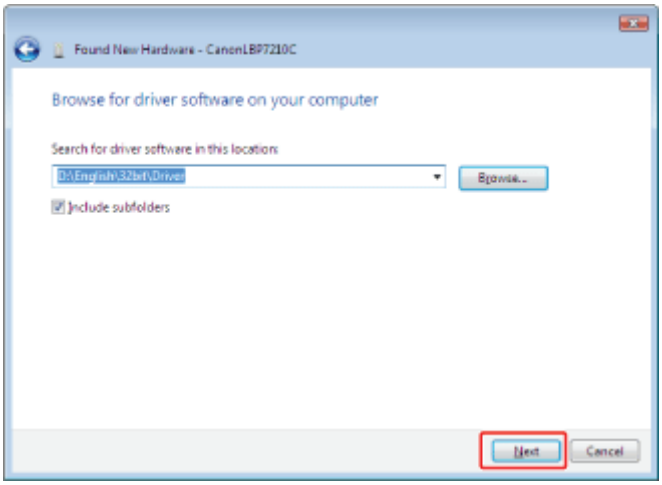
NOTE

If you are not sure whether you are using a 32-bit operating system or 64-bit operating system

"To Check the Processor Version of Windows Vista or Server 2008"

---

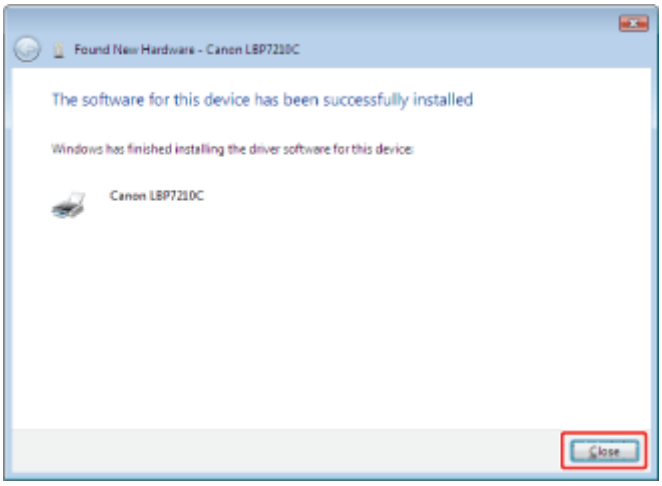
8. **Click [Next].**



→ The installation starts.

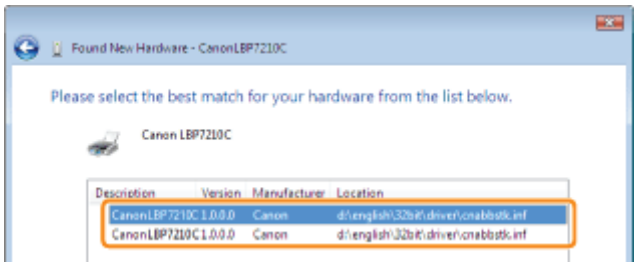
---

9. **Click [Close].**



NOTE

If the screen for selecting the printer driver appears
Even if which printer driver is selected, there is no problem with the installation because the same printer driver is installed.



Removing the CD-ROM
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

Windows XP and Server 2003

1. **Turn the computer on and start up Windows XP or Server 2003.**

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

3. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**

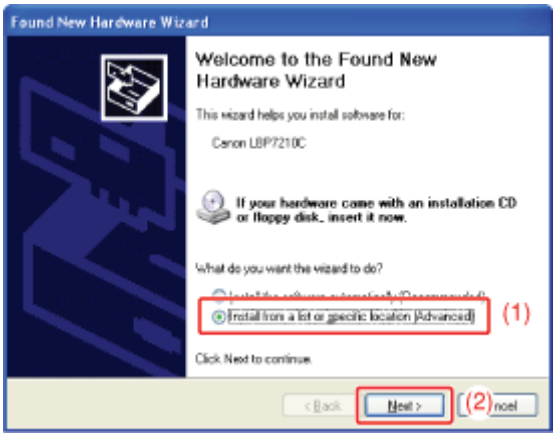
If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].

---

4. Select the method of installation.

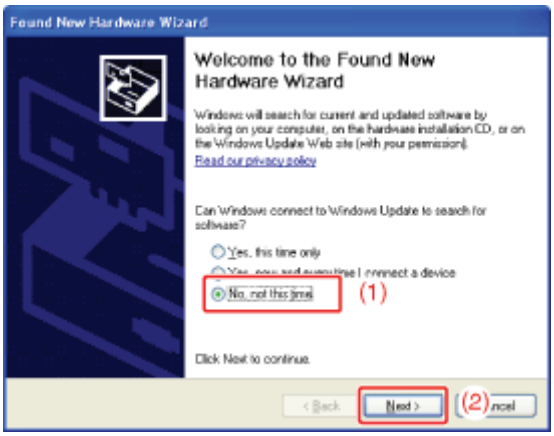
If the following dialog box appears

(1) Select [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)].
(2) Click [Next].

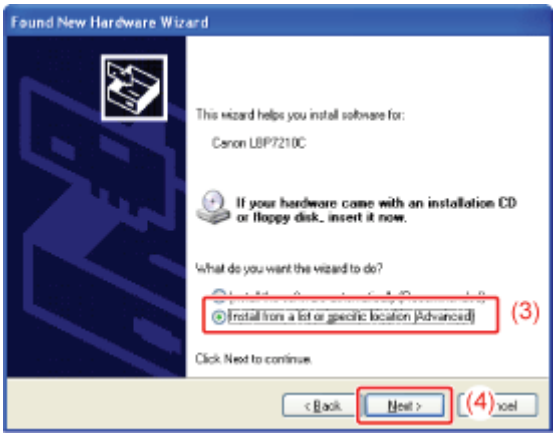


If the following dialog box appears

(1) Select [No, not this time].
(2) Click [Next].



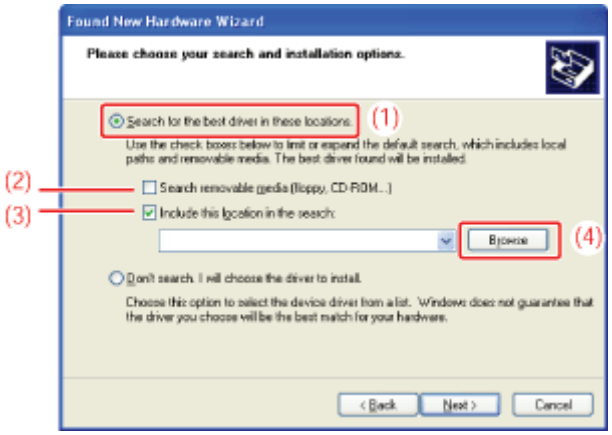
(3) Select [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)].
(4) Click [Next].



---

5. Perform the following procedure.

(1) Select [Search for the best driver in these locations].
(2) Clear the [Search removable media (floppy, CD-ROM)] check box.
(3) Select the [Include this location in the search] check box.
(4) Click [Browse].

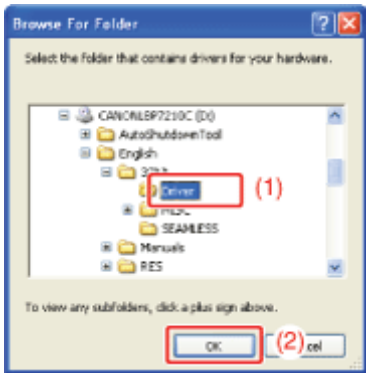


---

6. Select the folder in which the printer driver is included.

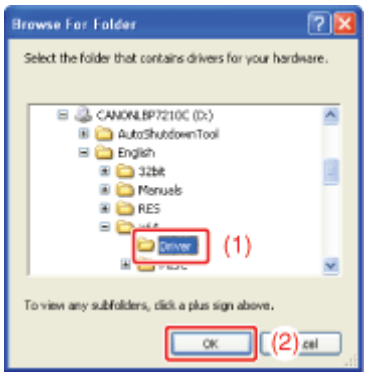
If you are using 32-bit Windows XP or Server 2003

(1) Select the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [32bit] - [Driver].
(2) Click [OK].



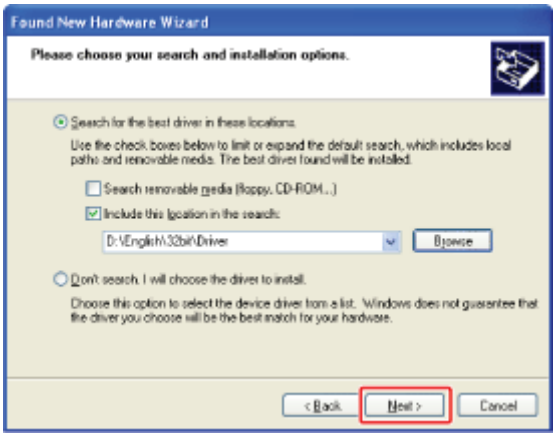
If you are using 64-bit Windows XP or Server 2003

(1) Select the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [x64] - [Driver].
(2) Click [OK].



---

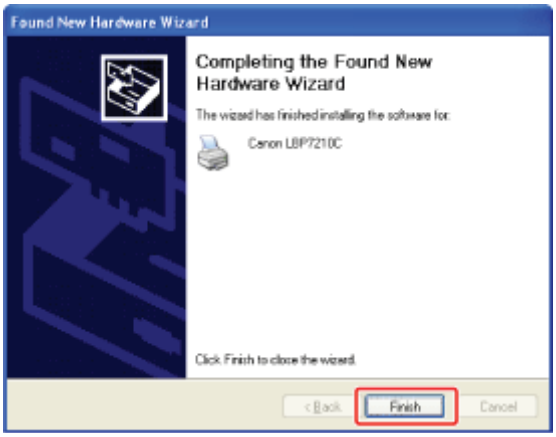
7. Click [Next].



→ The installation starts.

---

8. Click [Finish].



NOTE

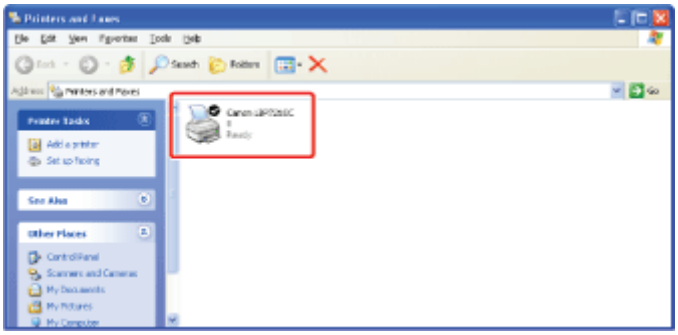
Removing the CD-ROM
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

Step 3: After the Installation

The following icons and folders are added to the following locations.

- **[Printers and Faxes] folder ([Printers] folder for Windows Vista and Server 2008)**

  Printer icon for this printer



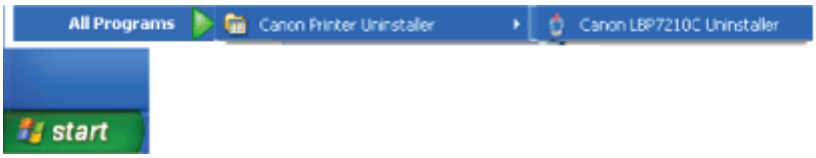
- **Task tray**

  Printer Status Window icon

  † The icon does not appear if you did not restart your computer after the printer driver installation.

- **[All Programs] under the [Start] menu**

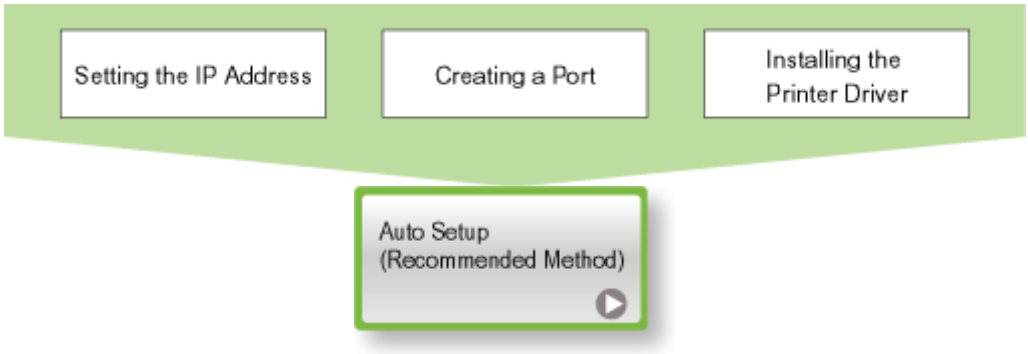
  [Canon Printer Uninstaller] - [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]



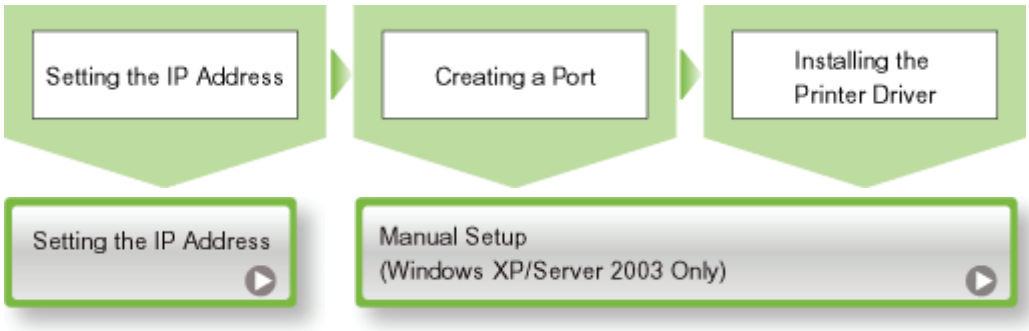
[E-12] The Tasks That Should Be Performed to Print in a Network Environment

There are the following two methods to install the printer driver on a computer connected by a LAN cable (the tasks that should be performed to print in a network environment).
The procedures for setting the IP address or creating a port required to print in a network environment vary depending on the installation method.

Auto Setup (Recommended Method)
Performs the following operations which are required for printing all at once.



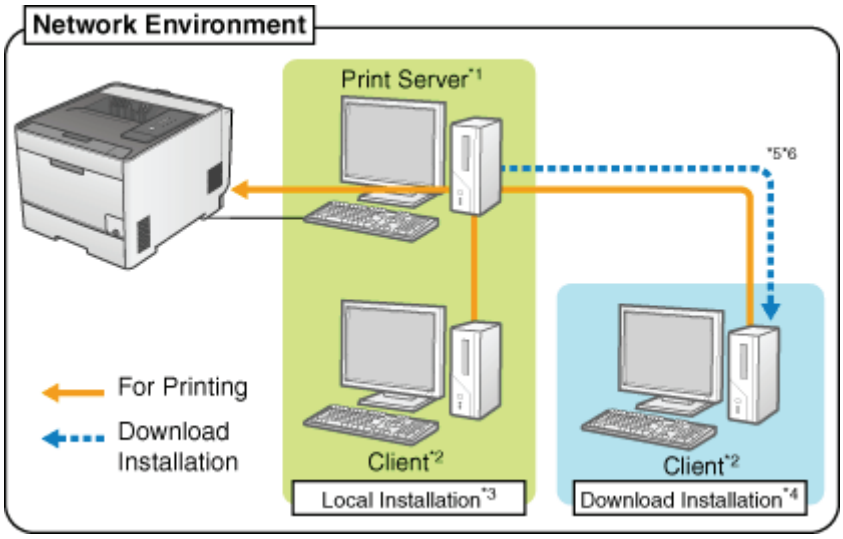
Manual Setup (Windows XP and Server 2003 Only)
Performs the following operations which are required for printing one at a time.



† If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008, you cannot print using a port created by "Manual Setup".
Be sure to install the printer driver using "Auto Setup".

[E-13] Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing)

If you share the printer in the print server environment, you can perform printing from other computers that are not directly connected to this printer.



*1 The term "Print Server" is the computer directly connected to the printer.
*2 The term "Client" is a computer connected to the printer via a network.
*3 The term "Local Installation" indicates that the printer driver is installed using the supplied CD-ROM.
*4 The term "Download Installation" indicates that the printer driver is downloaded from the print server to client computers and is installed without using the supplied CD-ROM.
*5 If a 64-bit operating system is running on the print server, the download installation for the following client computers on which a 32-bit operating system is running is not supported due to the Windows restriction.

- Windows XP (on which no service pack or SP1 is installed)
- Windows Server 2003 (on which no service pack is installed)

If you download and install the printer driver on any of the above 32-bit operating systems, you may fail to install the driver and may not be able to open the printing preferences dialog box.

When using the print server environment, perform any one of the following tasks.

For the print server

1. Install the printer driver.

   - If the printer and print server are connected by a USB cable
     "Installing from CD-ROM Setup"
     "Installing with Plug and Play"
   - If the printer and print server are connected by a LAN cable
     "Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"
     "Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)"

2. Configure the print server.

   "Configuring the Print Server"

For client computers

Install the printer driver.

"Installation on Clients"

[E-14] Configuring the Print Server

Step 1: Before Sharing the Printer
Step 2: Sharing the Printer

Step 1: Before Sharing the Printer

Check the settings of your network.

---

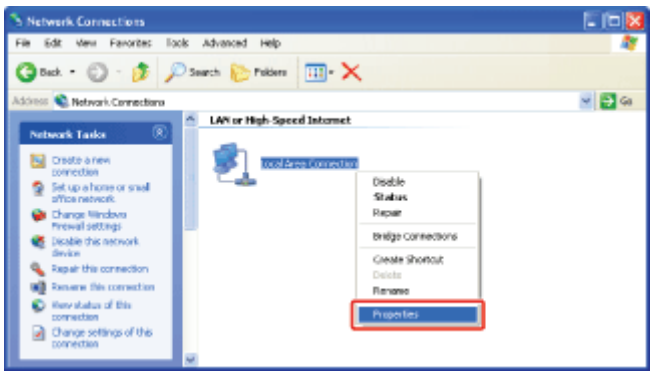
1. **Perform the following procedure.**

   - Windows XP
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Network and Internet Connections] → [Network Connections].
   - Windows Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] → [Network Connections] → [Local Area Connection].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [View network status and tasks] → [Manage network connections].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], double-click [Network and Sharing Center], and then click [Manage network connections].

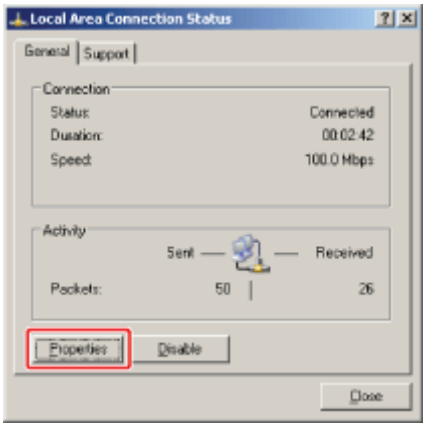
---

2. **Display the [Local Area Connection Properties] dialog box.**

   - Windows XP Vista, and Server 2008
     Right-click the [Local Area Connection] icon, then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.



   - Windows Server 2003
     Click [Properties].



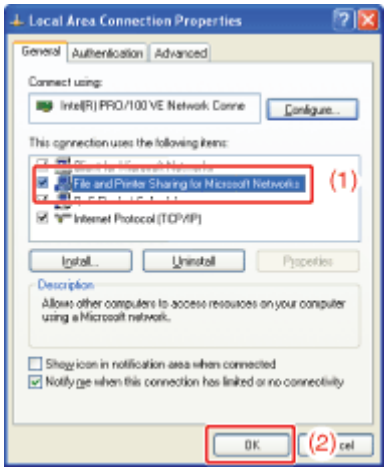
NOTE

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

---

3. Make sure that [File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks] is selected.

(1) Make sure that the [File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks] check box is selected.
(If the check box is not selected, select it.)
(2) Click [OK].



Step 2: Sharing the Printer

Printer sharing settings vary depending on your operating system. See the following setting procedure according to your operating system.

- 32-bit Operating System (Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008)
- 64-bit Operating System (Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008)

NOTE

To check the processor version of **Windows Vista or Server 2008**
If you are not sure whether you are using 32-bit Windows Vista or 64-bit Windows Vista, see "To Check the Processor Version of Windows Vista or Server 2008".

32-bit Operating System (Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008)

NOTE

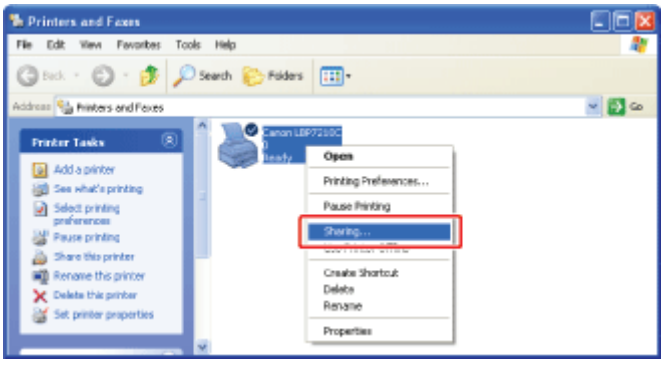
If you are using **Windows XP**
The printer cannot be shared on a network with the operating system default settings (the settings immediately after installation).
Before sharing the printer on a network, run [Network Setup Wizard] to enable the printer sharing settings.
For more details, see Windows Help.

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

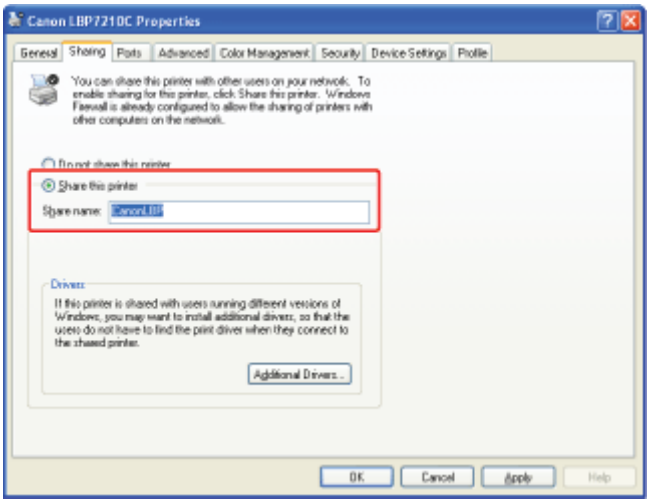
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Sharing] from the pop-up menu.**



---

3. **Perform the following procedure.**
   - Windows XP and Server 2003
     Select [Share this printer]. Change [Share name] as needed.
   - Windows Vista and Server 2008

Select the [Share this printer] check box. Change [Share name] as needed.

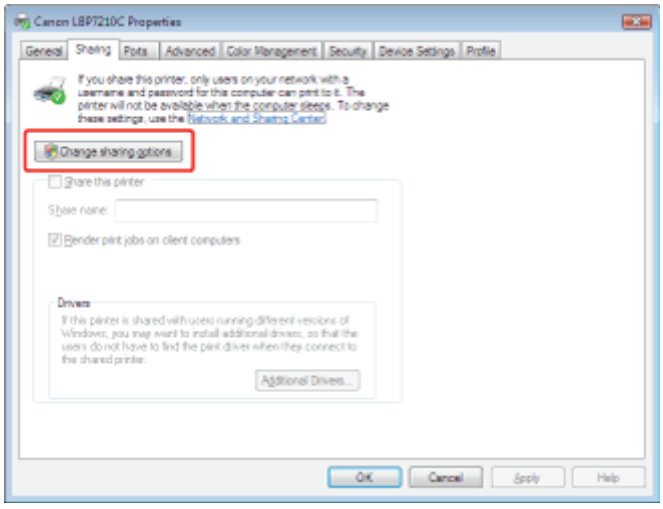


Proceed to the following procedures according to clients' operating systems.

Client	
Some users are using a 64-bit operating system.	**→To Step 4**
No user is using a 64-bit operating system.	**→To Step 10**

NOTE

If [Change sharing options] appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Change sharing options].



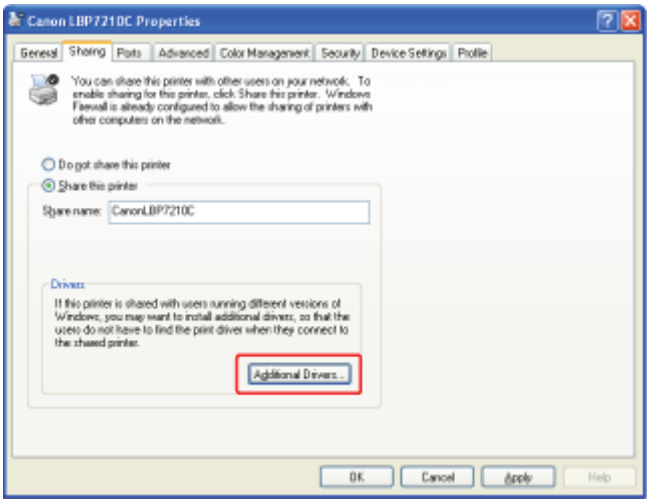
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

About [Share name]
Do not use spaces or special characters.

---

4. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer, and then click [Additional Drivers].**

   If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



NOTE

When updating an additional driver (replacement driver)

Perform the following procedure.

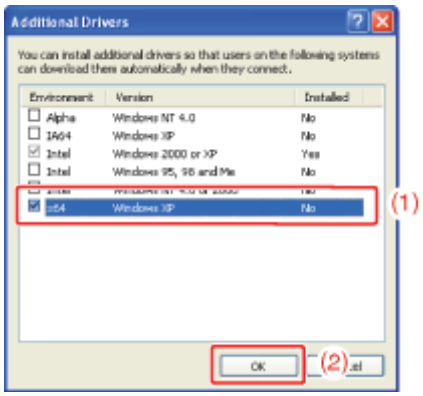
1. Uninstall the printer driver on the print server.
   "Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]"
2. Install the new printer driver on the print server.
   - If the printer and print server are connected by a USB cable
     "Installing from CD-ROM Setup"
     "Installing with Plug and Play"
   - If the printer and print server are connected by a LAN cable
     "Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"
     "Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)"
3. Reinstall the additional driver.

---

5. Select the additional driver.

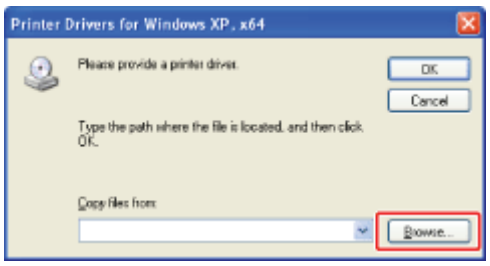
(1) Select the [x64] check box.

(2) Click [OK].



---

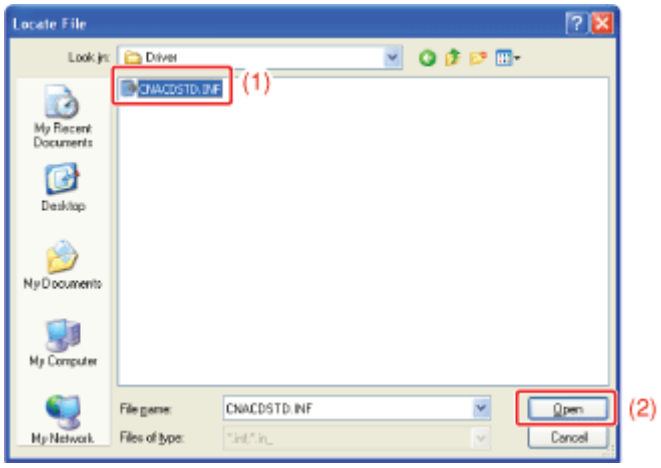
6. **Click [Browse].**



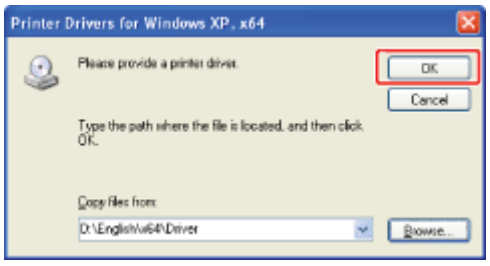
7. **Open the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [x64] - [Driver].**

8. **Select the INF file.**

(1) Select [CNACDSTD.INF].
(2) Click [Open].



9. **Click [OK].**

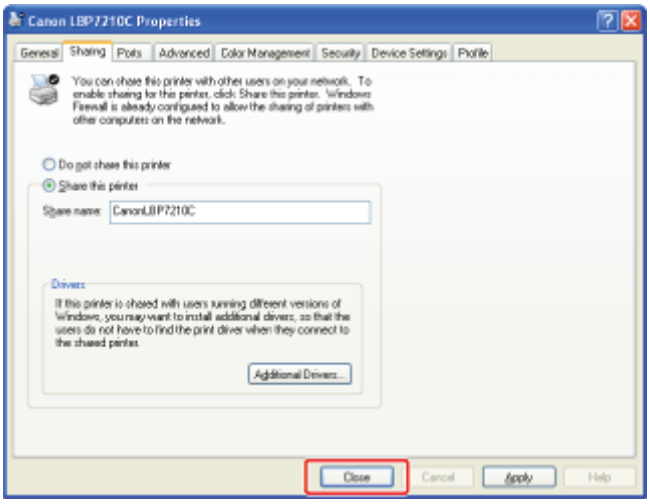


→ Installation of the additional driver starts.

NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation of the additional driver is completed.

10. **Click [Close] or [OK].**



→ The printer icon changes to the shared printer icon.

IMPORTANT

To clear the printer sharing settings

To clear the printer sharing settings, use the following procedures.

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  Select [Do not share this printer] in the [Sharing] sheet.
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  Clear the [Share this printer] check box in the [Sharing] sheet.

  † If [Change sharing options] appears, click [Change sharing options].
  If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

64-bit Operating System (Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008)

NOTE

If you are using **Windows XP**

The printer cannot be shared on a network with the operating system default settings (the settings immediately after installation).

Before sharing the printer on a network, run [Network Setup Wizard] to enable the printer sharing settings.

For more details, see Windows Help.

About the screenshots

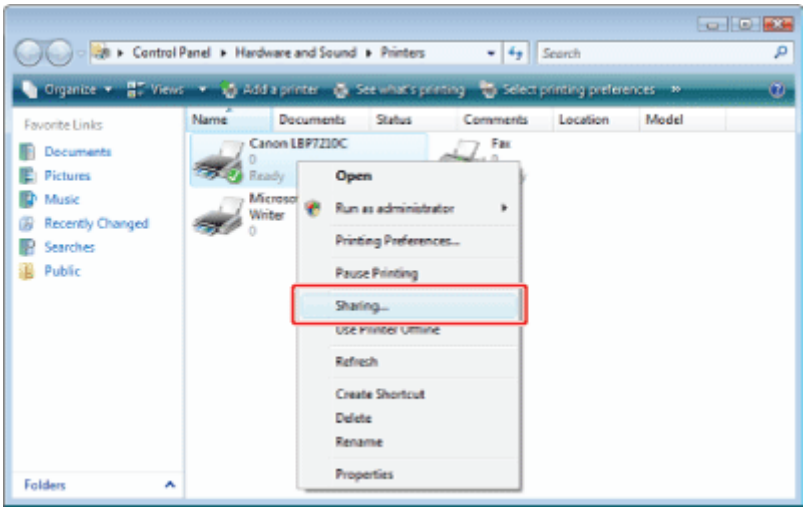
This procedure is described using screenshots from Windows Vista.

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

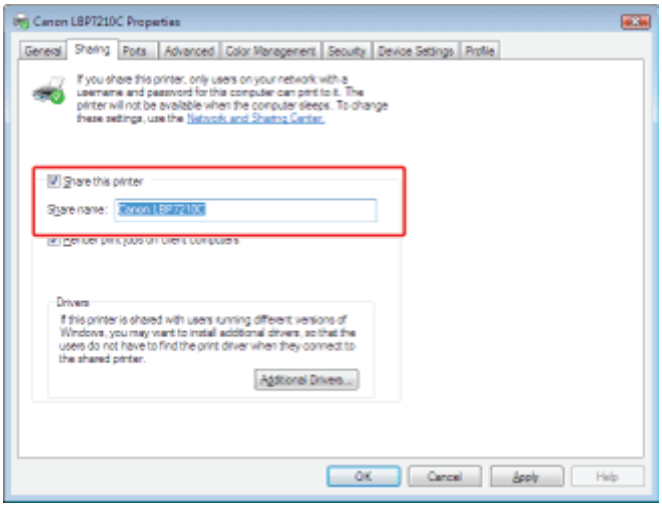
---

2. **Display the [Sharing] sheet.**
   Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Sharing] from the pop-up menu.



---

3. **Perform the following procedure.**
   Change [Share name] as needed.
   - Windows XP and Server 2003
     Select [Share this printer]. Change [Share name] as needed.
   - Windows Vista and Server 2008
     Select the [Share this printer] check box. Change [Share name] as needed.

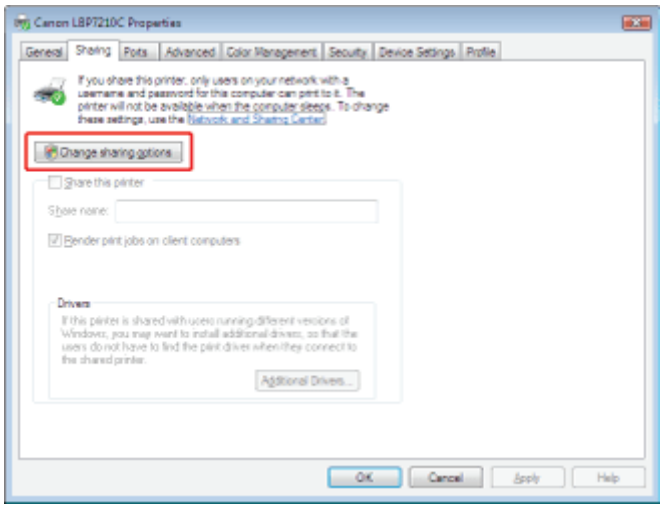


Proceed to the following procedures according to clients' operating systems.

Client	
Some users are using a 32-bit operating system.	→To Step 4
No user is using a 32-bit operating system.	→To Step 10

NOTE

If [Change sharing options] appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Change sharing options].



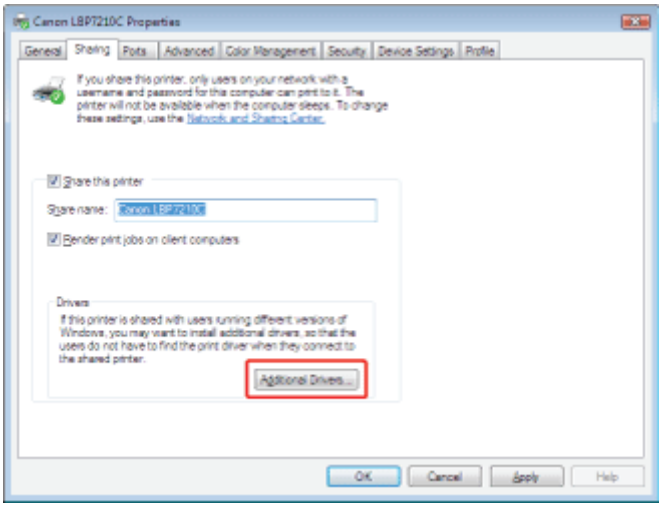
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

About [Share name]
Do not use spaces or special characters.

---

4. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer, and then click [Additional Drivers].**

   If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



NOTE

About the download installation for client computers on which a 32-bit operating system is running

If a 64-bit operating system is running on the print server, the download installation for the following client computers on which a 32-bit operating system is running is not supported due to the Windows restriction.

- Windows XP (on which no service pack or SP1 is installed)
- Windows Server 2003 (on which no service pack is installed)

If you download and install the printer driver on any of the above 32-bit operating systems, you may fail to install the driver and may not be able to open the printing preferences dialog box.

When updating an additional driver (replacement driver)

Perform the following procedure.

1. Uninstall the printer driver on the print server.
   "Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]"
2. Install the new printer driver on the print server.
   - If the printer and print server are connected by a USB cable
     "Installing from CD-ROM Setup"
     "Installing with Plug and Play"
   - If the printer and print server are connected by a LAN cable
     "Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"
     "Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)"
3. Reinstall the additional driver.

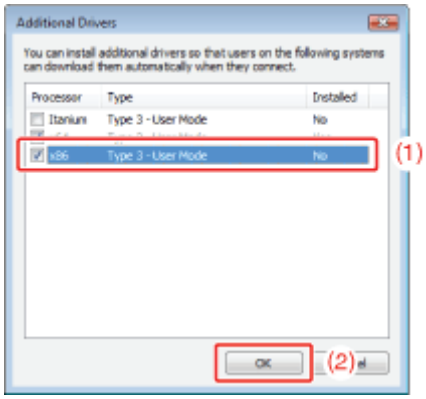
---

5. **Select the additional driver.**
   - Windows XP and Server 2003

     (1) Select the check box for [Windows XP and Windows Server 2003] in the [Version] column.
     (2) Click [OK].

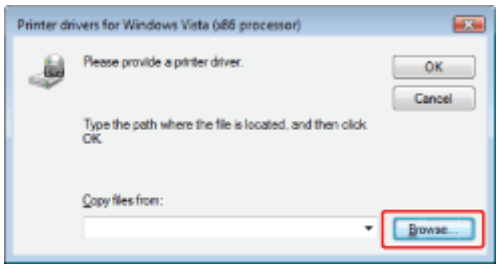
- Windows Vista and Server 2008

  (1) Select the check box for [x86] in the [Processor] column.
  (2) Click [OK].



---

6. Click [Browse].



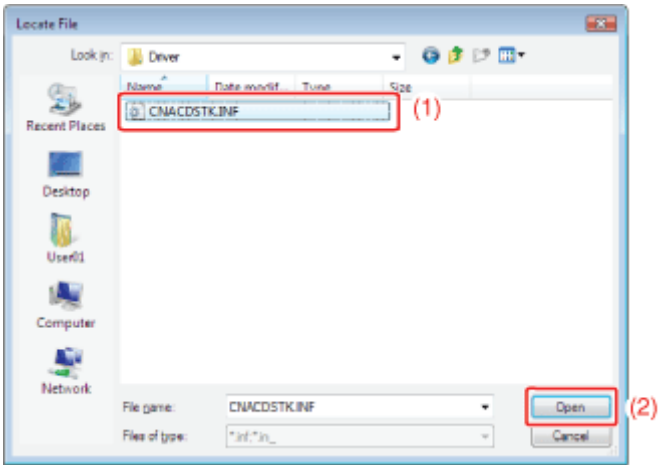
---

7. Open the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [32bit] - [Driver].

---

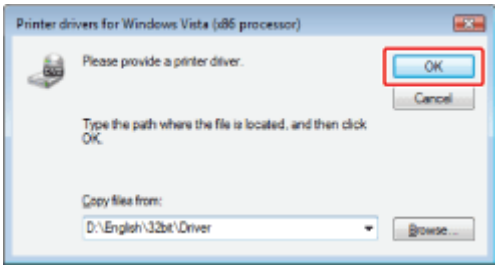
8. Select the INF file.

(1) Select [CNACDSTK.INF].
(2) Click [Open].



---

9. **Click [OK].**



→ Installation of the additional driver starts.

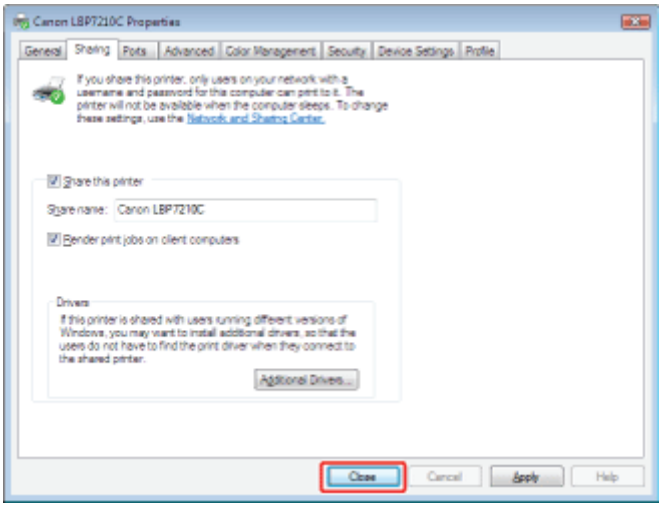
NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM

You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation of the additional driver is completed.

---

10. **Click [Close] or [OK].**



→ The printer icon changes to the shared printer icon.

IMPORTANT

To clear the printer sharing settings

To clear the printer sharing settings, use the following procedures.

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  Select [Do not share this printer] in the [Sharing] sheet.
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  Clear the [Share this printer] check box in the [Sharing] sheet.

  † If [Change sharing options] appears, click [Change sharing options].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

[E-15] Installation on Clients

There are two ways to install the printer driver on client computers: Local installation and download installation.

Local installation
You can install the printer driver using the supplied CD-ROM.

- Installing from CD-ROM Setup

Download installation
You can install the printer driver without using the supplied CD-ROM, but by downloading the printer driver from the print server. There are the following two ways to download and install the printer driver.

- Installing from the [Printers and Faxes] Folder or the [Printers] Folder
- Installing from [Windows Explorer]

NOTE

Precautions when downloading and installing the printer driver
If a 64-bit operating system is running on the print server, the download installation for the following client computers on which a 32-bit operating system is running is not supported due to the Windows restriction.

- Windows XP (in which no service pack or SP1 is installed)
- Windows Server 2003 (in which no service pack is installed)

† If you download and install the printer driver on any of the above 32-bit operating systems, you may fail to install the driver and may not be able to open the printing preferences dialog box.

Installing from CD-ROM Setup

1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

3. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**

3. If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.

† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear

Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

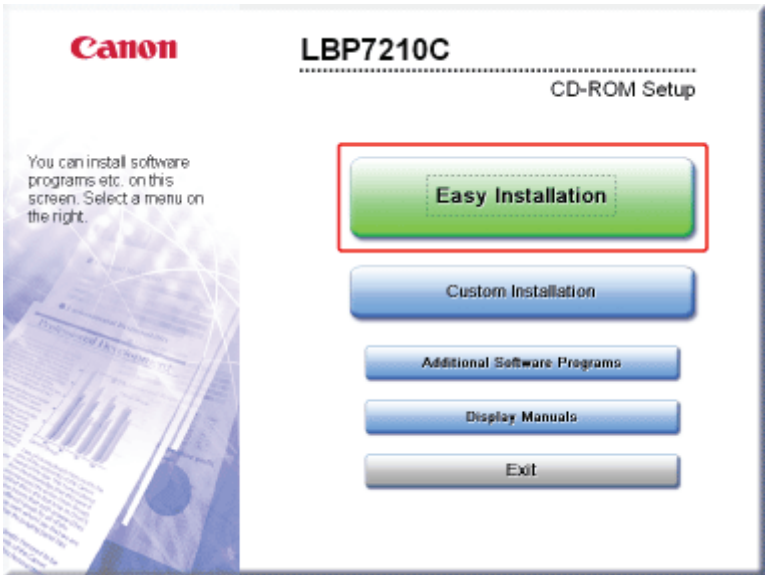
If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

---

4. **Click [Easy Installation].**

The printer driver and the e-Manual are installed.

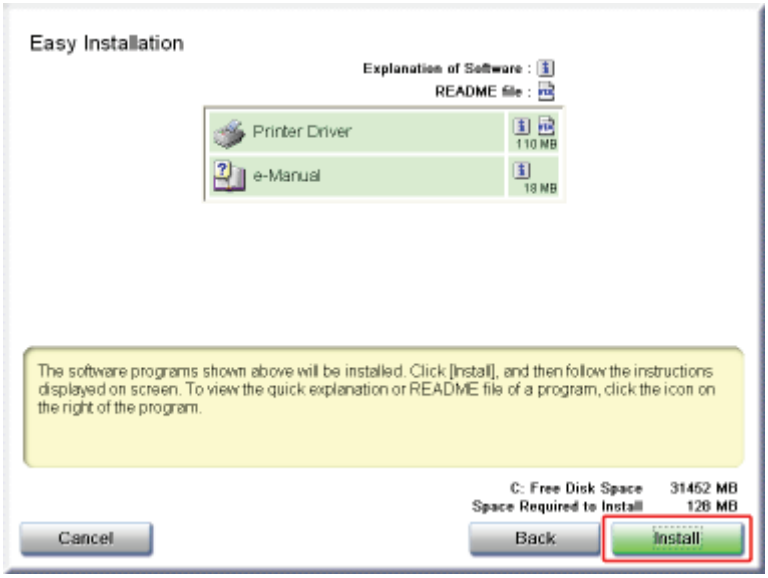


NOTE

If you do not want to install the e-Manual

Click [Custom Installation].

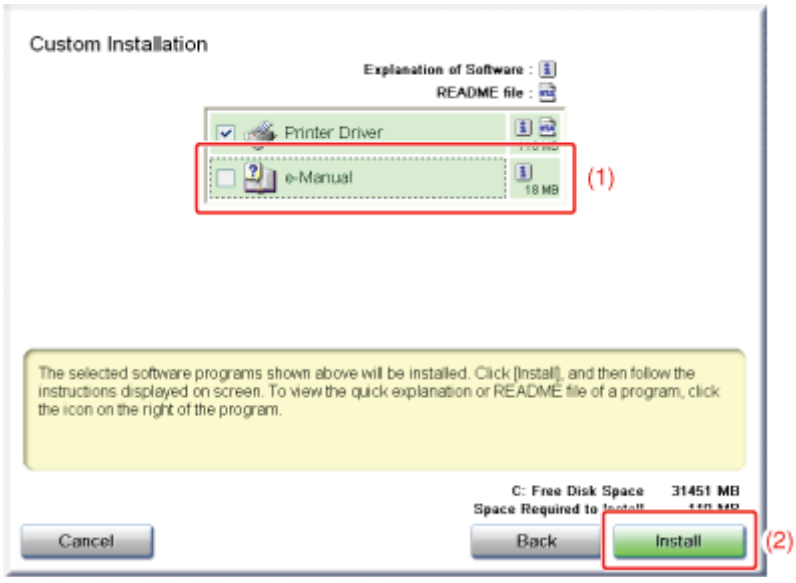
5. Click [Install].



NOTE

If you selected [Custom Installation] in Step 4

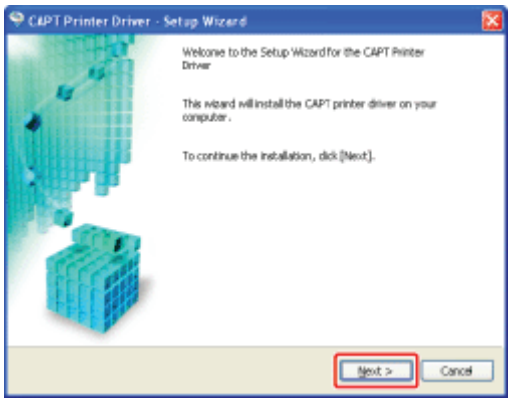
(1) Clear the [e-Manual] check box.
(2) Click [Install].



6. Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].

---

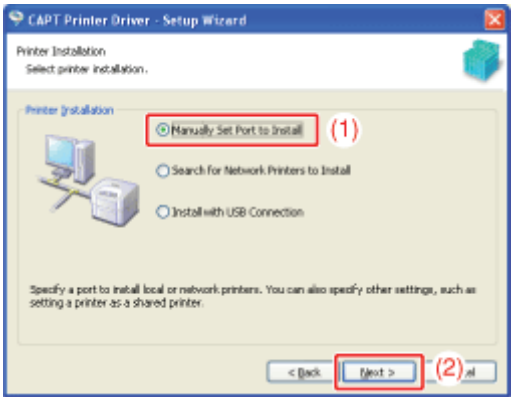
7. Click [Next].



---

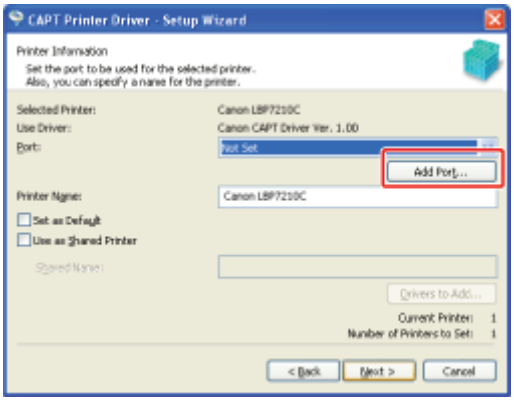
8. Select the method of installation.

(1) Select [Manually Set Port to Install].
(2) Click [Next].



---

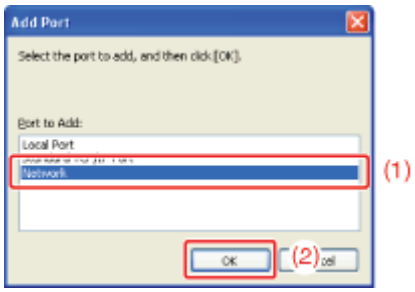
9. Click [Add Port].



---

10. Select a port to be added.

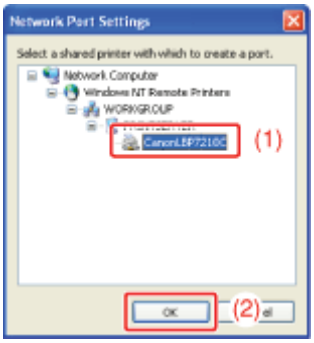
(1) Select [Network].
(2) Click [OK].



---

11. Select a shared printer.

(1) Select a shared printer on the print server.
(2) Click [OK].



NOTE

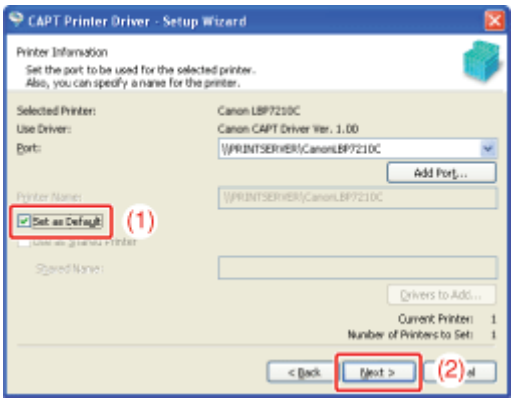
If you are not sure about the print server name (the computer name of the print server)
Ask your print server administrator about the problem.

---

12. Select whether or not to use the printer as the default printer.

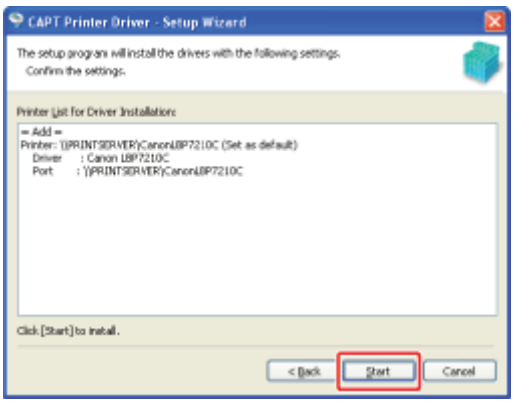
(1) If you want to use the printer as the default printer, select the [Set as Default] check box.

(2) Click [Next].



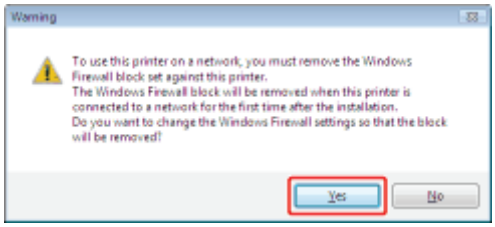
---

13. Click [Start].



NOTE

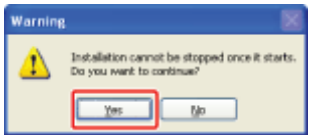
If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
The following screen appears. Click [Yes].



† Select [No] only if you do not use a LAN cable to connect the printer to a computer on which the printer driver is being installed.

---

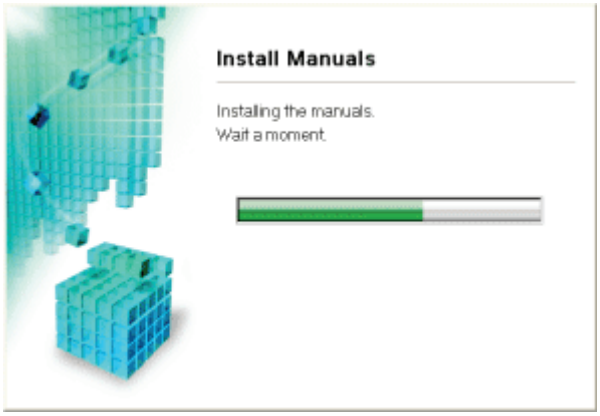
14. Click [Yes].



→ Installation of the printer driver starts.

† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.

Installation of the e-Manual starts automatically after the printer driver installation.
Wait until the following screen disappears.
† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.

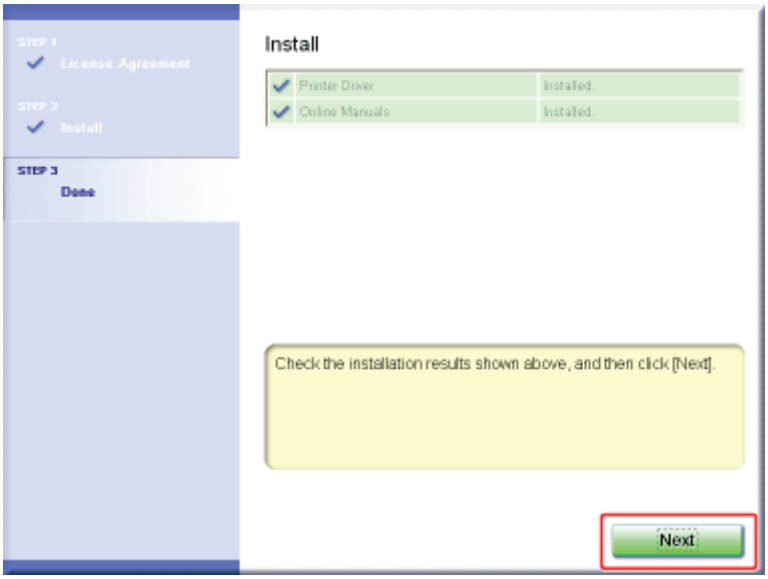


NOTE

If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
The [Printers] dialog box appears. Click [Install driver].

If you selected [Custom Installation] in Step 4
The e-Manual is not installed.

15. **Check the installation results, and then click [Next].**

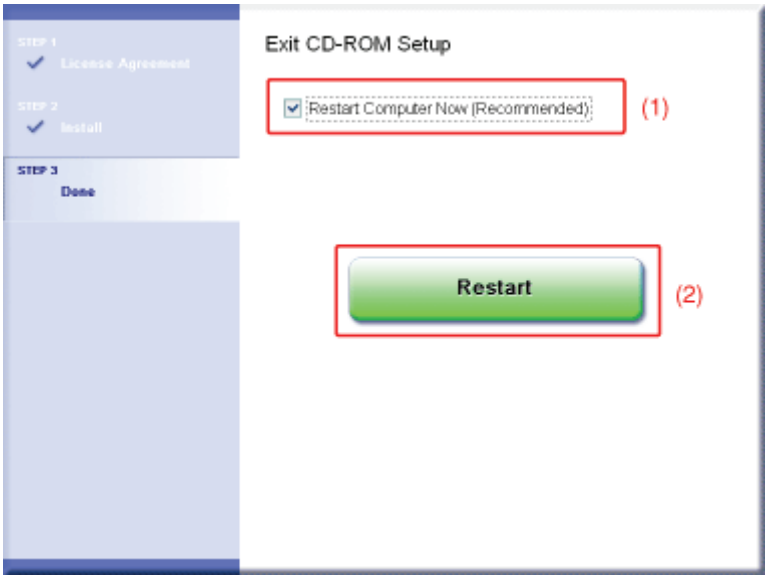


NOTE

If the printer driver is not installed properly
"The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled"

16. **Restart your computer.**

(1) Select the [Restart Computer Now (Recommended)] check box.
(2) Click [Restart].



NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

When viewing the e-Manual
"Viewing the e-Manual"
"Searching for Information"

Installing from the [Printers and Faxes] Folder or the [Printers] Folder

The procedure for installing the printer driver from the [Printers and Faxes] folder or the [Printers] folder varies depending on your operating system.
See the following according to your operating system.

- Windows Vista and Server 2008
- Windows XP and Server 2003

Windows Vista and Server 2008

NOTE

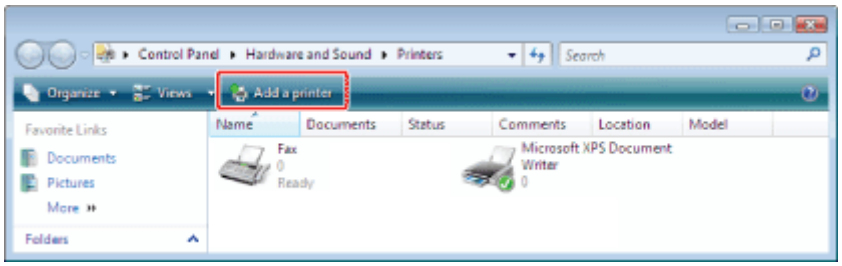
About the screenshots
This procedure is described using screenshots from Windows Vista.

1. **Turn the computer on and start up Windows Vista or Server 2008.**

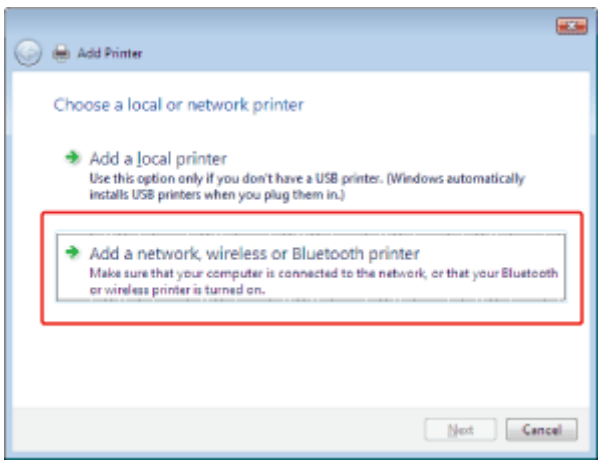
2. **Log on to Windows Vista or Server 2008.**

3. **Open the [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

4. **Click [Add a printer].**

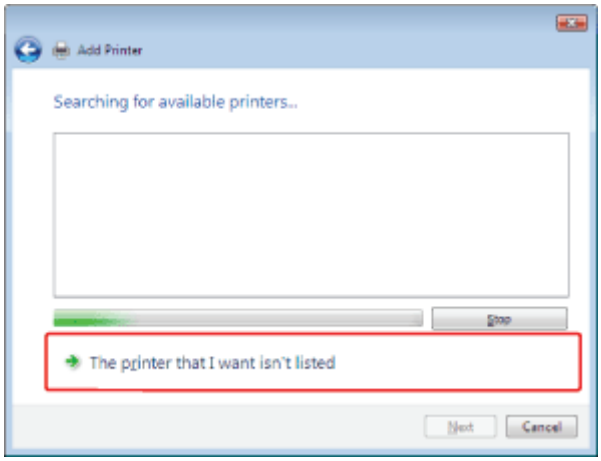


5. **Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].**



→ Searching for the printer on the network starts automatically.

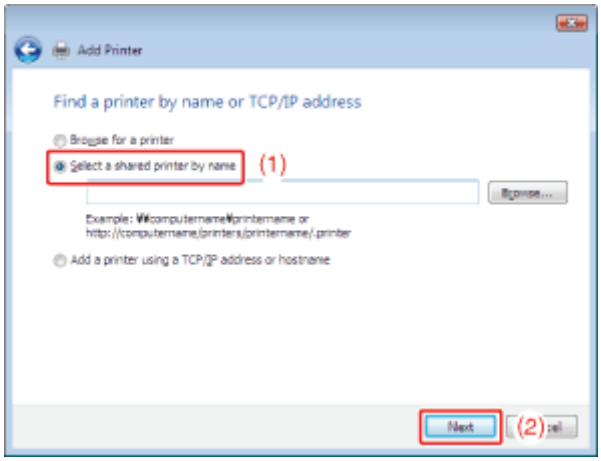
6. **Click [The printer that I want isn't listed].**



---

7. Perform the following procedure.

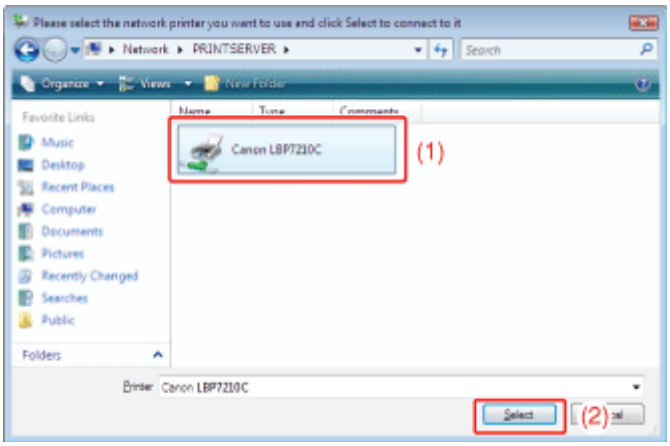
(1) Select [Select a shared printer by name].
(2) Click [Next].



---

8. Select a shared printer.

(1) Select a shared printer on the print server.
(2) Click [Select].



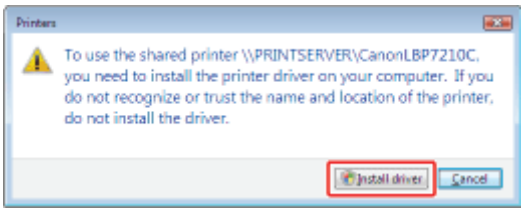
NOTE

Specifying the network path directly
Specify the network path as "\\the print server name (the computer name of the print server)\the printer name".

If you are not sure about the print server name (the computer name of the print server)
Ask your print server administrator about the problem.

---

9. **Click [Install driver].**

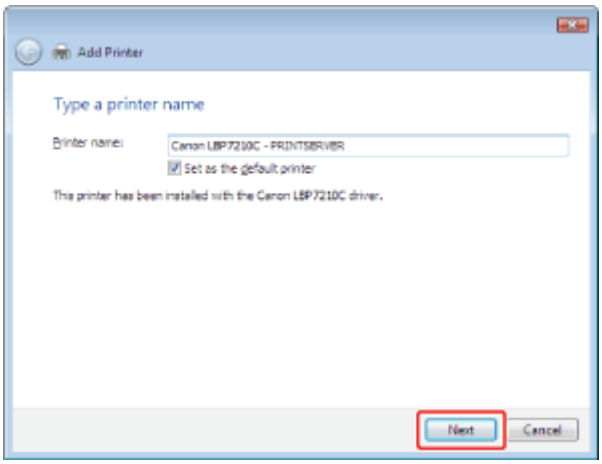


NOTE

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears
Click [Continue].

---

10. **Click [Next].**

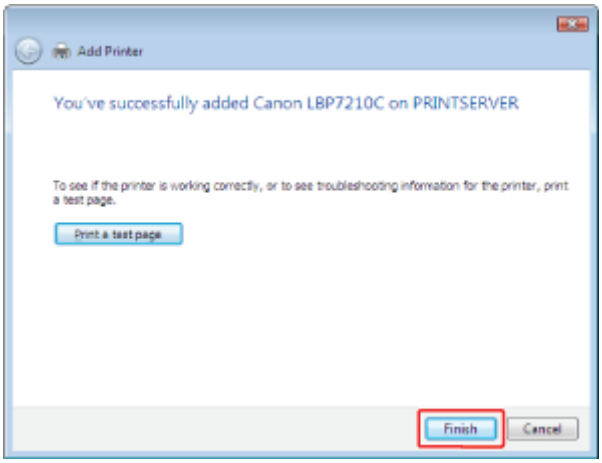


NOTE

If another printer driver has already been installed
[Set as the default printer] is displayed. To set the printer as the default printer, select the check box.

---

11. **Click [Finish].**



NOTE

Printing a test page
Click [Print a test page].

→ A confirmation dialog box appears. Click [Close] to close the dialog box.

Windows XP and Server 2003

1. **Turn the computer on and start up Windows XP or Server 2003.**

2. **Log on to Windows XP or Server 2003.**

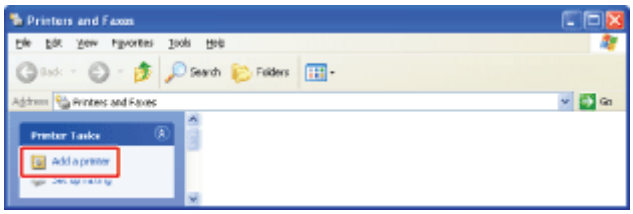
NOTE

When logging on as a user without administrative rights
A user without administrative rights can also install the printer driver.

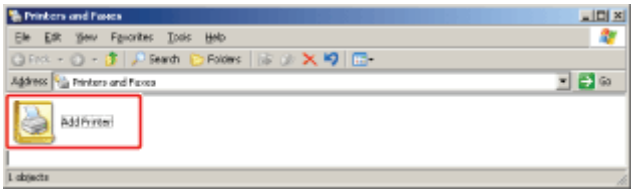
3. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].

4. **Display [Add Printer Wizard].**
   - Windows XP

Click [Add a printer].

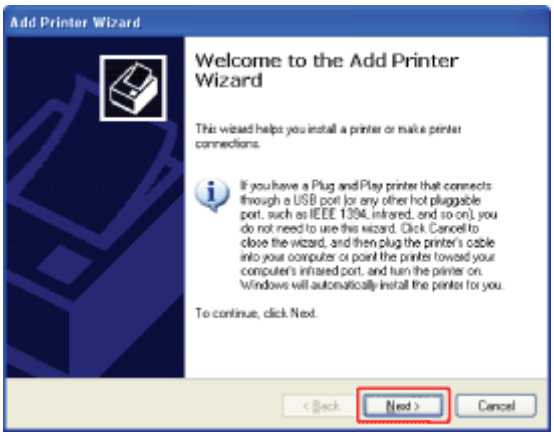


- Windows Server 2003
  Double-click [Add Printer].



---

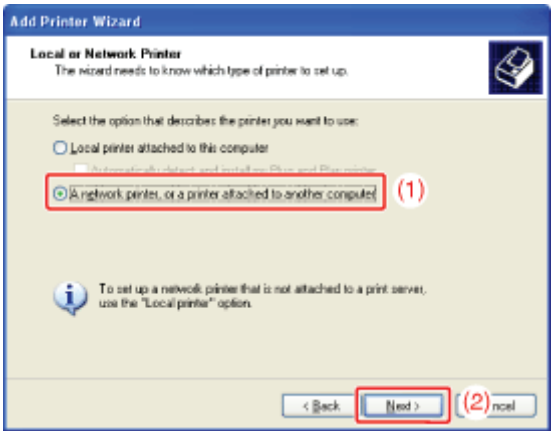
5. Click [Next].



---

6. Select a printer type.

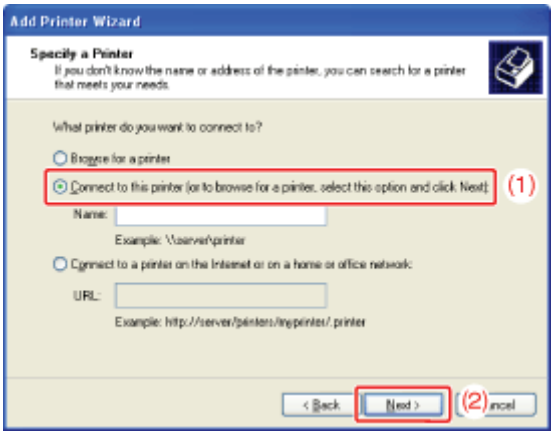
(1) Select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer].
(2) Click [Next].



---

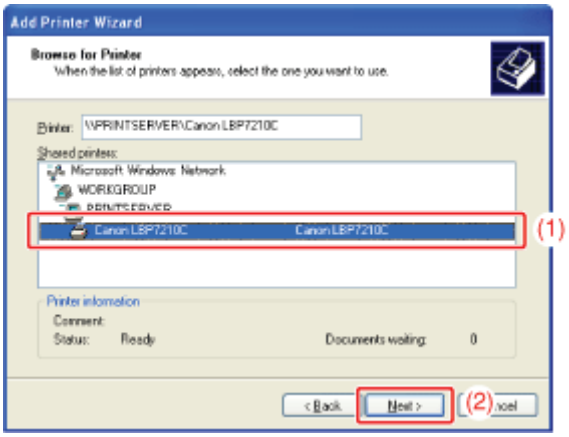
7. Perform the following procedure.

(1) Select [Connect to this printer (or to browse for a printer, select this option and click Next)].
(2) Click [Next].



8. Select a shared printer.

(1) Select a shared printer on the print server.
(2) Click [Next].



NOTE

If the [Connect to Printer] dialog box appears
Follow the directions in the message.

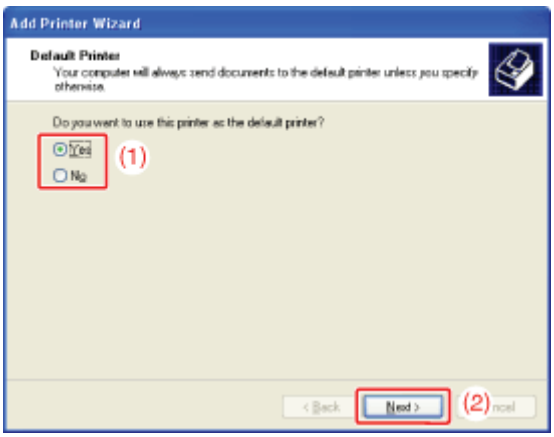
Specifying the network path directly
Specify the network path as "\\the print server name (the computer name of the print server)\the printer name".

If you are not sure about the print server name (the computer name of the print server)
Ask your print server administrator about the problem.

9. When the following screen appears, select whether or not to use this printer as the default printer.

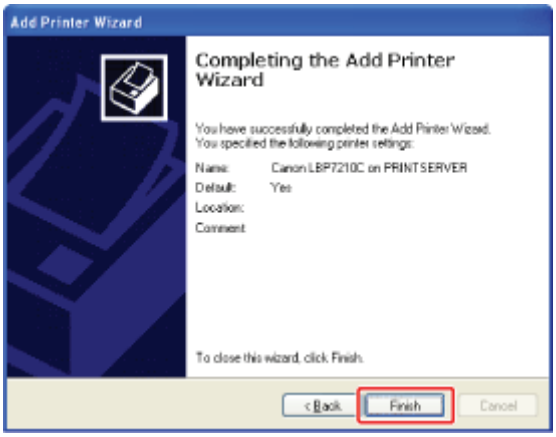
(1) If you want to use the printer as the default printer, select [Yes].

(2) Click [Next].



---

10. **Click [Finish].**



Installing from [Windows Explorer]

1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

---

2. **Log on to Windows.**

---

3. **Display [Windows Explorer].**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Windows Explorer].

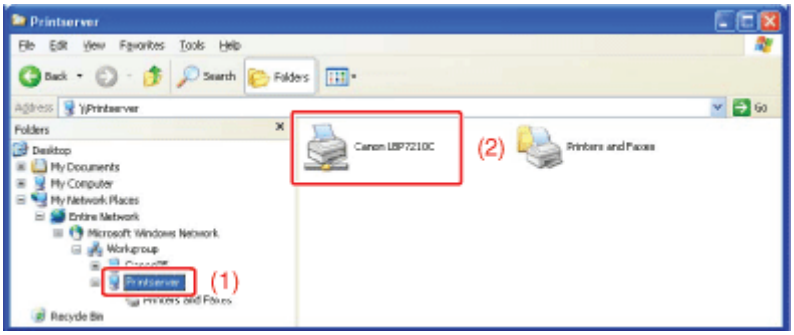
---

4. **Perform the following procedure.**

(1) Select the print server from [My Network Places] (from [Network] for Windows

Vista and Server 2008).

(2) Double-click the shared printer icon or drag and drop the icon into the [Printers and Faxes] folder or [Printers] folder.



NOTE

If you are not sure about the print server name (the computer name of the print server)
Ask your print server administrator about the problem.

---

5. Follow the on-screen instructions to install the printer driver.

[E-16] To Check the Processor Version of Windows Vista or Server 2008

If you are not sure whether you are using 32-bit Windows Vista/Server 2008 or 64-bit Windows Vista/Server 2008, you can check that using the following procedure.

> **NOTE**
>
> **About the screenshots**
> This procedure is described using screenshots from Windows Vista.

---

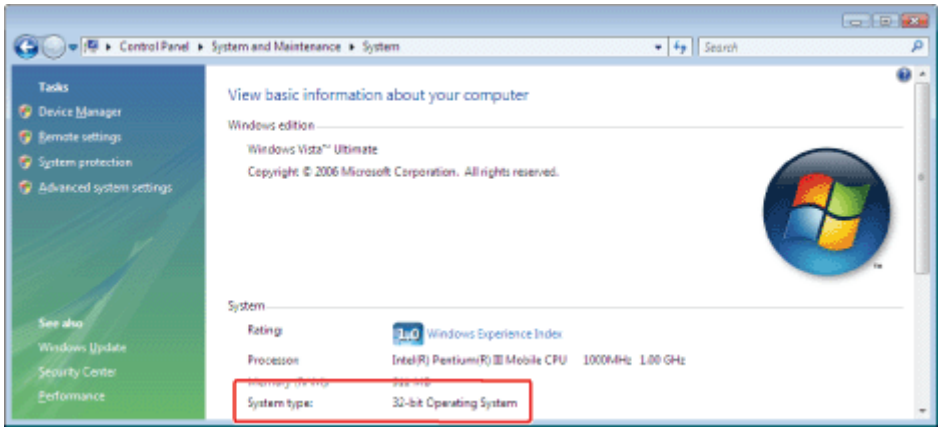
1. **From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel].**

---

2. **Display [System].**
   - Windows Vista
     Click [System and Maintenance] → [System].
   - Windows Server 2008
     Double-click [System].

---

3. **Check the processor version.**
   - For a 32-bit operating system
     [32-bit Operating System] is displayed.
   - For a 64-bit operating system
     [64-bit Operating System] is displayed.



[E-17] Printing Configuration Page Print

After installing the printer driver, check the operations by Configuration Page Print.
Configuration Page Print is used to print the settings of the printer unit, the total number of printed pages, and other printer information.

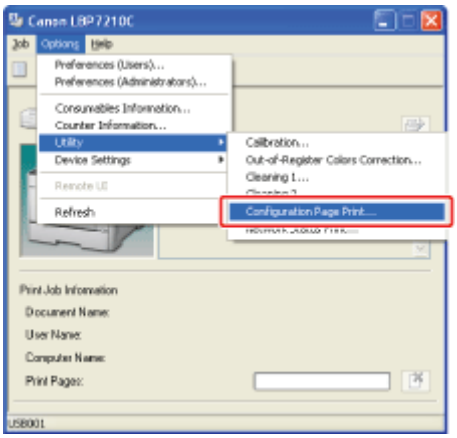
> **NOTE**
>
> **Load A4 size paper.**
> The Configuration Page Print is set to print on A4 size paper.
> Be sure to load A4 size paper when printing the Configuration Page Print.

1. **Load A4-size paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer.**
   "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

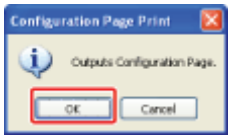
2. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

> **NOTE**
>
> **When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver**
> Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

3. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Configuration Page Print].**



4. **Click [OK].**



→ Configuration Page Print is printed.

NOTE

Sample of Configuration Page Print

† This is a sample of Configuration Page Print. The contents may differ from the Configuration Page Print printed by your printer.

If Configuration Page Print is not printed properly

"Printing Does Not Work"

[E-18] Printing a Test Page in Windows

You can check the operations of the printer driver by printing a test page in Windows.

IMPORTANT

If an error message appears in the Printer Status Window
Follow the on-screen instructions to solve the problem, and then print a test page.
"Printer Status Window"

---

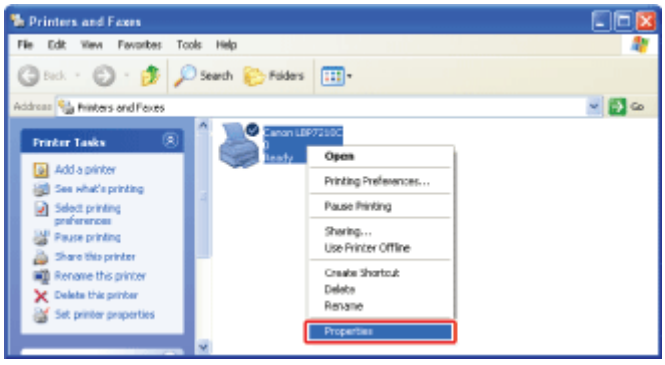
1. **Load A4-size paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer.**
"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

---

2. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

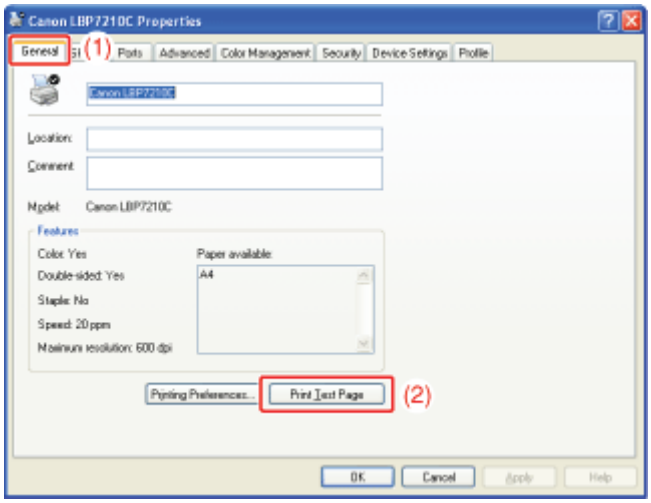
3. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**



---

4. **Print a test page.**

(1) Display the [General] sheet.
(2) Click [Print Test Page].



→ The test page is printed.

NOTE

If the test page is not printed properly

"Printing Does Not Work"

[E-19] Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]

The process of removing the printer driver to restore the computer to the same state as before the printer driver was installed is referred to as uninstallation. To uninstall the printer driver, perform the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

Uninstallation by a user with administrative rights
A user without administrative rights cannot perform the uninstallation. To perform the uninstallation, be sure to log on as a user with administrative rights.

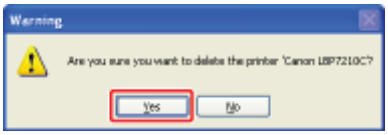
† Contact your system administrator if you are not sure about your administrative rights.

Disconnect the USB cable before uninstalling the printer driver (Windows 7).
Be sure to disconnect the USB cable before uninstalling the printer driver.

NOTE

If a user without administrative rights installed the printer driver
The printer driver may not be able to uninstalled successfully using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller] depending on your operating system.
In this case, uninstall the printer driver using the following procedure.

1. Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].
2. Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Delete] from the pop-up menu.
3. Click [Yes].



4. Uninstall the printer driver using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller].

---

1. **Close the following files and programs if open.**
   - Help file
   - Printer Status Window

- Control Panel
- Other applications

---

2. Run [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller].

- Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Canon Printer Uninstaller] → [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller].

NOTE

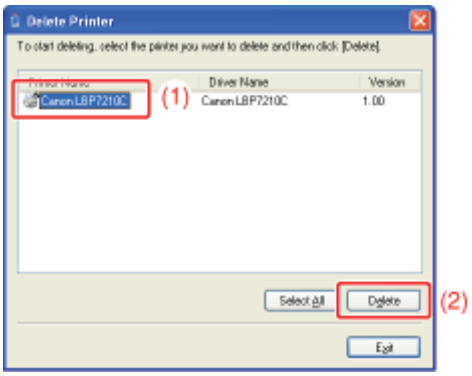
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

---

3. Perform the following procedure.

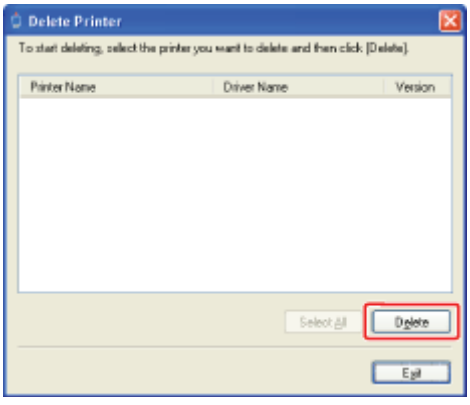
If this printer is displayed

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Delete].

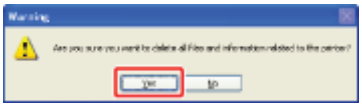


If this printer is not displayed

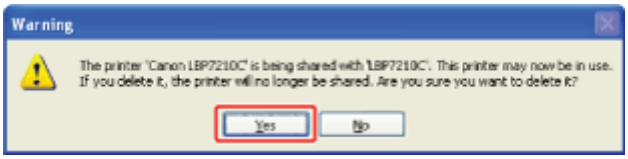
Click [Delete].



4. Click [Yes].



If the printer is used as a shared printer, the following screen appears. Read the contents of the message, and then click [Yes].



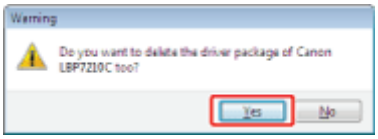
→ The uninstallation starts. Please wait a moment.

† Depending on your environment, the uninstallation may take a long time.

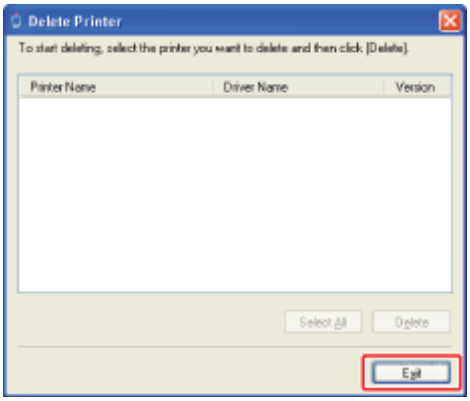
NOTE

If you are using Windows Vista and Server 2008

The following dialog box appears. Read the contents of the message, and then click [Yes] or [Yes To All].



5. Click [Exit].



6. Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.

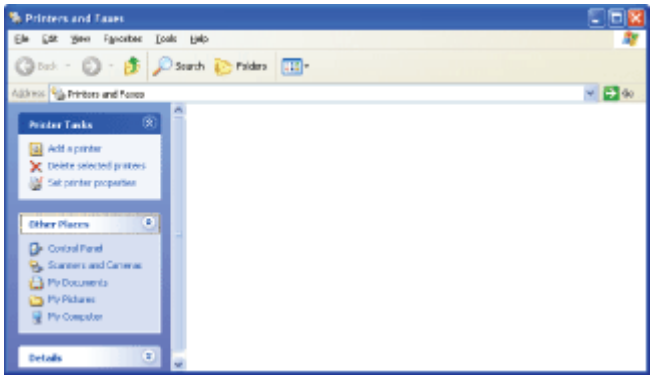
- Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
  From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows XP Home Edition
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows Vista

From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].

- Windows Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

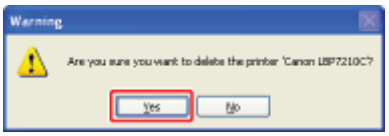
7. Make sure that the icon for this printer is not displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.



IMPORTANT

If the icon for this printer is displayed

1. Right-click the icon, and then select [Delete] from the pop-up menu.
2. Click [Yes].



† Be sure to delete the icon. Unless you delete the icon, you cannot install the printer driver again.

---

8. Restart Windows.

IMPORTANT

If the uninstallation fails

"Uninstalling the Printer Driver in [Control Panel]"

Uninstallation of the e-Manual

The installed e-Manual are not uninstalled by uninstalling the printer driver.
See "Uninstalling the e-Manual" and uninstall the e-Manual.

[E-20] Uninstalling the Printer Driver in [Control Panel]

If you cannot uninstall the printer driver using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller], use the following procedure to uninstall the printer driver.

---

1. **Perform the following procedure.**

   - Windows XP
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Add or Remove Programs].
   - Windows Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] → [Add or Remove Programs].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Uninstall a program].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Programs and Features].

---

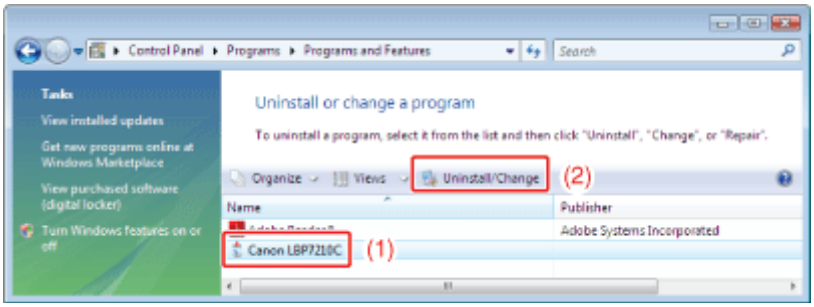
2. **Perform the following procedure.**

   - Windows XP and Server 2003

     (1) Select [Canon LBP7210C].
     (2) Click [Change/Remove].

   - Windows Vista and Server 2008

     (1) Select [Canon LBP7210C].
     (2) Click [Uninstall/Change].



NOTE

If [Canon LBP7210C] is not listed

"Uninstalling the USB Class Driver"

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

Click [Continue].

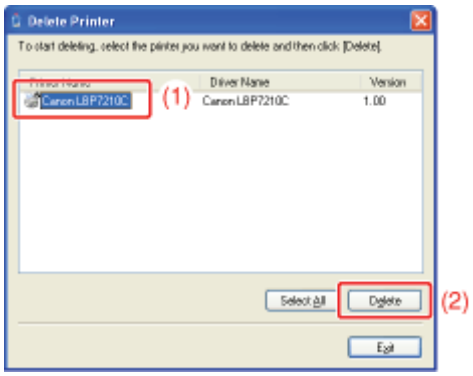
---

3. Perform the following procedure.

If this printer is displayed

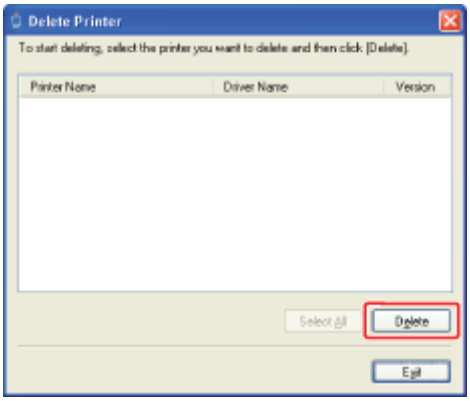
(1) Select this printer.

(2) Click [Delete].



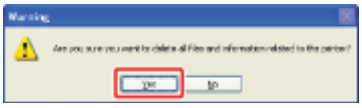
If this printer is not displayed

Click [Delete].

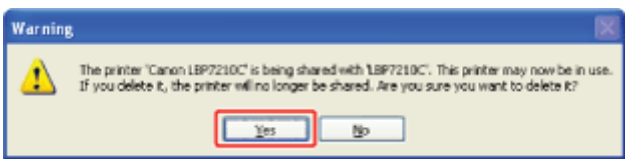


---

4. Click [Yes].



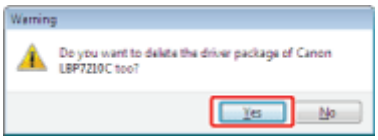
If the printer is used as a shared printer, the following screen appears. Read the contents of the message, and then click [Yes].



→ The uninstallation starts. Please wait a moment.
† Depending on your environment, the uninstallation may take a long time.

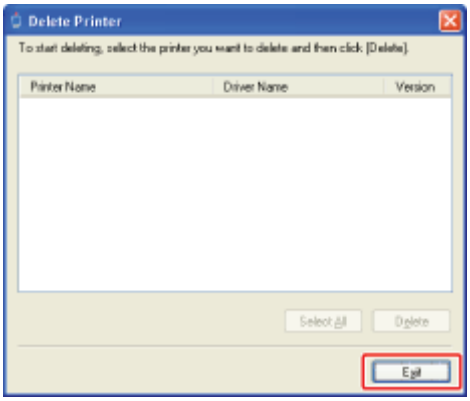
NOTE

If you are using Windows Vista and Server 2008
The following dialog box appears. Read the contents of the message, and then click [Yes] or [Yes To All].



---

5. **Click [Exit].**



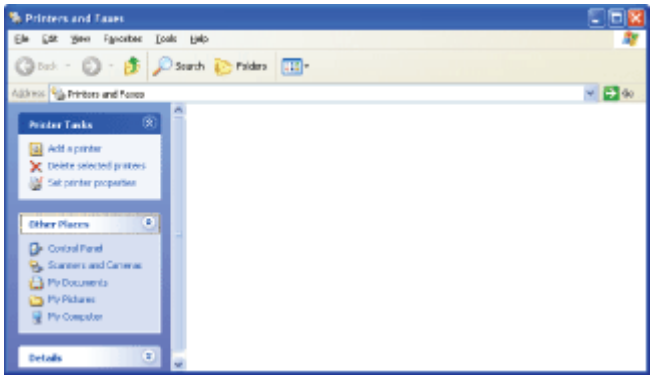
---

6. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**

- Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
  From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows XP Home Edition
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows Vista
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
- Windows Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

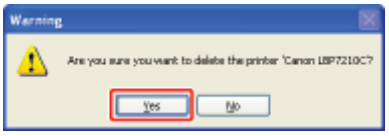
7. **Make sure that the icon for this printer is not displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**



IMPORTANT

If the icon for this printer is displayed

1. Right-click the icon, and then select [Delete] from the pop-up menu.
2. Click [Yes].



† Be sure to delete the icon. Unless you delete the icon, you cannot install the printer driver again.

---

8. Restart Windows.

IMPORTANT

Uninstallation of the e-Manual

The installed e-Manual are not uninstalled by uninstalling the printer driver.
See "Uninstalling the e-Manual" and uninstall the e-Manual.

[E-21] Uninstalling the USB Class Driver

Uninstall the USB class driver under the following circumstances.

- If the printer driver installed using a USB connection cannot be uninstalled properly
- If you cannot install the printer driver properly even after reinstalling it

---

1. **Check the following.**
   - Check that the printer and computer are connected using a USB cable.
   - Check that the printer is on.

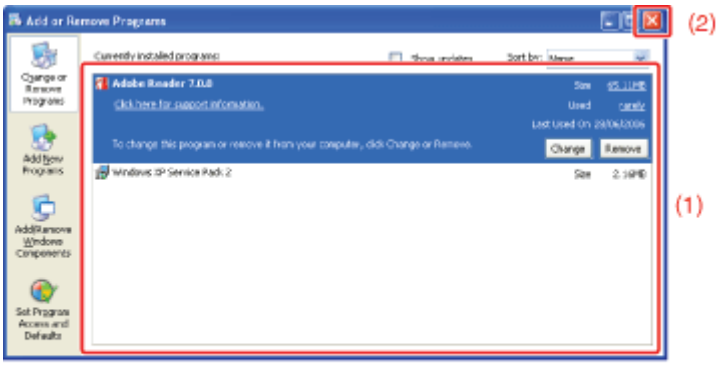
---

2. **Perform the following procedure.**
   - Windows XP
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Add or Remove Programs].
   - Windows Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] → [Add or Remove Programs].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Uninstall a program].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Programs and Features].

---

3. **Make sure that [Canon LBP7210C] is not displayed.**

(1) Make sure that [Canon LBP7210C] is not displayed in the dialog box.
(2) Click [ ] to close the dialog box.



NOTE

If [Canon LBP7210C] is displayed
See "Uninstalling the Printer Driver in [Control Panel]" and delete [Canon LBP7210C] in the

dialog box.

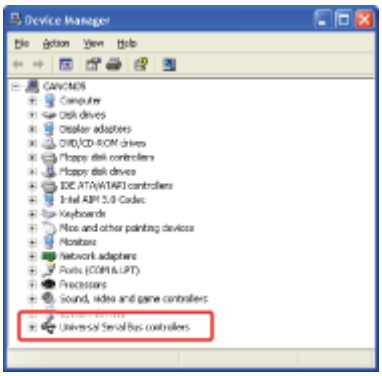
4. **Display [Device Manager].**

- Windows XP
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel].
  2. Click [Performance and Maintenance] → [System].
  3. Click the [Hardware] tab → [Device Manager].
- Windows Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel] → [System].
  2. Click the [Hardware] tab → [Device Manager].
- Windows Vista
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel].
  2. Click [Hardware and Sound] → [View hardware and devices].
- Windows Server 2008
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel].
  2. Double-click [Device Manager].

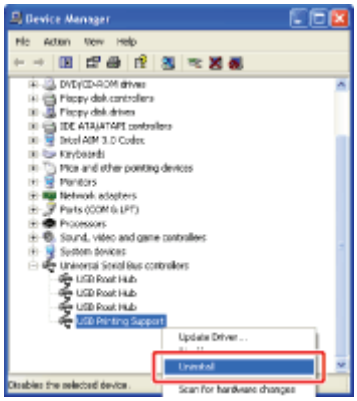
NOTE

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

5. **Double-click [Universal Serial Bus controllers].**



6. **Right-click [USB Printing Support], then select [Uninstall] from the pop-up menu.**



IMPORTANT

Do not uninstall any other device drivers.
If you uninstall them by mistake, Windows may not operate properly.

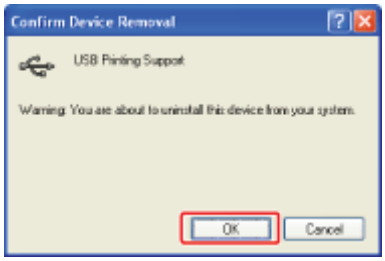
NOTE

If [USB Printing Support] is not displayed
The USB class driver is not installed properly.

If the USB class driver is under [Other Devices]
The USB class driver is not installed properly. Select [Unknown device], and then uninstall it.

---

7. **Click [OK].**



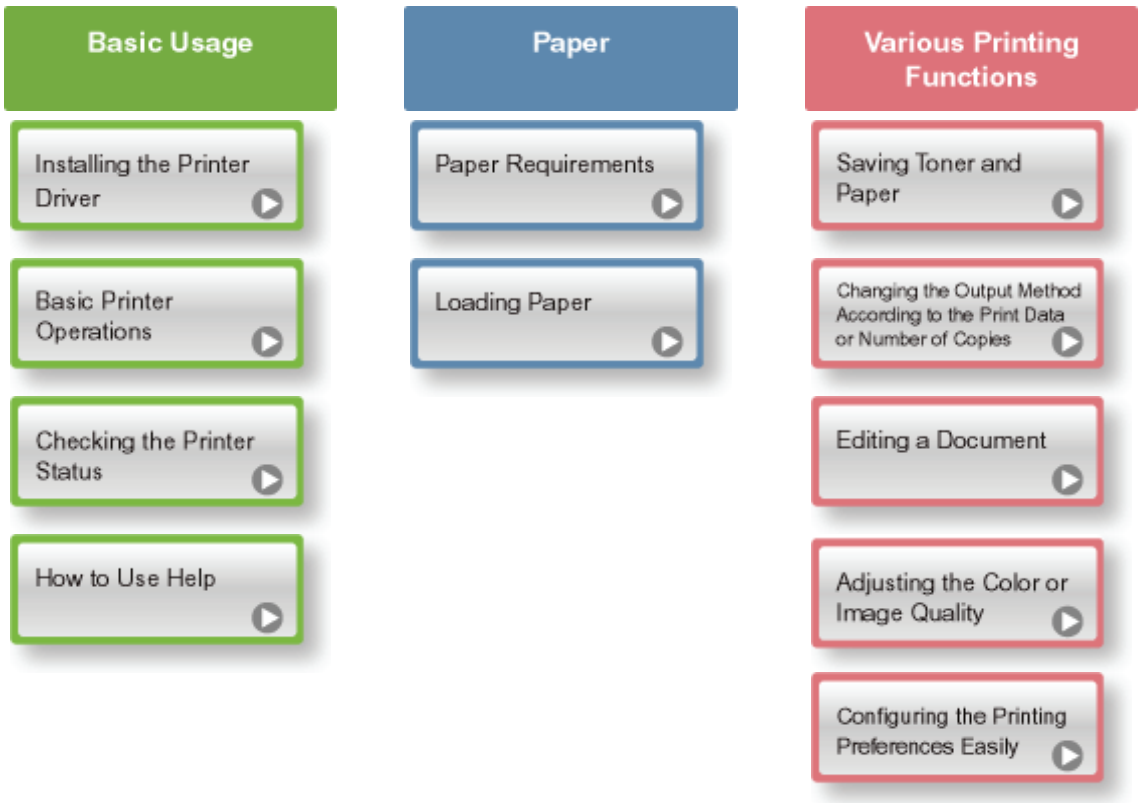
---

8. **Click [ ] to close the [Device Manager] dialog box.**

---

9. **Disconnect the USB cable from the computer, and then restart Windows.**

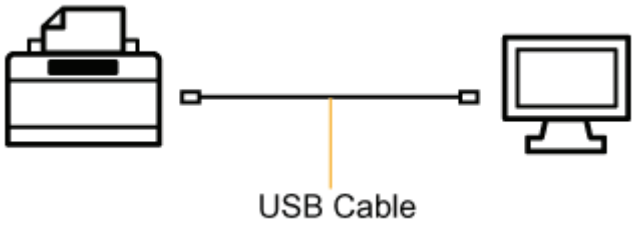
[F] Printing


Basic Usage
Installing the Printer Driver
Basic Printer Operations
Checking the Printer Status
How to Use Help
Paper
Paper Requirements
Loading Paper
Various Printing Functions
Saving Toner and Paper
Changing the Output Method According to the Print Data or Number of Copies
Editing a Document
Adjusting the Color or Image Quality
Configuring the Printing Preferences Easily

[F-02] Installing the Printer Driver

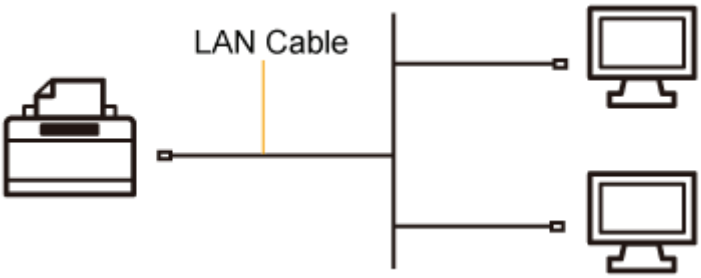
The printer driver is software required for printing from an application.
The procedure for installing the printer driver varies depending on the system environment. See the following according to your system environment.

If the printer and computer are connected by a USB cable



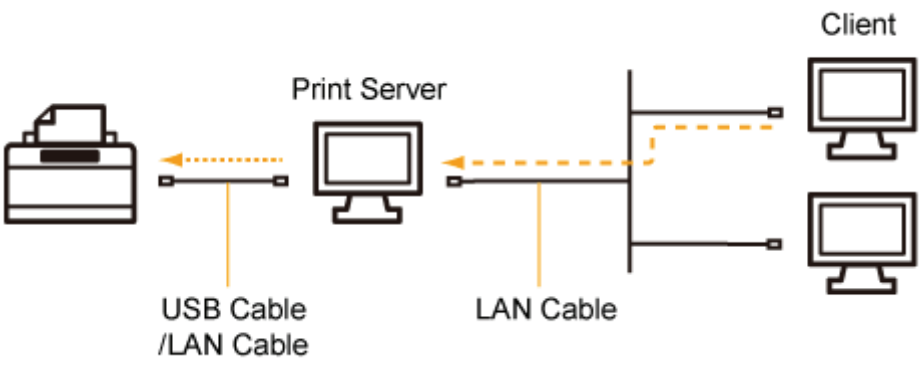
"Installing from CD-ROM Setup"
"Installing with Plug and Play"

If the printer and computer are connected by a LAN cable



"Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"
"Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)"

Using a Print Server



If your computer is the print server

- If the printer and print server are connected by a USB cable
  - "Installing from CD-ROM Setup"
  - "Installing with Plug and Play"
- If the printer and print server are connected by a LAN cable
  - "Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"
  - "Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)"

If your computer is a client computer

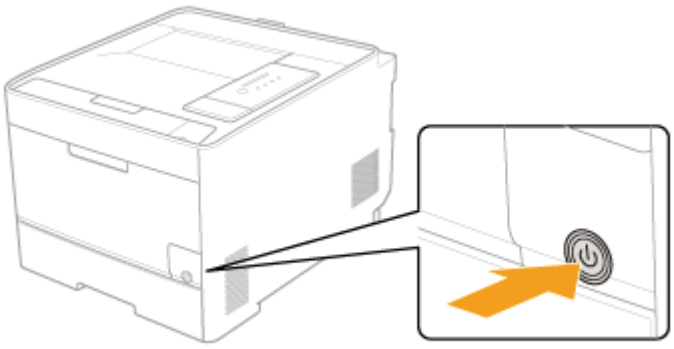
- "Installation on Clients"

[F-03] Turning the Printer On/Off

- Turning On the Printer
- Turning Off the Printer

Turning On the Printer

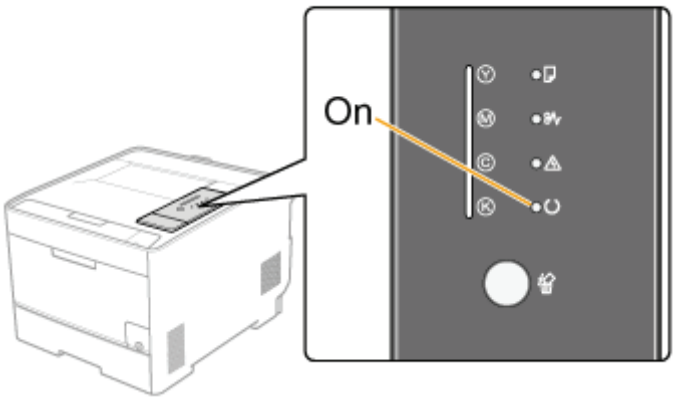
1. **Press the power switch to turn the printer On.**



→ All the indicators on the printer blink, and the printer initiates a self-diagnostic test on the printer unit and optional accessories.

- **If the self-diagnostic test result is normal**

  The ◯ (Ready) indicator (green) turns on, and the printer is ready to print.



- **If the self-diagnostic test result is not normal**

  The ⚠ (Alarm) indicator (orange) turns on or blinks.
  "The Alarm Indicator Is On or Blinking"

IMPORTANT

Do not turn the printer on immediately after turning it off.
If you want to cycle the power of the printer, wait at least 10 seconds before turning it on again.

If the printer does not operate properly
"Problem Diagnosis Menu"

If an error message appears in the Printer Status Window
"A Message Appears in the Printer Status Window"

When turning on the printer for the first time after the printer installation

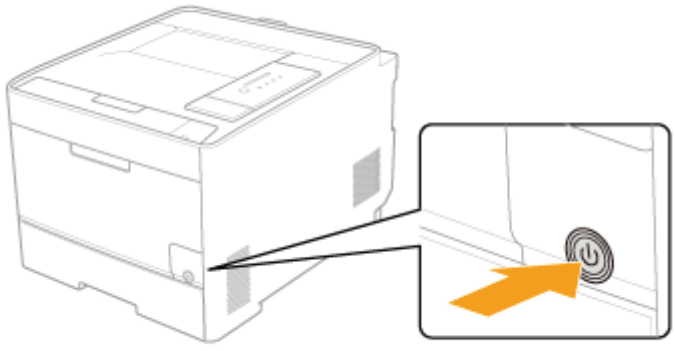
- Before turning on the printer, be sure to remove the sealing tape from the toner cartridges installed in the printer.
  "Preparing the Toner Cartridges"

  † If the printer is turned on before the sealing tape is removed, an error message is displayed in the Printer Status Window.
- Before turning on the printer, be sure to insert the paper drawer in the printer.
- Although a sheet of blank paper may be output, this is not an error.

Turning Off the Printer

1. **Check that the printer is not performing the following operations.**
   - Printing
   - While the printer is running a self-diagnostic test immediately after turning the power on (All the indicators are blinking)

2. **Press the power switch to turn the printer Off.**



IMPORTANT

Precautions when turning off the printer
If you turn the printer off, all print data remaining in the printer memory will be erased.

Power consumption when the power is off (when the power switch is not pressed)
Even if the power of the printer is turned off, power is consumed only slightly while the power plug is inserted into the AC power outlet. To cut the power consumption completely, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

[F-04] Printing (Basic Procedure)

This section describes the basic procedure for printing from an application, taking Adobe Reader 7.0 as an example.

† The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.

NOTE

When installing the printer driver

"Procedure for Installing the Printer and the Printer Driver"

---

1. **Load paper in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray.**

NOTE

How to load paper

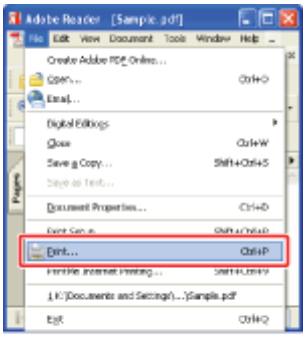
"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"
"Loading Index Cards"
"Loading Envelopes"
"Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

---

2. **Open the PDF file to be printed using Adobe Reader.**

---

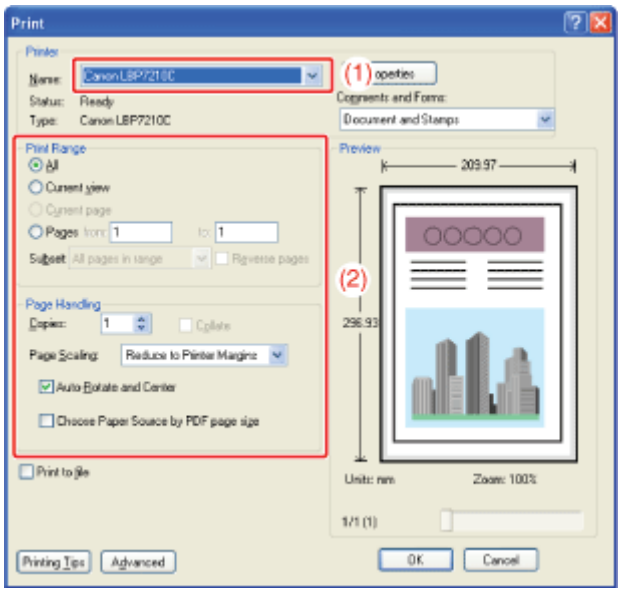
3. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu.**



---

4. **Configure the printing preferences.**

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Configure the printing preferences.



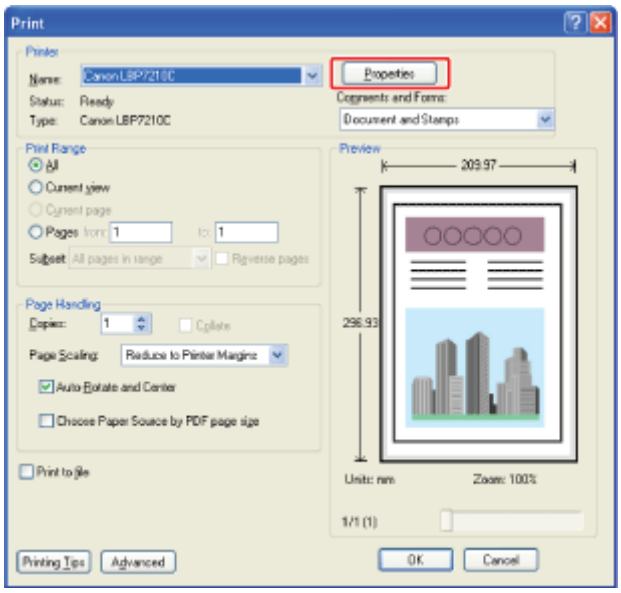
NOTE

Changing the printer name

You can change the printer name in the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.

---

5. Click [Properties].

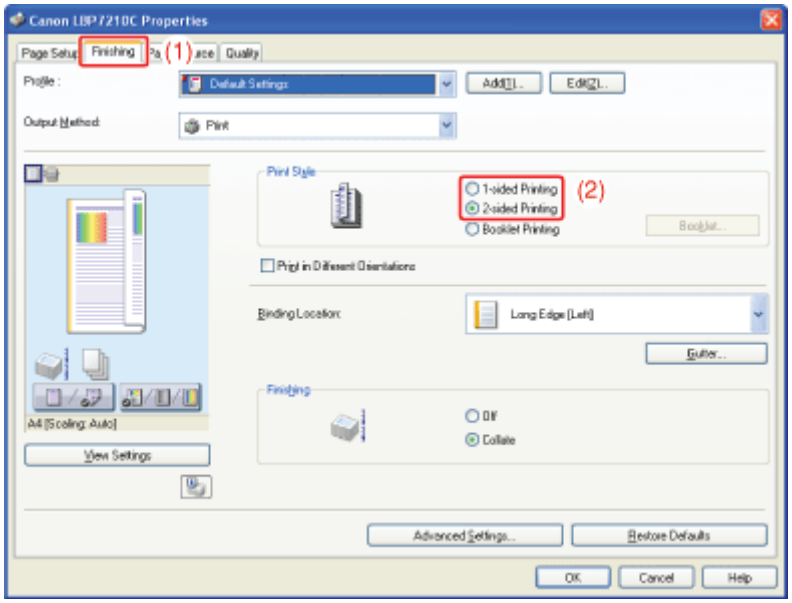


---

6. Specify the setting for [Print Style].

(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.

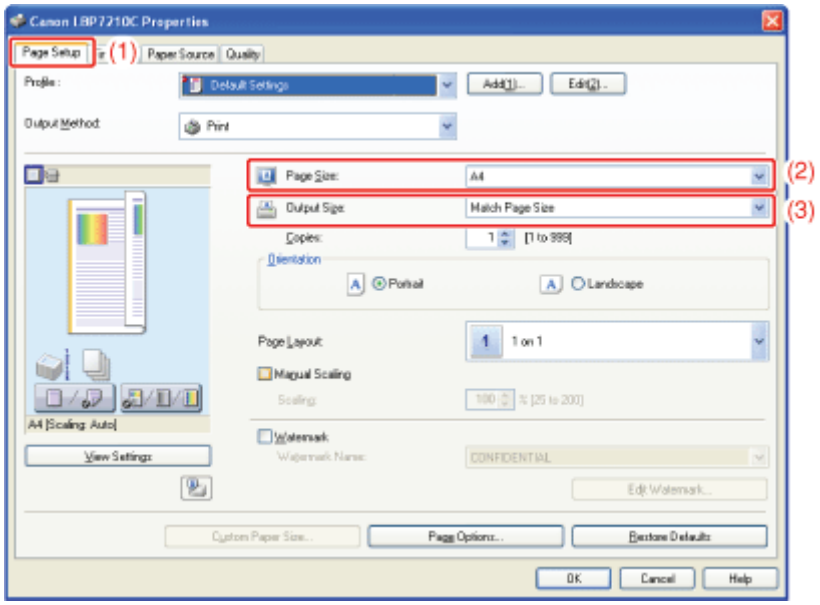
(2) Select [2-sided Printing] or [1-sided Printing].



---

7. Specify the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size].

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the page size of the document created by an application.
(3) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper source as needed.



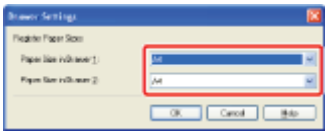
IMPORTANT

If the [Page Size] setting and [Output Size] setting are not the same
The print is automatically reduced or enlarged to fit on the page.

When printing from the paper drawer
Use the following procedure to check that the [Output Size] setting and [Register Paper Sizes] setting are the same.

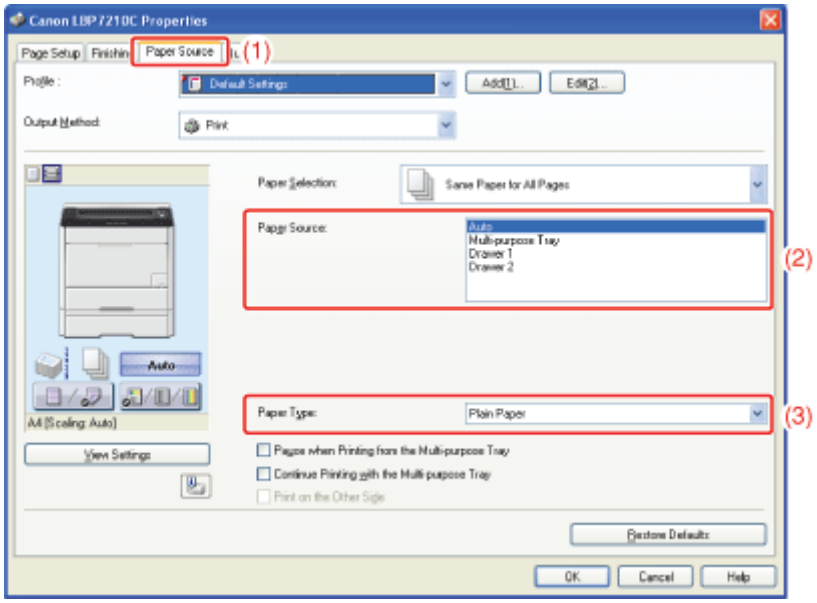
1. Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window).
2. From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].
3. Check that the [Register Paper Sizes] setting is the same as the [Output Size]

setting.



8. Specify the settings for [Paper Source] and [Paper Type].

(1) Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
(2) Select the paper source you want to use.
(3) Select the type of the paper loaded in the paper source.



NOTE

When [Paper Selection] is set to a setting other than [Same Paper for All Pages]
The [Paper Source] setting changes as follows.

- [First Page]
- [Second Page]
- [Cover Page]
- [Other Pages]
- [Last Page]
- [Cover Sheets]

Select the paper source to be used for each page.

Using Preview to specify the setting for [Paper Source]
You can also specify the setting for [Paper Source] using Preview.
"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

When printing paper of a type other than plain paper or envelopes from the paper drawer
Select [Drawer 1] or [Drawer 2] (optional) in [Paper Source].

† If you select [Auto], you cannot print from the paper drawer. (Paper is fed from the multi-purpose tray.)

About [Paper Type]

Specify the setting according to the paper type as follows.

Paper Type		Setting for [Paper Type] in the Printer Driver
Plain paper	60 to 74 g/m^2	[Plain Paper L]*1
	60 g/m^2	[Plain Paper L2]*3
	70 to 90 g/m^2	[Plain Paper]*1*2
Heavy paper	86 to 119 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 1]*2
	120 to 128 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 2]
	129 to 176 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 3]
Transparency (black-and-white printing only)		[Transparency]
Label		[Labels]
Coated paper	100 to 110 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 1]
	120 to 130 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 2]
	155 to 165 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 3]
	210 to 220 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 4]
Envelope		[Envelope]
		[Envelope H]*5

*1 If you want to print paper of 70 to 74 g/m^2, you can specify either of [Plain Paper] or [Plain Paper L].*3

*2 If you want to print paper of 86 to 90 g/m^2, you can specify either of [Plain Paper] or [Heavy Paper 1].*4

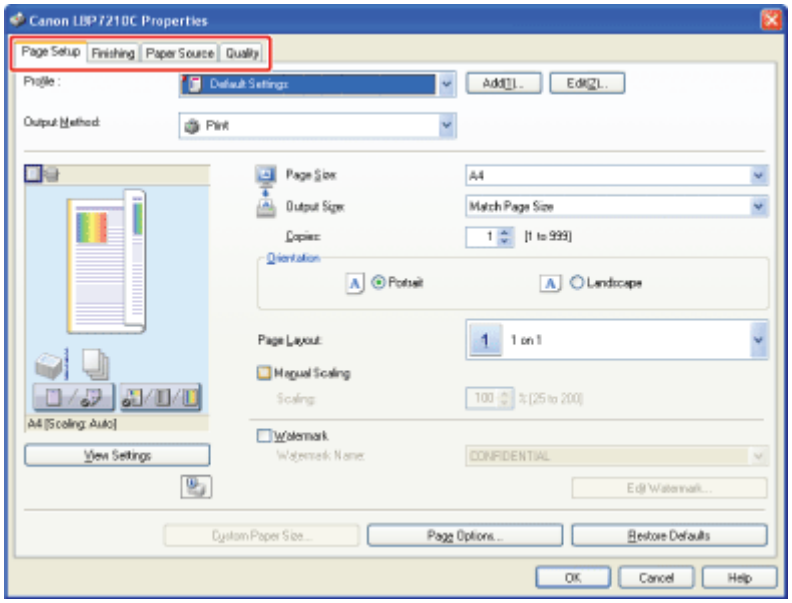
*3 If the printed paper curls (the printed side curls outward) when printed 60 g/m^2 paper with [Plain Paper L] selected, select [Plain Paper L2].

*4 If either setting causes the following problems etc., specify the other setting to print.

- Output paper curls.
- Residual images appear on non-printed areas.
- The toner does not fix onto paper well, and the printing comes out faint.

*5 If you want to improve the toner fixation when printed with [Envelope] selected, select [Envelope H].

9. Specify the other printing preferences in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] sheets as needed.



NOTE

For details on the settings

See Help.

"How to Use Help"

---

10. Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

NOTE

About the settings

- It is recommended that you check the [Page Setup] sheet and [Paper Source] sheet settings each time you print a document.
- The settings that are specified here apply only to jobs to be printed from the same application. Exiting the application resets the changed settings to the default settings.
  For details on the procedure for changing the default values for printing preferences, see "Changing the Default Values for Printing Preferences".

---

11. Click [OK].

→ The printer starts printing.

NOTE

If the printer cannot print properly

"Printing Does Not Work"

[F-05] Canceling a Job

This printer allows you to cancel a print job using any one of the following methods.

- Canceling a Print Job Using the Print Queue
- Canceling a Print Job Using the Printer Status Window
- Canceling a Print Job Using the Cancel Job Key
- Canceling a Print Job Using the Remote UI

Canceling a Print Job Using the Print Queue

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

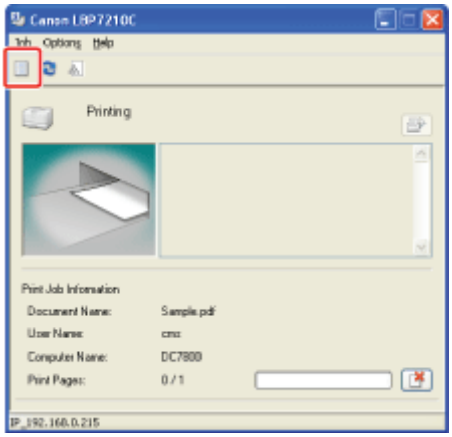
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

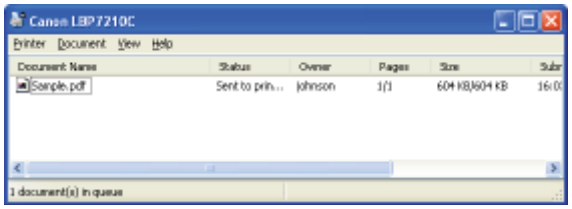
When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Click [ ] (Print Queue).**



→ The print queue is displayed.



NOTE

Displaying the print queue

You can also use the following procedure to display the print queue.

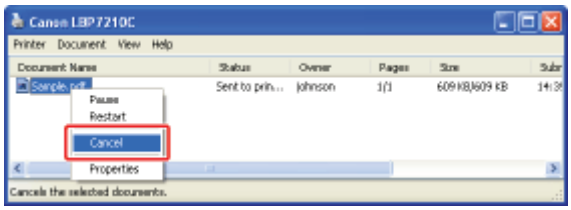
1. Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].
2. Double-click the icon of this printer.

For details on the print queue

See Windows Help.

---

3. Right-click the job that you want to cancel, then select [Cancel] from the pop-up menu.



NOTE

About print jobs from other users

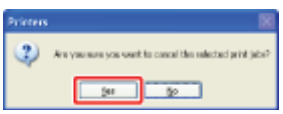
Print jobs from other users are not displayed.
(For the print server environment, all print jobs are displayed on the print server.)

† If an error has occurred with a print job from another user, use the (Cancel Job) key to cancel the job.

"Canceling a Print Job Using the Cancel Job Key"

---

4. Clicking [Yes] cancels the print job.



Canceling a Print Job Using the Printer Status Window

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

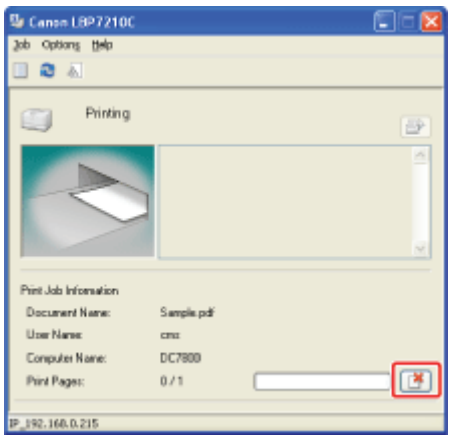
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Clicking [ ] (Cancel Job) cancels the print job.**



NOTE

About print jobs from other users

While another user's job is being printed, you cannot cancel the job.

(For the print server environment, you can cancel print jobs on the print server.)

† If an error has occurred with a print job from another user, use the (Cancel Job) key to cancel the job.

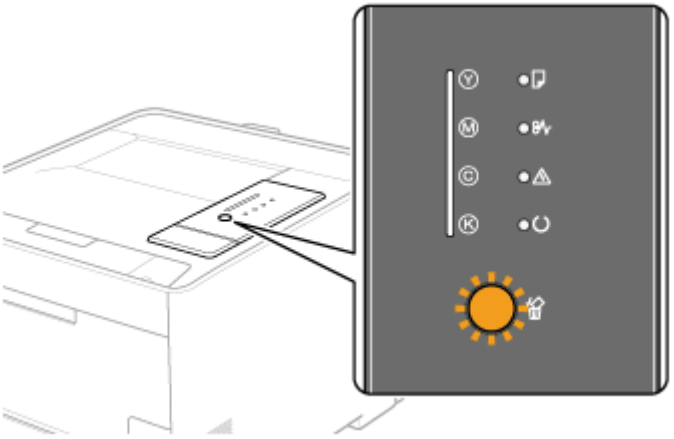
"Canceling a Print Job Using the Cancel Job Key"

Canceling a Print Job Using the Cancel Job Key

If an error has occurred with a print job from another user, use the (Cancel Job) key to cancel the job.

---

1. **Pressing the (Cancel Job) key on the control panel cancels the job.**



NOTE

If print jobs cannot be canceled even when the (Cancel Job) key is pressed

- You cannot cancel the following pages or jobs.
  - Pages of which data has been received already
  - Jobs of which print copy is one sheet of paper
- If the printer switches from one print job to another while the (Cancel Job) key is being pressed (if the job when the key is pressed and the job when the key is released are different), both the jobs cannot be canceled.
- Depending on the settings for the [Settings of the Cancel Job Key] dialog box in the Printer Status Window, you may not be able to cancel a job.

About operation of the (Cancel Job) key

- When the key is released, the printer begins canceling the job.
- The following are the meanings of the (Cancel Job) indicator (orange).
  - While the key is being pressed: Blinking
  - While a job is being canceled: On

Specifying the types of jobs which the (Cancel Job) key can cancel

You can specify the types of jobs which can be canceled in the [Settings of the Cancel Job Key] dialog box in the Printer Status Window.
For details on the [Settings of the Cancel Job Key] dialog box, see Help.
"How to Use Help"

Canceling a Print Job Using the Remote UI

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]

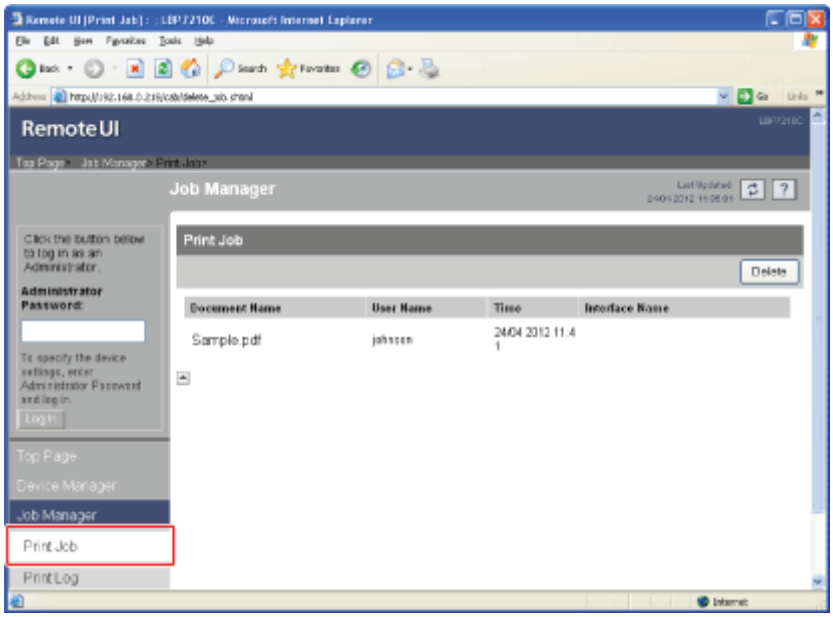
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

---

3. From the [Job Manager] menu, select [Print Job].



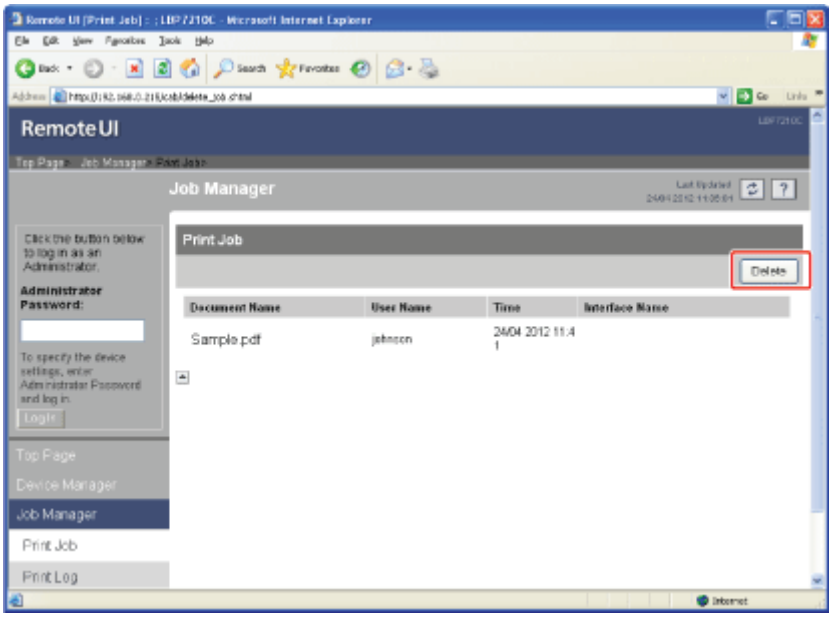
NOTE

About [Document Name]
A job file name of up to 20 characters can be displayed. If the number of characters exceeds 20, the characters after the limited number are not displayed, or some characters are not displayed properly.
Also, depending on the application, the application name may be added to the beginning of the file name.

About [Interface Name]
If you print via USB, [Local] is displayed in [Interface Name]. If you print via the network, nothing is displayed in the field.

---

4. **Clicking [Delete] cancels the print job.**



NOTE

About the pages in process of printing
The pages in process of printing when [Delete] is clicked will be printed.

About print jobs from other users
You can also cancel print jobs from other users.

[F-06] Changing the Default Values for Printing Preferences

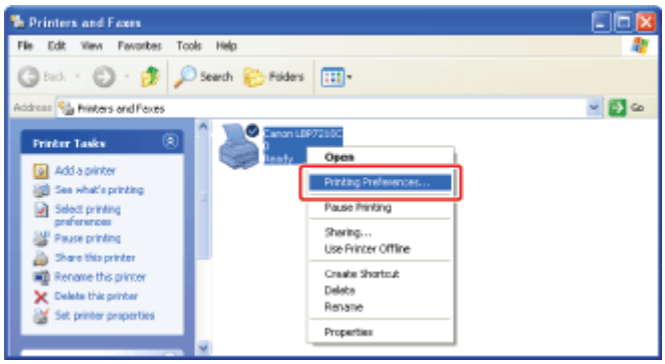
The printing preferences that are specified in "Printing (Basic Procedure)" apply only to jobs to be printed from the same application.
Exiting the application resets the changed settings to the default settings.
You can change the default values for printing preferences which apply to all jobs using the following procedure.

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

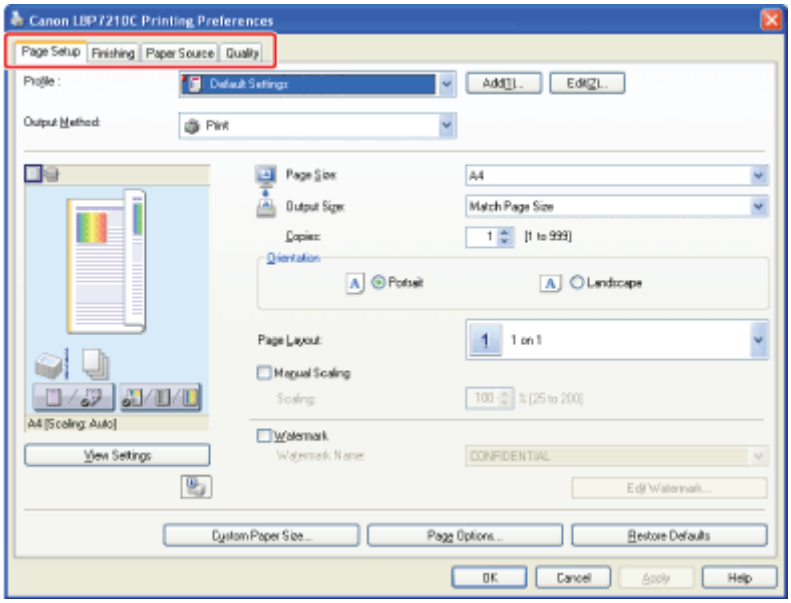
---

2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Printing Preferences] from the pop-up menu.**



---

3. **Specify the default value for printing preferences in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] sheets.**



NOTE

For details on the settings

See Help.

"How to Use Help"

---

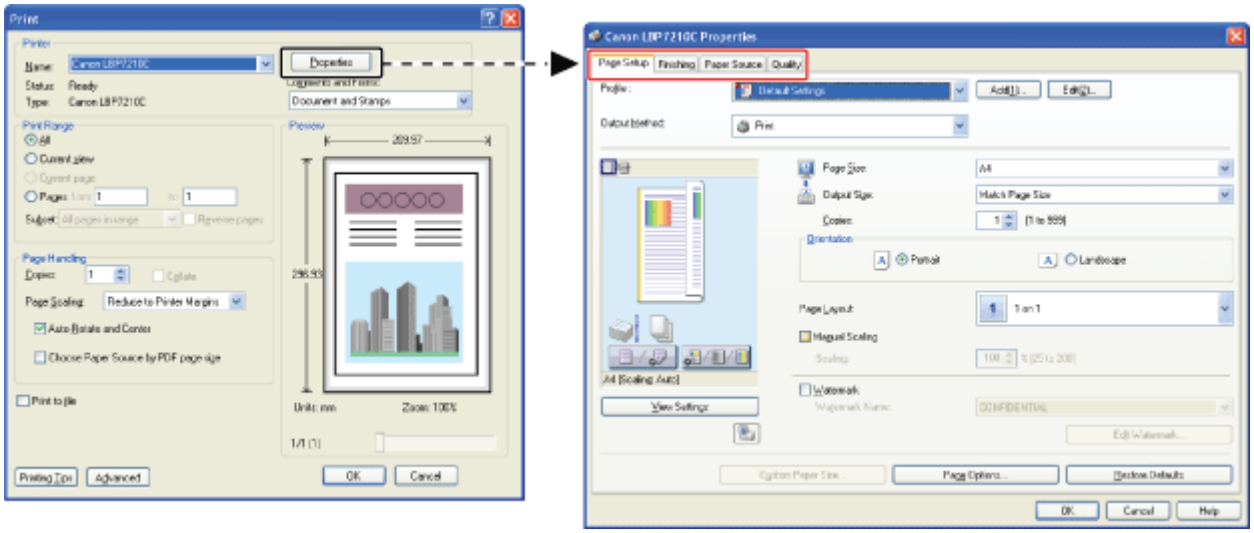
4. Confirm the settings, then click [OK]. The default values for printing preferences are changed.

→ The [Printers and Faxes] folder or the [Printers] folder reappears.

[F-07] Various Sheets in the Printer Driver

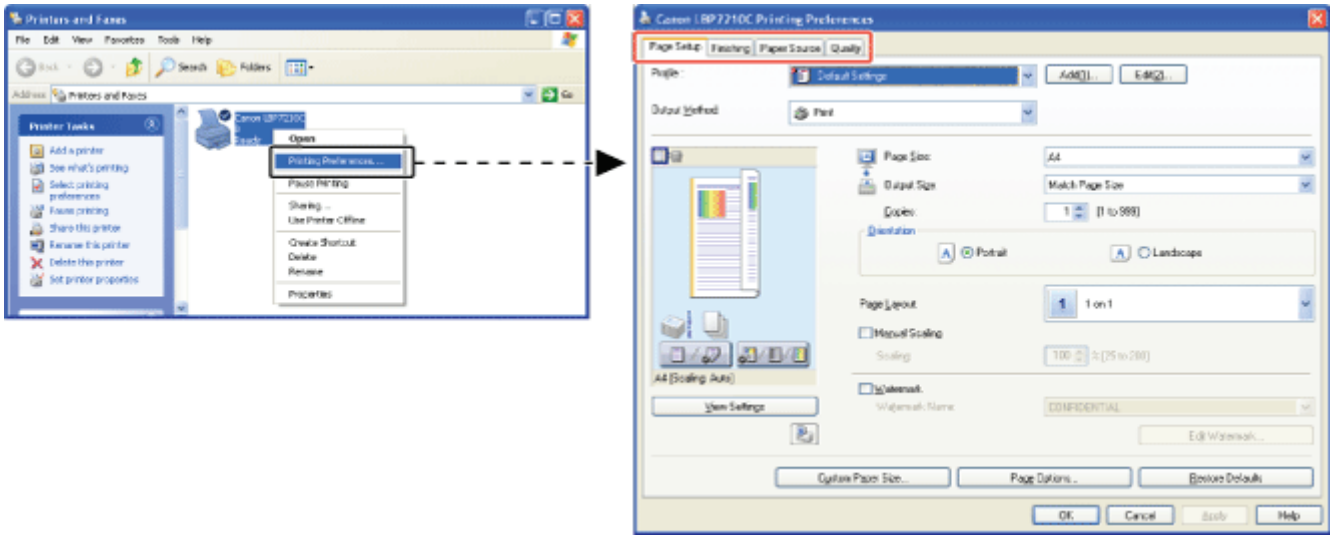
You can switch among the sheets in the printer driver by clicking the tabs across the top of the dialog box.
This section describes the sheets to be displayed.

Opening the printing preferences dialog box in an application



- [Page Setup] Sheet
- [Finishing] Sheet
- [Paper Source] Sheet
- [Quality] Sheet

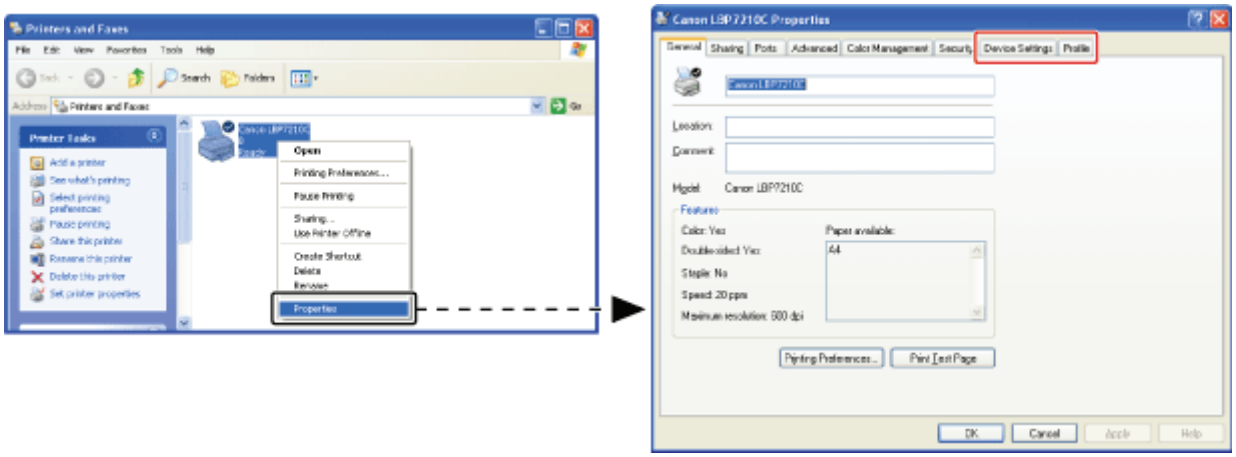
Opening the printing preferences dialog box from the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder (when selecting [Printing Preferences])



- [Page Setup] Sheet
- [Finishing] Sheet
- [Paper Source] Sheet
- [Quality] Sheet

Opening the printing preferences dialog box from the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder

(when [Properties] is selected)



- [Device Settings] Sheet
- [Profile] Sheet

NOTE

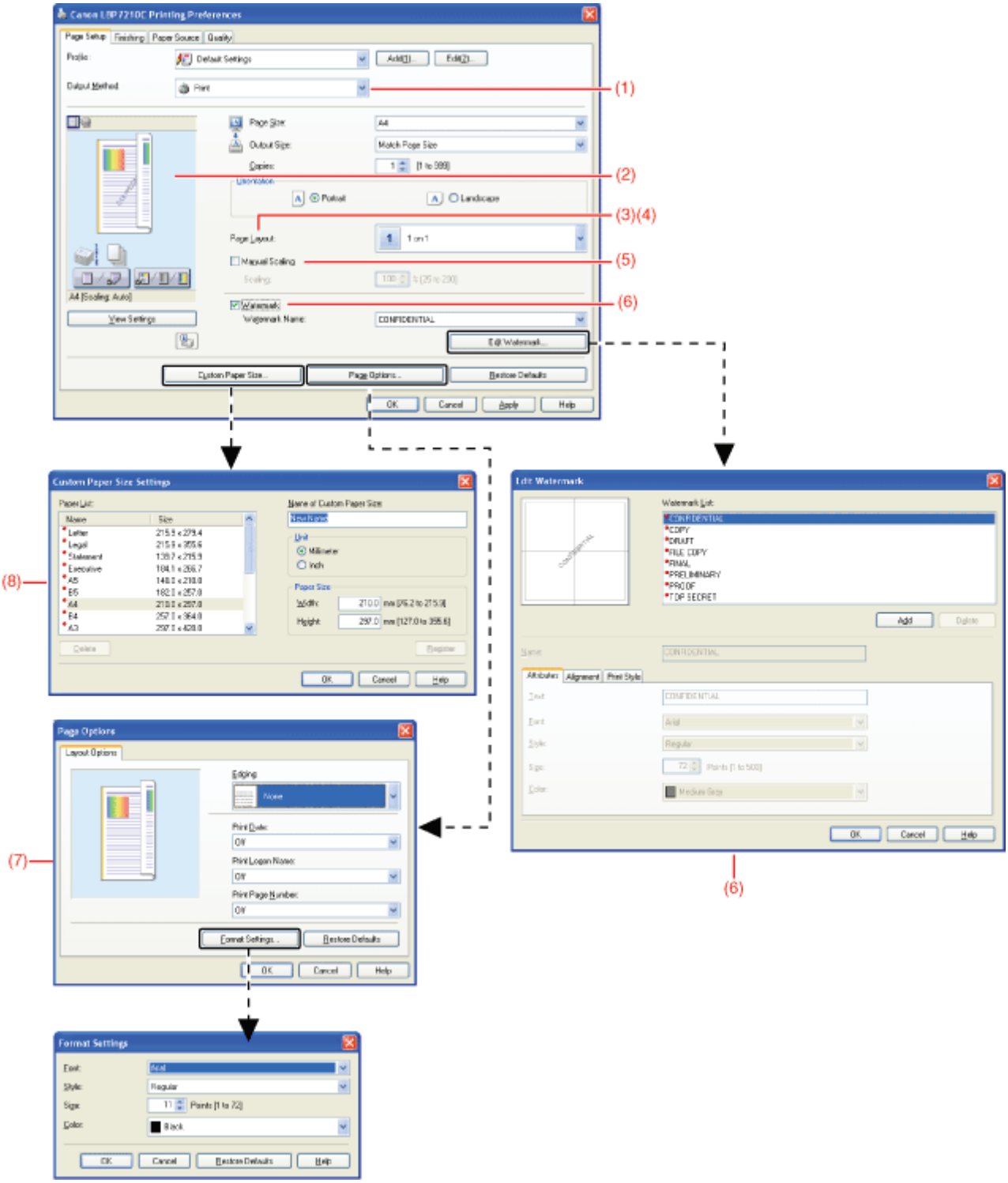
About the sheets displayed by Windows
The following sheets are displayed by Windows.

- [General] Sheet
- [Sharing] Sheet
- [Ports] Sheet
- [Advanced] Sheet
- [Color Management] Sheet
- [Security] Sheet

For details on the above sheets, see Windows Help.

About the printer driver
The functions of the printer driver may be changed due to upgrade.

[Page Setup] Sheet



(1) "Combining Jobs before Printing"
(2) "Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"
(3) "Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet"
(4) "Printing an Image Larger than A4 Size (Poster Printing)"
(5) "Scaling Print Output"
(6) "Adding a Watermark to a Document to Be Printed (Watermark Printing)"
(7) "Printing Borders, the Printing Date, etc."
(8) "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

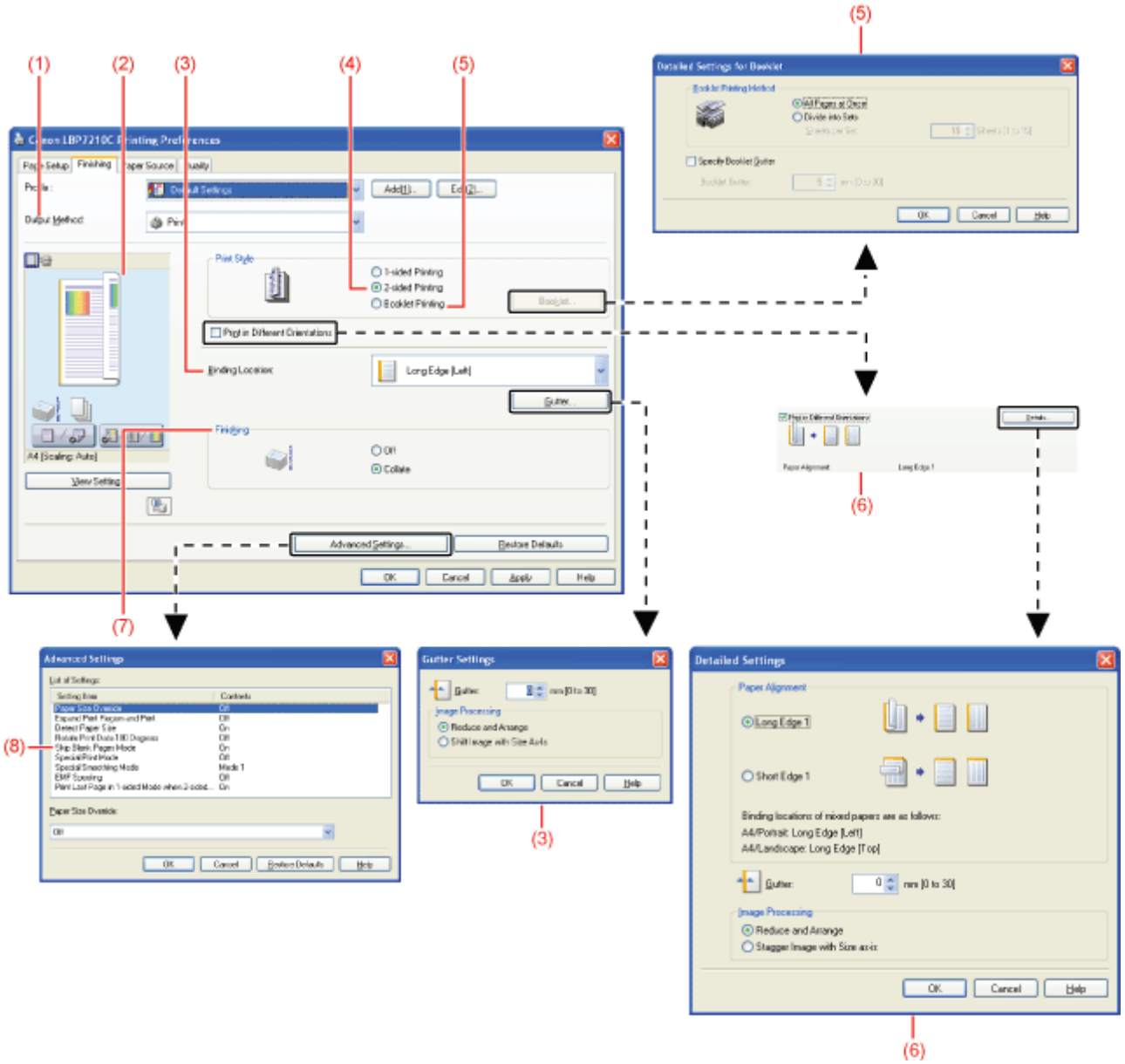
NOTE

For details on the settings

See Help.

"How to Use Help"

[Finishing] Sheet



(1) "Combining Jobs before Printing"

(2) "Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

(3) "Printing with a Gutter"

(4) "1-sided Printing and 2-sided Printing"

(5) "Booklet Printing"

(6) "Printing Data with Different Orientations in the Same Job"

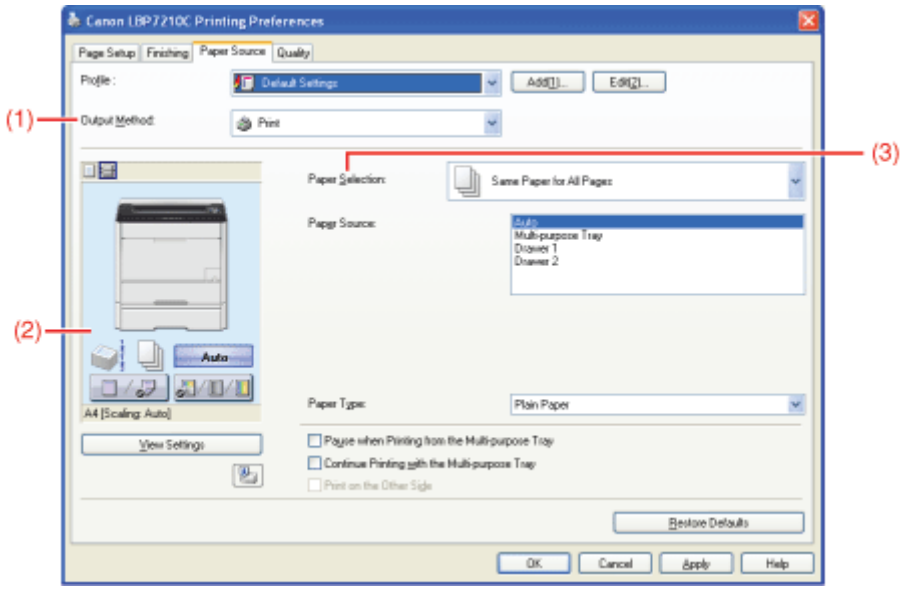
(7) "Selecting the Paper Output Method"

(8) "Printing with the Page 180 Degrees Rotated"

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

[Paper Source] Sheet

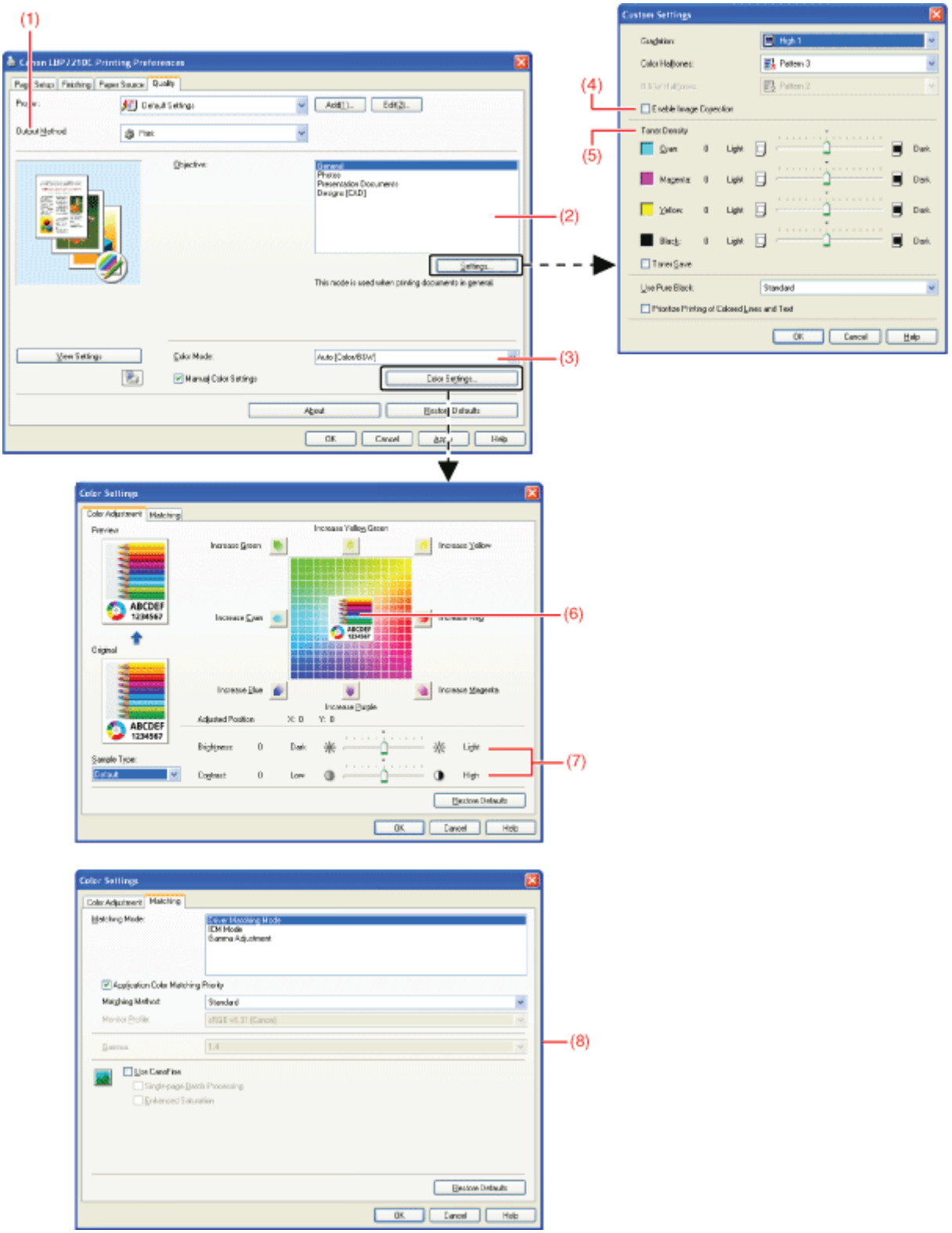


(1) "Combining Jobs before Printing"
(2) "Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"
(3) "Selecting Paper for Each Page"

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

[Quality] Sheet

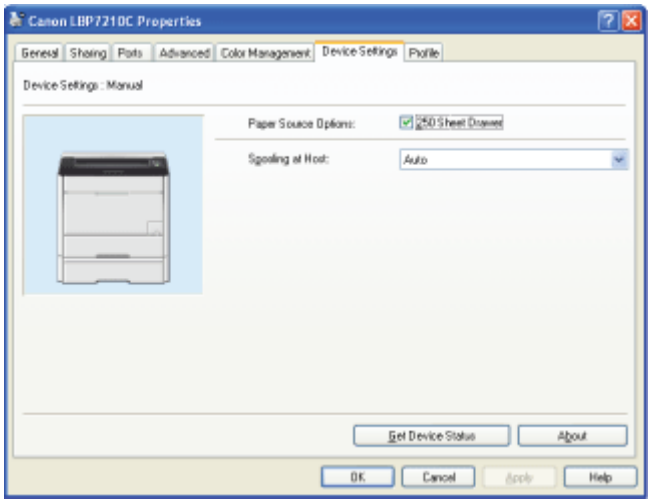


(1) "Combining Jobs before Printing"
(2) "Performing Printing Appropriate for Particular Print Data"
(3) "Printing a Color Document in Black and White"
(4) "Correcting Rough-Textured Images"
(5) "Adjusting the Toner Density"
(6) "Adjusting the Color"
(7) "Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted"
(8) "Matching the Color on the Display"

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

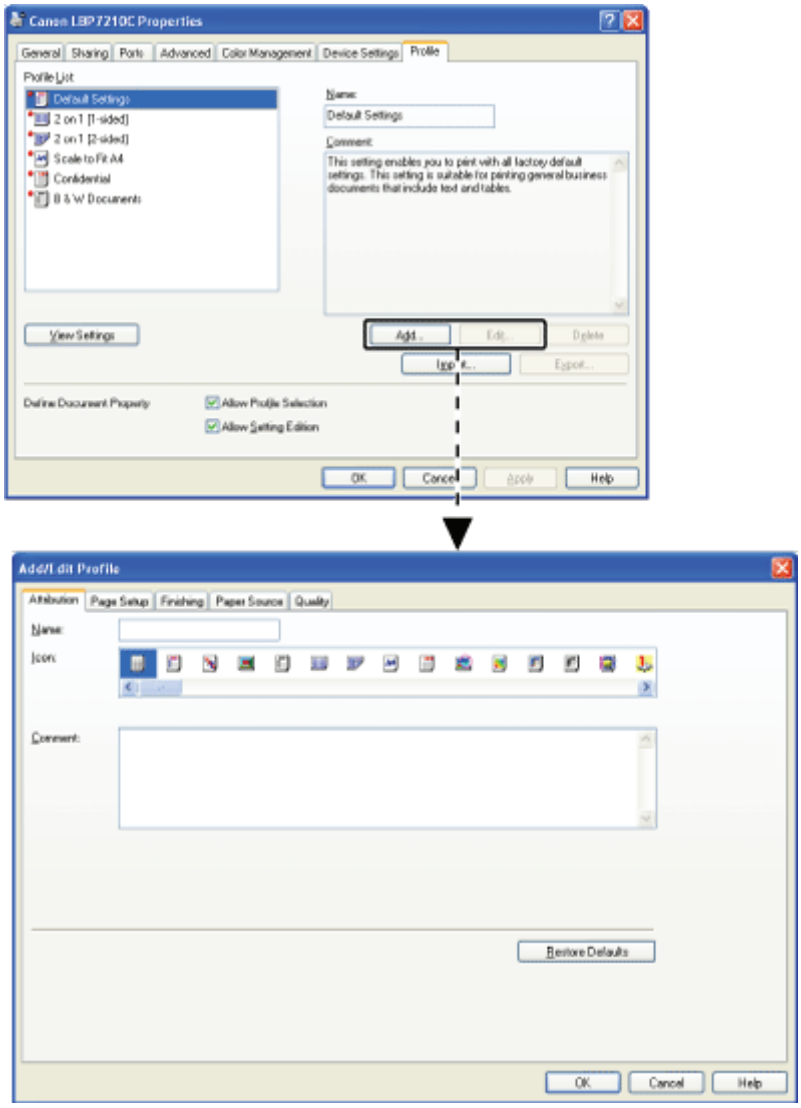
[Device Settings] Sheet



NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

[Profile] Sheet



NOTE

For details on the settings

See Help.

"How to Use Help"

[F-08] Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window

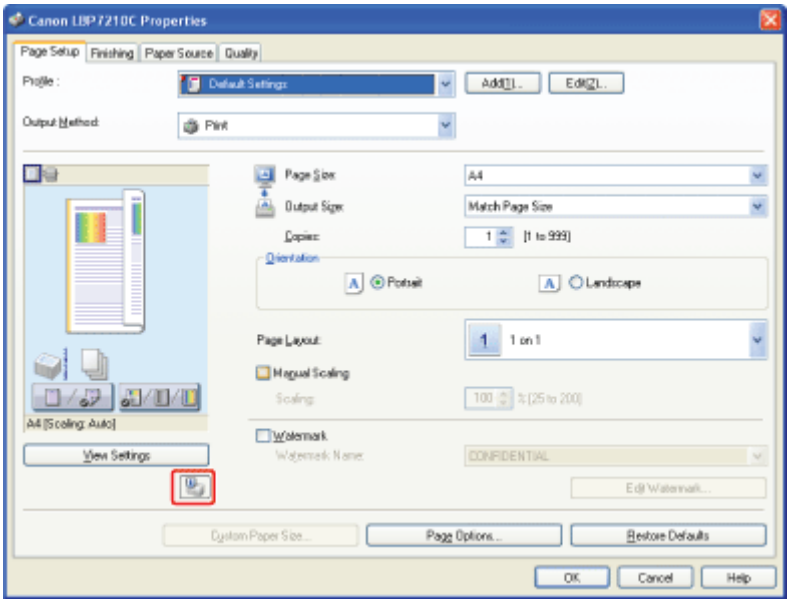
- Displaying the Printer Status Window
- Checking the Printer Status
- About the [Consumables Information] Dialog Box

Display Printer Status Window

There are the following two ways to display the Printer Status Window.

- Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

- Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet in the printer driver.



NOTE

Displaying the Printer Status Window automatically

When the Printer Status Window is not displayed, the Printer Status Window icon is displayed automatically under the following situations.

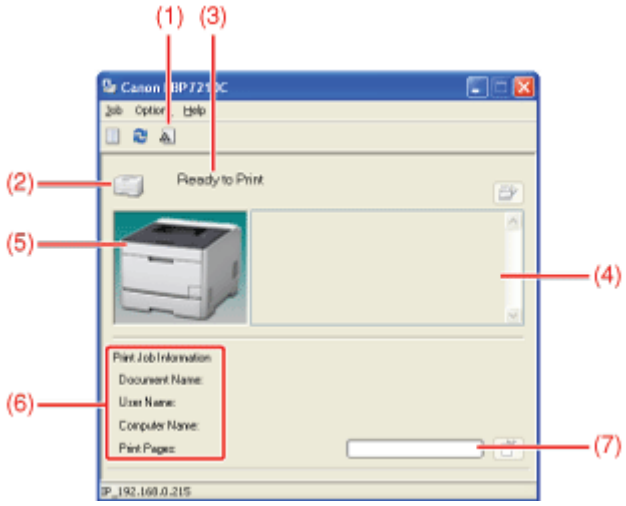
- When an error has occurred while printing
- When a toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon while printing
- When a toner cartridge has reached the end of its life while printing

Clicking this icon can display the Printer Status Window.

† The icon may not be displayed even under the above situations depending on the settings for the [Preferences (Users)] or [Preferences (Administrators)] dialog box in the Printer Status Window.
For details on the [Preferences (Users)] or [Preferences (Administrators)] dialog box, see Help.
"How to Use Help"

Checking the Printer Status

The Printer Status Window allows you to check the printer status (such as the operation status and job information).



(1) [Consumables Information]: Displays the [Consumables Information] dialog box.
You can check the status of the toner cartridges in the [Consumables Information] dialog box.
About the [Consumables Information] Dialog Box

(2) [Icon]: Displays the printer status.

The printer is ready to print or in the sleep mode.

Printing is paused.

Printer problems need to be corrected.

Displays a warning.

The printer is in an error condition.

(3) [Message Area]: Displays messages about the printer status.

(4) [Message Area] (Auxiliary): Displays additional information (situation explanation, solutions, etc.) if an error or other such event occurs.

(5) [Animation Area]:
Displays the printer status using an animated graphic. This area displays the printing progress or error conditions depending on the printer status.
Also, according to the printer status, the background color changes as follows.

• Blue: Ready to print.
• Orange: An error is occurring.
• Red: A service error is occurring.

(6) [Job Information Area]: Displays information about the job.
(7) [Progress Bar]: Displays the printing progress of the current job. The bar gradually grows indicating the printing progress.

NOTE

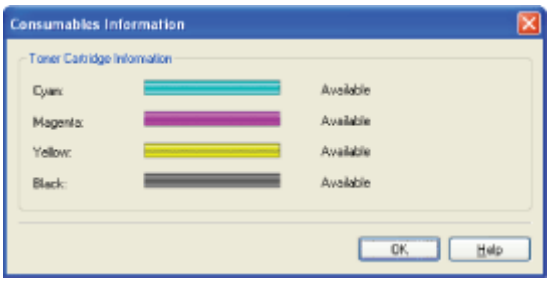
For details on the settings other than those related to the printer status
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

About the [Consumables Information] Dialog Box

Clicking [ ] (Consumables Information) on the Printer Status Window displays the [Consumables Information] dialog box.

† You can also display the dialog box by selecting [Consumables Information] from the [Options] menu.

You can check the status of the toner cartridges in the [Consumables Information] dialog box.



[Toner Cartridge Information]:
Displays the status of the toner cartridges of each color. The contents and solutions of the status bars and messages are as follows.

Status Bar	Message	Contents and Solutions
	<Available>:	• Continue using as normal.
	<Replacement Needed Soon>	• You can continue to print. • Have ready a new toner cartridge of the indicated color. • It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge before printing a large amount of data.
		• When the black toner cartridge has reached the end of its life, the printer stops printing, and you cannot continue the

	<Replace Cartridge>	job. • When any of the toner cartridges (other than black) has reached the end of its life, you can print only in black and white. • Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one.
	<Check Cartridge>	• The printer stops printing. • Toner cartridges with print quality that cannot be guaranteed or used toner cartridges that have reached their lifetime may be inserted. Continuing to use these cartridges may cause a malfunction, so replacing these cartridges with new cartridges is recommended.
	<Insert Cartridge>	• The printer stops printing. • Install the toner cartridges in the correct positions.

[F-09] Checking by the Remote UI

- Displaying the Remote UI
- Checking the Printer Status

Displaying the Remote UI

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**

→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]

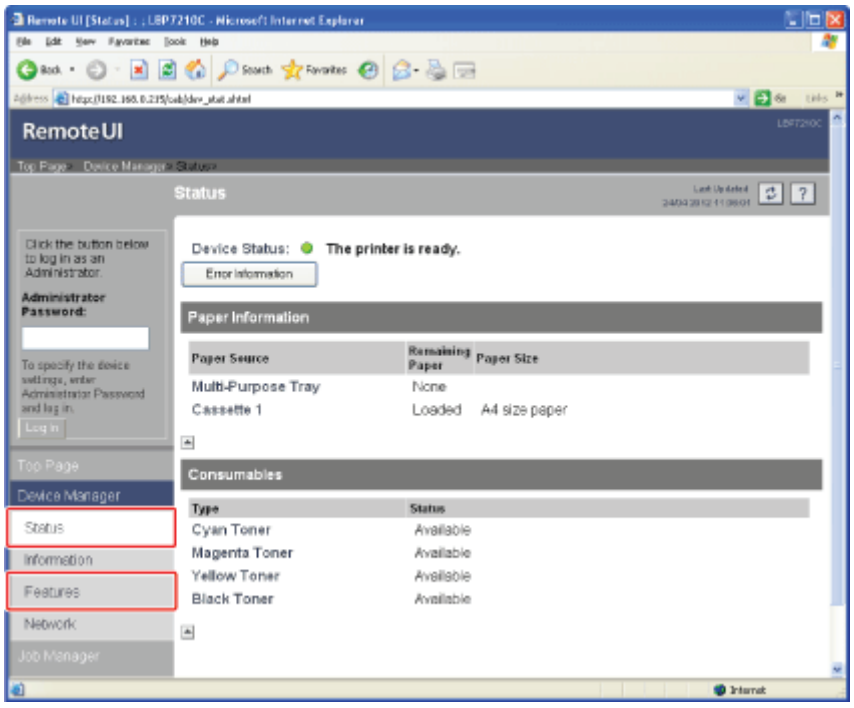
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

Checking the Printer Status

By obtaining information from the printer, you can display the current printer status and printer information in the Remote UI.
To check the printer status, select [Status] or [Features] from the [Device Manager] menu.



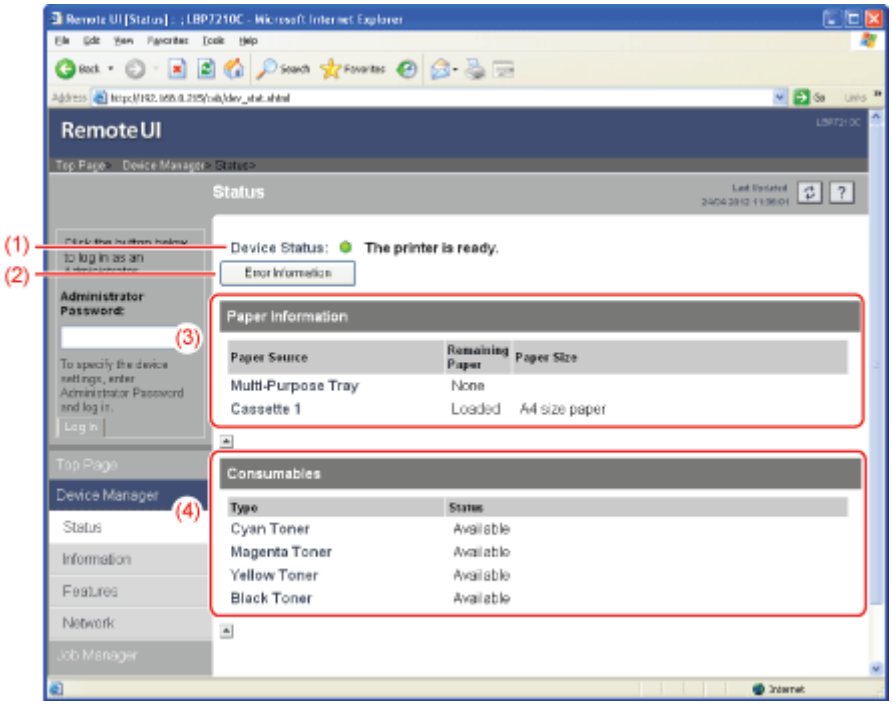
- [Status] Page

  You can check the statuses of the paper sources and toner cartridges or other information.

- [Features] Page

  You can check the availability of the optional accessories and the total number of the printed pages.

[Status] Page



(1) [Device Status]:

Displays messages about the printer status.

Also, according to the printer status, the indicator color changes as follows.

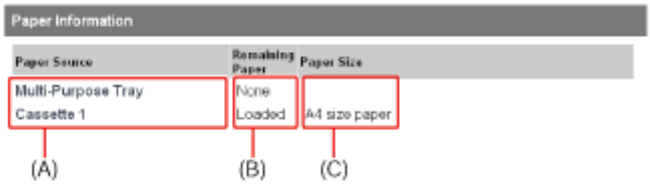
- (green): Normal
  (The printer is ready to print.)
- (yellow): Some attention is required although this status does not affect the job.
  (A Warning message is being displayed.)
- (red): Cannot print for some reason.
  (An Error message is being displayed.)
- (blinking red): A problem has occurred in the printer, and the printer does not operate properly.
  (A service call is being displayed.)

(2) [Error Information]:

When clicked, displays information (situation explanation, solutions, etc.) about the error occurring in the printer.

(3) [Paper Information]:

Displays information about the paper sources.



(A): The names of each paper source

(B): The icons that indicate the amount of paper remaining in each paper source

(C): The sizes of paper in each paper source

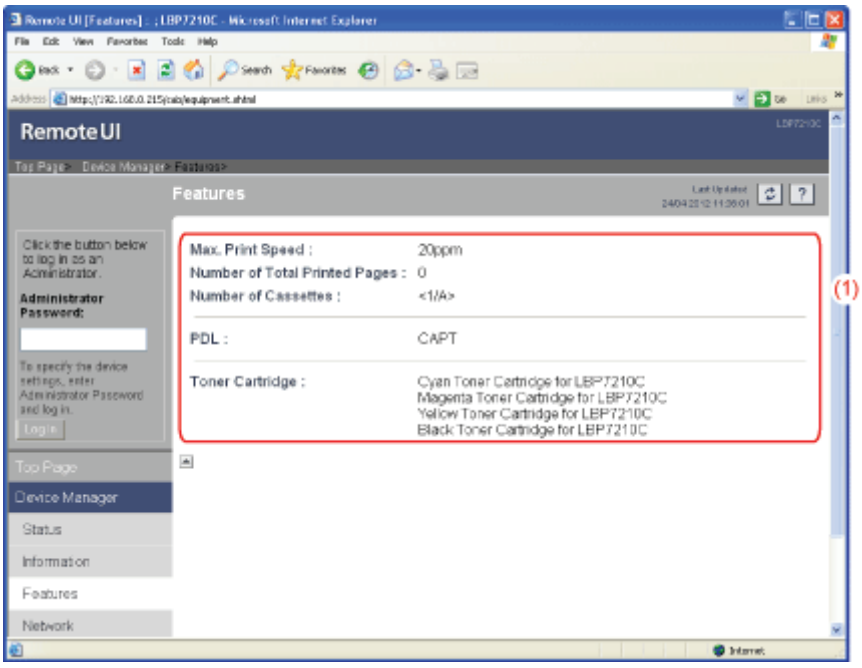
(4) [Consumables]:

Displays the status of the toner cartridges of each color. The contents and solutions of the messages are as follows.

Message	Contents and Solutions

<Available>	• Continue using as normal.
<Replacement Needed Soon>	• You can continue to print. • Have ready a new toner cartridge of the indicated color. • It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge before printing a large amount of data.
<Replace Cartridge>	• When the black toner cartridge has reached the end of its life, the printer stops printing, and you cannot continue the job. • When any of the toner cartridges (other than black) has reached the end of its life, you can print only in black and white. • Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one.
<Check Cartridge>	• The printer stops printing. • Toner cartridges with print quality that cannot be guaranteed or used toner cartridges that have reached their lifetime may be inserted. Continuing to use these cartridges may cause a malfunction, so replacing these cartridges with new cartridges is recommended.
<Insert Cartridge>	• The printer stops printing. • Install the toner cartridges in the correct positions.

[Features] Page



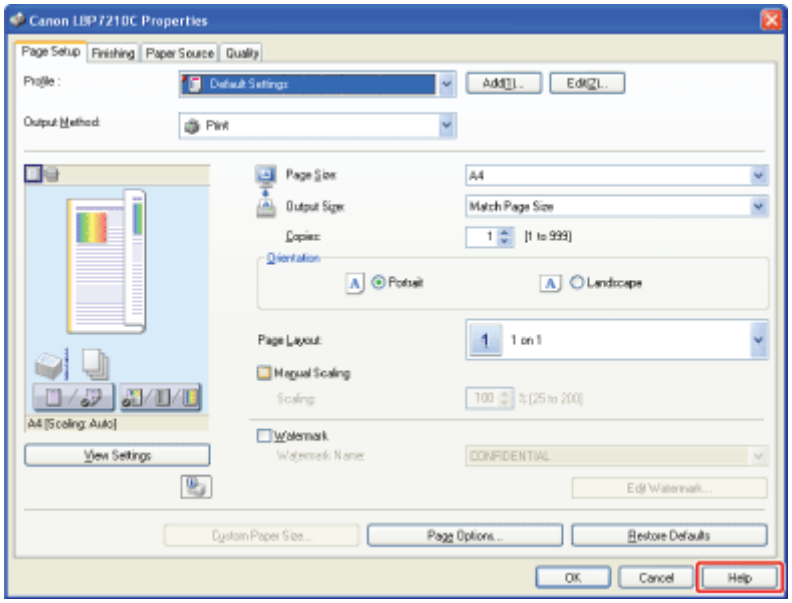
(1) Displays information about the maximum print speed, the total number of printed pages, etc.

[F-10] How to Use Help

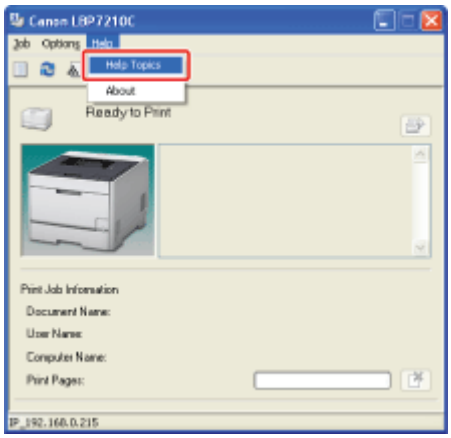
For details on each setting in the printer driver or the Printer Status Window, see the instructions in Help.
Use Help as follows.

---

1. **Click [Help].**



When displaying Help from the Printer Status Window, select [Help Topics] from the [Help] menu.



---

2. **Display the option you would like information on.**

- Displaying the Option You Would Like Information on with Contents
- Displaying the Option You Would Like Information on with Index
- Retrieving a Word or Phrase Included in Help and Displaying the Option You Would Like Information on

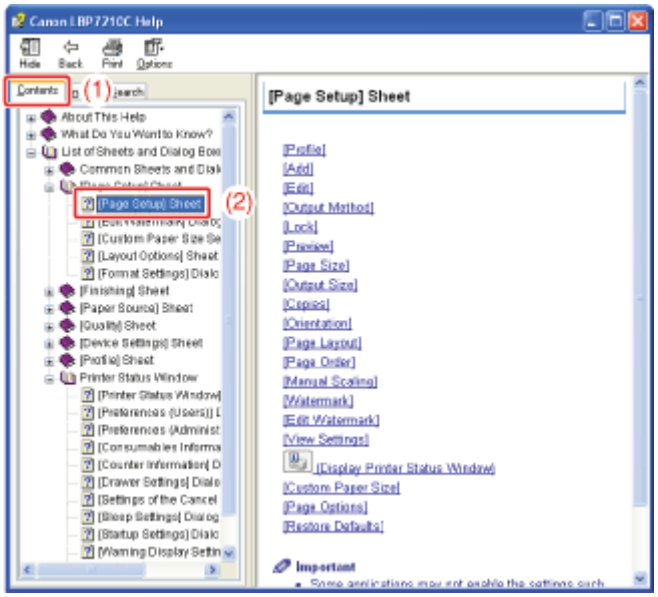
Displaying the Option You Would Like Information on with Contents

The following describes how to display a topic using [Orientation] in the [Page Setup] sheet as an example.

---

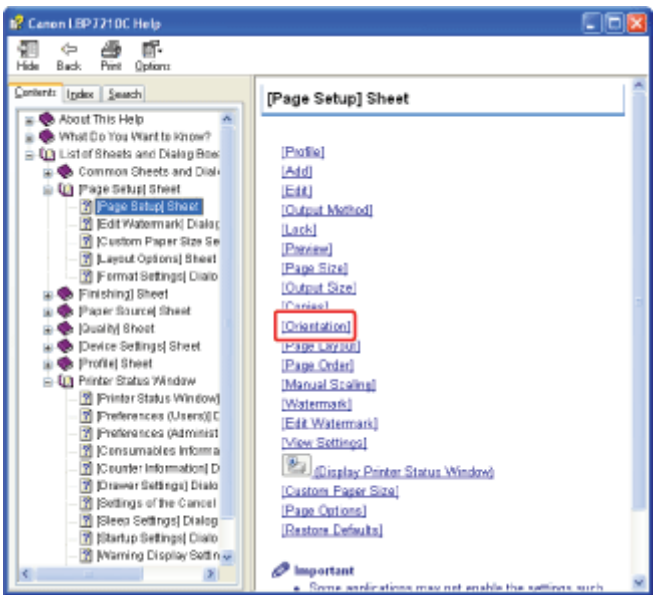
1. **Perform the following procedure.**

   (1) Display the [Contents] sheet.
   (2) Select a sheet, dialog box, and others for your desired option.



---

2. **Click the desired option.**



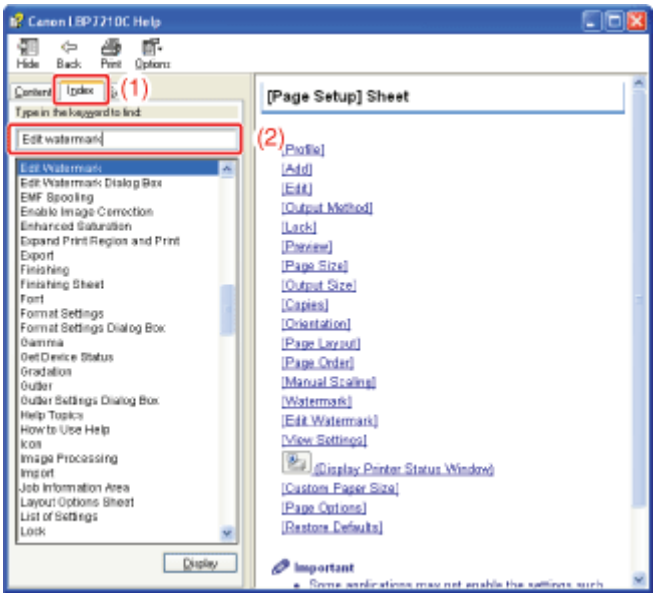
Displaying the Option You Would Like Information on with Index

The following describes how to display a topic using [Edit Watermark] in the [Page Setup] sheet as an example.

1

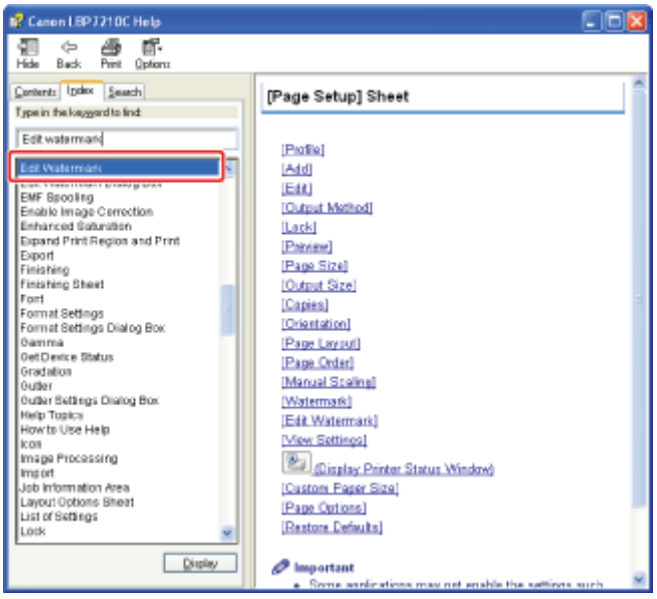
1. **Perform the following procedure.**

(1) Display the [Index] sheet.
(2) Enter keywords for the desired option.



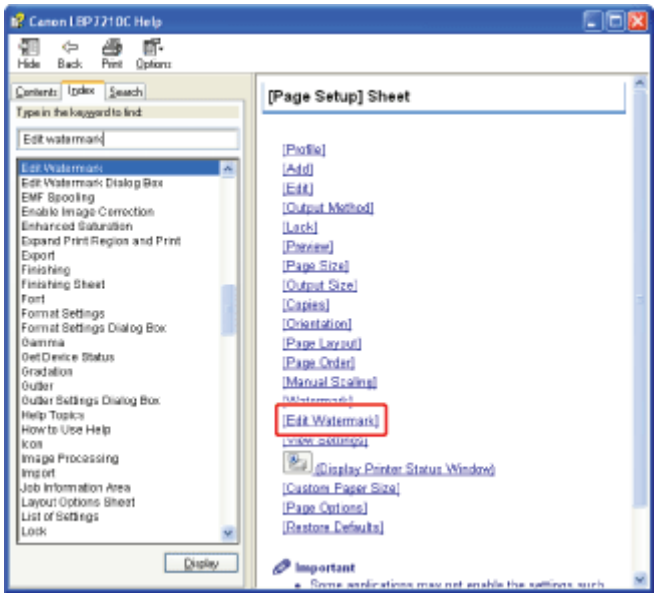
---

2. **Double-click the desired option.**



---

3. **Click the desired option.**



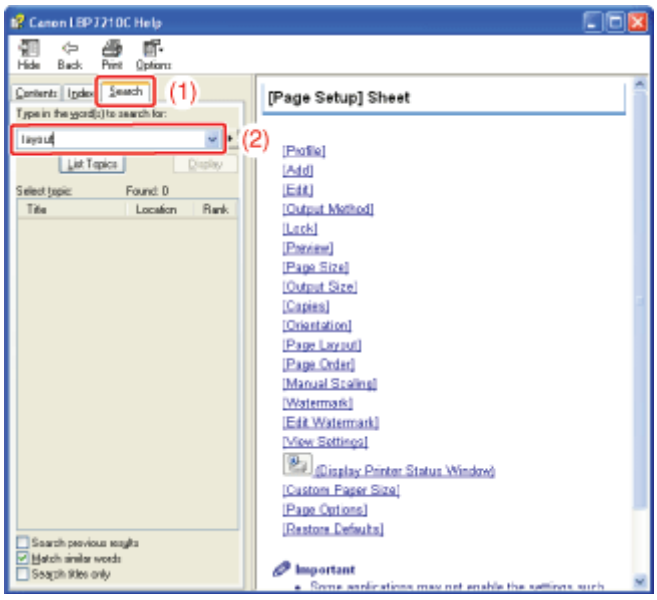
Retrieving a Word or Phrase Included in Help and Displaying the Option You Would Like Information on

The following describes how to display a topic using [Page Layout] in the [Page Setup] sheet as an example.

---

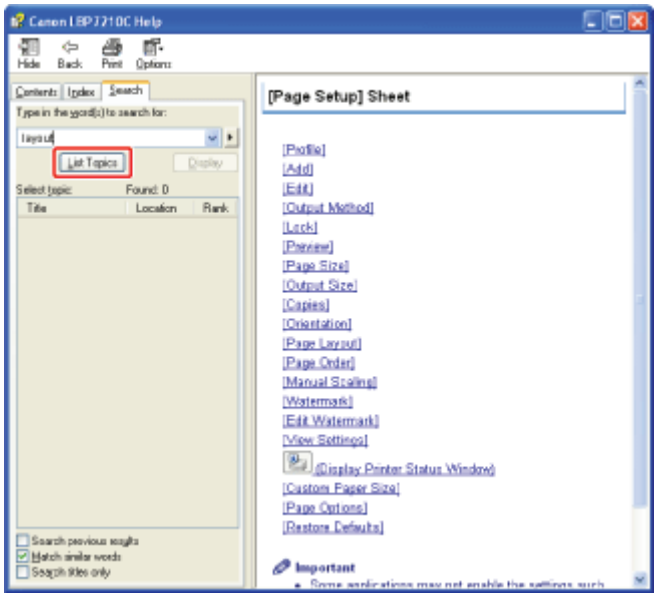
1. **Perform the following procedure.**

   (1) Display the [Search] sheet.
   (2) Enter a word or phrase related to the desired option.



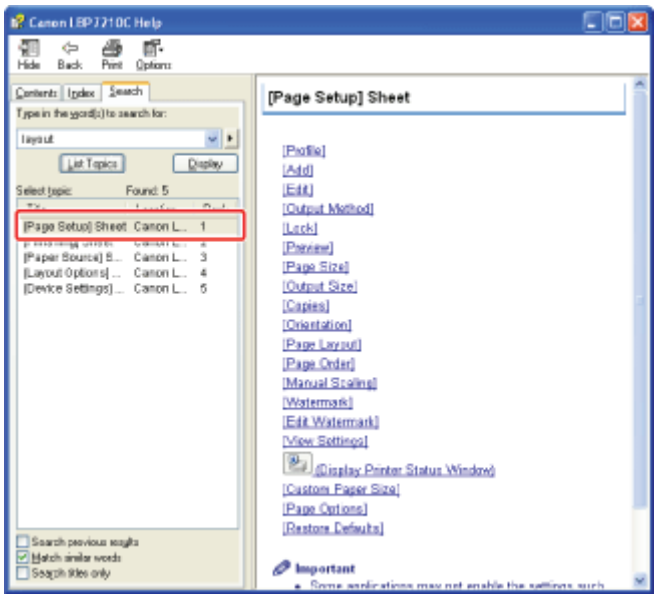
---

2. **Click [List Topics].**



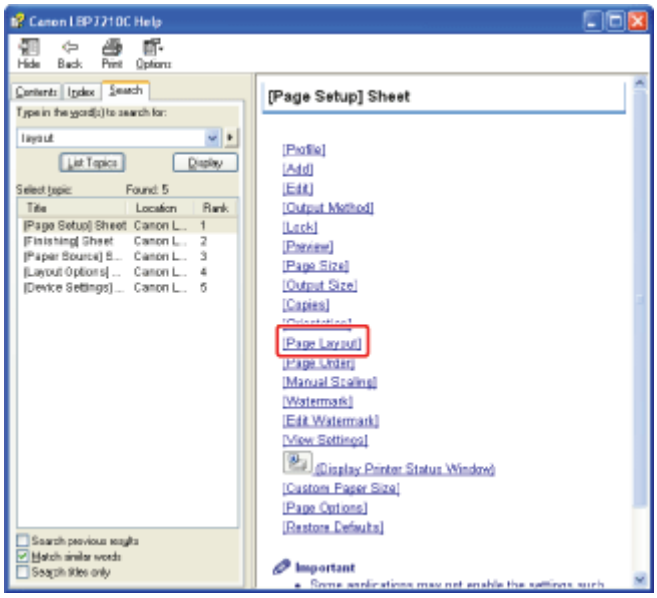
---

3. **Double-click a sheet, dialog box, and others for your desired option in the listed topics.**



---

4. **Click the desired option.**


Canon LBP7210C Help
Hide
Back
Print
Options
Contents
Index
Search
Type in the word(s) to search for:
layout
List Topics
Display
Select topic:
Found: 5
Title
Location
Rank
[Page Setup] Sheet
Canon L...
1
[Finishing] Sheet
Canon L...
2
[Paper Source] S...
Canon L...
3
[Layout Options] ...
Canon L...
4
[Device Settings] ...
Canon L...
5
Search previous results
Match similar words
Search titles only
[Page Setup] Sheet
[Profile]
[Add]
[Edit]
[Output Method]
[Lock]
[Preview]
[Page Size]
[Output Size]
[Copies]
[Page Layout]
[Page Order]
[Manual Scaling]
[Watermark]
[Edit Watermark]
[View Settings]
[Display Printer Status Window]
[Custom Paper Size]
[Page Options]
[Restore Defaults]
Important

[F-11] Usable Paper and Unusable Paper

- Usable Paper
- Unusable Paper

Usable Paper

- Paper Size
- Paper Type

Paper Size

The following shows the paper sizes that can be used with this printer.

●: The paper is available for 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing.

○: The paper is available for only 1-sided printing.

—: The paper cannot be used for printing.

Paper Size	Paper Source		
	Multi-purpose Tray	Drawer 1	Drawer 2 (Optional)
A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm)	●	●	●
B5 (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm)	●	●	●
A5 (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm)	○	○	○
Legal (8.50 in. x 14.00 in.)	●	●	●
Foolscap (8.50 in. x 13.00 in.)	●	●	●
Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.)	●	●	●
Executive (7.25 in. x 10.50 in.)	●	●	●
Statement (5.50 in. x 8.50 in.)	○	○	○

Envelope DL (110.0 mm x 220.0 mm)	○	○	○
Envelope No.10 (COM10) (104.7 mm x 241.3 mm)	○	○	○
Envelope C5 (162.0 mm x 229.0 mm)	○	○	○
Envelope Monarch (98.4 mm x 190.5 mm)	○	—	—
Envelope B5 (176.0 mm x 250.0 mm)	○	○	○
Index Card (102.0 x 152.0 mm, 127.0 x 203.0 mm)	○	—	—
Custom paper size	○*1	○*2	○*2

*1 Custom size paper that is 76.2 to 215.9 mm wide and 127.0 to 355.6 mm long can be loaded.
*2 Custom size paper that is 100.0 to 215.9 mm wide and 148.0 to 355.6 mm long can be loaded.

IMPORTANT

About print speed

- The print speed may drop depending on the settings for the paper size, paper type, and number of copies.
- When continuously printing paper that is less than 202.0 mm wide, the print speed may drop gradually.

Paper Type

The following shows the paper types that can be used with this printer.

●: The paper is available for 1-sided printing and automatic 2-sided printing.

○: The paper is available for only 1-sided printing.

—: The paper cannot be used for printing.

Paper Type		Setting for [Paper Type] in the Printer Driver	Paper Source		
			Multi-purpose Tray	Drawer 1	Drawer 2 (Optional)
	60 to 74 g/m^2	[Plain Paper L]*2	●	●	●

Plain paper[*1]	60 g/m^2	[Plain Paper L2][*5]	●	●	●
	70 to 90 g/m^2	[Plain Paper][*2*3]	●	●	●
Heavy paper	86 to 119 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 1][*3]	●	●	●
	120 to 128 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 2]	●	●	●
	129 to 176 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 3]	●[*6]	●[*7]	●[*7]
Transparency (black-and-white printing only)		[Transparency]	○	—	—
Label		[Labels]	○	○	○
Coated paper	100 to 110 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 1]	●	●	●
	120 to 130 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 2]	●	●	●
	155 to 165 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 3]	●	●	●
	210 to 220 g/m^2	[Coated Paper 4]	○	○	○
Envelope		[Envelope]	○	○[*9]	○[*9]
		[Envelope H][*8]	○	○[*9]	○[*9]

*1 Recycled paper can be used as plain paper.

*2 If you want to print paper of 70 to 74 g/m^2, you can specify either of [Plain Paper] or [Plain Paper L].[*4]

*3 If you want to print paper of 86 to 90 g/m^2, you can specify either of [Plain Paper] or [Heavy Paper 1].[*4]

*4 If either setting causes the following problems etc., specify the other setting to print.

- Output paper curls.
- Residual images appear on non-printed areas.
- The toner does not fix onto paper well, and the printing comes out faint.

*5 If the printed paper curls (the printed side curls outward) when printed 60 g/m^2 paper with [Plain Paper L] selected, select [Plain Paper L2].

*6 164 to 176 g/m^2 heavy paper cannot be printed using 2-sided printing.

*7 You can load 129 to 163 g/m^2 heavy paper.

*8 If you want to improve the toner fixation when printed with [Envelope] selected, select [Envelope H].

*9 Envelope Monarch cannot be loaded.

IMPORTANT

About print speed
The print speed may drop depending on the settings for the paper size, paper type, and number of copies.

Plain paper

This printer can print plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) of the following sizes.

- Standard paper size: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Foolscap, Statement
- Custom paper size: Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm

† Paper of A4, B5, Legal, Letter, Executive, or Foolscap size is available for automatic 2-sided printing.
† Recycled paper can be used as plain paper.

Heavy paper

This printer can print heavy paper (86 to 176 g/m^2) of the following sizes.

- Standard paper size: A4, B5, A5, Legal, Letter, Executive, Foolscap, Statement
- Custom paper size: Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm

† Paper of A4, B5, Legal, Letter, Executive, or Foolscap size is available for automatic 2-sided printing.
† 164 to 176 g/m^2 heavy paper cannot be printed using 2-sided printing.

IMPORTANT

About print speed
The print speed drops when printing on heavy paper.

Transparency
This printer can print A4 and Letter size transparencies.

IMPORTANT

Precautions when using transparencies

- Transparencies can only be printed in black and white.
- Thoroughly fan the transparencies before loading them as they may stick to each other.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of the transparencies with fingerprints, dust, or oil.
- The print speed drops when printing on transparencies.

Label
This printer can print A4 and Letter size labels.

IMPORTANT

Precautions when using labels

- Do not use the following types of labels. Using inappropriate labels may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
  - Peeled labels or partly used labels
  - Coated labels that are easily peeled off from the backing sheet
  - Labels with uneven adhesive
- The print speed drops when printing labels.

Coated paper

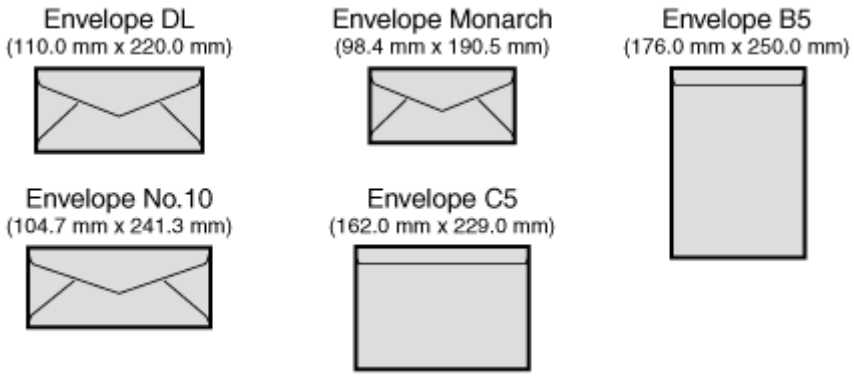
This printer can print the following coated paper.

• Size: A4, Letter

• Weight: 100 to 110 g/m^2, 120 to 130 g/m^2, 155 to 165 g/m^2, 210 to 220 g/m^2

Envelope

This printer can print the following envelopes.



IMPORTANT

Precautions when using envelopes

- Do not use the following types of envelopes. Using inappropriate envelopes may result in paper jams that are difficult to clear or may result in damage to the printer.
  - Envelopes with fasteners or snaps
  - Envelopes with address windows
  - Envelopes with adhesive on the surface
  - Wrinkled or creased envelopes
  - Poorly manufactured envelopes in which the glued parts are uneven
  - Irregularly-shaped envelopes
- Before loading envelopes, flatten the stack of envelopes to release any remaining air, and press the fold lines along the edges tight.
- Do not print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.
- The print speed drops when printing on envelopes.

NOTE

When printing on envelopes
They may become creased.

Unusable Paper

Do not use the following types of paper, as these may cause paper jams, printer malfunction, or damage to the printer.

- Paper That Was Stored Poorly
- Paper with Holes or Perforations
- Paper with Adhesive or a Special Coating
- Paper with Unwanted Substances Attached
- Paper That Is Difficult for Toner to Adhere to

Paper That Was Stored Poorly

- Creased or folded paper
- Torn or damaged paper
- Wrinkled paper
- Curled paper
- Wet or moist paper
- Paper with rough edges
- Irregularly-shaped paper

Paper with Holes or Perforations

- Paper with binding holes
- Paper with perforations

Paper with Adhesive or a Special Coating

- Heat-sensitive paper
- Paper with adhesive
- Carbon paper
- Labels that are easily peeled off
- Treated color paper

- Specially coated paper (coated paper for ink jet printers, etc.)
- Paper that contains ink that melts, burns, evaporates or emits harmful gases at or lower than the heating temperature of the fixing unit

Paper with Unwanted Substances Attached

- Paper with staples, clips, ribbons or tape
- Paper that has already been printed by a copy machine or another printer (The reverse side of the paper is also unusable.)

Paper That Is Difficult for Toner to Adhere to

- Paper with rough surfaces
- Paper containing thick fibers
- Paper with an extremely rough or smooth surface
- Paper that is thicker or thinner than the specified usable paper
  Paper Type

[F-12] Printable Area

- Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparencies, Labels, and Coated Paper
- Envelope

NOTE

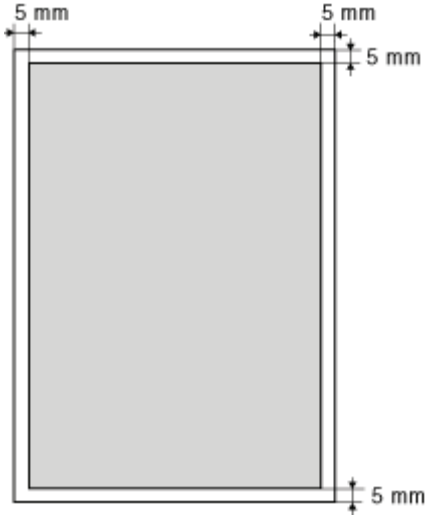
If you want to extend the printable area
Specify the following settings in the printer driver.

1. Click [Advanced Settings] in the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Set [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] to [On].

† Depending on the print data to be printed, the edge of paper may be missing partly during printing or may blot during color printing.

Plain Paper, Heavy Paper, Transparencies, Labels, and Coated Paper

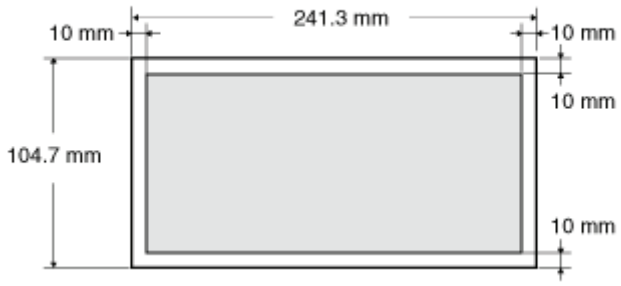
You can print in the area up to 5 mm of the edges of the paper.



Envelope

This printer can print on the following area.
You may have to change the printable area before printing, depending on the application you use.

(Sample: Envelope No.10)



IMPORTANT

When printing on envelopes

It is recommended that you configure the document to print the data smaller than the printable area.

When printing data in the entire printable area, you may not be able to obtain the optimum print quality.

[F-13] Storing Paper or Printouts

- Storing Paper
- Storing Printouts

Storing Paper

The quality of paper may deteriorate if stored improperly even when the paper meets the normal specifications. Inferior paper may cause misfeeds, paper jams, or deterioration in print quality.

How to store paper

Observe the following guidelines when storing and handling paper.

- Store paper on a flat surface.
- To help paper avoid moisture or dryness, keep paper in its wrapper until it is ready to be used.
- Do not place paper in the condition where it may curl or become creased.
- Do not store paper vertically or store too many stacks of paper in one pile.

Do not store paper in the following locations.

- A location exposed to direct sunlight
- A location subject to high humidity
- A dry location
- A location with a temperature or humidity that differs significantly from the location where it will be used

If you print on damp paper

If you print on damp paper, steam may be emitted from the printer output area.
Because moisture in the paper is evaporating due to the heat generated when toner fixes, this is not a malfunction. (This is likely to occur when the room temperature is low.)

⚠ WARNING

If you experience a burnt odor
If you experience a burnt odor, immediately turn off the printer, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer. Continued use can result in a fire or electrical shock.

Storing Printouts

When handling or storing paper printed by this printer, be careful of the following points.

How to store printouts

- Store printouts on a flat surface.
- Avoid storing printouts in folders made of PVC material, as this may cause the toner to melt and stick to

the PVC material. Toner may peel when printouts are folded or creased.

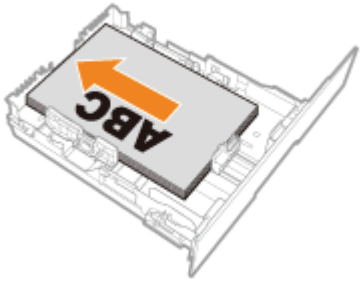
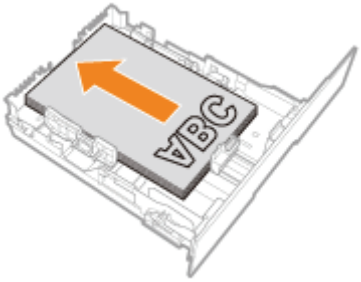
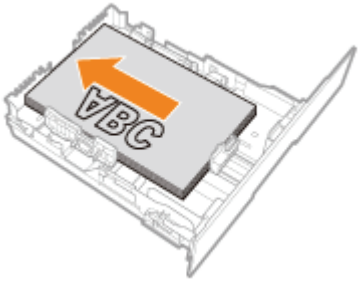
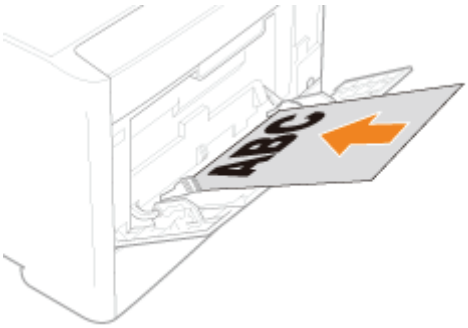
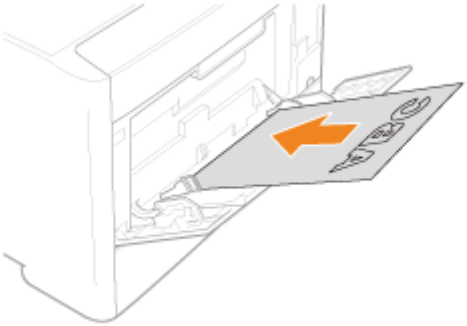
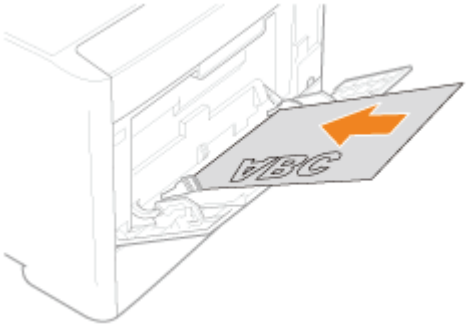
- Store printouts in the condition where they are not folded or creased as toner may peel.
- Put printouts in a binder when storing for a long period of time (two years or longer).
- Printouts may discolor when stored for a long period of time.
- Avoid storing printouts in a location subject to high temperatures.

Precautions when sticking printouts with adhesive

- Be sure to use insoluble adhesive.
- Test the adhesive on an unneeded printout before using.
- Before stacking printouts that stuck with adhesive, check that the adhesive has completely dried.

[F-14] Paper Loading Orientation

To print paper with letterheads or logos, load the paper in the proper orientation as follows.
➡ in the table indicates the feeding directions.

	Portrait Layout	Landscape Layout
Paper drawer (1-sided printing)	(With the printing side facing up)	 (With the printing side facing up)
Paper drawer (automatic 2-sided printing)	 (With the front side facing down)	 (With the front side facing down)
Multi-purpose tray (1-sided printing)	 (With the printing side facing up)	(With the printing side facing up)
Multi-purpose tray (automatic 2-sided printing)	 (With the front side facing down)	 (With the front side facing down)

NOTE

Loading orientation of envelopes

See "Loading Envelopes".

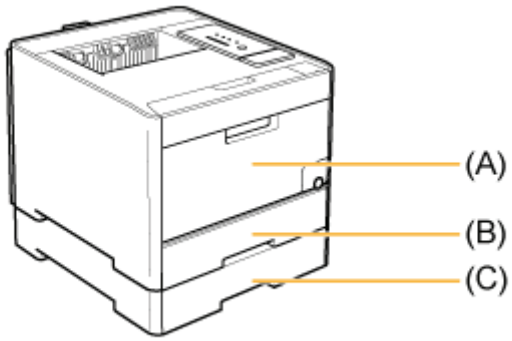
[F-15] Paper Source

- Paper Source Type
- Paper Capacity of Paper Source
- Selecting a Paper Source
- Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Drawer

Paper Source Type

This printer has the following paper sources.

(A): Multi-purpose Tray
(B): Drawer 1
(C): Drawer 2 (Optional)



IMPORTANT

When printing from the multi-purpose tray or Drawer 2
Make sure that Drawer 1 is set before printing from Drawer 2.

Paper Capacity of Paper Source

—: The paper source cannot be used.

Paper Type	Paper Source		
	Multi-purpose Tray	Drawer 1	Drawer 2 (Optional)
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets	Approx. 250 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 30 sheets	Approx. 200 sheets	Approx. 200 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets	Approx. 150 sheets

Transparency (black-and-white printing only)	Approx. 20 sheets	—	—
Label	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 20 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets	Approx. 50 sheets
Envelope	Approx. 5 sheets	Approx. 10 sheets	Approx. 10 sheets

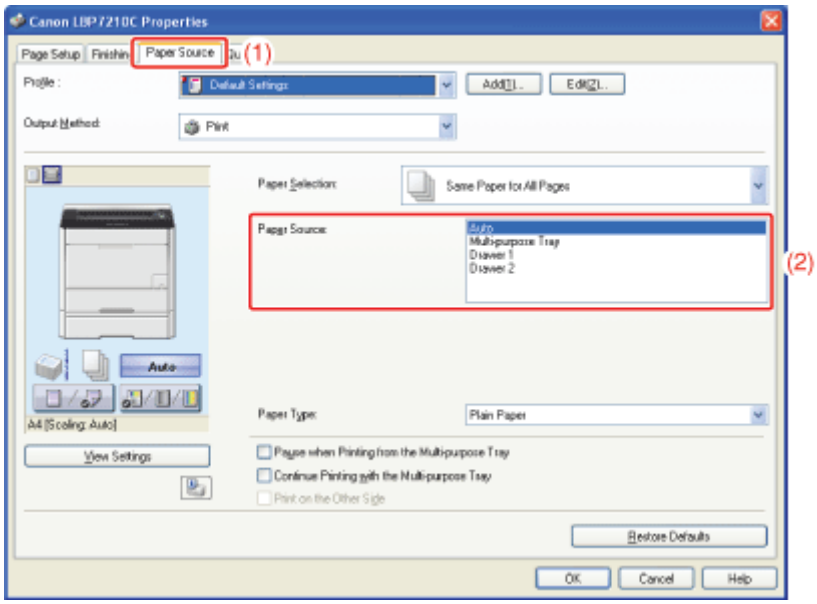
Selecting a Paper Source

A paper source can be selected in the [Paper Source] sheet in the printer driver.

---

1. **Select [Paper Source].**

(1) Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
(2) Select the paper source you want to use.



NOTE

When [Paper Selection] is set to a setting other than [Same Paper for All Pages]
The [Paper Source] setting changes as follows.

- [First Page]
- [Second Page]
- [Cover Page]
- [Other Pages]
- [Last Page]
- [Cover Sheets]

Select the paper source to be used for each page.

When printing paper of a type other than plain paper or envelopes from the paper drawer
Select [Drawer 1] or [Drawer 2] (optional).

† If you select [Auto], you cannot print from the paper drawer. (Paper is fed from the multi-purpose tray.)

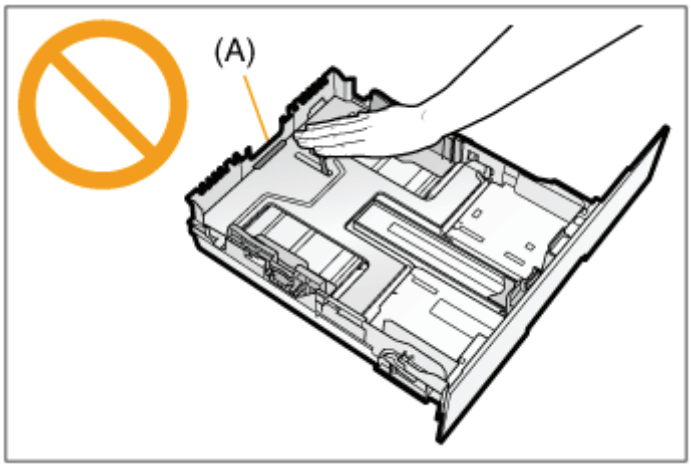
How to display the printer driver
"Printing (Basic Procedure)"
"Changing the Default Values for Printing Preferences"

2. **Click [OK].**

Precautions for Handling the Multi-purpose Tray or Paper Drawer

Be careful of the following points when handling the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer.

- Be sure to turn the printer on once when loading paper in the paper drawer for the first time after installing the paper feeder.
- Observe the following points during printing. This may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.
  - Do not pull out the paper drawer.
  - Do not touch the paper in the multi-purpose tray or pull it out.
- Refill the paper drawer after all the loaded paper runs out. If the paper drawer is refilled when paper still remains in the drawer, this may result in misfeeds.
- Do not put anything other than the printing paper on the multi-purpose tray. Also, do not press on top of or apply excessive force to the multi-purpose tray. This may result in damage to the multi-purpose tray.
- Do not touch the black rubber pad (A) in the paper drawer. This may result in misfeeds.



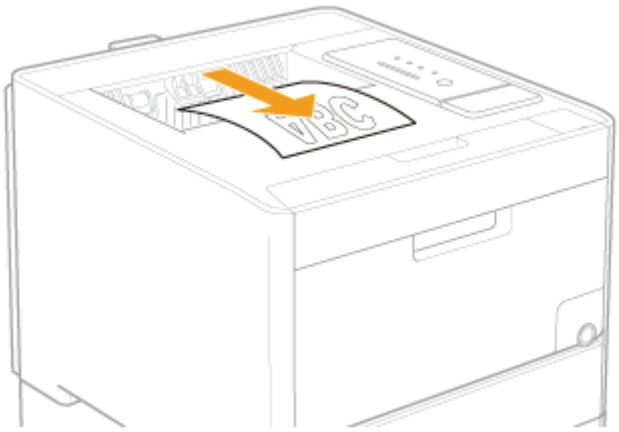
- If you are printing from the multi-purpose tray or Drawer 2 (optional), make sure that Drawer 1 is set before printing.
- Remove the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray before closing it.
  Also. keep the multi-purpose tray closed when it is not used.

[F-16] Output Tray

- Output Tray
- Paper Capacity of the Output Tray

Output Tray

Printed paper is output to the output tray on the top of the printer with the printed side facing down.



CAUTION

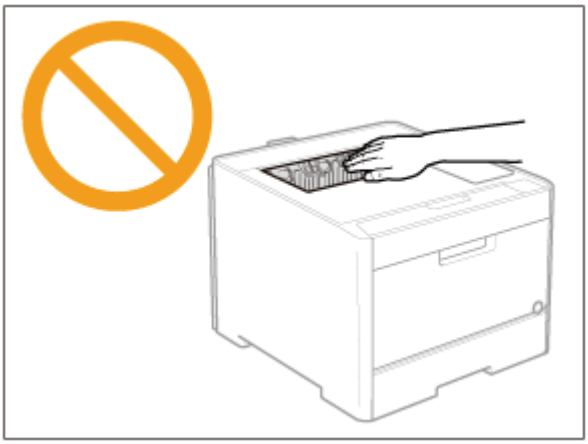
Keep your hands and clothing away from the roller in the output area.
Even if the printer is not printing, the roller may suddenly rotate and catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.

Precautions when removing jammed paper
Printed paper may be hot immediately after being output. Be careful when removing the paper and aligning the removed paper, especially after continuous printing. Failure to do so may result in burns.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the paper until it is output completely during automatic 2-sided printing.
The paper is first output partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to be printed on the reverse side.

Do not touch the output tray and its surroundings when removing paper.
The area surrounding the output tray is hot during and immediately after printing. Do not touch the area surrounding the output tray when removing paper or clearing a paper jam.



NOTE

If the message <Output Tray Is Full> appears

If the message <Output Tray Is Full> appears in the Printer Status Window, remove the paper from the output tray.

Paper Capacity of the Output Tray

Paper Type	Paper Capacity*
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 125 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 50 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 50 sheets
Transparency (black-and-white printing only)	Approx. 10 sheets
Label	Approx. 10 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 50 sheets
Envelope	Approx. 10 sheets

* Actual paper capacity varies depending on the installation environment and paper type to be used.

[F-17] Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)

- Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Paper Drawer
- Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Multi-purpose Tray

Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Paper Drawer

The following standard size paper (other than Index Cards and envelopes) can be loaded in the paper drawer.

Paper Type	Paper Size
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Heavy paper (86 to 163 g/m^2)	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) B5 (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm) A5 (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm) Legal (8.50 in. x 14.00 in.) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.) Executive (7.25 in. x 10.50 in.) Foolscap (8.50 in. x 13.00 in.) Statement (5.50 in. x 8.50 in.)
Label Coated paper	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.)

Step 1: Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer
Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper

IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

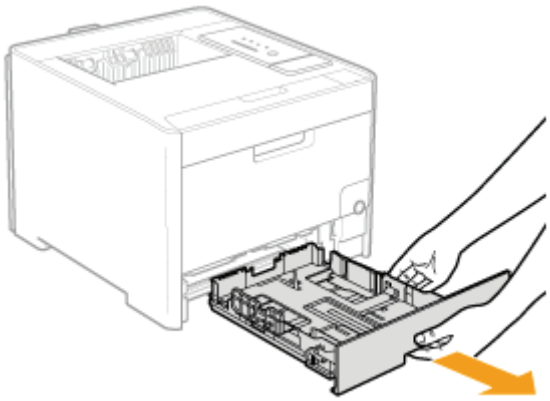
Handling the paper drawer
"Paper Source"

NOTE

How to load paper in Drawer 2 (optional paper feeder)
Load the paper in Drawer 2 in the same manner as you load the paper in Drawer 1.

Step 1: Loading Paper in the Paper Drawer

1. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



CAUTION

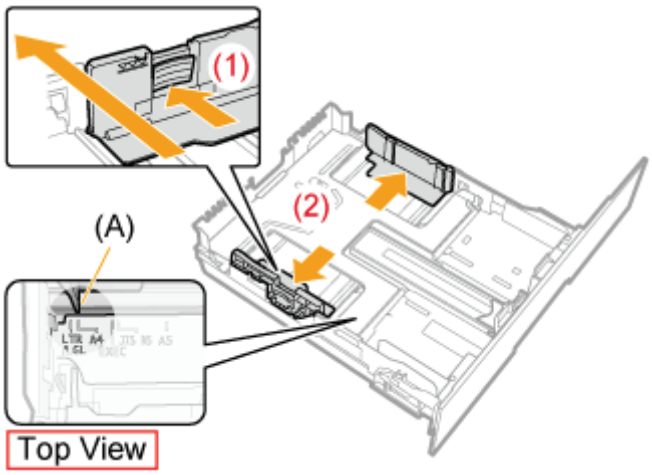
Be sure to remove the paper drawer.
If paper is loaded while the paper drawer is partially pulled out, the paper drawer may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.

---

2. **Slide the paper guides to the position of the size of the paper to be loaded.**

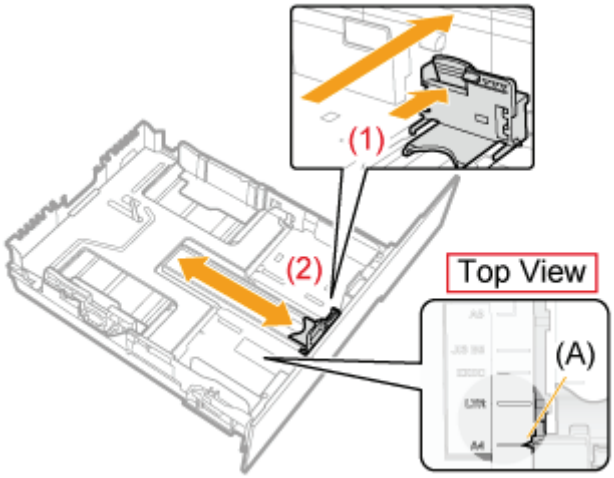
Slide the side paper guides.

(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to the position of the size of the paper to be loaded.
† Align the position of (A) with the size mark of the paper to be loaded.
† The side paper guides move together.



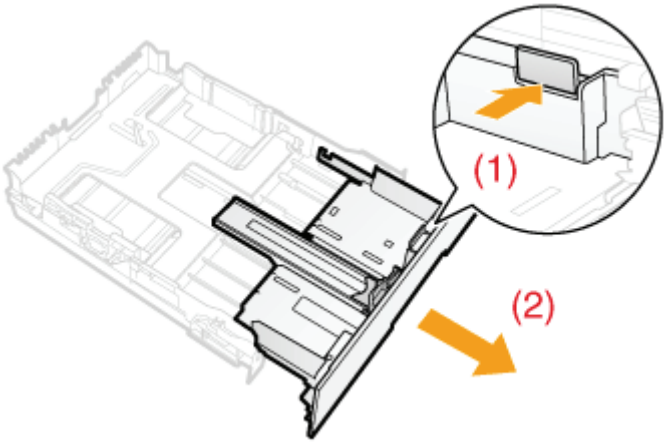
Slide the paper guide at the front center.

(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to the position of the size of the paper to be loaded.
† Align the position of (A) with the size mark of the paper to be loaded.



Pull out the paper drawer before loading Legal size paper.

(1) Hold the lock release lever at the front right.
(2) Adjust the length of the paper drawer.

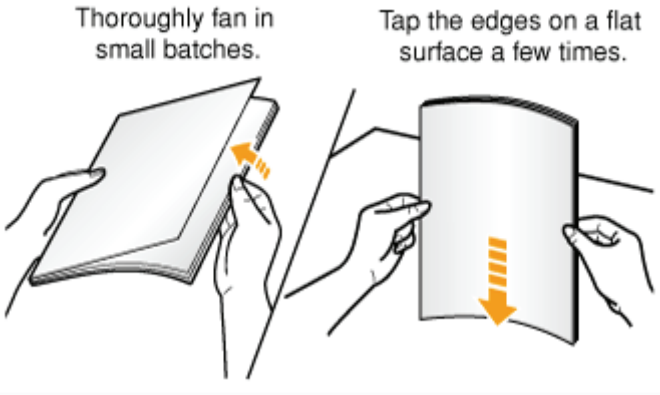


NOTE

Size abbreviation on the paper guides

Paper Size	Paper Guide
Legal	LGL
Letter	LTR
Executive	EXEC
B5	JIS B5

3. **When loading labels or coated paper, fan them a few sheets at a time, and then align the edges.**



CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

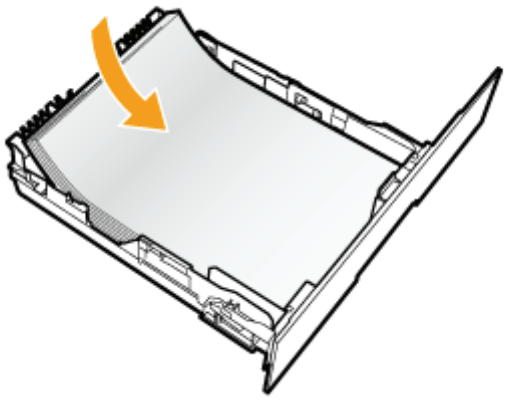
IMPORTANT

Be careful when handling labels or coated paper.

- If you are using labels or coated paper, fan them thoroughly and load them again. If they are not fanned enough, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once, causing paper jams.
- When fanning or aligning coated paper, try to hold the edges to avoid touching the printing surface.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of coated paper with fingerprints, dust, or oil. This may result in poor print quality.

---

4. **Load the paper so that the edges of the stacked paper are aligned with the front side of the paper drawer.**

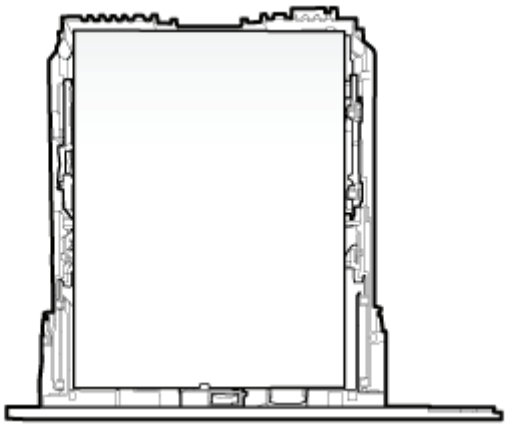


CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.



Be sure to check the position of the paper guides.
If the paper guide is set at a wrong position, this may result in misfeeds.

Paper drawer capacity

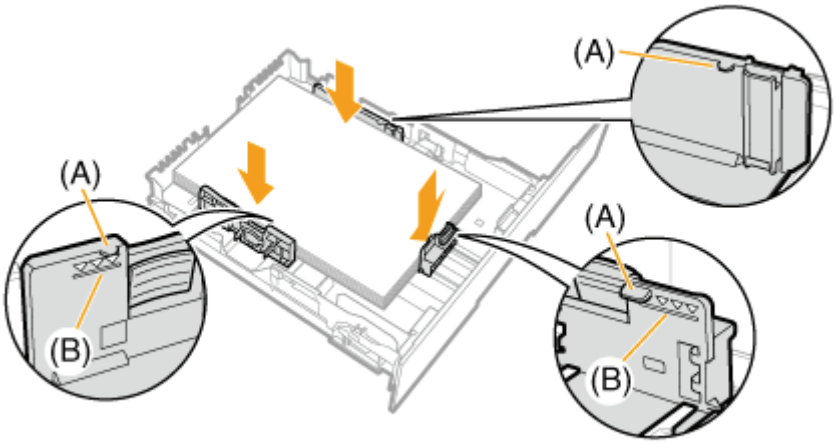
Paper Type	Paper Capacity
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 250 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 200 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 150 sheets
Label	Approx. 50 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 50 sheets

When using paper that has been poorly cut
If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

NOTE

When printing paper with a letterhead or logo
See "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

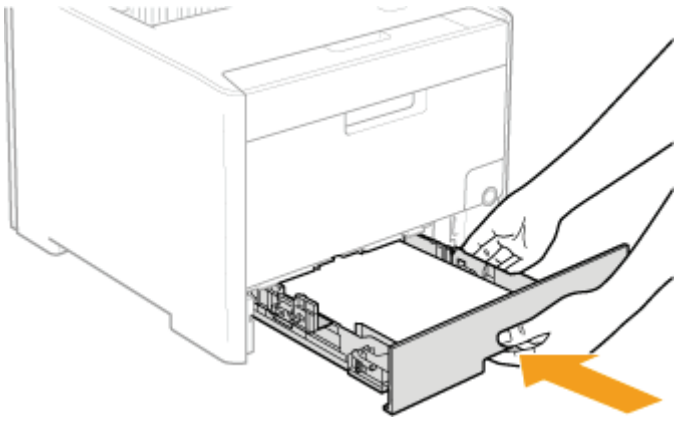
5. **Hold down the paper, then set it under the hooks (A) on the paper guides.**
Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).



IMPORTANT

Do not load the paper stack which exceeds the load limit mark lines.
Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

6. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**
Push it into the printer firmly.



CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper

This printer's paper drawer cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the loaded paper.
Register the paper size using the following procedure.

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

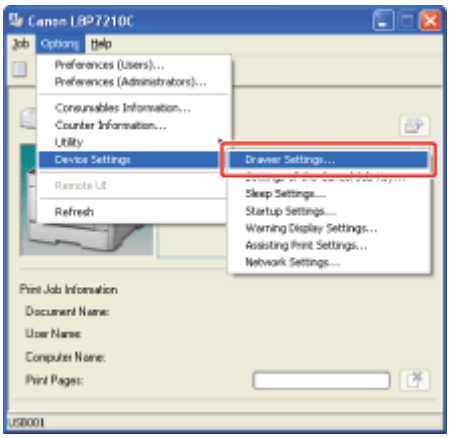
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].**



NOTE

When registering a paper size

As you cannot register a paper size while printing is in progress, make sure that the printer is idle before registering the paper size.

However, you can register a paper size while one of the following messages is displayed.

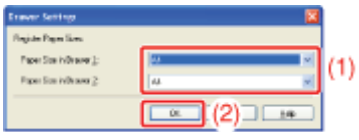
- <Specified Paper Different from Set Paper>
- <Out of Paper>

3. **Register the paper size.**

(1) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper drawer.

- Drawer 1: The paper drawer supplied with the printer unit
- Drawer 2: The paper drawer of the optional paper feeder

(2) Click [OK].



Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes) in the Multi-purpose Tray

The following standard size paper (other than Index Cards and envelopes) can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

Paper Type	Paper Size
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Heavy paper (86 to 176 g/m^2)	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) B5 (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm) A5 (148.0 mm x 210.0 mm) Legal (8.50 in. x 14.00 in.) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.) Executive (7.25 in. x 10.50 in.) Foolscap (8.50 in. x 13.00 in.) Statement (5.50 in. x 8.50 in.)
Transparency Label Coated paper	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.)

IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper

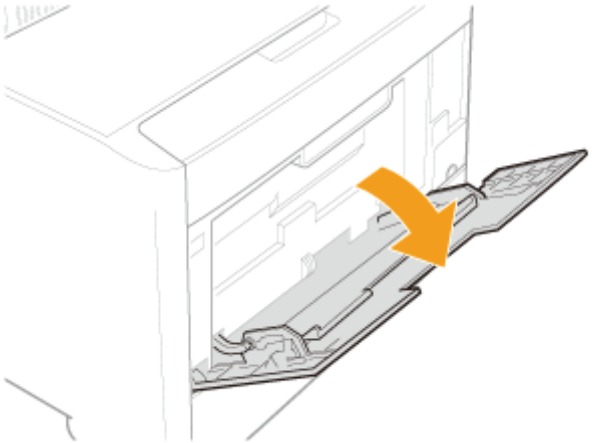
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

Handling the multi-purpose tray

"Paper Source"

1. **Open the multi-purpose tray.**

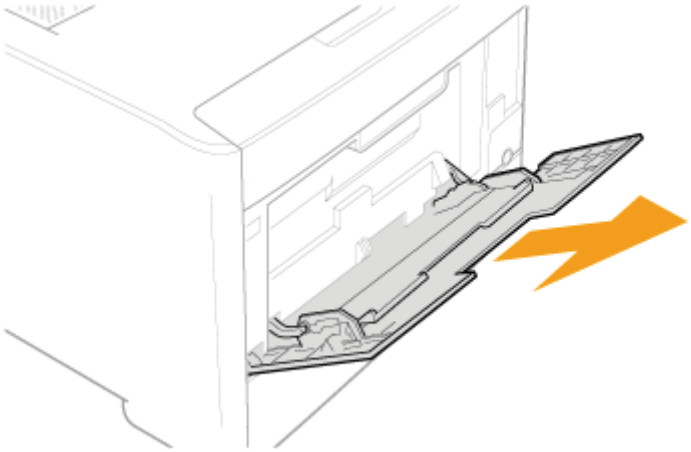
   Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



IMPORTANT

Be sure to insert the paper drawer.
If the paper drawer is not inserted, you cannot print from the multi-purpose tray.

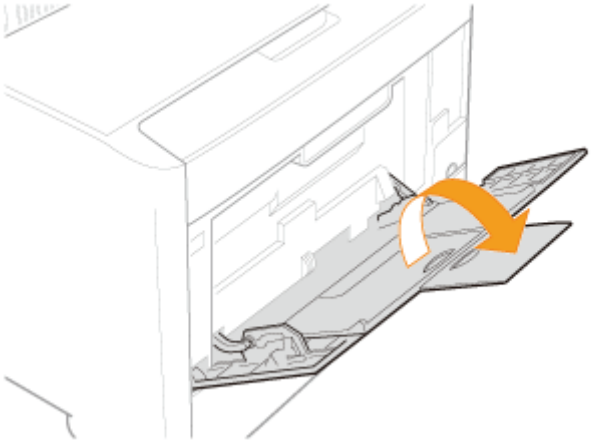
2. **Pull out the auxiliary tray.**



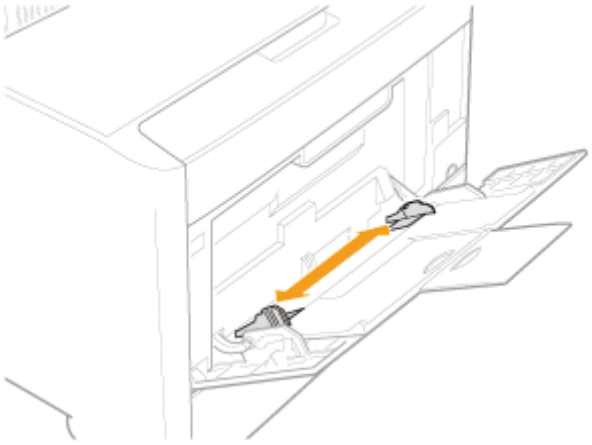
IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray.
Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

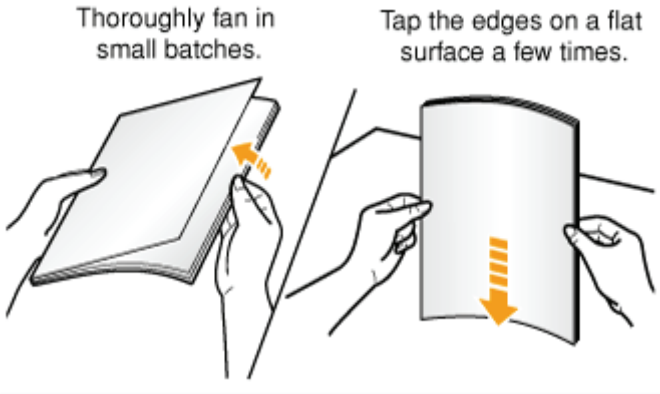
3. **When loading long-size paper such as A4 etc, open the tray extension.**



4. **Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.**



5. **When loading transparencies, labels, or coated paper, fan them a few sheets at a time, and then align the edges.**



CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

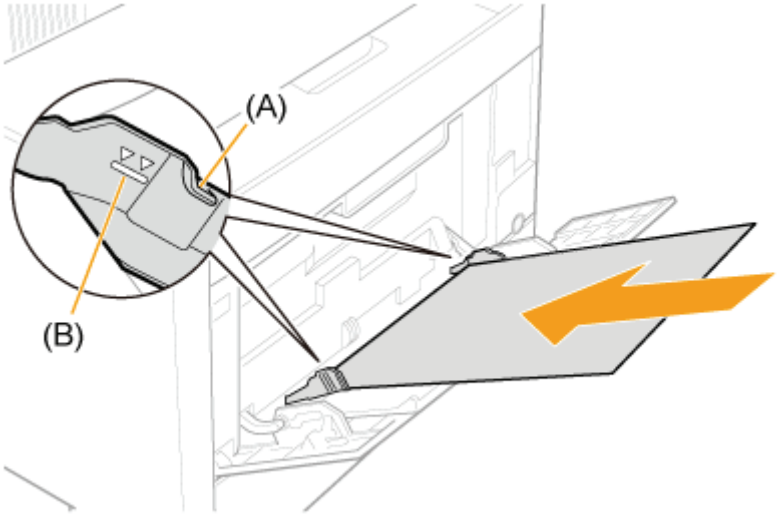
IMPORTANT

Be careful when handling transparencies, labels, or coated paper.

- Be sure to fan the transparencies, labels, or coated paper thoroughly before loading them. If they are not fanned enough, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once, causing paper jams.
- When fanning or aligning the transparencies or coated paper, try to hold the edges to avoid touching the printing surface.
- Take care not to mark or stain the printing surface of the transparencies or coated paper with fingerprints, dust, or oil. This may result in poor print quality.

6. **Gently load the paper stack under the load limit guides (A) until it touches the back of the tray.**

Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).

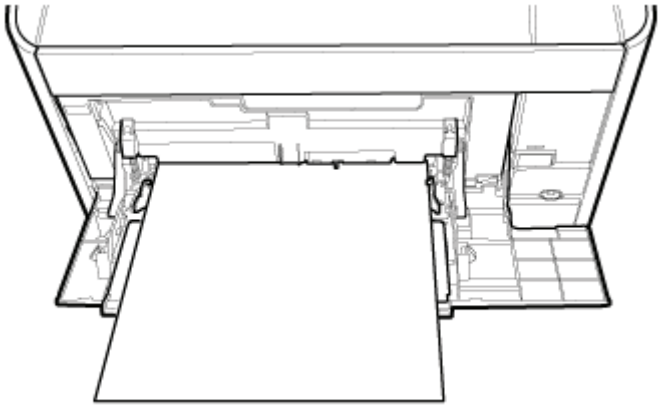


CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.



Multi-purpose tray capacity

Paper Type	Paper Capacity
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 50 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 30 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 20 sheets
Transparency (black-and-white printing only)	Approx. 20 sheets
Label	Approx. 20 sheets
Coated paper	Approx. 20 sheets

Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

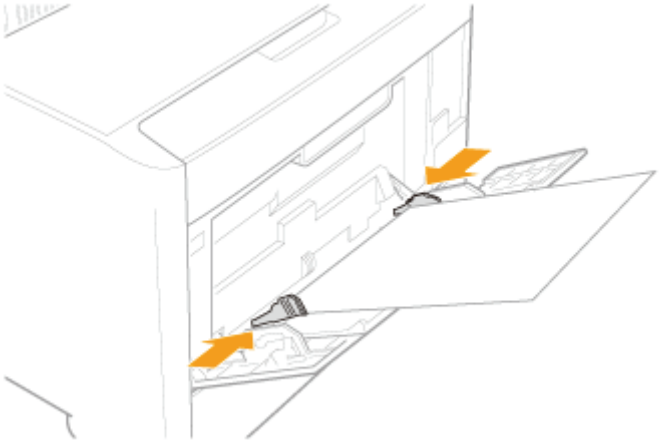
Precautions when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray

- Load the paper so that it is straight.
- If the rear edge of the paper stack is not properly aligned, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- If the paper is curled or folded at corners, flatten it before loading it in the printer.
- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

NOTE

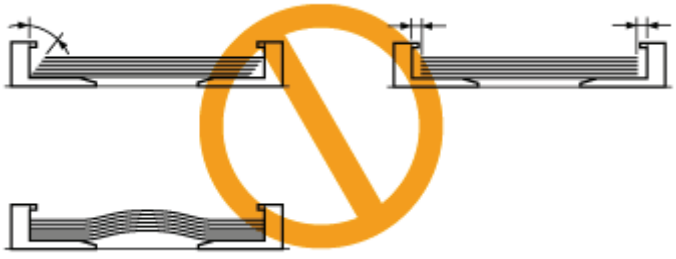
When printing paper with a letterhead or logo
See "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

7. **Align the paper guides with the width of the paper.**



IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



[F-18] Loading Index Cards

The following Index Card sizes are supported.

- 102.0 x 152.0 mm
- 127.0 x 203.0 mm

† **Index Card can be loaded only in the multi-purpose tray.**

IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper

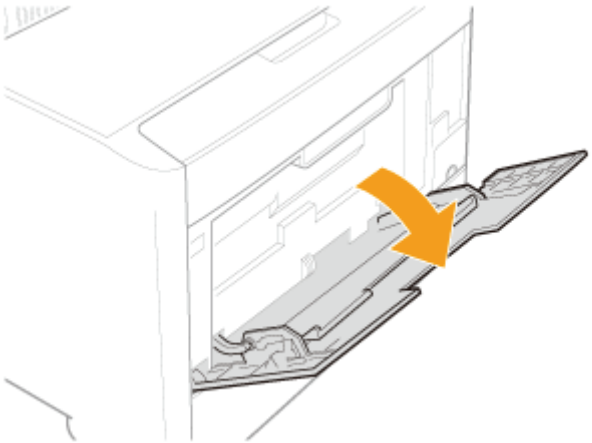
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

Handling the multi-purpose tray

"Paper Source"

1. **Open the multi-purpose tray.**

   Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.

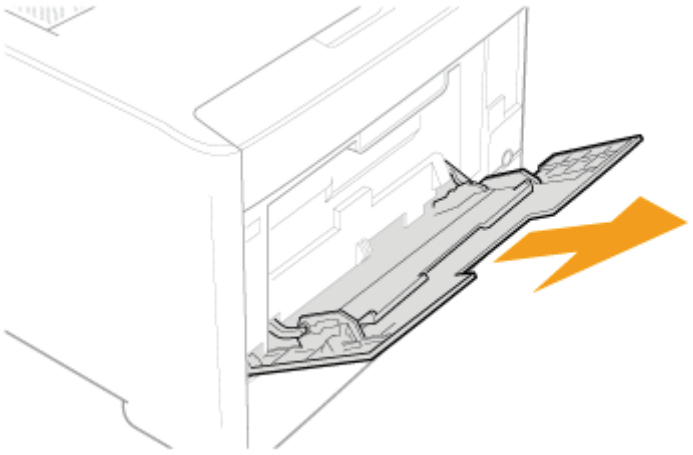


IMPORTANT

Be sure to insert the paper drawer.

If the paper drawer is not inserted, you cannot print from the multi-purpose tray.

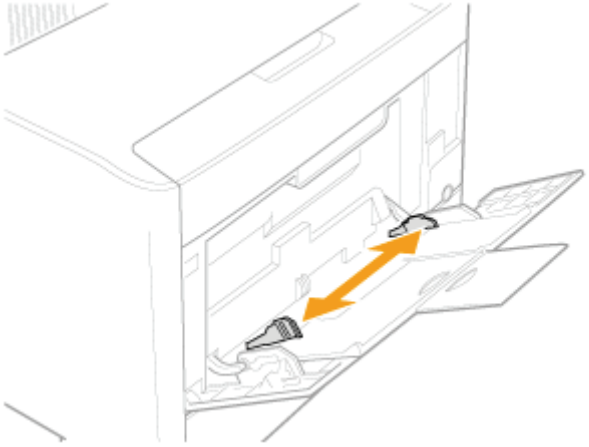
2. **Pull out the auxiliary tray.**



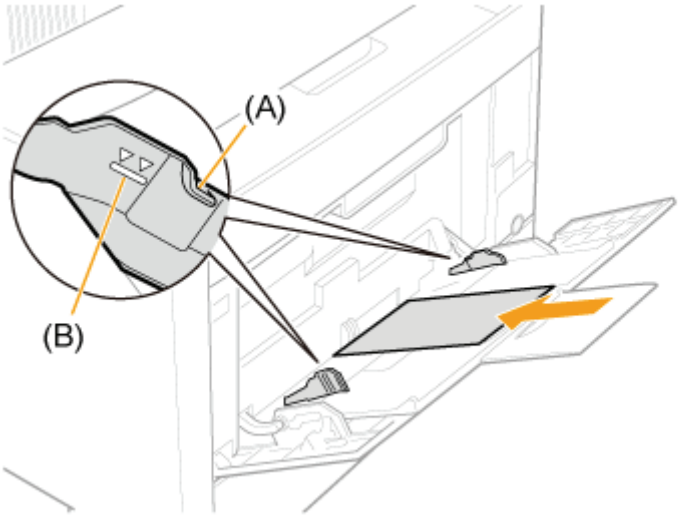
IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray.
Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

3. **Spread the paper guides a little wider than the Index Card width.**



4. **Gently load the Index Card stack under the load limit guides (A) until it touches the back of the tray.**
Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).

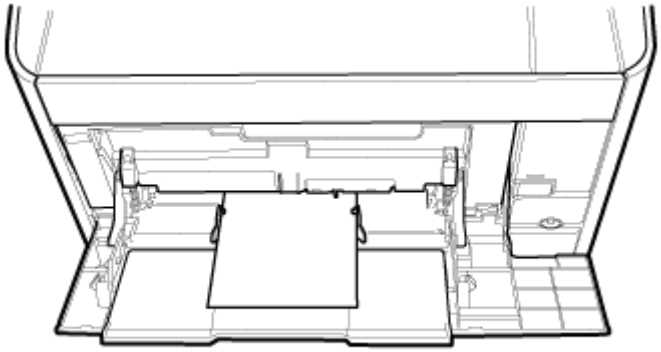


CAUTION

Be careful when handling Index Cards.
Handle Index Cards carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

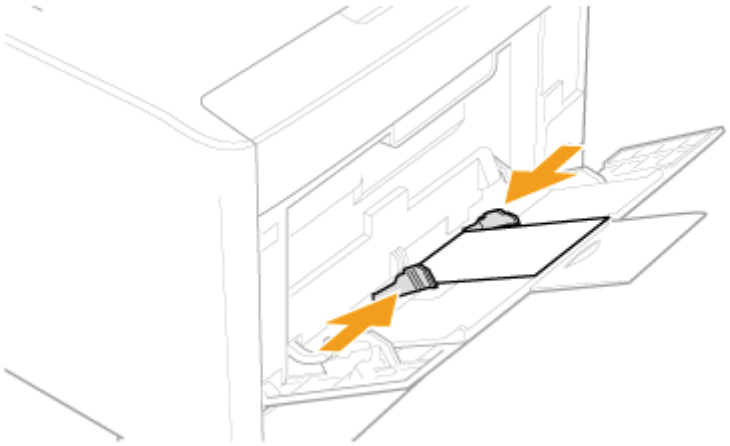
Be sure to load Index Cards in portrait orientation.



Multi-purpose tray capacity for Index Card
Up to approximately 20 Index Cards can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.
Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the Index Card stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

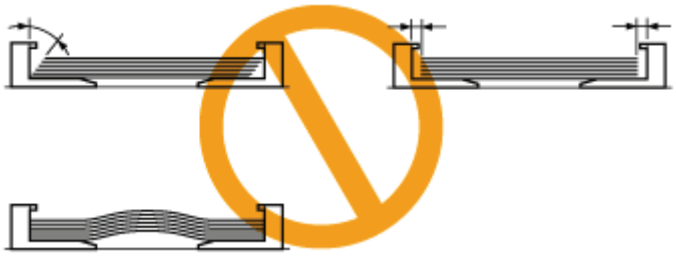
If Index Card is curled
Bend it in the opposite direction to flatten it before loading.

5. **Align the paper guides with the width of Index Card.**



IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of Index Card.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams of Index Cards.



[F-19] Loading Envelopes

- Loading Envelopes in the Paper Drawer
- Loading Envelopes in the Multi-purpose Tray

† **Envelope Monarch can be loaded only in the multi-purpose tray.**

Loading Envelopes in the Paper Drawer

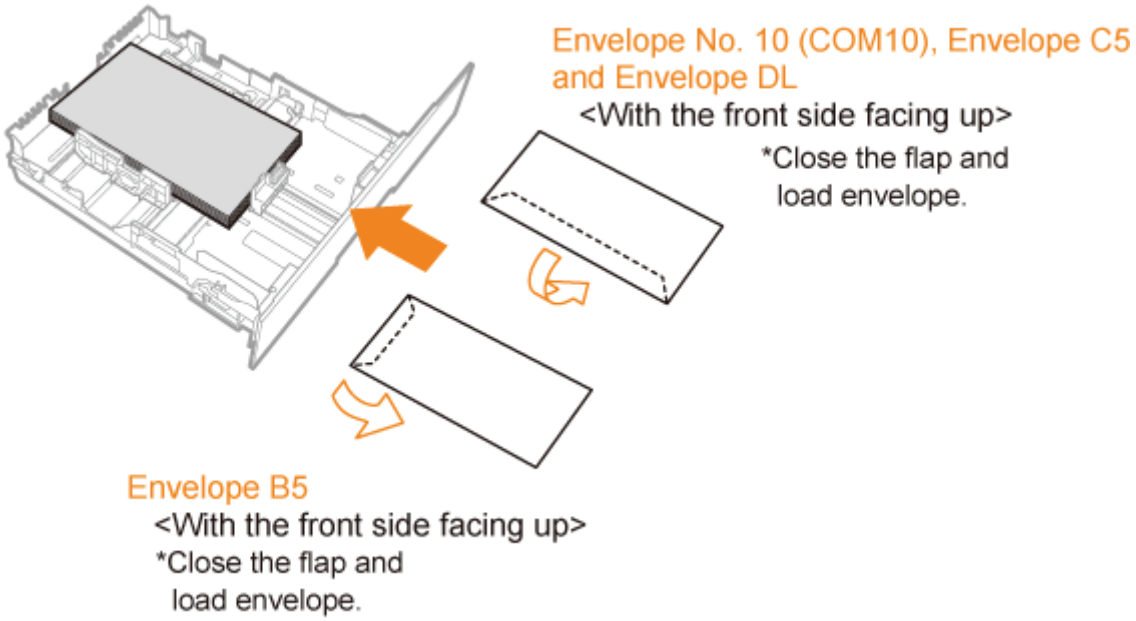
The following envelopes can be loaded in the paper drawer.

- Envelope No.10 (COM10) (104.7 mm x 241.3 mm)
- Envelope DL (110.0 mm x 220.0 mm)
- Envelope C5 (162.0 mm x 229.0 mm)
- Envelope B5 (176.0 mm x 250.0 mm)

Step 1: Loading Envelopes in the Paper Drawer
Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper

IMPORTANT

Loading orientation of envelopes
Load envelopes in the correct orientation as follows.
(➡: Feeding direction)



Detailed information about usable paper
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

Handling the paper drawer

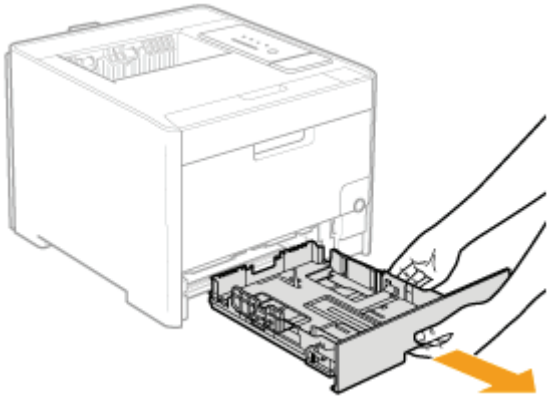
"Paper Source"

NOTE

How to load envelopes in Drawer 2 (optional paper feeder)
Load the paper in Drawer 2 in the same manner as you load the paper in Drawer 1.

Step 1: Loading Envelopes in the Paper Drawer

1. **Pull out the paper drawer.**

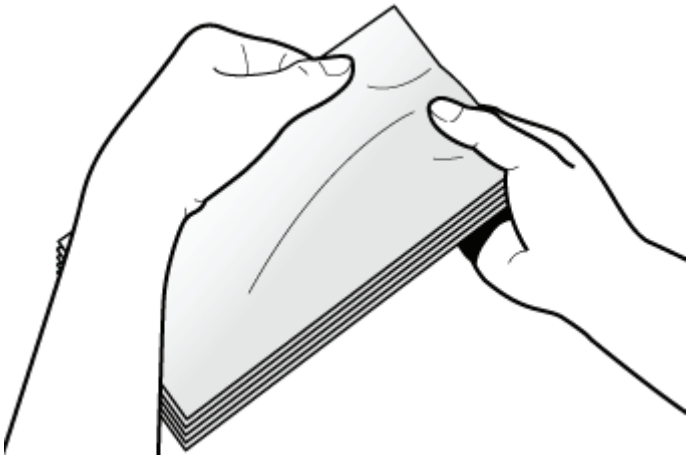


CAUTION

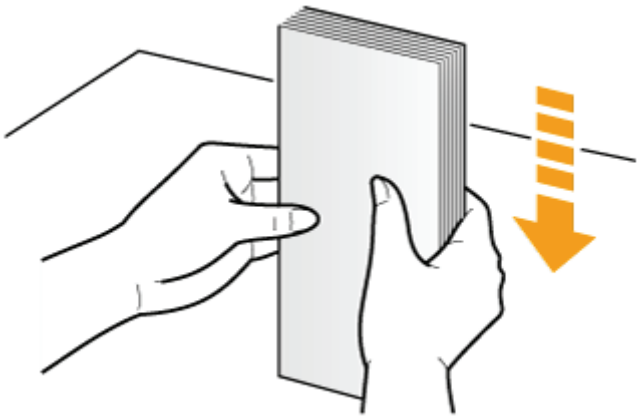
Be sure to remove the paper drawer.
If paper is loaded while the paper drawer is partially pulled out, the paper drawer may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.

2. **Align the envelopes.**
   1. Place the stack of envelopes on a flat surface, flatten them to release any remaining air, and be sure that the edges are pressed tightly.

2. Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten curls as shown in the figure.



3. Align the edges of the envelopes on a flat surface.

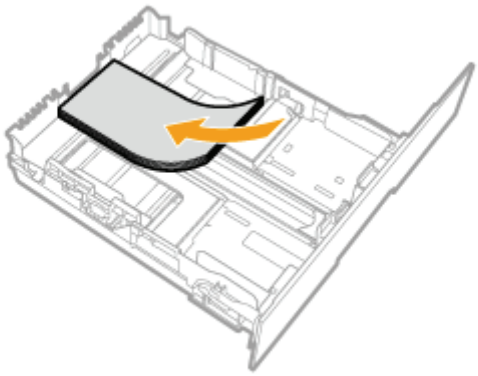


CAUTION

Be careful when handling envelopes.
Handle envelopes carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the envelopes.

---

3. **Load the envelopes so that the edges of them are aligned with the rear side of the paper drawer.**



CAUTION

Be careful when handling envelopes.
Handle envelopes carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the envelopes.

IMPORTANT

Loading orientation of envelopes
See the instruction described at the top of the procedure.

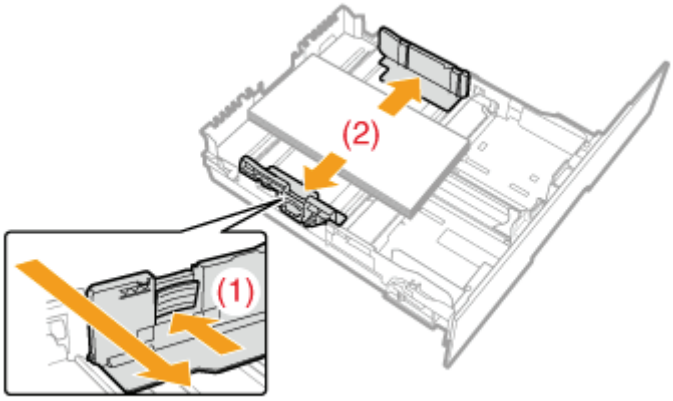
Load envelopes with the front side (non-glued side) facing up.
You cannot print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.

Paper drawer capacity for envelopes
Approx. 10 sheets

4. **Align the paper guides with the envelopes.**

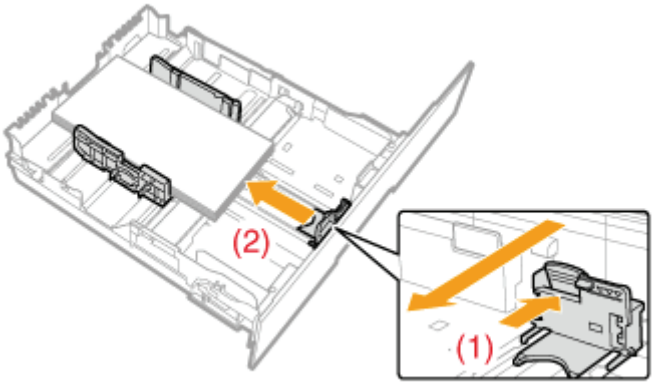
Slide the side paper guides.

(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to be aligned with the width of the envelopes.
† The side paper guides move together.



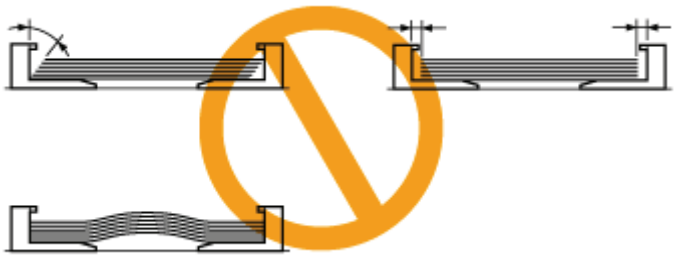
Slide the paper guide at the front center.

(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to be aligned with the length of the envelopes.



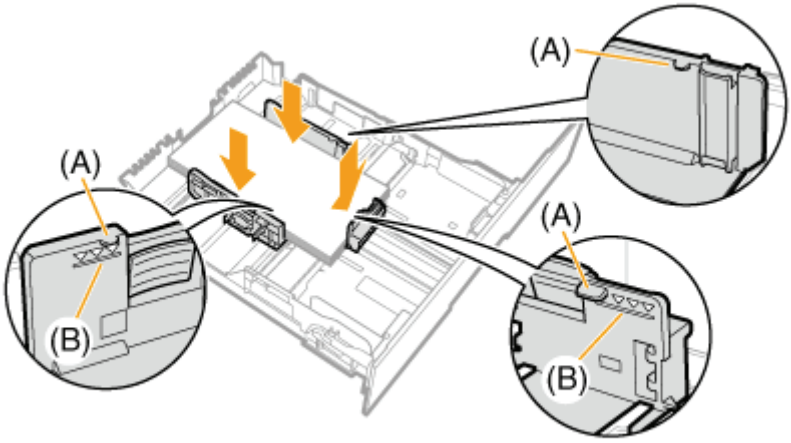
IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the envelopes.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



5. **Hold down the envelopes, then set them under the hooks (A) on the paper guides.**

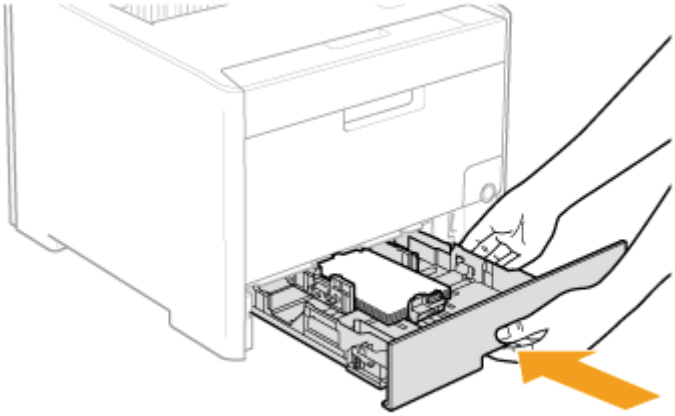
Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).



IMPORTANT

Do not load the envelope stack which exceeds the load limit mark lines.
Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the envelope stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

6. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**
Push it into the printer firmly.



CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper

This printer's paper drawer cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the loaded paper.
Register the paper size using the following procedure.

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

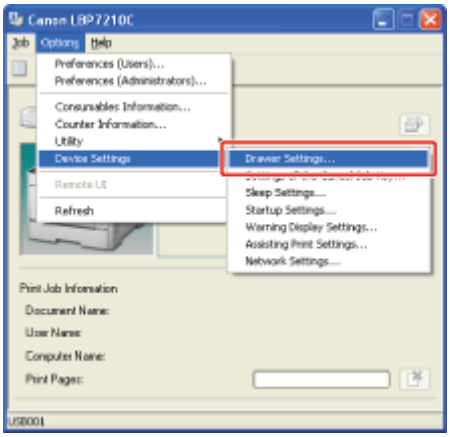
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].**



NOTE

When registering a paper size

As you cannot register a paper size while printing is in progress, make sure that the printer is idle before registering the paper size.
However, you can register a paper size while one of the following messages is displayed.

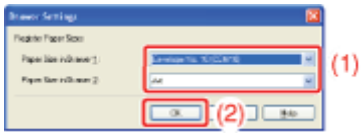
- <Specified Paper Different from Set Paper>
- <Out of Paper>

---

3. **Register the paper size.**

   (1) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper drawer.
   - Drawer 1: The paper drawer supplied with the printer unit
   - Drawer 2: The paper drawer of the optional paper feeder

   (2) Click [OK].



Loading Envelopes in the Multi-purpose Tray

The following envelopes can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

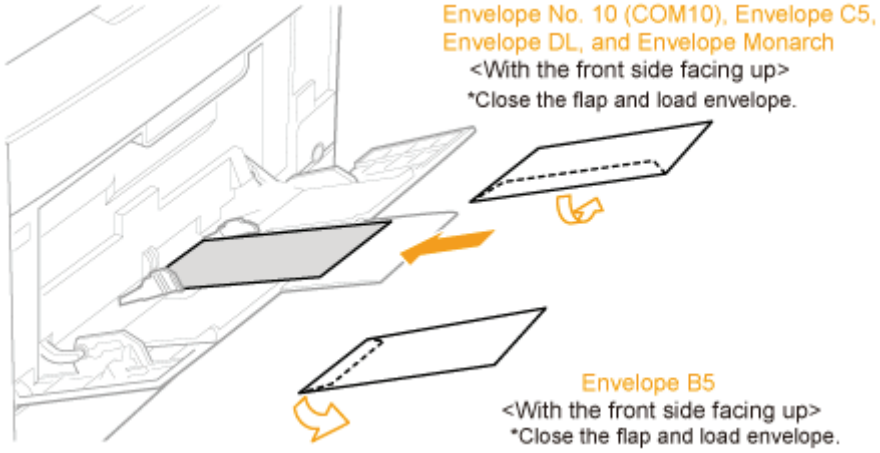
- Envelope Monarch (98.4 mm x 190.5 mm)
- Envelope No.10 (COM10) (104.7 mm x 241.3 mm)
- Envelope DL (110.0 mm x 220.0 mm)
- Envelope C5 (162.0 mm x 229.0 mm)
- Envelope B5 (176.0 mm x 250.0 mm)

IMPORTANT

Loading orientation of envelopes

Load envelopes in the correct orientation as follows.

(➡: Feeding direction)



Detailed information about usable paper

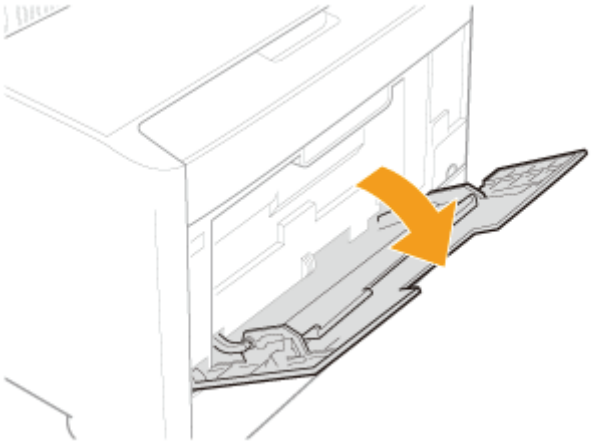
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

Handling the multi-purpose tray

"Paper Source"

1. **Open the multi-purpose tray.**

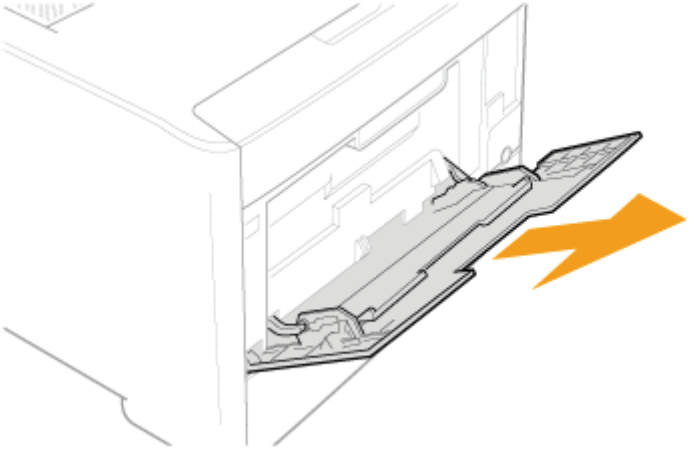
   Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



IMPORTANT

Be sure to insert the paper drawer.
If the paper drawer is not inserted, you cannot print from the multi-purpose tray.

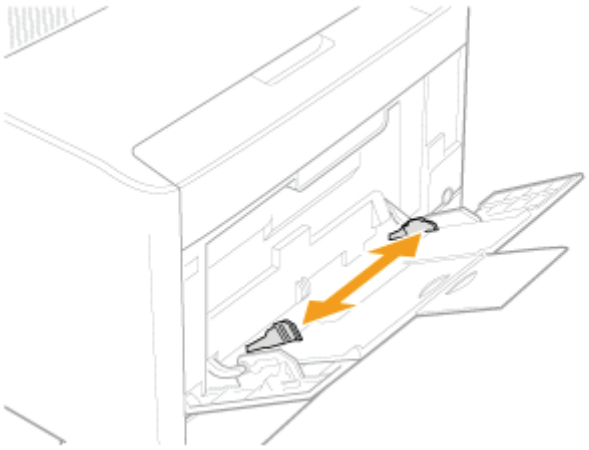
2. **Pull out the auxiliary tray.**



IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray.
Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

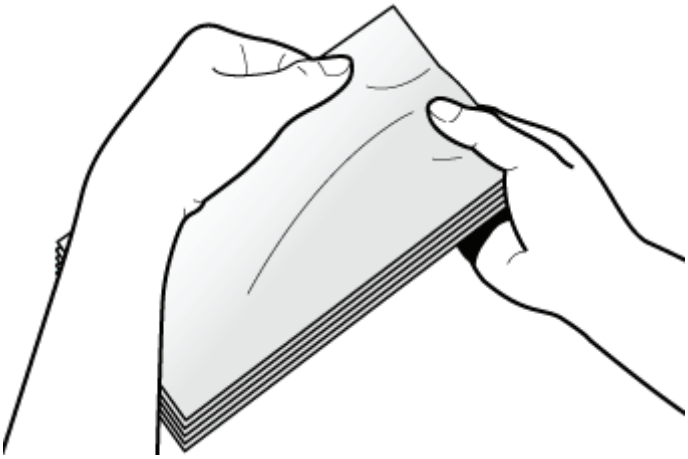
3. **Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual envelope width.**



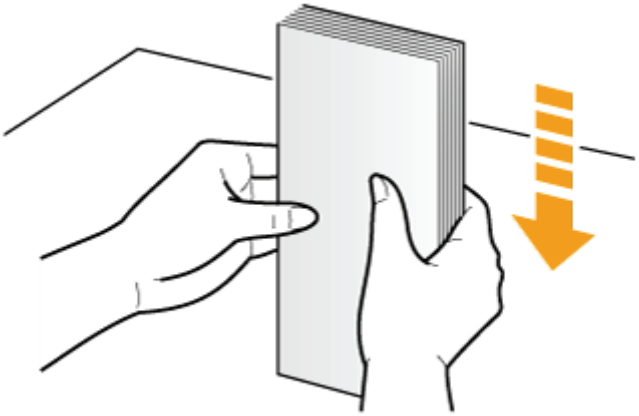
4. **Align the envelopes.**

1. Place the stack of envelopes on a flat surface, flatten them to release any remaining air, and be sure that the edges are pressed tightly.

2. Loosen any stiff corners of the envelopes and flatten curls as shown in the figure.



3. Align the edges of the envelopes on a flat surface.



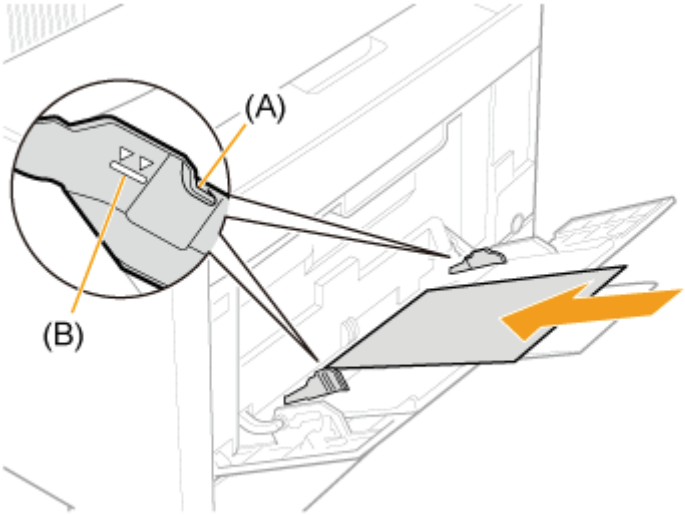
CAUTION

Be careful when handling envelopes.
Handle envelopes carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the envelopes.

---

5. **Gently load the envelope stack under the load limit guides (A) until it touches the back of the tray.**

Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).



CAUTION

Be careful when handling envelopes.
Handle envelopes carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the envelopes.

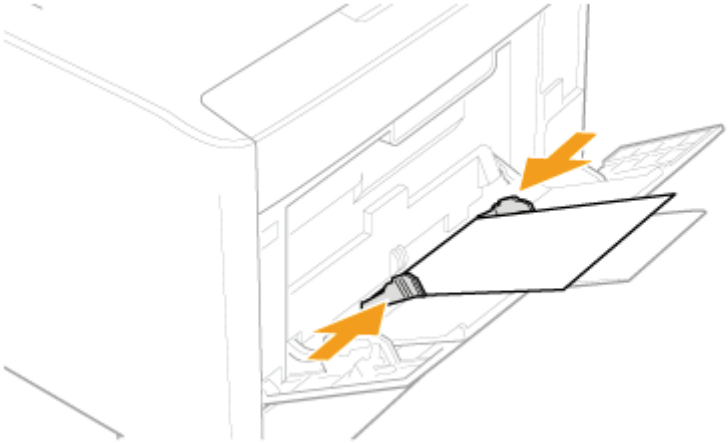
IMPORTANT

Loading orientation of envelopes
See the instruction described at the top of the procedure.

Load envelopes with the front side (non-glued side) facing up.
You cannot print on the reverse side (glued side) of envelopes.

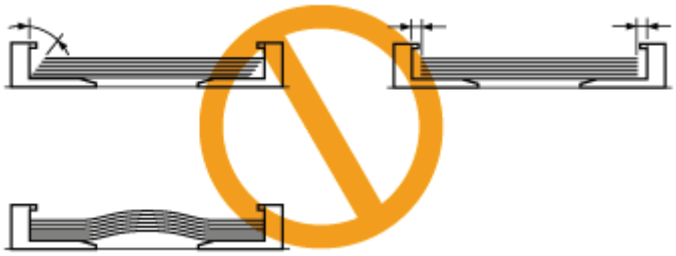
Multi-purpose tray capacity for envelopes
Up to approximately 5 envelopes can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.
Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the envelope stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

6. **Align the paper guides with the width of the envelopes.**



IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the envelopes.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



[F-20] Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)

- Loading Custom Size Paper in the Paper Drawer
- Loading Custom Size Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

Loading Custom Size Paper in the Paper Drawer

The following custom size paper can be loaded in the paper drawer.

- Width 100.0 to 215.9 mm; Length 148.0 to 355.6 mm

Step 1: Loading Custom Size Paper in the Paper Drawer
Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper
Step 3: Registering a Custom Paper Size

IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

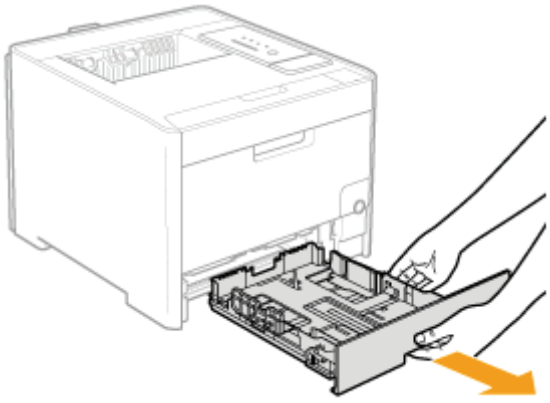
Handling the paper drawer
"Paper Source"

NOTE

How to load custom size paper in Drawer 2 (optional paper feeder)
Load the paper in Drawer 2 in the same manner as you load the paper in Drawer 1.

Step 1: Loading Custom Size Paper in the Paper Drawer

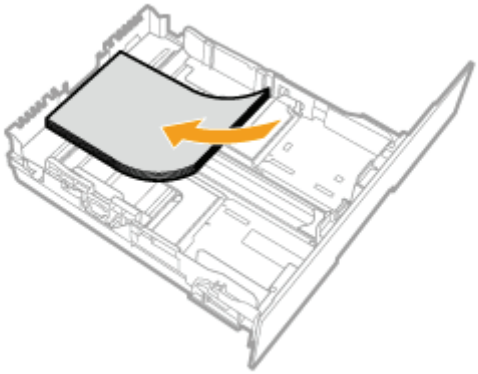
1. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



CAUTION

Be sure to remove the paper drawer.
If paper is loaded while the paper drawer is partially pulled out, the paper drawer may drop or the printer may become damaged resulting in personal injury.

2. **Load the custom size paper so that the edges of the paper stack are aligned with the rear side of the paper drawer.**

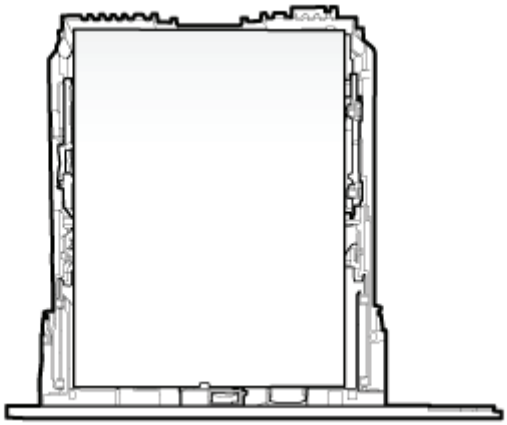


CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.
Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.



Paper drawer capacity

Paper Type	Paper Capacity
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 250 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 200 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 150 sheets

When using paper that has been poorly cut
If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

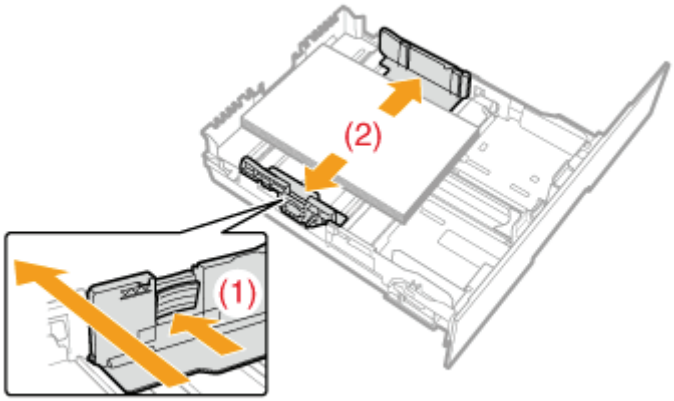
NOTE

When printing paper with a letterhead or logo
See "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

3. **Align the paper guides with the loaded paper.**

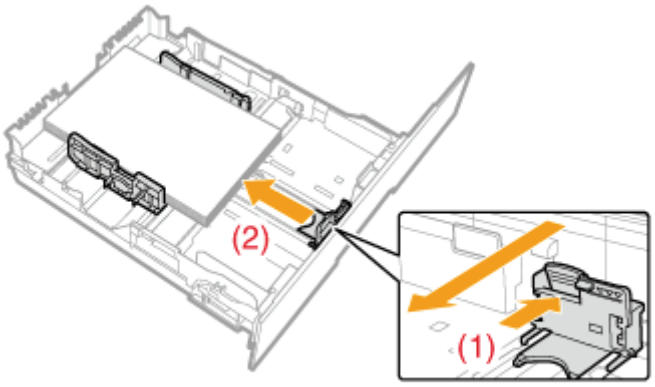
Slide the side paper guides.

(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to be aligned with the width of the loaded paper.
† The side paper guides move together.



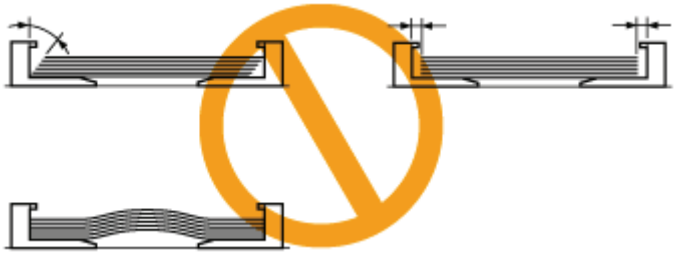
Slide the paper guide at the front center.

(1) Hold the lock release lever.
(2) Slide the paper guides to be aligned with the length of the loaded paper.

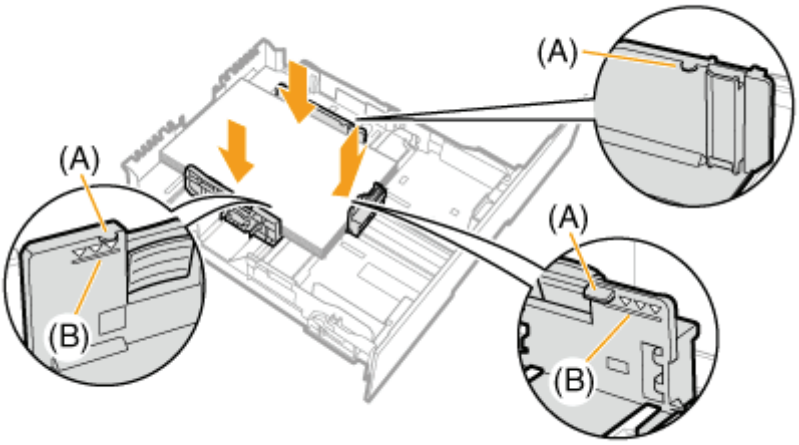


IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



4. **Hold down the paper, then set it under the hooks (A) on the paper guides.**
Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).

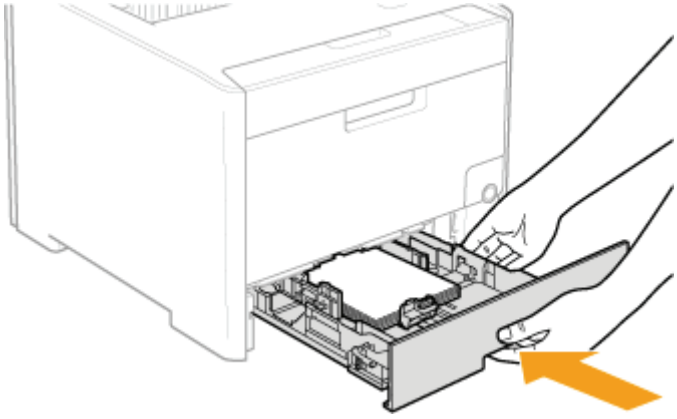


IMPORTANT

Do not load the paper stack which exceeds the load limit mark lines.

Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

5. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**
Push it into the printer firmly.



CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

Step 2: Registering the Size of Paper

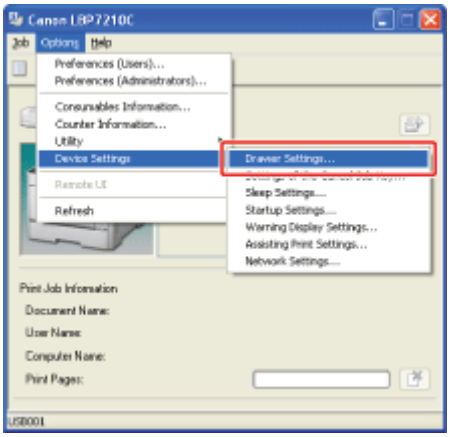
This printer's paper drawer cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the loaded paper.
Register the paper size using the following procedure.

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].**



NOTE

When registering a paper size

As you cannot register a paper size while printing is in progress, make sure that the printer is idle before registering the paper size.

However, you can register a paper size while one of the following messages is displayed.

- <Specified Paper Different from Set Paper>
- <Out of Paper>

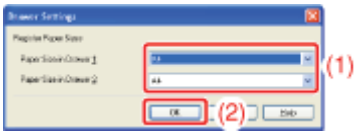
---

3. **Register the paper size.**

(1) Select [Custom].

- Drawer 1: The paper drawer supplied with the printer unit
- Drawer 2: The paper drawer of the optional paper feeder

(2) Click [OK].



Step 3: Registering a Custom Paper Size

If printing custom size paper, you need to register the custom paper size in the printer driver previously. Register the custom paper size using the following procedure.

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**

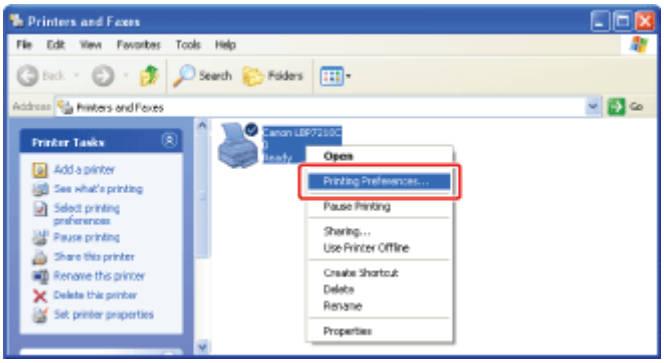
- Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
  From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows XP Home Edition
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows Vista

From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].

- Windows Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

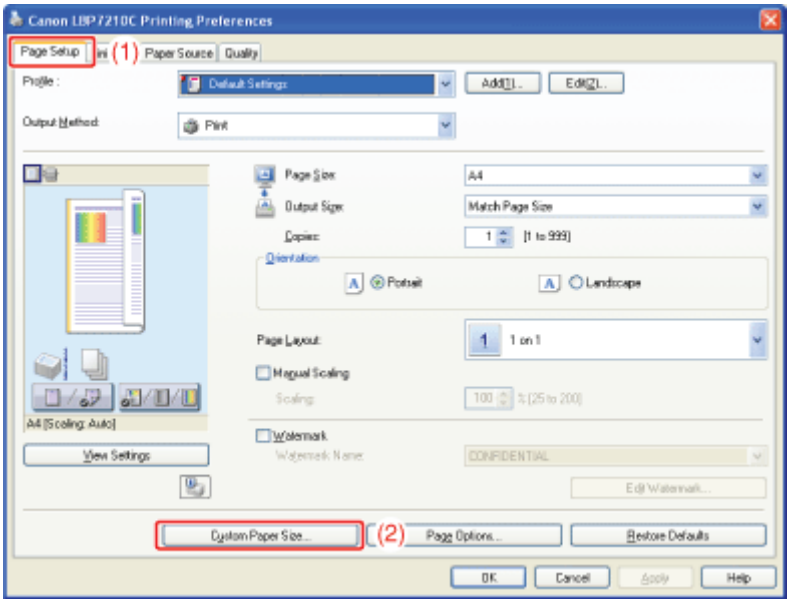
2. Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Printing Preferences] from the pop-up menu.



---

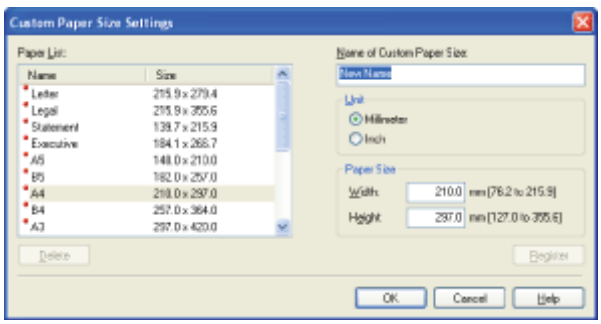
3. Display the [Custom Paper Size Settings] dialog box.

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Click [Custom Paper Size].



---

4. Specify the custom paper size.



[Name of Custom Paper Size]: Enter the name of the custom paper size to be added. Up to 31 characters can be entered.

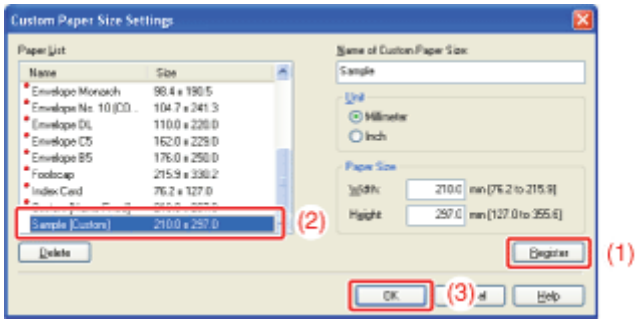
[Unit]: Select the unit to be used when setting the custom paper size.

[Paper Size]: Specify the height and width of the custom paper size ([Height] ≧ [Width]).
Specify the custom paper size in portrait orientation ([Height] ≧ [Width]) within user-definable sizes.

---

5. **Register the custom paper size.**

(1) Click [Register].
(2) Confirm that the registered custom paper size is added to [Paper List].
(3) Click [OK].



NOTE

The number of custom paper sizes which can be registered
The number varies depending on the system environment.

Loading Custom Size Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

The following custom size paper can be loaded in the multi-purpose tray.

- Width 76.2 to 215.9 mm; Length 127.0 to 355.6 mm

Step 1: **Loading Custom Size Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray**
Step 2: **Registering a Custom Paper Size**

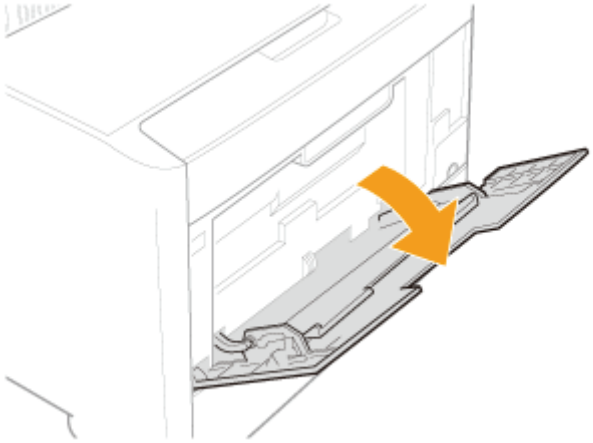
IMPORTANT

Detailed information about usable paper
"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

Handling the multi-purpose tray
"Paper Source"

Step 1: Loading Custom Size Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray

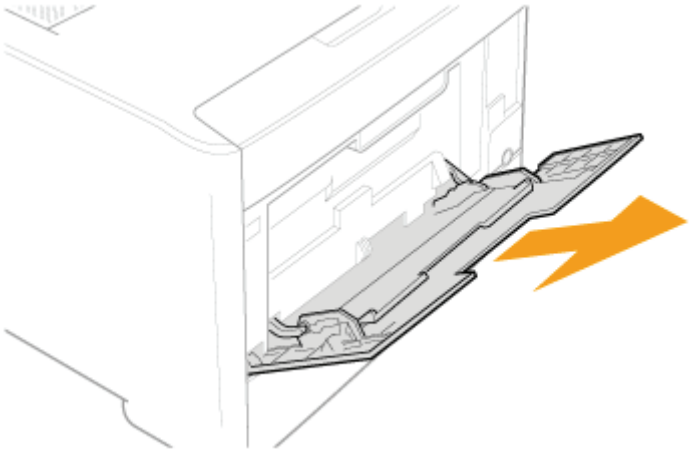
1. **Open the multi-purpose tray.**
   Holding the opening at the center of the printer, open the multi-purpose tray.



IMPORTANT

Be sure to insert the paper drawer.
If the paper drawer is not inserted, you cannot print from the multi-purpose tray.

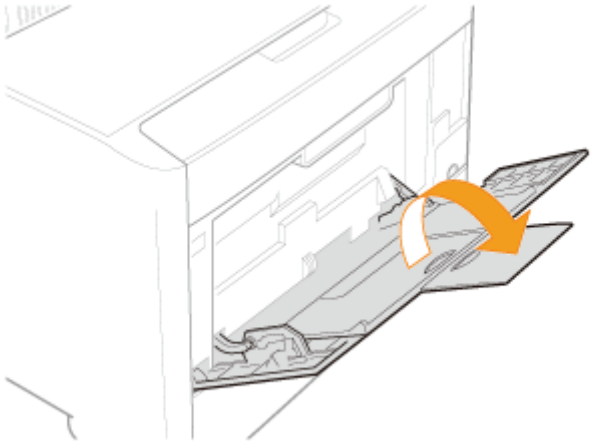
2. **Pull out the auxiliary tray.**



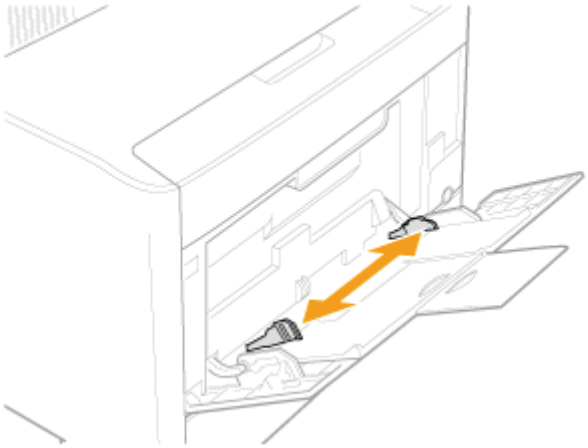
IMPORTANT

Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray.
Be sure to pull out the auxiliary tray when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray.

3. **When loading long-size paper, open the tray extension.**

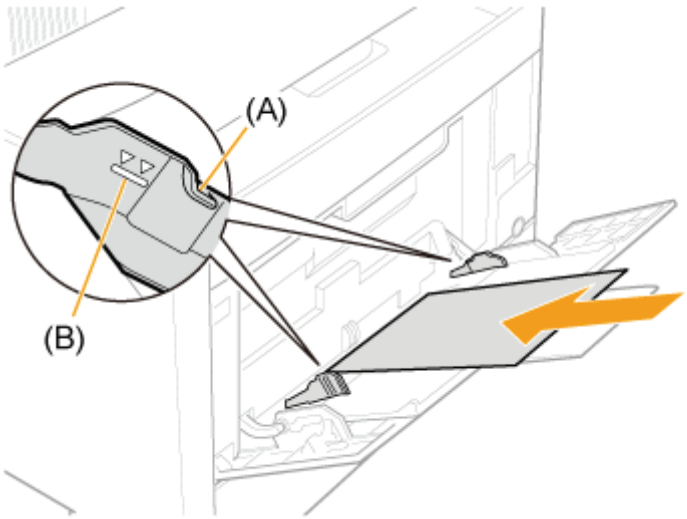


4. **Spread the paper guides a little wider than the actual paper width.**



5. **Gently load the paper stack under the load limit guides (A) until it touches the back of the tray.**

   Make sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines (B).



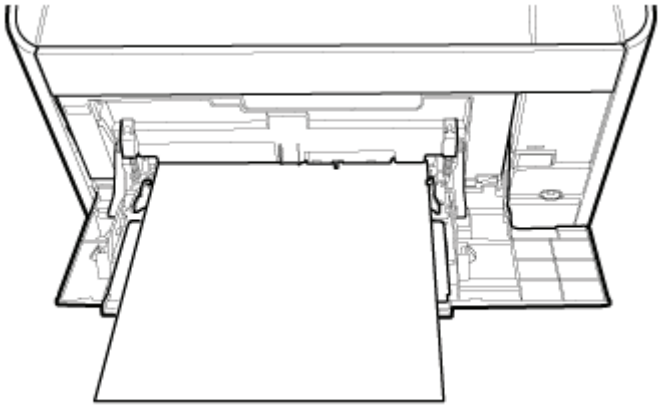
⚠CAUTION

Be careful when handling paper.

Handle paper carefully not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.

IMPORTANT

Be sure to load paper in portrait orientation.



Multi-purpose tray capacity

Paper Type	Paper Capacity
Plain paper (Ex. 80 g/m^2)	Approx. 50 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 91 g/m^2)	Approx. 30 sheets
Heavy paper (Ex. 128 g/m^2)	Approx. 20 sheets

Be sure that the paper stack does not exceed the load limit mark lines. If the paper stack exceeds the load limit mark lines, this may result in misfeeds.

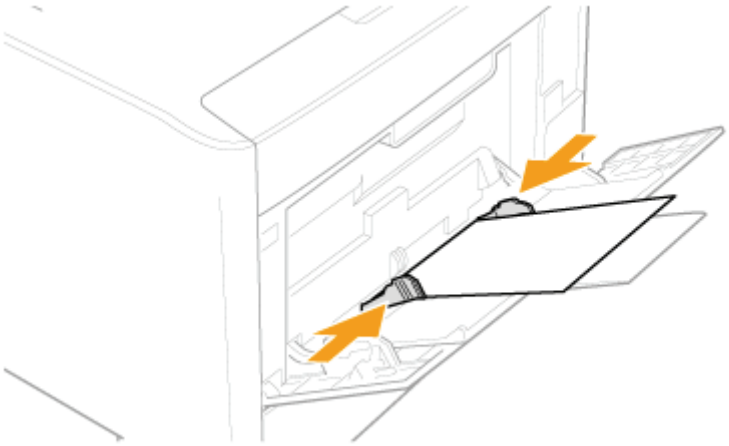
Precautions when loading paper in the multi-purpose tray

- Load the paper so that it is straight.
- If the rear edge of the paper stack is not properly aligned, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.
- If the paper is curled or folded at corners, flatten it before loading it in the printer.
- If you use paper that has been poorly cut, multiple sheets of paper may be fed at once. In this case, fan the paper thoroughly, and then align the edges of the stack properly on a hard, flat surface.

NOTE

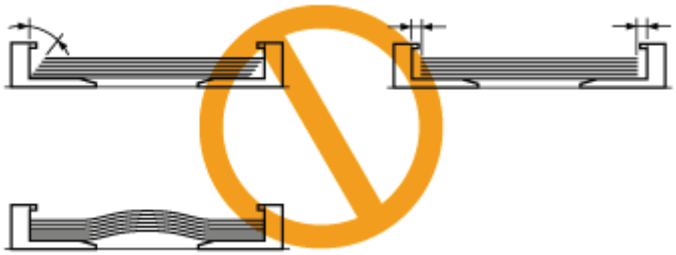
When printing paper with a letterhead or logo
See "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

6. **Align the paper guides with the width of the paper.**



IMPORTANT

Be sure to align the paper guides with the width of the paper.
If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds or paper jams.



Step 2: Registering a Custom Paper Size

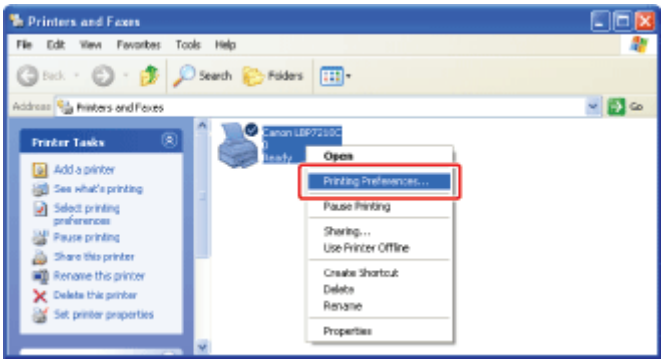
If printing custom size paper, you need to register the custom paper size in the printer driver previously. Register the custom paper size using the following procedure.

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

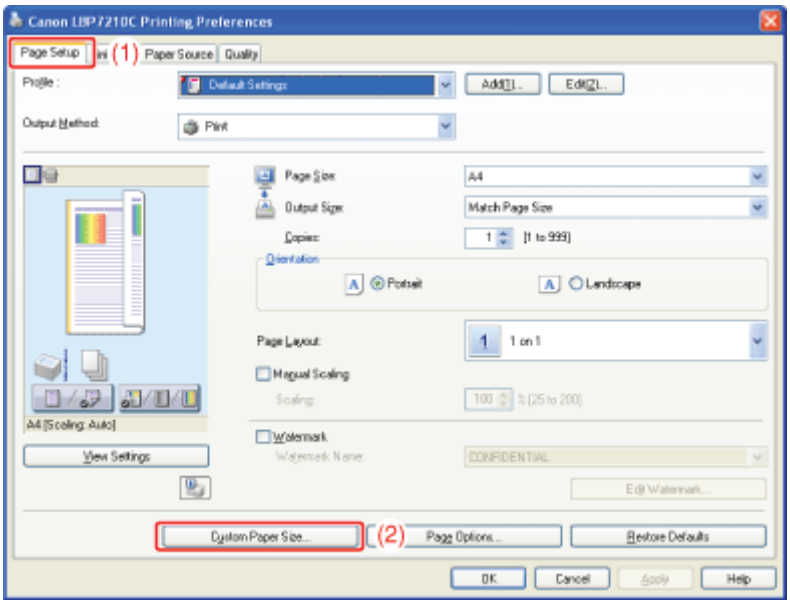
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Printing Preferences] from the pop-up menu.**



---

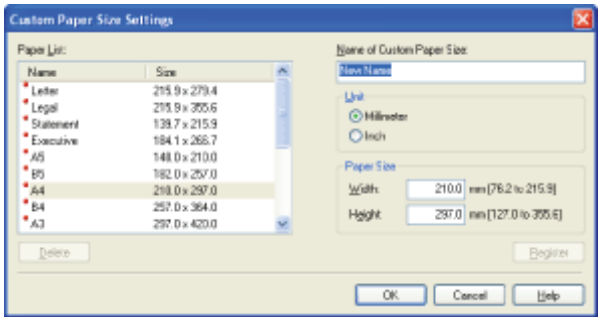
3. Display the [Custom Paper Size Settings] dialog box.

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Click [Custom Paper Size].



---

4. Specify the custom paper size.



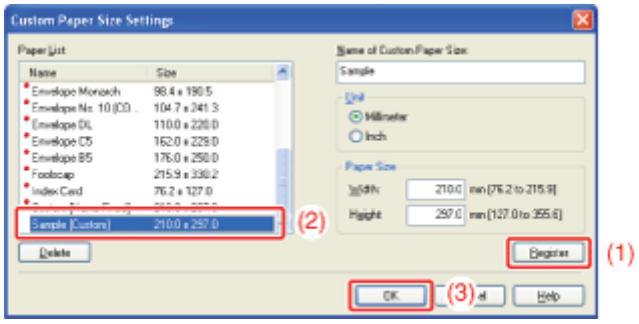
[Name of Custom Paper Size]: Enter the name of the custom paper size to be added. Up to 31 characters can be entered.

[Unit]: Select the unit to be used when setting the custom paper size.

[Paper Size]: Specify the height and width of the custom paper size ([Height] ≧ [Width]).
Specify the custom paper size in portrait orientation ([Height] ≧ [Width]) within user-definable sizes.

5. **Register the custom paper size.**

(1) Click [Register].
(2) Confirm that the registered custom paper size is added to [Paper List].
(3) Click [OK].



NOTE

The number of custom paper sizes which can be registered
The number varies depending on the system environment.

[F-21] 1-sided Printing and 2-sided Printing

You can select whether to print on one side or both sides of each sheet of paper. The default setting is 2-sided printing.

The following paper can be used for automatic 2-sided printing.

Paper Type	Paper Size
Plain paper (60 to 90 g/m^2) Heavy paper (86 to 163 g/m^2)	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) B5 (182.0 mm x 257.0 mm) Legal (8.50 in. x 14.00 in.) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.) Executive (7.25 in. x 10.50 in.) Foolscap (8.50 in. x 13.00 in.)
Coated Paper (100 to 110 g/m^2, 120 to 130 g/m^2, 155 to 165 g/m^2)	A4 (210.0 mm x 297.0 mm) Letter (8.50 in. x 11.00 in.)

IMPORTANT

Precautions when performing automatic 2-sided printing

- You cannot perform automatic 2-sided printing on paper other than the above.
- Do not touch the paper during automatic 2-sided printing until it is output completely. The paper is first output partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to be printed on the reverse side.

NOTE

In the case where the last page is 1-sided printing

In cases such as where the last page for the 2-sided printing is 1-sided printing, specifying the following setting allows you to print faster than normal automatic 2-sided printing.

1. Click [Advanced Settings] in the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Set [Print Last Page in 1-sided Mode when 2-sided Printing is Set] to [On].

However, when performing 2-sided printing on punched paper or previously printed paper, the orientation or printing surface of the last page may differ from other pages. In this case, specify [Off].

1. Load paper in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray.

NOTE

Paper loading orientation

On automatic 2-sided printing, the reverse side of the paper is printed first, therefore the paper should be loaded in the opposite orientation to that for 1-sided printing.

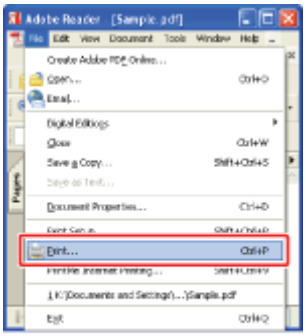
If printing on such paper with letterheads, in which faces and directional orientations are specified, see "Paper Loading Orientation" and load the paper in the proper orientation.

How to load paper

"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

---

2. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



NOTE

About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.

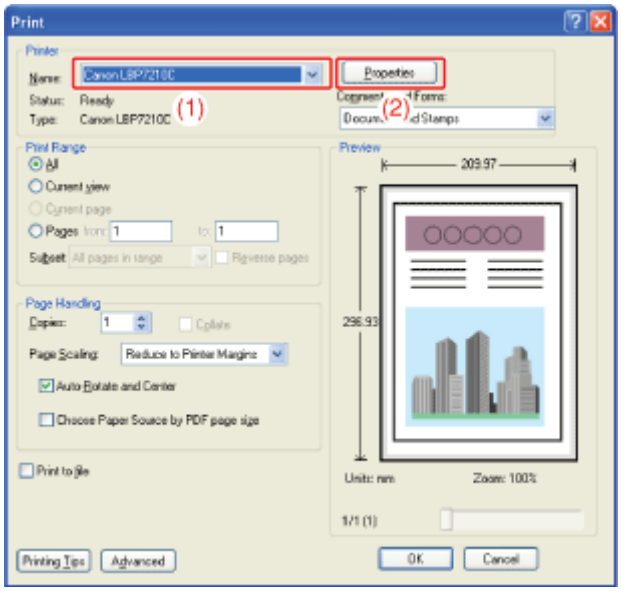
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

3. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

(1) Select this printer.

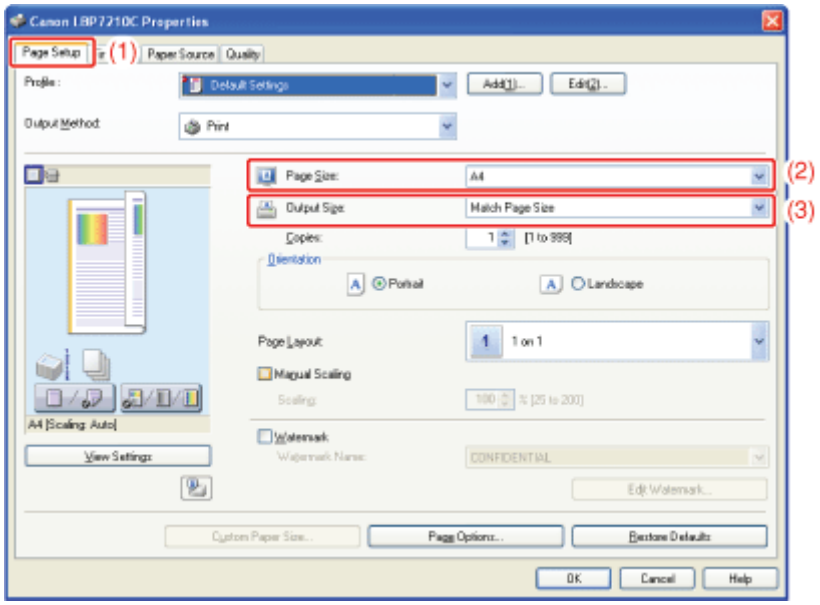
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

4. Specify the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size].

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the page size of the document created by an application.
(3) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper source as needed.



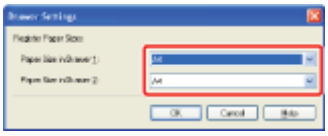
IMPORTANT

If the [Page Size] setting and [Output Size] setting are not the same
The print is automatically reduced or enlarged to fit on the page.

When printing from the paper drawer
Use the following procedure to check that the [Output Size] setting and [Register Paper Sizes] setting are the same.

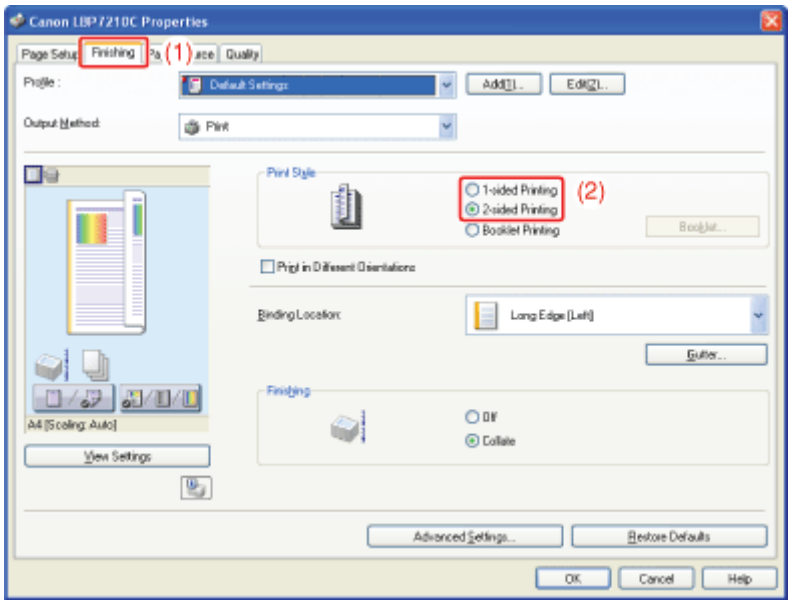
1. Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window).
2. From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].
3. Check that the [Register Paper Sizes] setting is the same as the [Output Size]

setting.



5. Specify the setting for [Print Style].

(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.
(2) Select [2-sided Printing].

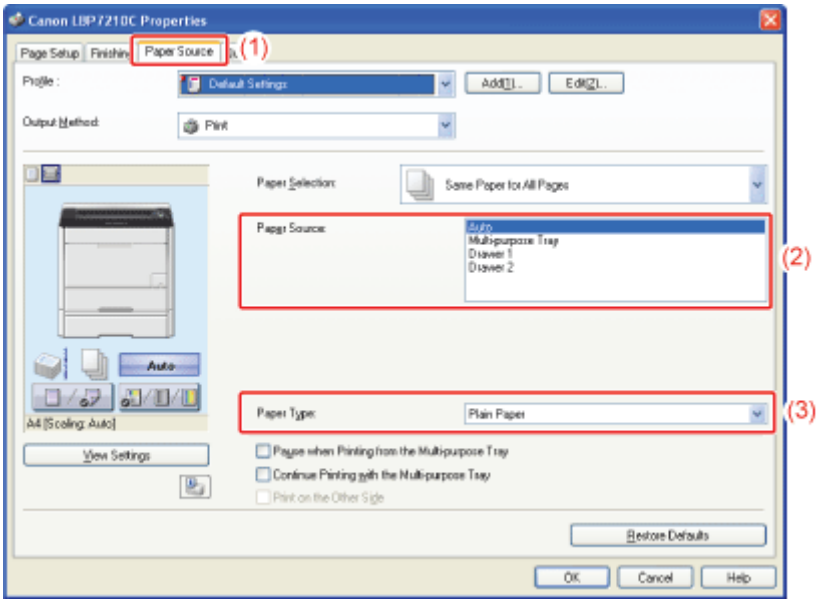


NOTE

Using Preview to specify [2-sided Printing]
You can specify [2-sided Printing] using Preview.
"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

6. Specify the settings for [Paper Source] and [Paper Type].

(1) Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
(2) Select the paper source you want to use.
(3) Select the type of the paper loaded in the paper source.



NOTE

When printing paper of a type other than plain paper from the paper drawer
Select [Drawer 1] or [Drawer 2] (optional) in [Paper Source].

† If you select [Auto], you cannot print from the paper drawer. (Paper is fed from the multi-purpose tray.)

About [Paper Type]
Specify the setting according to the paper type as follows.

Paper Type		Setting for [Paper Type] in the Printer Driver
Plain paper	60 to 74 g/m^2	[Plain Paper L]*1
	70 to 90 g/m^2	[Plain Paper]*1*2
Heavy paper	86 to 119 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 1]*2
	120 to 128 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 2]
	129 to 163 g/m^2	[Heavy Paper 3]
Coated Paper	100 to 110 g/m^2	[Coated 1]
	120 to 130 g/m^2	[Coated 2]
	155 to 165 g/m^2	[Coated 3]

*1 If you want to print paper of 70 to 74 g/m^2, you can specify either of [Plain Paper] or [Plain Paper L].*3

*2 If you want to print paper of 86 to 90 g/m^2, you can specify either of [Plain Paper] or [Heavy Paper 1].*3

*3 If either setting causes the following problems etc., specify the other setting to print.

- Output paper curls.
- Residual images appear on non-printed areas.
- The toner does not fix onto paper well, and the printing comes out faint.

7. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

8. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-22] Printing Multiple Pages on One Sheet

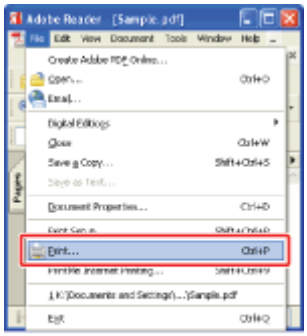
You can print multiple pages on one sheet.
This is a printing method which is referred to as intensive printing or N-page Print.

IMPORTANT

About the application function to print a document as a collated set of copies
Some applications provide a function to print a document as a collated set of copies. Do not use this function when printing multiple pages on one sheet.
The document may not be printed properly.

---

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**



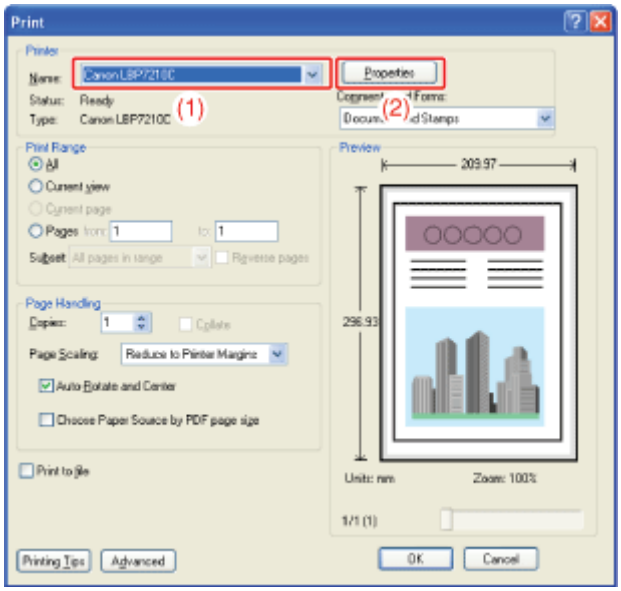
NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. **Open the printing preferences dialog box.**

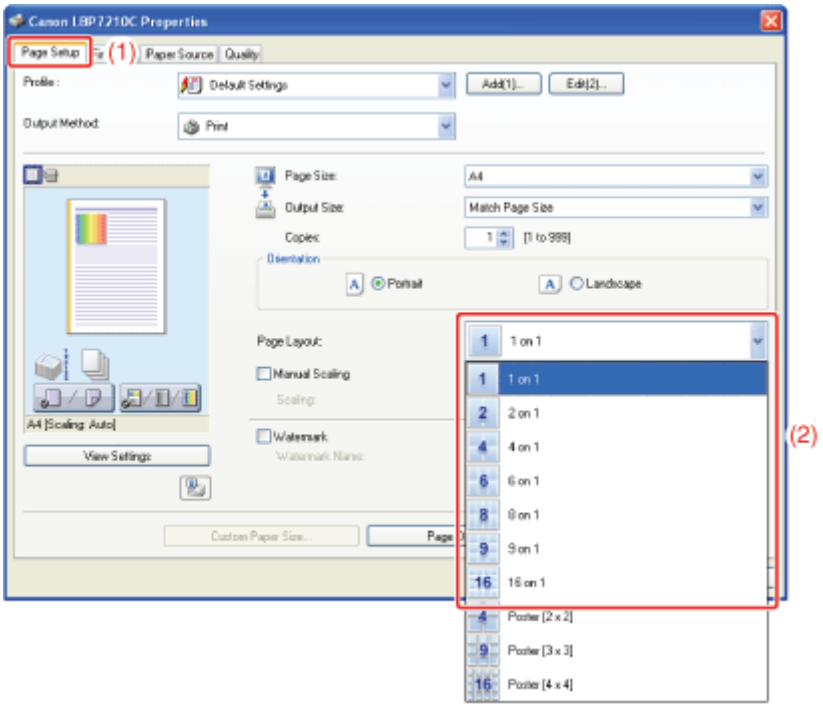
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Specify the setting for [Page Layout].

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the number of pages to be printed on one sheet.



NOTE

If you cannot specify the setting

If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Page Layout] is grayed out and cannot be specified.

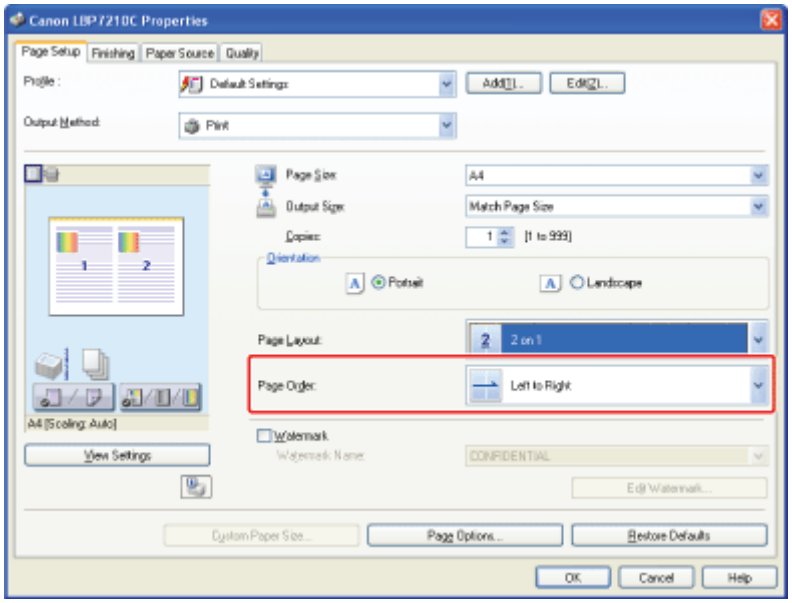
See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

Using Preview to specify the setting for [Page Layout]

You can also specify the setting for [Page Layout] using Preview.

"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

4. **Specify the page order layout on paper.**



NOTE

About the options for [Page Order]
The options for [Page Order] differ depending on the paper orientation and the number of pages to be printed on one sheet.

5. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

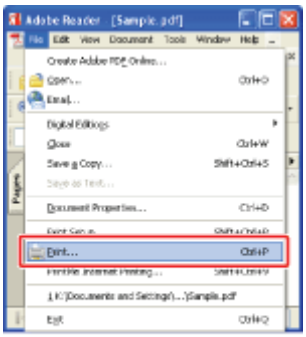
NOTE

Using Preview to specify the setting for page layout
"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

[F-23] Printing a Color Document in Black and White

Color documents can be printed in black and white using only black toner.
It is convenient if you use this option when printing a test page of color documents.

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.

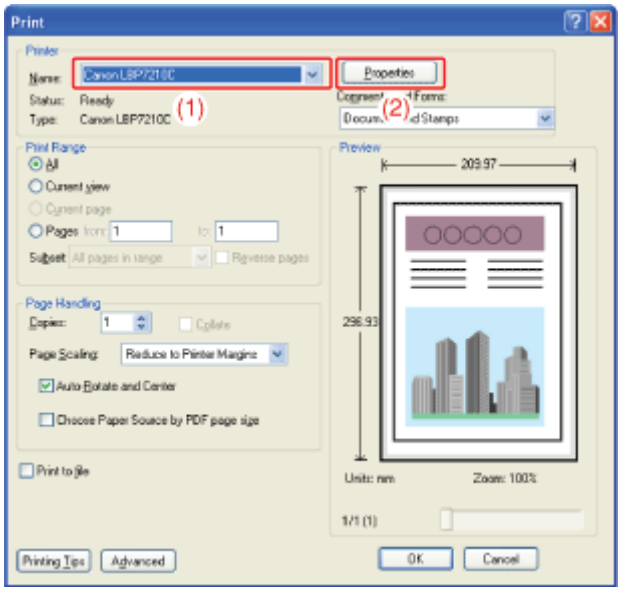


NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

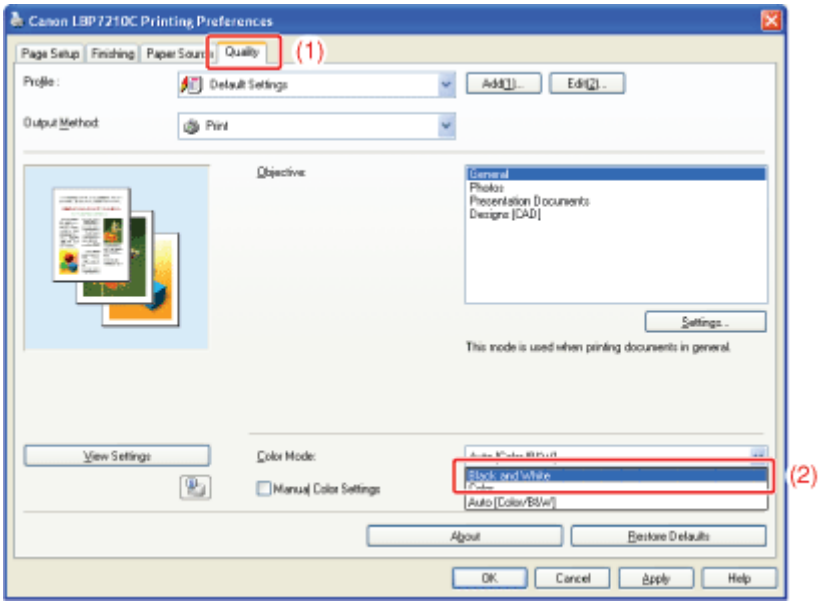
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Specify the setting for [Color Mode].

(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Select [Black and White].



NOTE

Using Preview to specify the setting for [Color Mode]
You can also specify the setting for [Color Mode] using Preview.
"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

---

4. Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

5. Click [OK] or [Print].

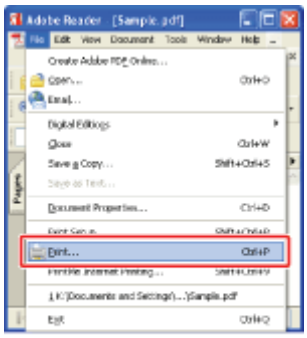
→ The printer starts printing.

[F-24] Printing Data with Different Orientations in the Same Job

When printing a document with pages in different orientations in the same job, you can specify the paper alignment and gutter settings for output.

---

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



NOTE

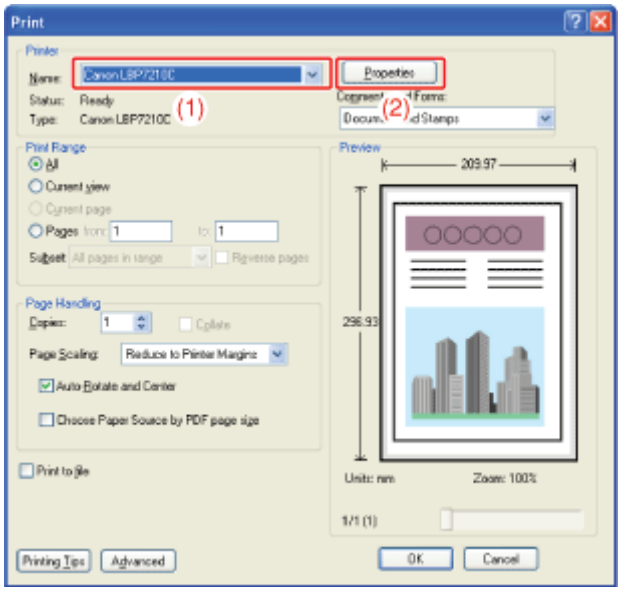
About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

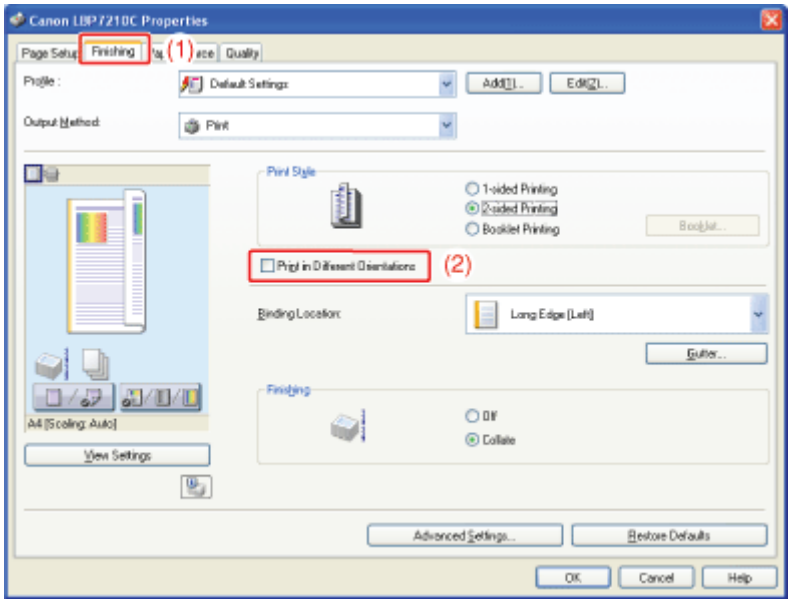
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Perform the following procedure.

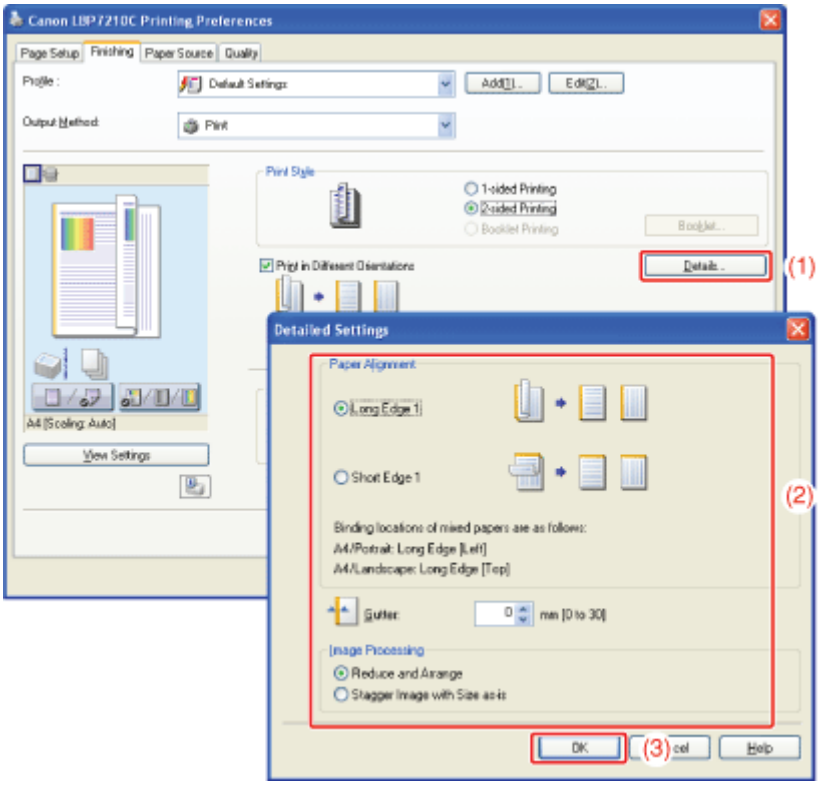
(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.
(2) Select the [Print in Different Orientations] check box.



---

4. Specify the paper alignment and gutter settings for output.

(1) Click [Details].
(2) Specify the settings for each option as needed.
(3) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

---

5. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

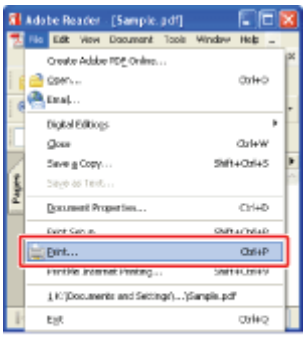
→ The printer starts printing.

[F-25] Printing with a Gutter

You can specify a gutter of 0 to 30 mm for the paper to be printed.
When a gutter is specified, the position of the page image is adjusted to make room for the gutter. At this point, you can select whether to reduce the image size to fit the remaining space.

---

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



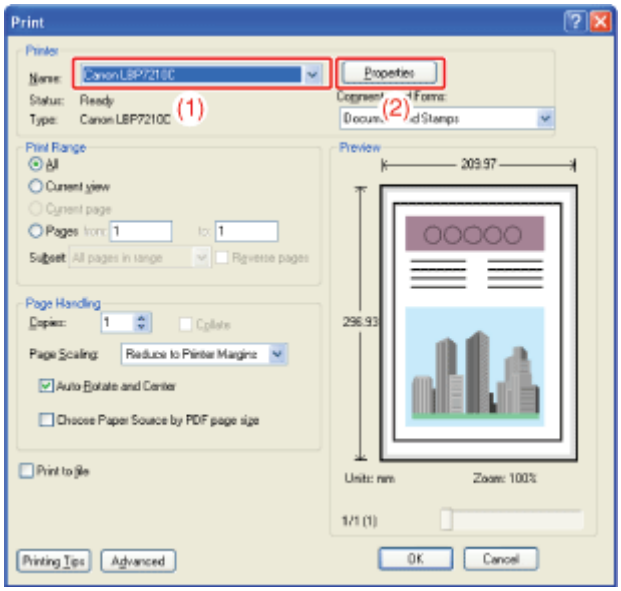
NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

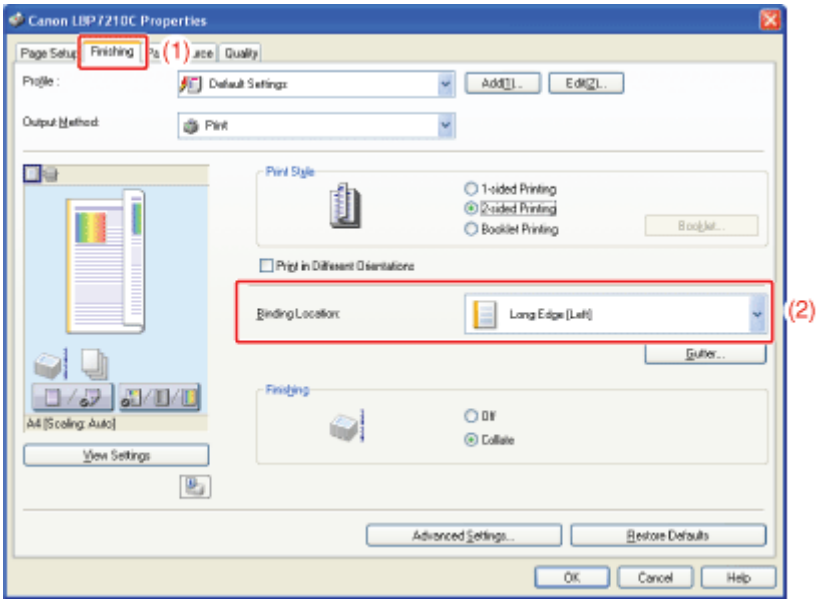
2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



3. Specify the setting for [Binding Location].

(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.
(2) Select an edge on which the gutter is to be located.

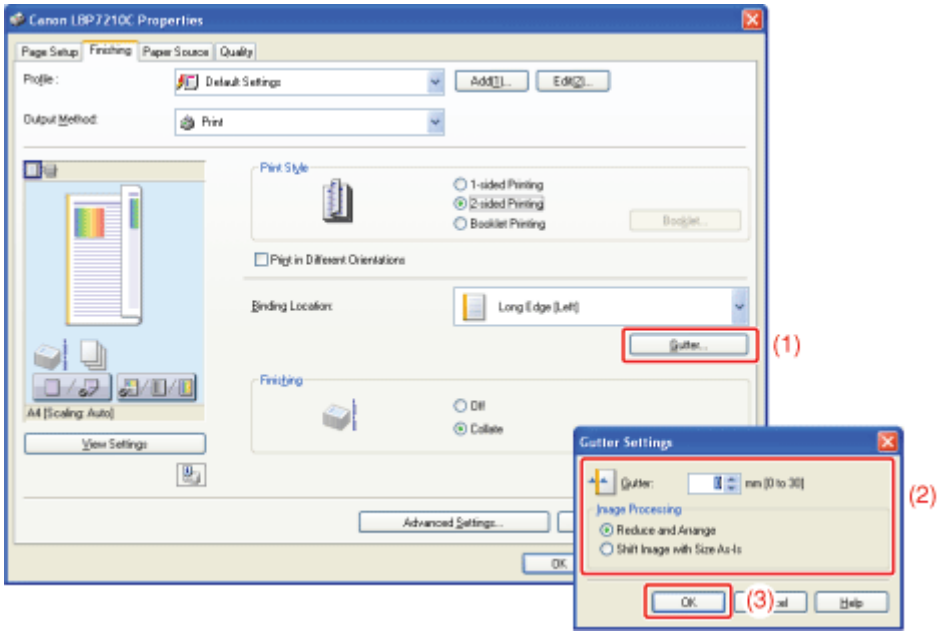


NOTE

Using Preview to specify the setting for [Binding Location]
You can also specify the setting for [Binding Location] using Preview.
"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

4. Set the gutter.

(1) Click [Gutter].
(2) Specify the settings for each option as needed.
(3) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

---

5. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-26] Selecting the Paper Output Method

You can select the paper output method before printing.

- If you do not specify the paper output method

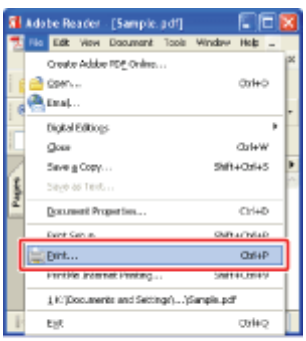
  Printouts of a complete job are grouped.
  For example, if you are printing three copies of a three-page document, printouts of a complete job are grouped, arranged in this page order: "1, 1, 1", "2, 2, 2", "3, 3, 3".

- If you collate the printouts

  Printouts of a complete job are collated.
  For example, if you are printing three copies of a three-page document, printouts of a complete job are grouped, arranged in this page order: "1, 2, 3", "1, 2, 3", "1, 2, 3".

---

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**



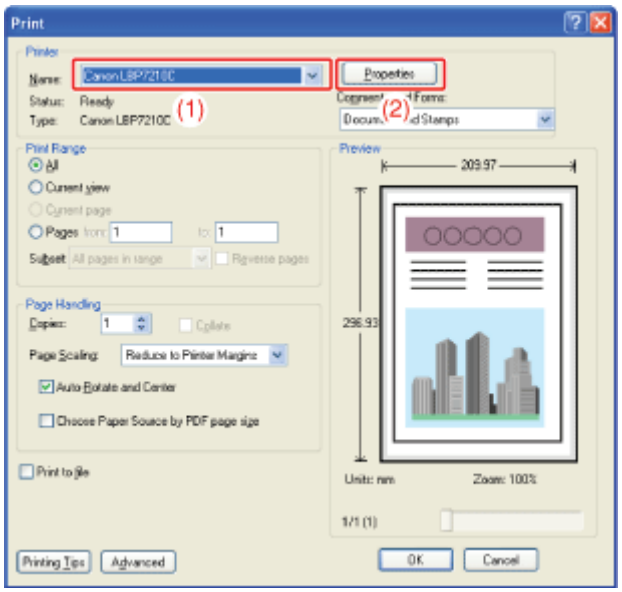
NOTE

About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

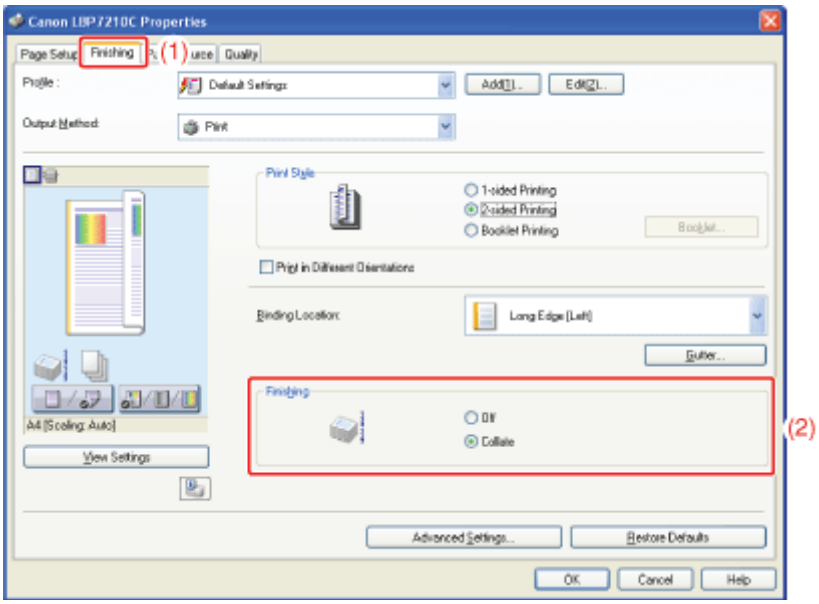
2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



3. Specify the setting for [Finishing].

(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.
(2) Select a paper output method.



NOTE

Using Preview to specify the setting for [Finishing]

You can also specify the setting for [Finishing] using Preview.
"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

4. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

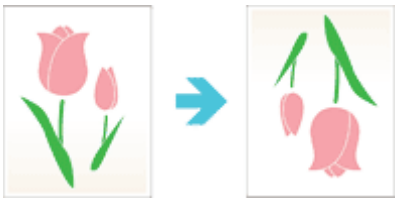
→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

5. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

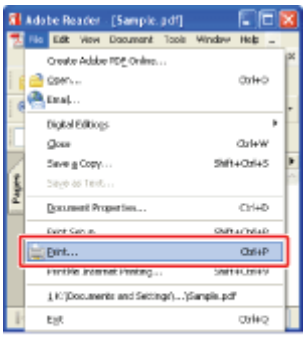
→ The printer starts printing.

[F-27] Printing with the Page 180 Degrees Rotated

You can print with the print data rotated 180 degrees when the orientation of the paper loaded in a paper source differs from the orientation of the document.
This option is useful for printing envelopes and Index Card that can be fed only in specific orientations.



1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.

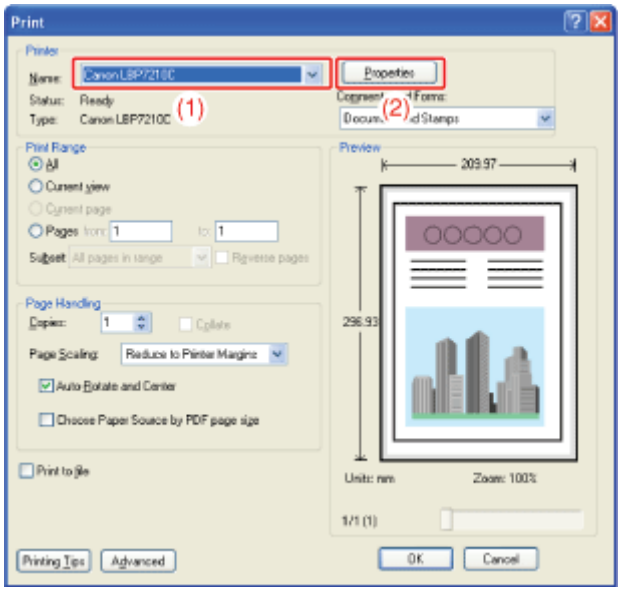


NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

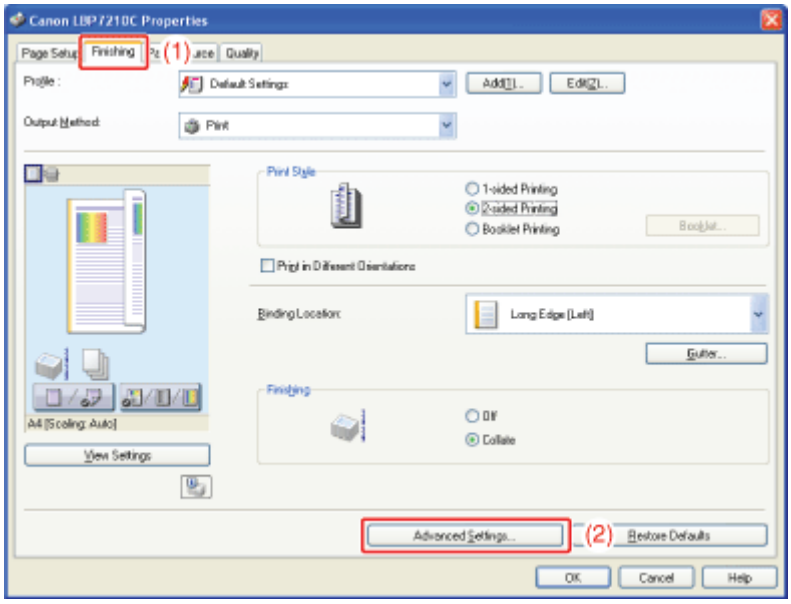
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Advanced Settings] dialog box.

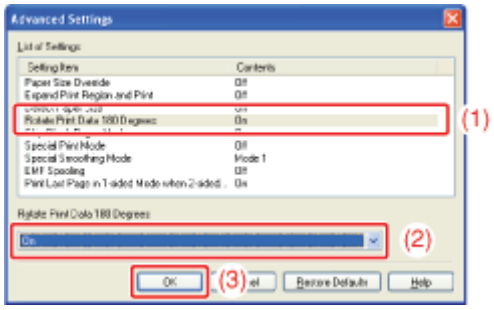
(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.
(2) Click [Advanced Settings].



---

4. Specify the setting for [Rotate Print Data 180 Degrees].

(1) Select [Rotate Print Data 180 Degrees].
(2) Select [On].
(3) Click [OK].



→ The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

---

5. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

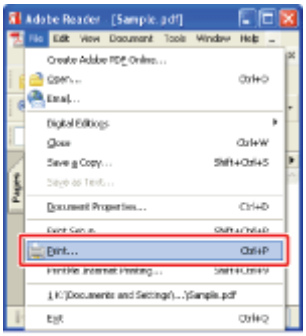
6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-28] Selecting Paper for Each Page

You can select paper for each page, such as for printing the front cover on a different type of paper.

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



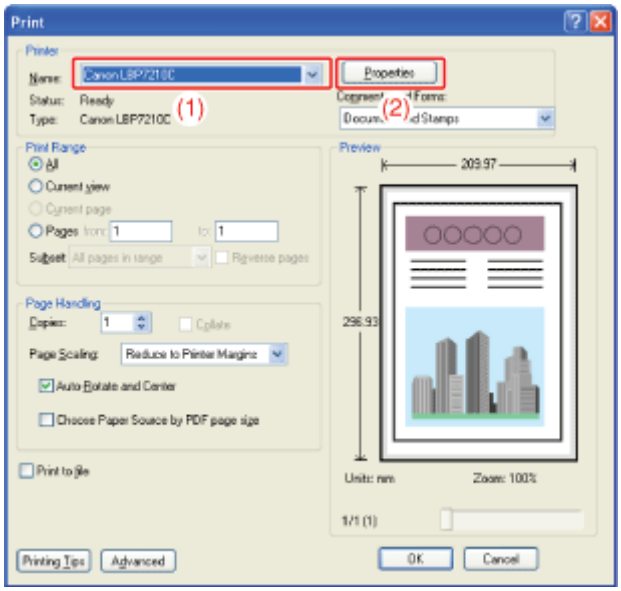
NOTE

About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].

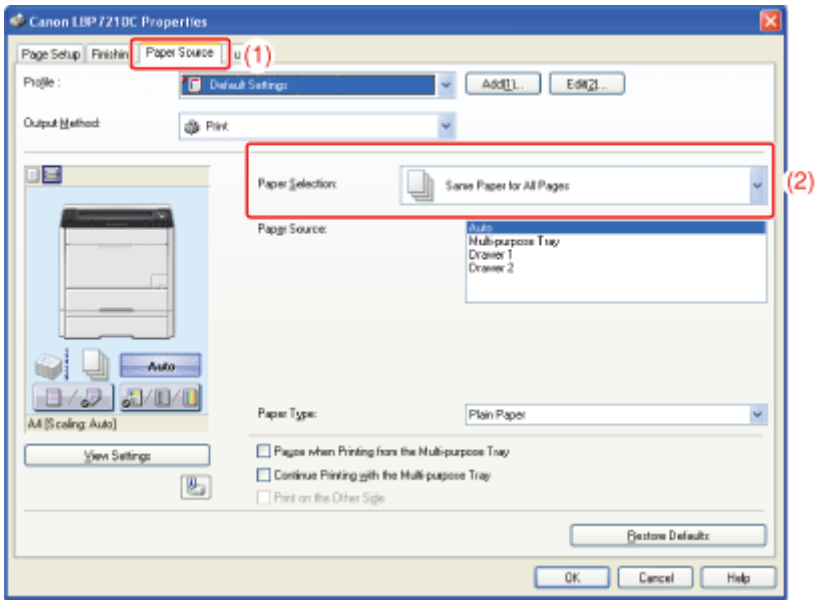


3. Specify the setting for [Paper Selection].

(1) Display the [Paper Source] sheet.

(2) Select the pages for which paper is specified.

† [Different for Cover and Others] can be selected only if [Print Style] in the [Finishing] sheet is set to [Booklet Printing].



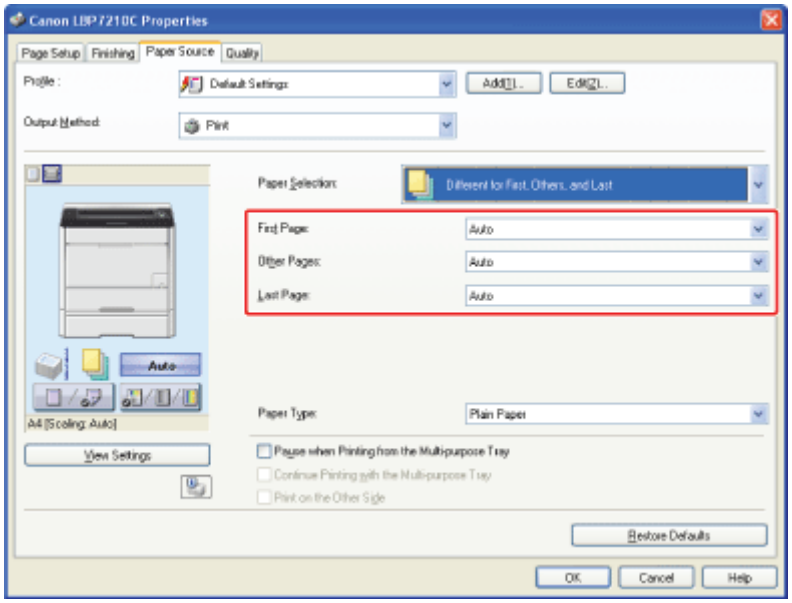
NOTE

If you cannot specify the setting

If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], settings other than [Same Paper for All Pages] are grayed out and cannot be specified.

See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

4. Select the paper source to be used for each page.



NOTE

Using Preview to select a paper source

You can also select a paper source using Preview.

"Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences"

---

5. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

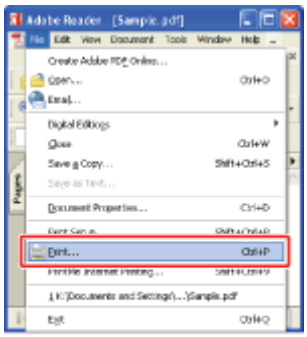
[F-29] Scaling Print Output

You can print with automatic scaling according to the paper size or arbitrary scaling.

- Printing with Automatic Scaling According to the Paper Size
- Printing with Arbitrary Scaling

Printing with Automatic Scaling According to the Paper Size

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



NOTE

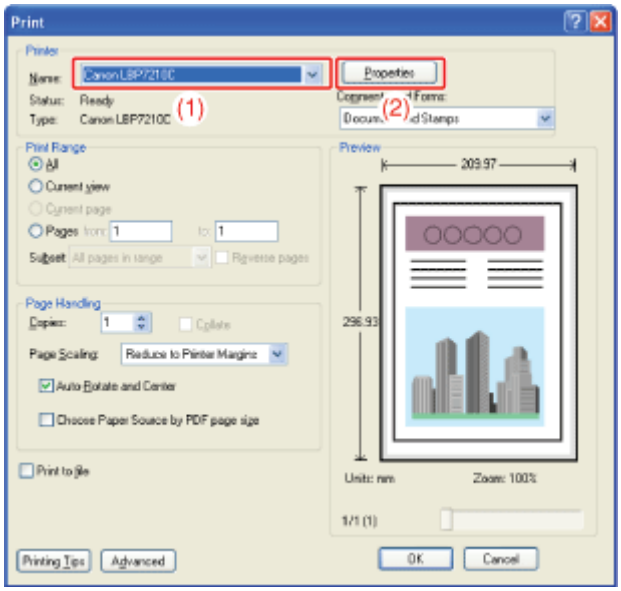
About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

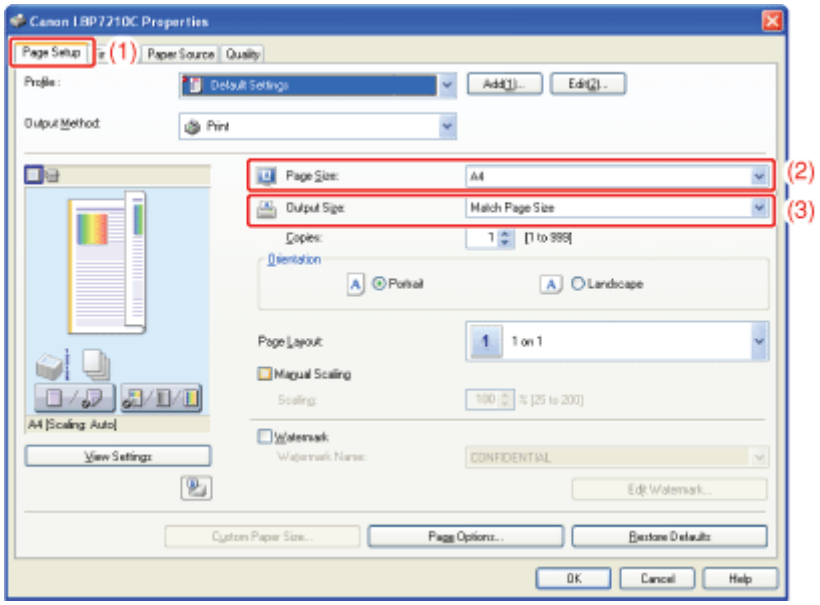
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Specify the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size].

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the page size of the document created by an application.
(3) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper source.



→ The print data will be automatically reduced or enlarged according to the settings specified in [Page Size] and [Output Size].

---

4. Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

5. Click [OK] or [Print].

→ The printer starts printing.

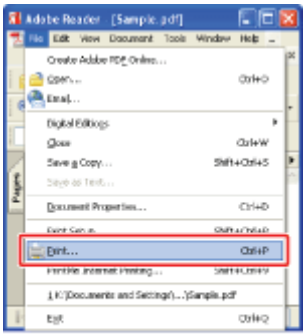
Printing with Arbitrary Scaling

NOTE

When [Page Layout] is set to a setting other than [1 on 1]
You cannot specify the scaling factor arbitrarily.

---

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**



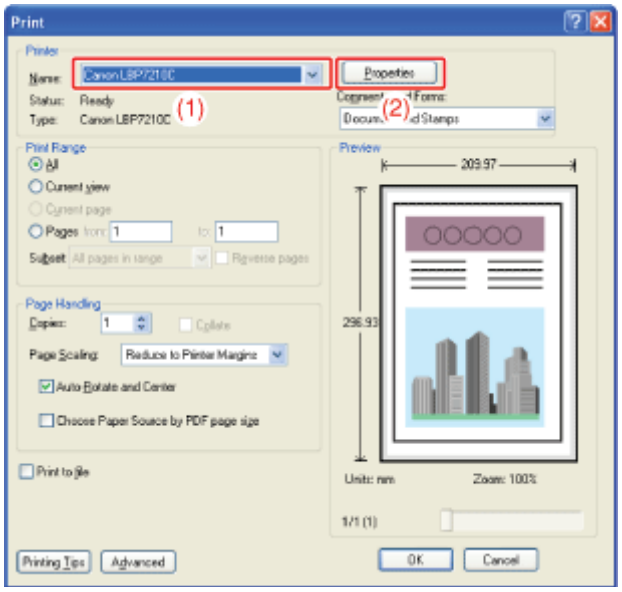
NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

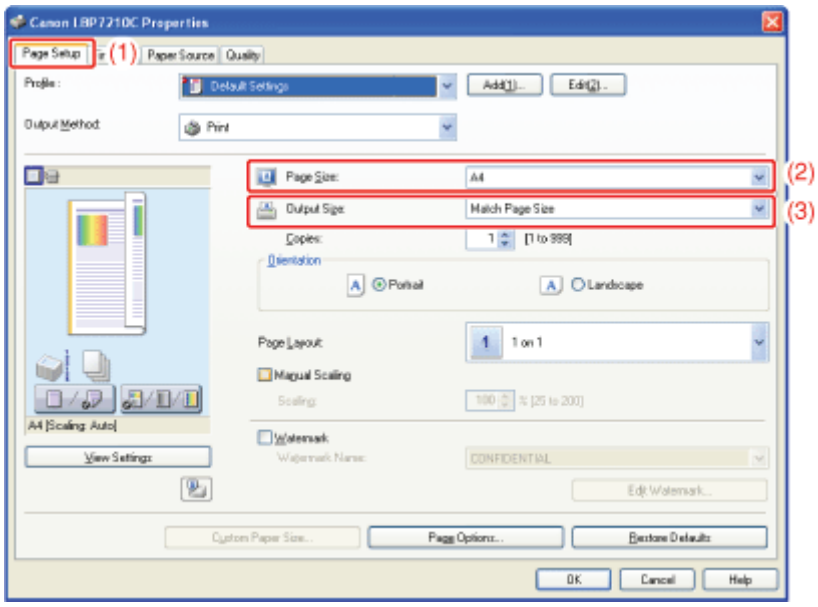
2. **Open the printing preferences dialog box.**

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



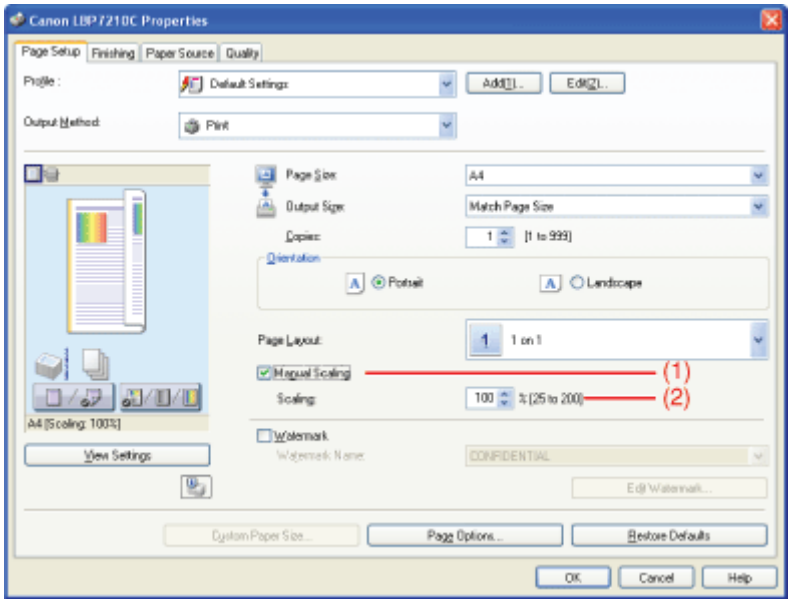
3. Specify the settings for [Page Size] and [Output Size].

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the page size of the document created by an application.
(3) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper source as needed.



4. Specify the scaling factor.

(1) Select the [Manual Scaling] check box.
(2) Specify the desired scaling factor.



5. Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

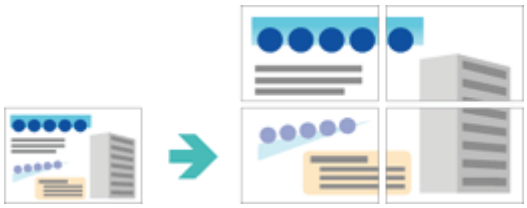
→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

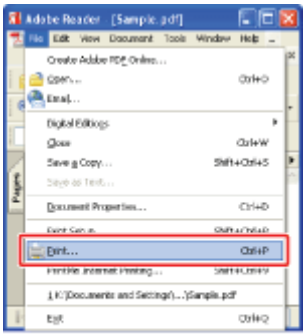
→ The printer starts printing.

[F-30] Printing an Image Larger than A4 Size (Poster Printing)

You can magnify and divide a single page image to print it out on multiple sheets of paper. You can make one large poster by joining these printouts together.



1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



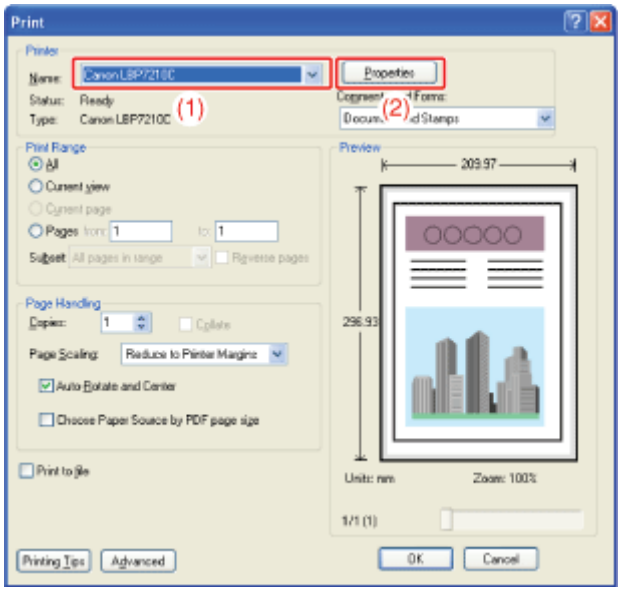
NOTE

About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

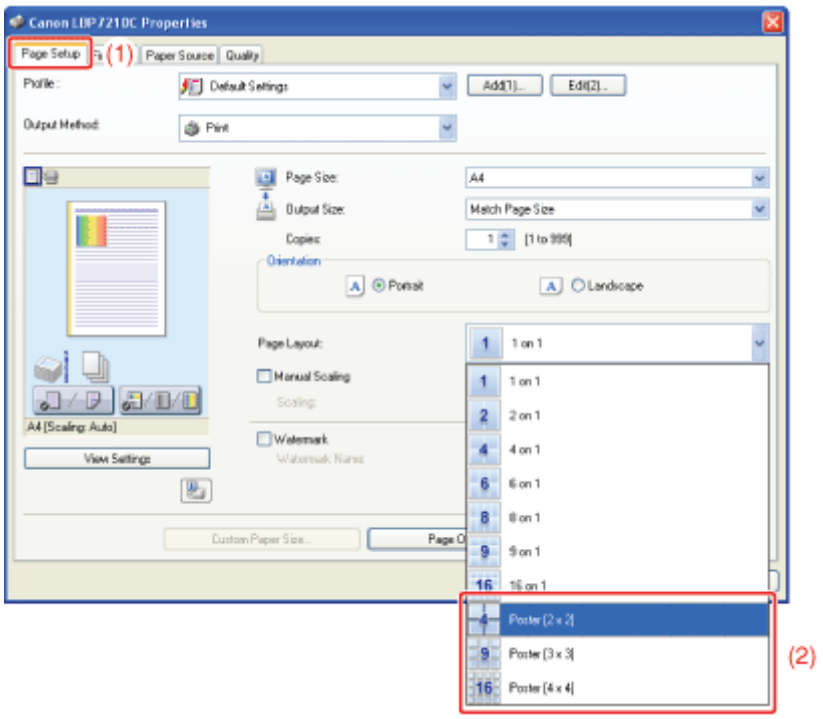
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Specify the setting for poster printing.

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select [Poster [N x N]] (N = 2, 3, 4) from [Page Layout].



→ A layout image of the printed paper appears on Preview.

NOTE

If you cannot specify the setting
If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Page Layout] is grayed out and cannot be specified.
See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

---

4. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

5. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

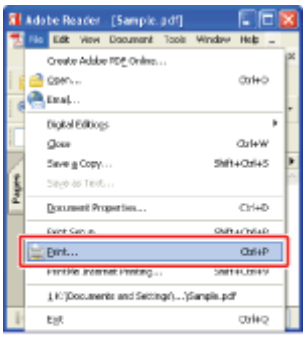
[F-31] Adding a Watermark to a Document to Be Printed (Watermark Printing)

You can superimpose watermarks (such as [COPY] and [DRAFT]) over the documents created by an application. Additionally, you can add new watermarks as well as edit or delete the added watermarks.

- Printing with a Watermark
- Adding, Editing, or Deleting a Watermark

Printing with a Watermark

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



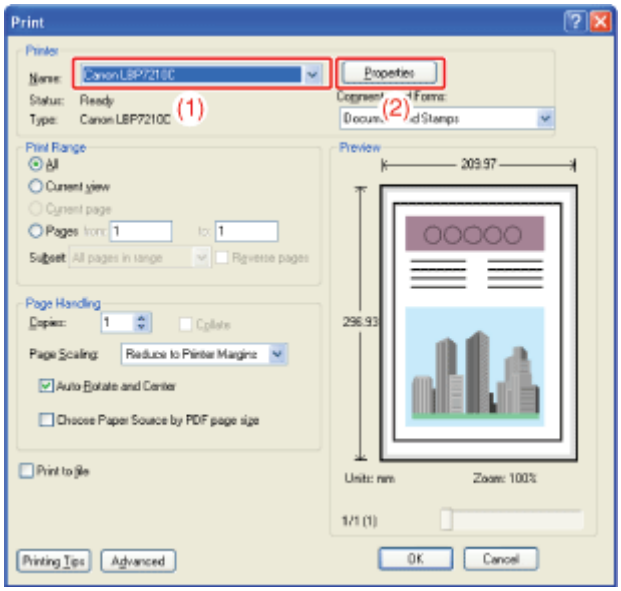
NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

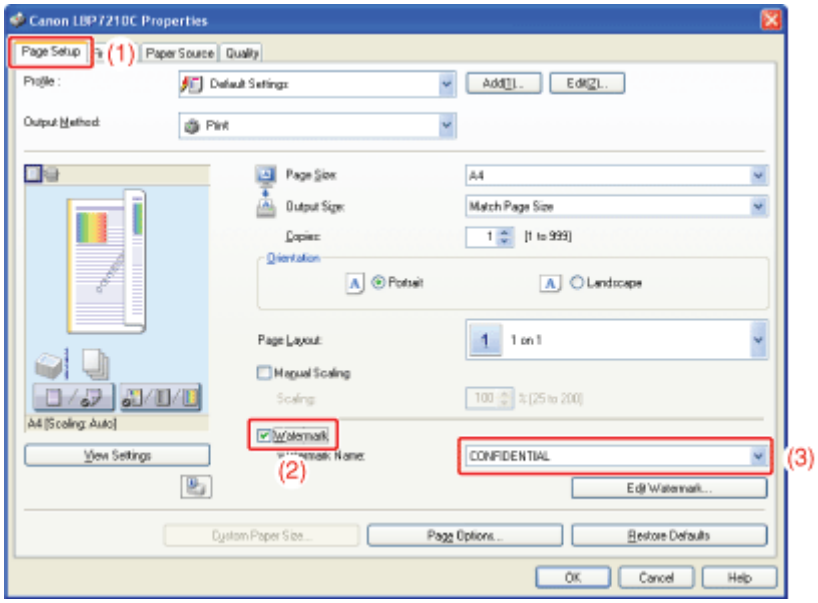
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Select a watermark.

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the [Watermark] check box.
(3) Select the character string to be printed as a watermark.



NOTE

If you cannot select the [Watermark] check box

If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Watermark] is grayed out and cannot be specified.

See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

---

4. Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

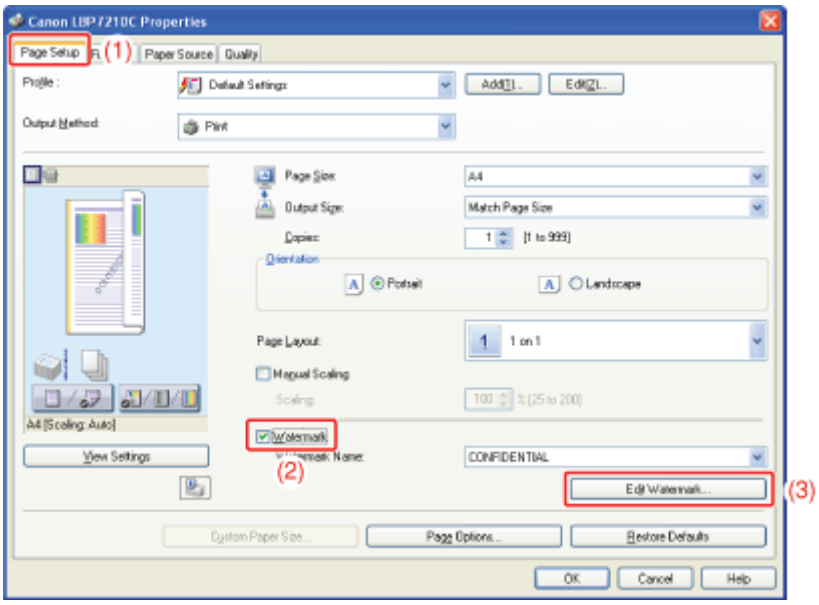
5. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

Adding, Editing, or Deleting a Watermark

1. **Display the [Edit Watermark] dialog box.**

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Select the [Watermark] check box.
(3) Click [Edit Watermark].



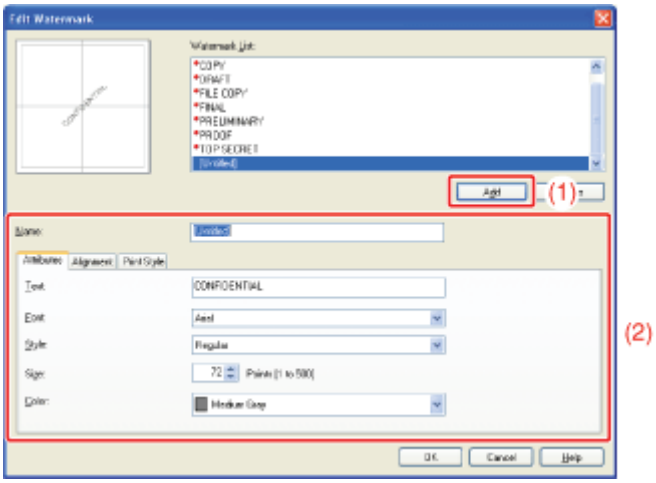
NOTE

If you cannot select the [Watermark] check box
If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Watermark] is grayed out and cannot be specified.
See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

2. **Add, edit, or delete a watermark.**

Adding a watermark

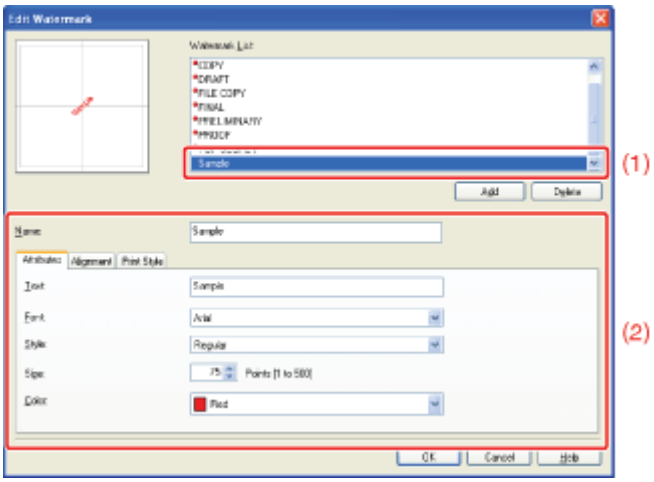
(1) Click [Add].
(2) Specify the settings for each option as needed.



Editing a watermark

(1) Select a watermark you want to edit from [Watermark List].
(2) Edit the watermark.

† You cannot edit the default watermarks.

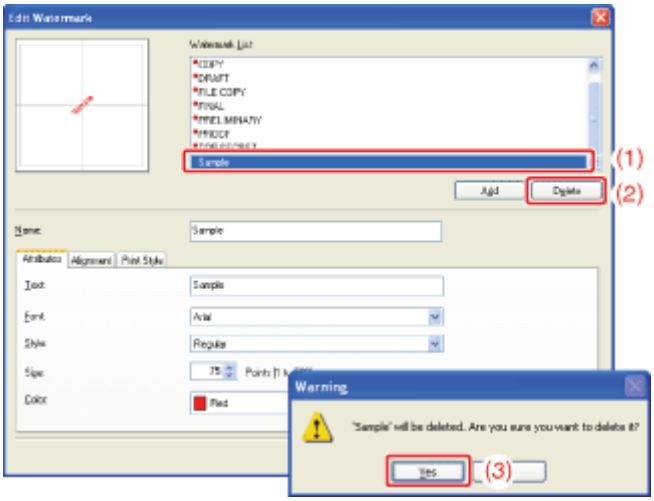


Deleting a watermark

(1) Select a watermark you want to delete from [Watermark List].
(2) Click [Delete].

† You cannot delete the default watermarks or a watermark which is being selected in the printing preferences dialog box.

(3) Click [Yes].



NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

3. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

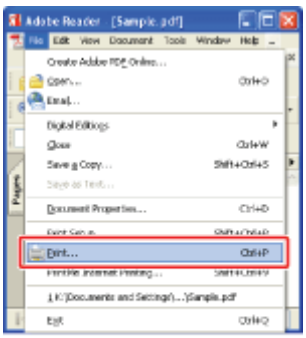
→ The [Page Setup] sheet reappears.

[F-32] Printing Borders, the Printing Date, etc.

You can print a border, the date, and page numbers on the document to be printed.

---

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



NOTE

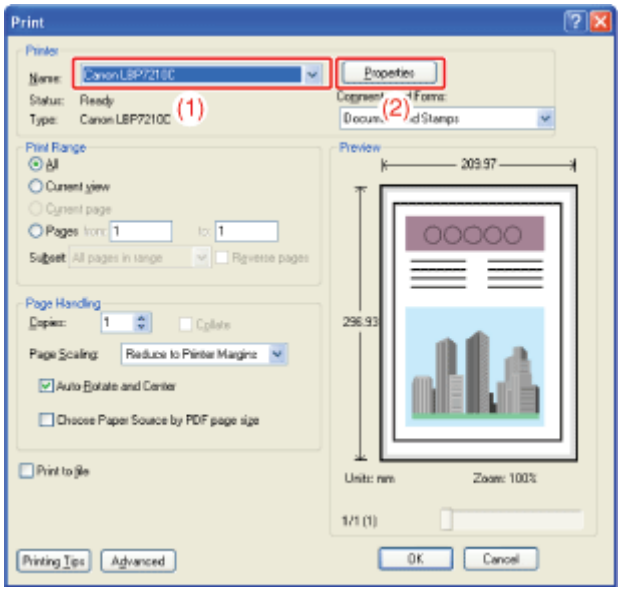
About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

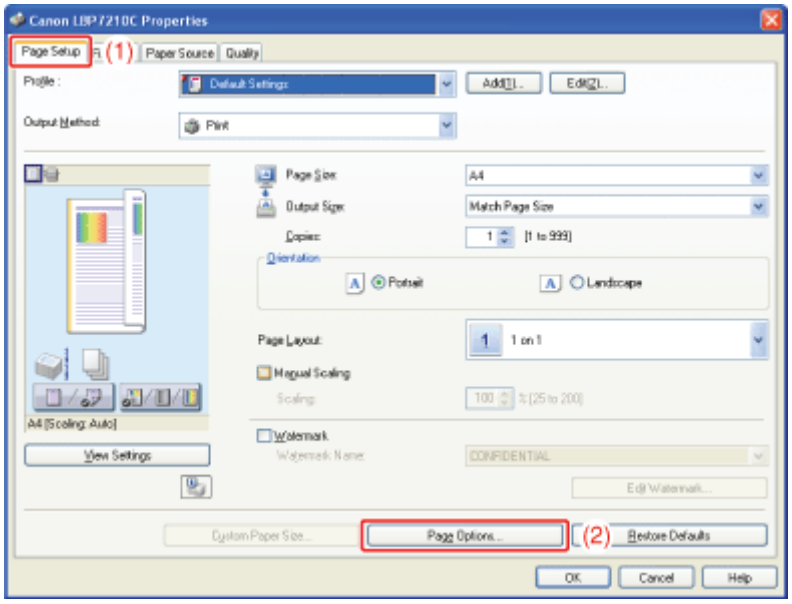
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Page Options] dialog box.

(1) Display the [Page Setup] sheet.
(2) Click [Page Options].

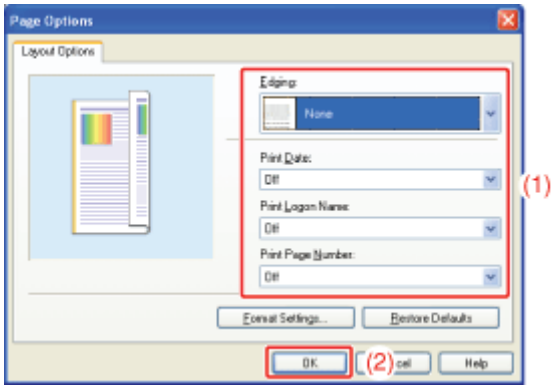


> **NOTE**
>
> **If you cannot click [Page Options]**
> If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Page Options] is grayed out and cannot be specified.
> See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

---

4. Specify the settings for borders, the printing date, etc.

(1) Specify the settings for each option as needed.
(2) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Page Setup] sheet reappears.

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

---

5. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

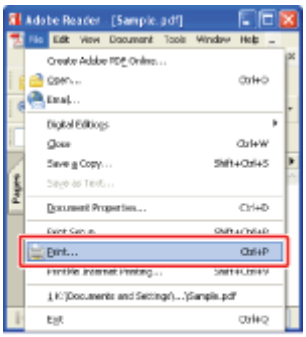
6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-33] Booklet Printing

Booklet printing allows you to make a booklet by folding printouts in half.
For example, when making a booklet of 8 pages, 2 sheets are used in total because 2 pages are printed on each side of paper.
Also, if you want to make a booklet of large amount of pages, you can make it by specifying the number of sheets to be folded in half and binding them.

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.

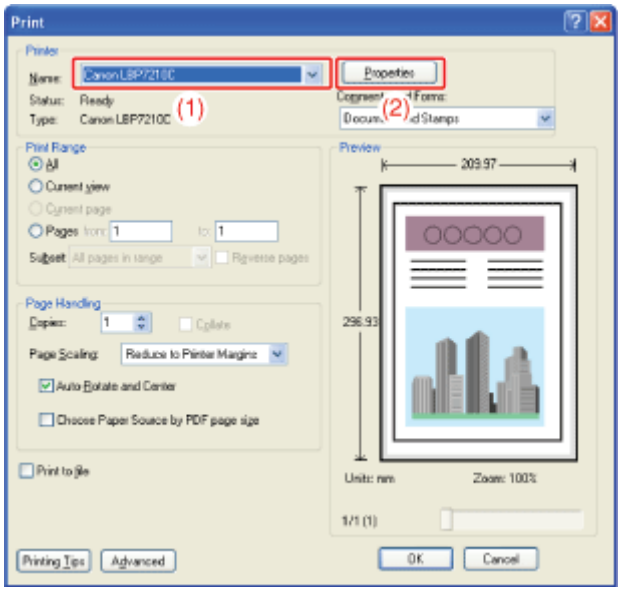


NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

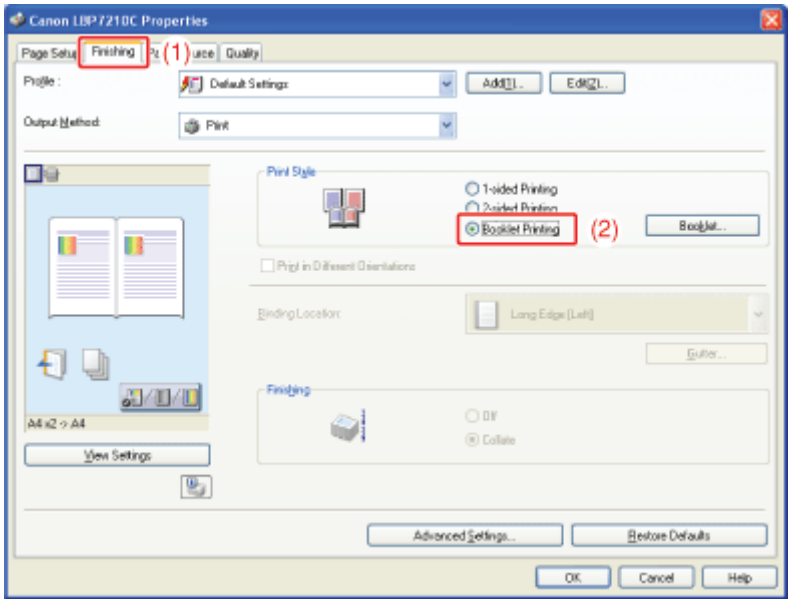
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Specify the setting for [Print Style].

(1) Display the [Finishing] sheet.
(2) Select [Booklet Printing].



NOTE

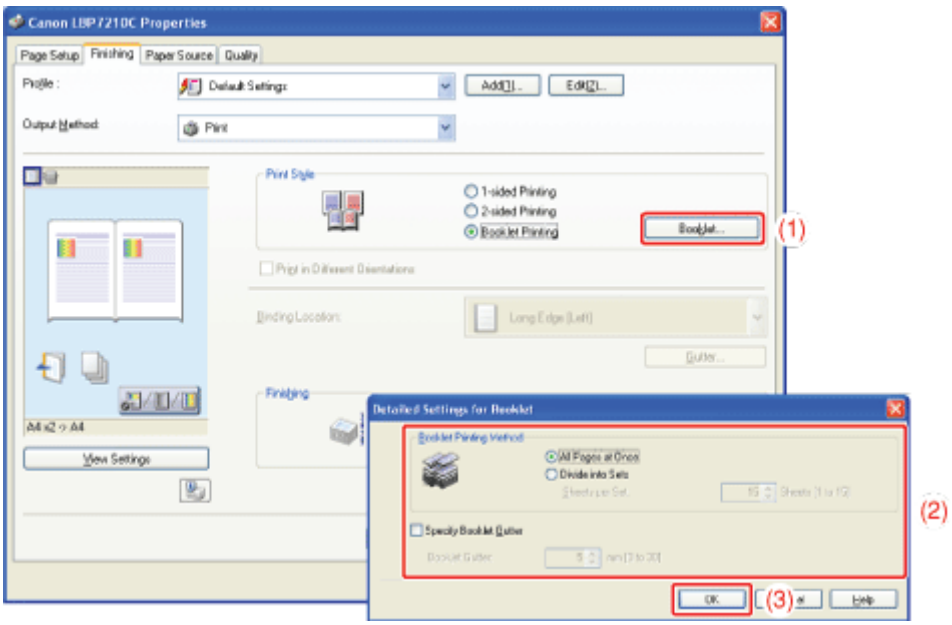
If you cannot specify the setting
If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Booklet Printing] is grayed out and cannot be specified.
See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

---

4. Specify the detailed settings for booklet printing as needed.

(1) Click [Booklet].
(2) Specify the settings for each option as needed.

(3) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Finishing] sheet reappears.

NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

---

5. Click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

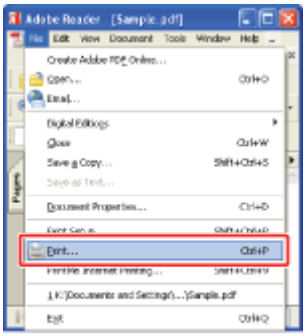
6. Click [OK] or [Print].

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-34] Combining Jobs before Printing

You can combine two or more jobs into one.
You can also change the settings for the combined job and edit jobs of different applications.
You can also preview the job.

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.

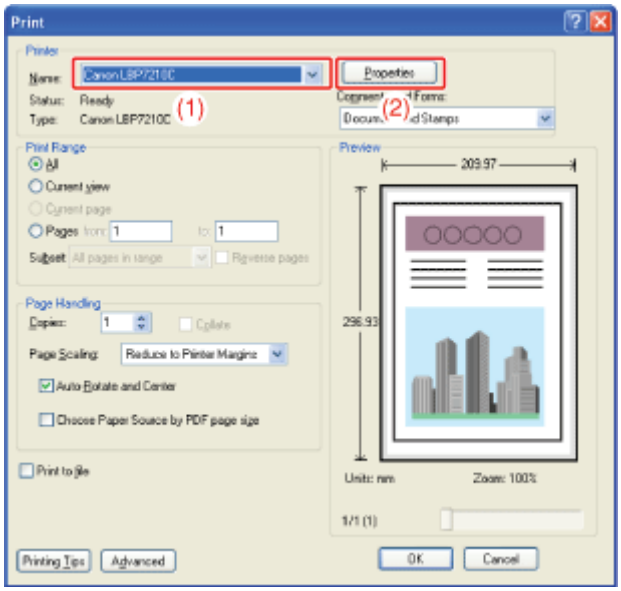


NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

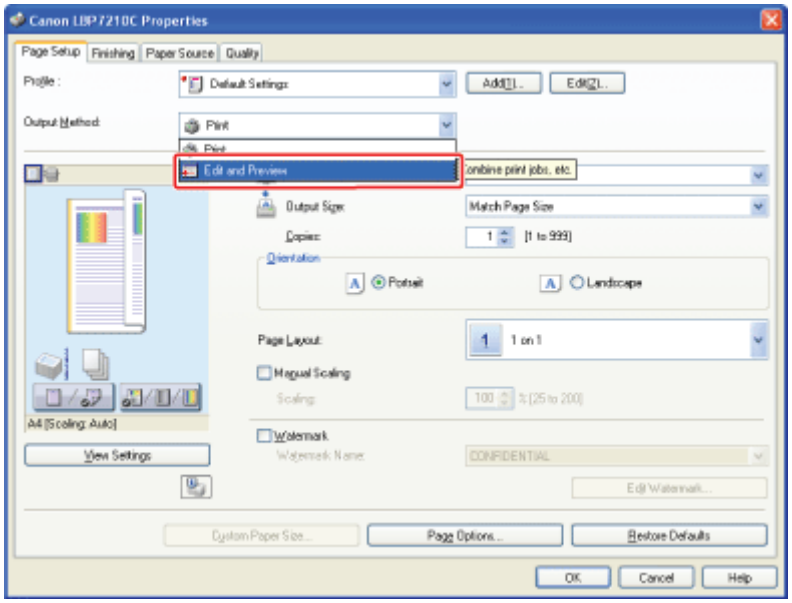
2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Select [Edit and Preview] from [Output Method].



NOTE

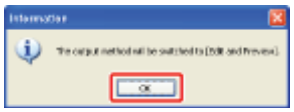
If you cannot select [Edit and Preview]

If [Spooling at Host] in the [Device Settings] sheet is set to [Disabled], [Edit and Preview] is grayed out and cannot be specified.

See "Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host" and change the setting for [Spooling at Host] to [Auto].

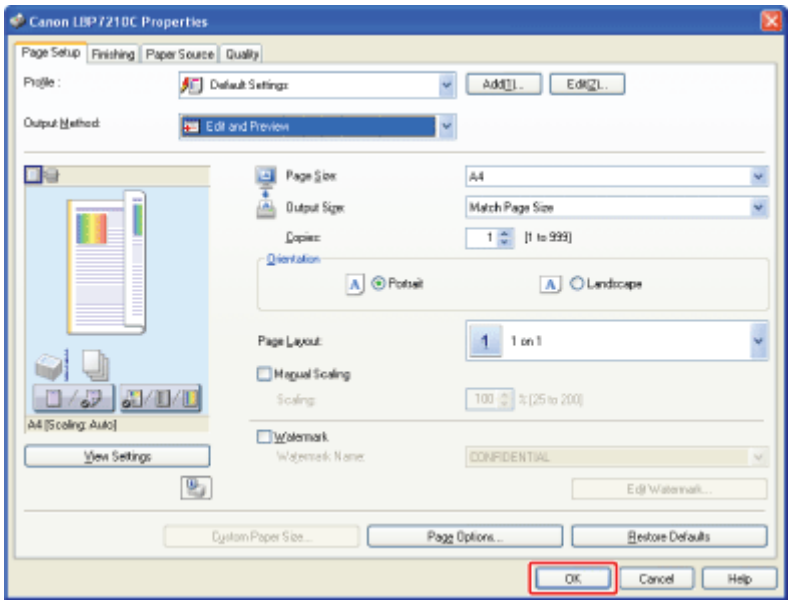
---

4. Click [OK].



---

5. Specify the printing preferences in each sheet, then click [OK].

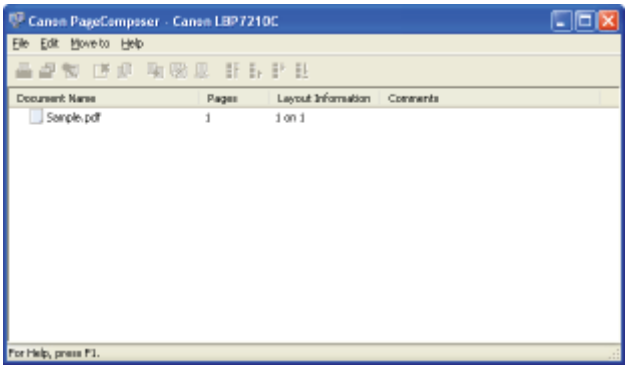


→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

6. Click [OK] or [Print].

→ The list of jobs are displayed in the [Canon PageComposer] dialog box.



NOTE

Specifying the setting to always display the [Canon PageComposer] dialog box when performing printing

Set [Output Method] to [Edit and Preview] as a default value for printing preferences, and then select the [Lock] check box.

For details on the procedure for changing the default values for printing preferences, see "Changing the Default Values for Printing Preferences".

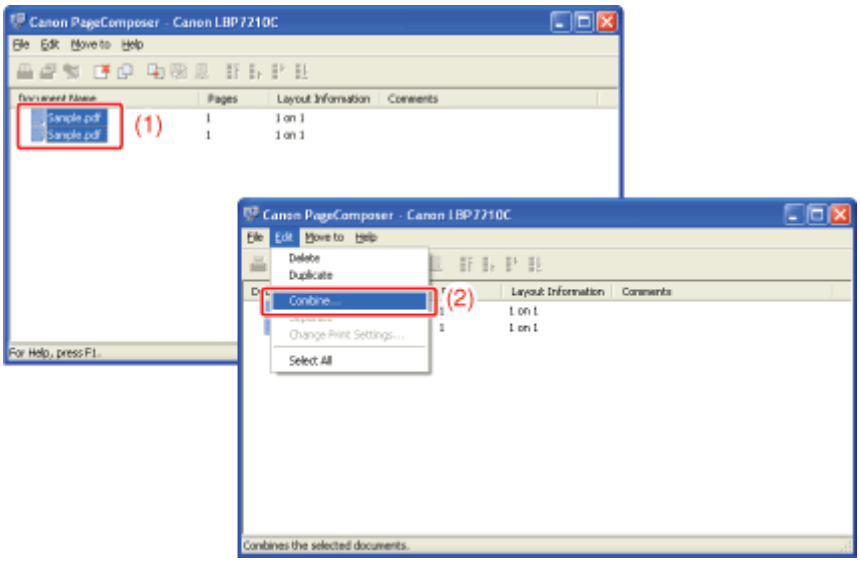
---

7. Repeat Step 1 to 6 to combine the desired jobs.

---

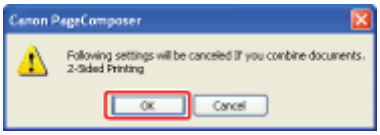
8. Combine the jobs.

(1) Select the jobs that you want to combine.
(2) Select [Combine] from the [Edit] menu.



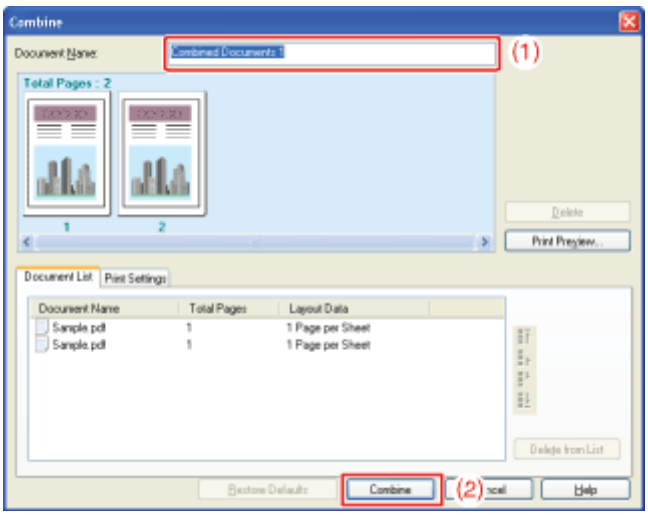
NOTE

If the jobs whose printing preferences are disabled by combining is selected
The following screen appears. Click [OK].



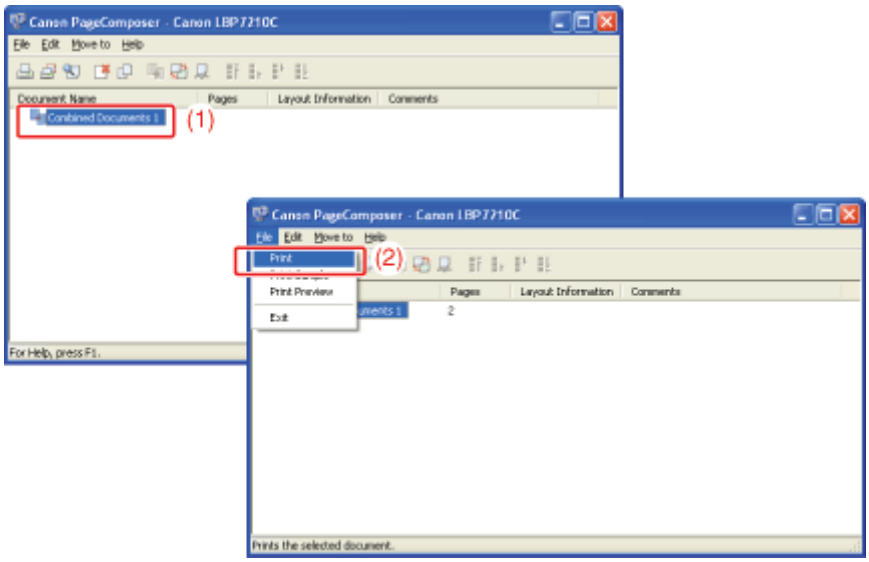
9. Perform the following procedure.

(1) Enter the name of the combined job.
(2) Click [Combine].



10. Print the combined job.

(1) Select the combined job.
(2) Select [Print] from the [File] menu.



→ The printer starts printing.

NOTE

Combined jobs are not saved.
After the combined job is printed, the job is deleted from Canon PageComposer.
The job is also deleted if Canon PageComposer is closed without printing the job.

For more details on Canon PageComposer
See Help for Canon PageComposer.

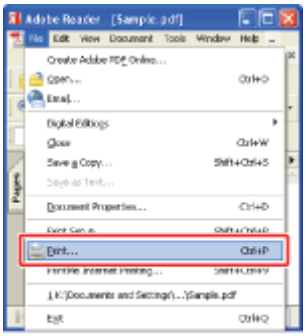
† Help is displayed by clicking [Help] in the [Help] menu.

[F-35] Performing Printing Appropriate for Particular Print Data

Selecting the appropriate mode for the contents of the document allows you to perform optimum printing.

---

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**

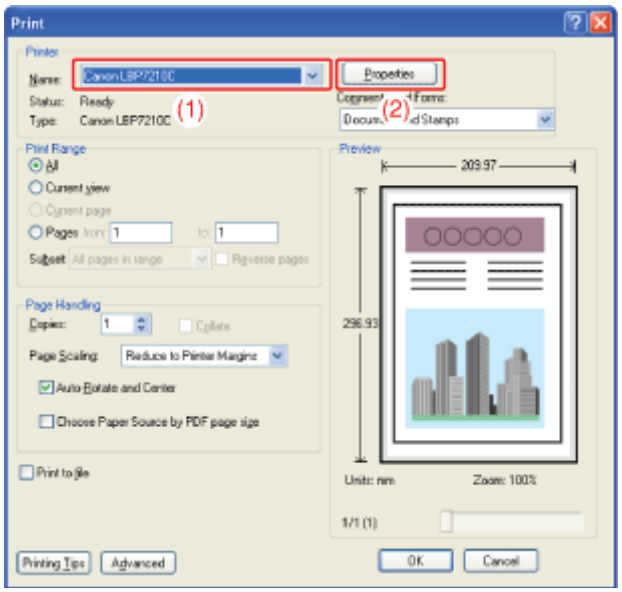


> **NOTE**
>
> **About the printing procedure**
> The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
> For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. **Open the printing preferences dialog box.**

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



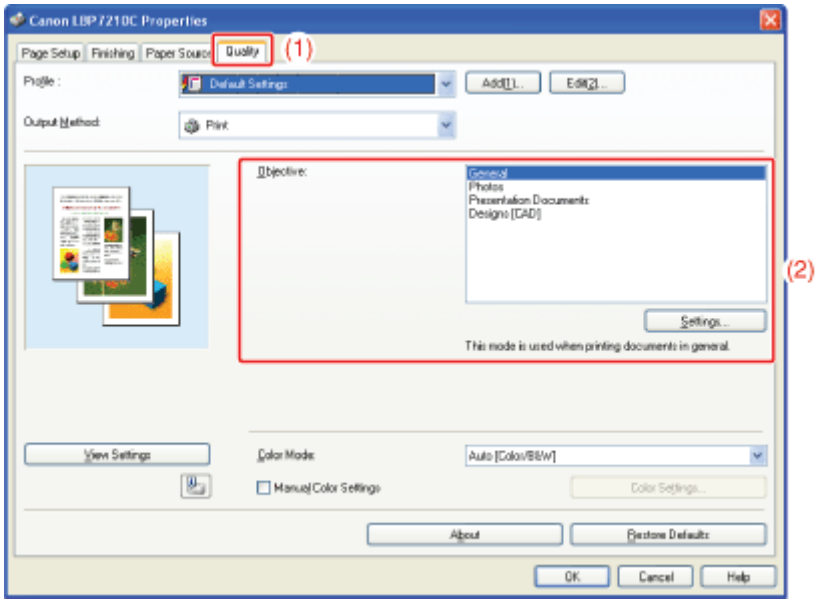
---

3. **Specify the setting for [Objective].**

(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.

(2) Select the appropriate mode for the contents of the document.

† Selecting each mode displays a comment on the mode under the list.



NOTE

When changing the printing preferences for the selected mode

Click [Settings].

---

4. Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

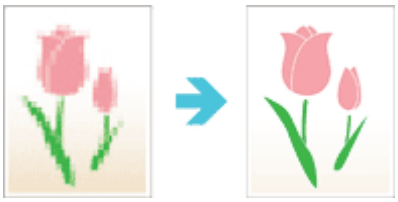
---

5. Click [OK] or [Print].

→ The printer starts printing.

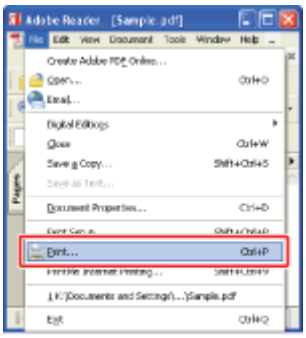
[F-36] Correcting Rough-Textured Images

If image data such as photographic images are enlarged in size in an application and printed, the printed images may look rough or jagged.
You can correct and smooth out this kind of low-resolution image data.



---

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



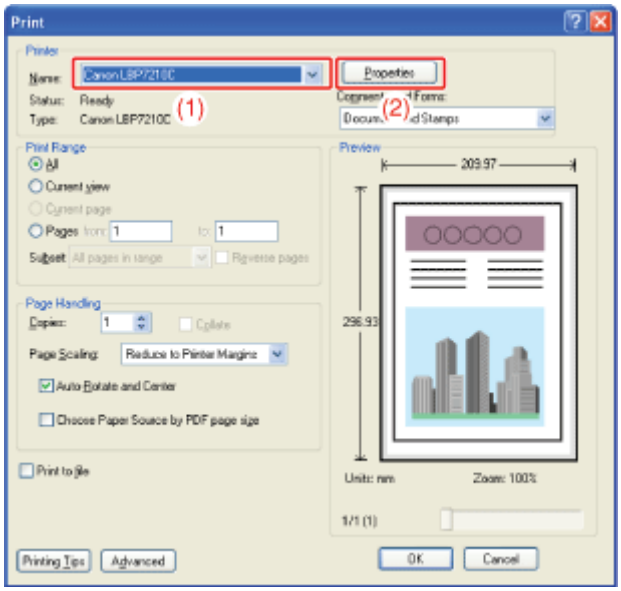
NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

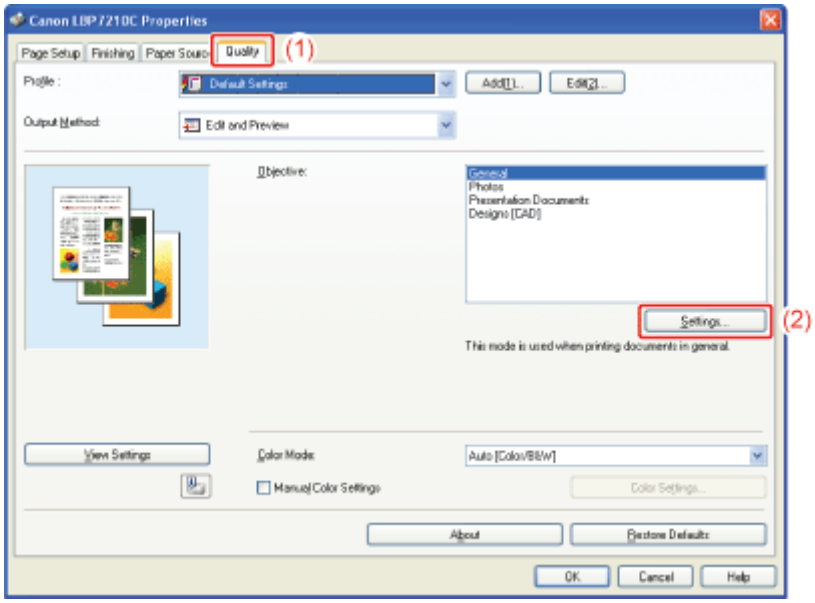
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Custom Settings] dialog box.

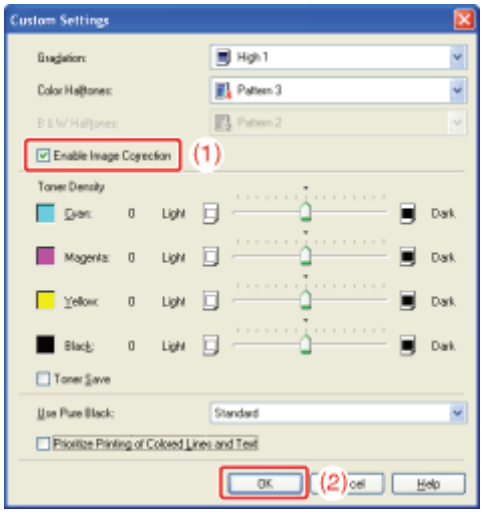
(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Click [Settings].



---

4. Specify the setting for image correction.

(1) Select the [Enable Image Correction] check box.
(2) Click [OK].



→ The [Quality] sheet reappears.

---

5. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

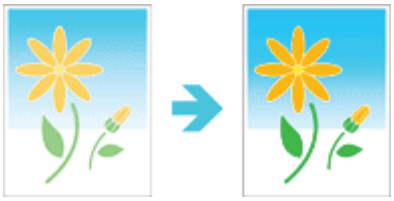
---

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

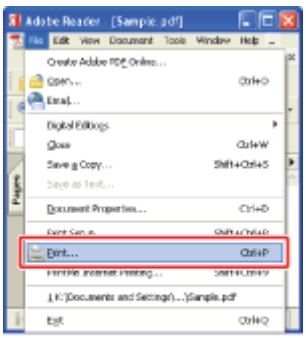
→ The printer starts printing.

[F-37] Adjusting the Toner Density

You can print with the toner density of each color (black, yellow, magenta, and cyan) adjusted.



1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



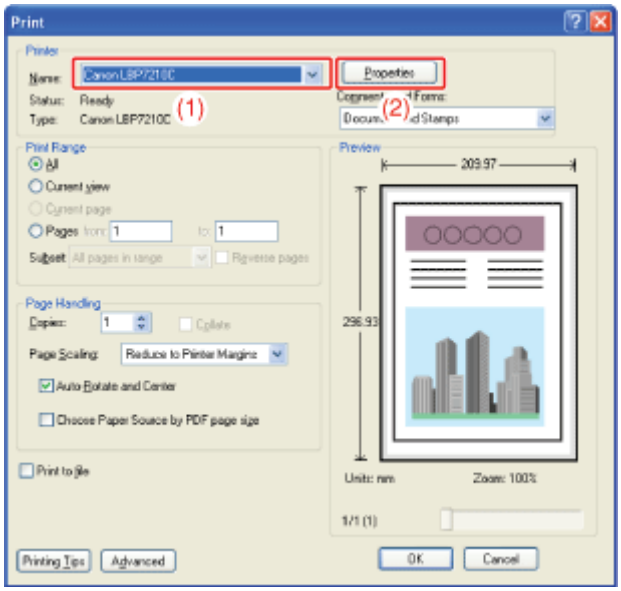
NOTE

About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

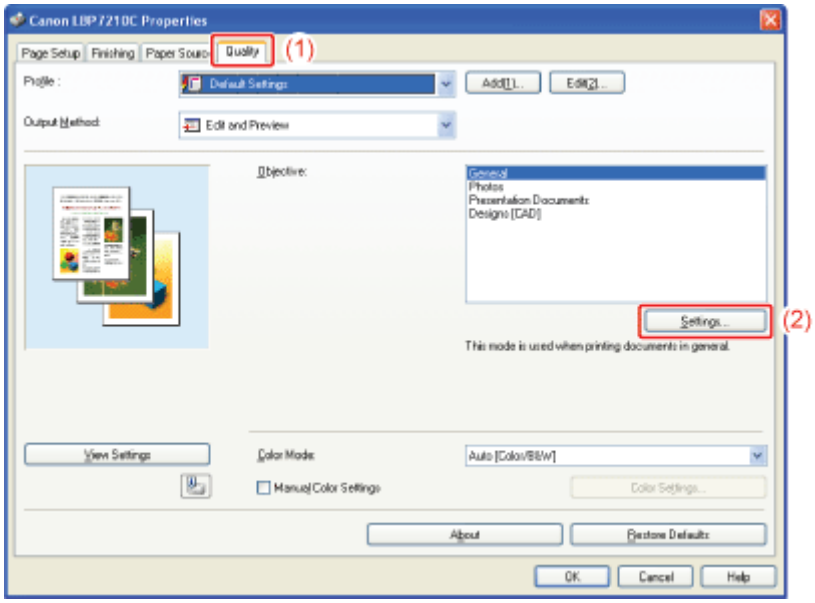
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Custom Settings] dialog box.

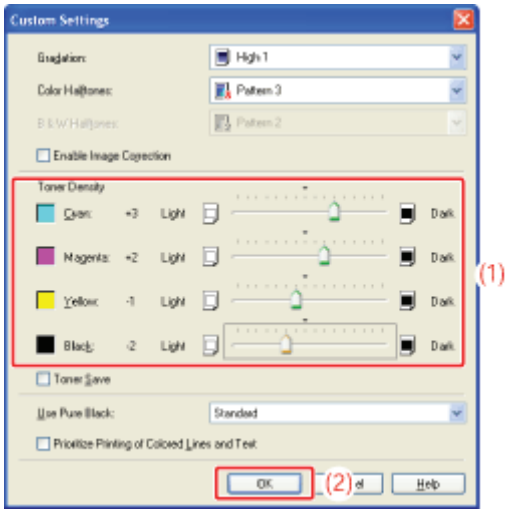
(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Click [Settings].



---

4. Adjust the toner density.

(1) Adjust the density by moving the [Toner Density] slider of each color from side to side.
(2) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Quality] sheet reappears.

---

5. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

6. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

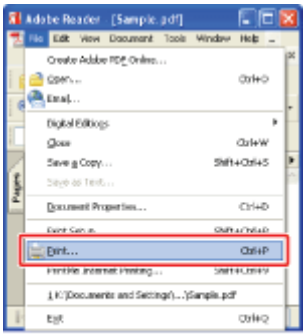
→ The printer starts printing.

[F-38] Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted

You can perform color printing with the brightness and contrast adjusted.

---

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



NOTE

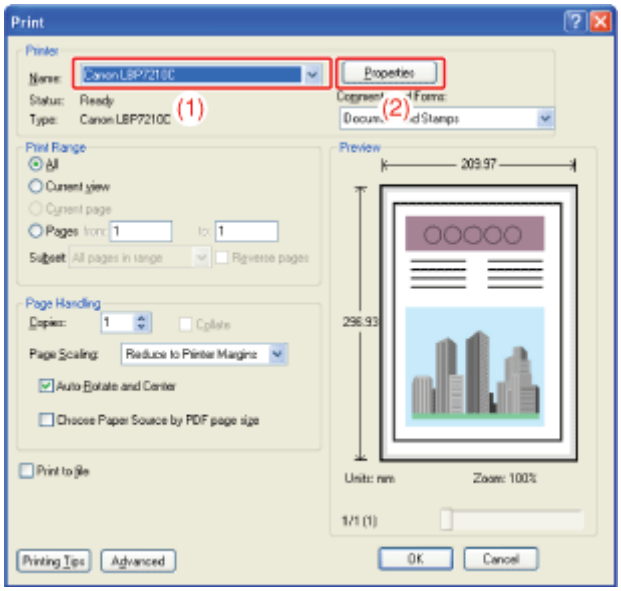
About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

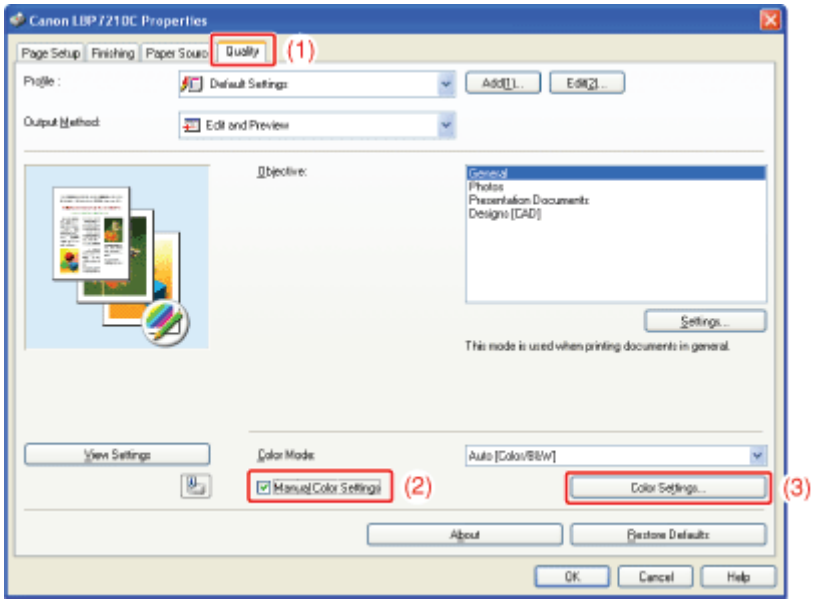
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Color Settings] dialog box.

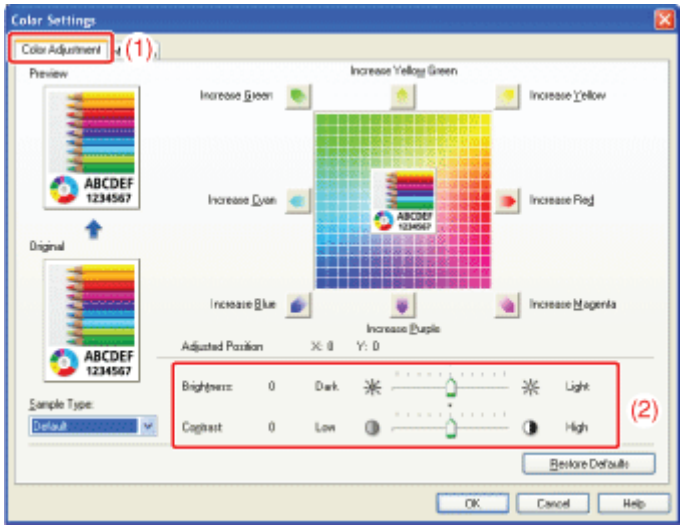
(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box.
(3) Click [Color Settings].



---

4. Adjust the brightness and contrast.

(1) Display the [Color Adjustment] sheet.
(2) Adjust the brightness and contrast by dragging the [Brightness] and [Contrast] sliders.



---

5. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

→ The [Quality] sheet reappears.

---

6. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

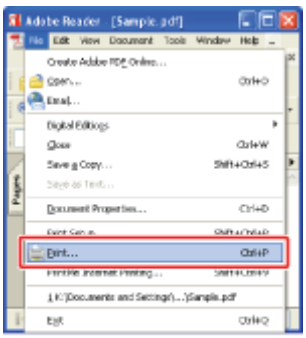
7. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-39] Adjusting the Color

You can perform color printing with the color adjusted.

1. Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.



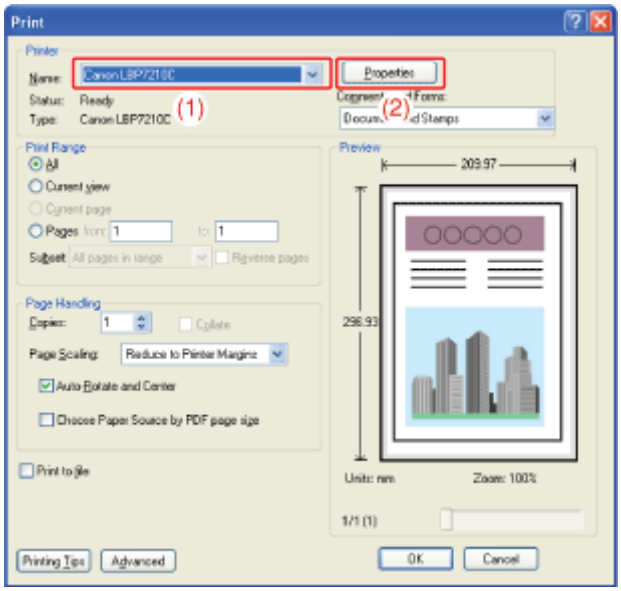
NOTE

About the printing procedure

The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. Open the printing preferences dialog box.

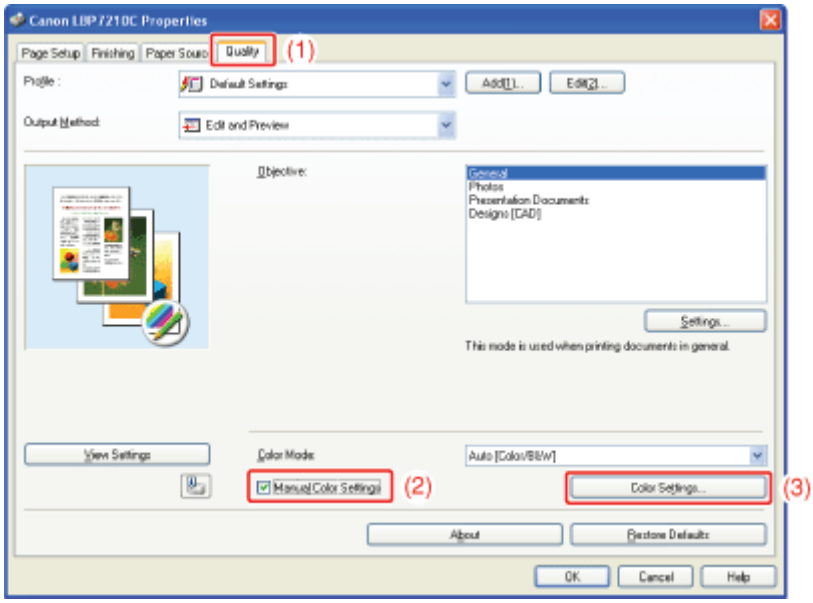
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Color Settings] dialog box.

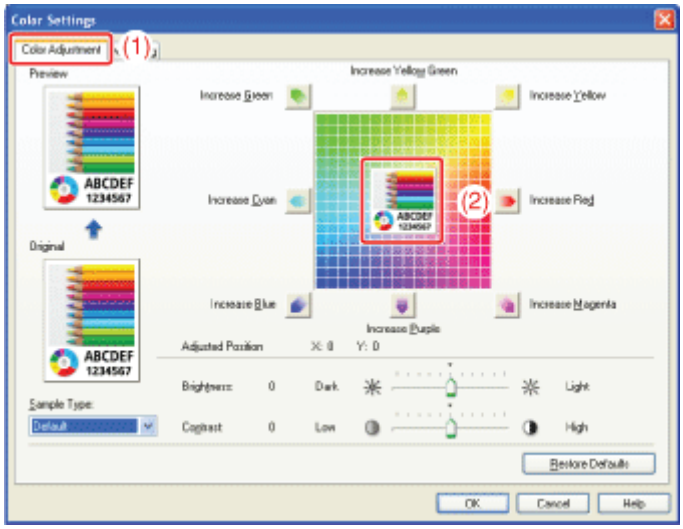
(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box.
(3) Click [Color Settings].



---

4. Adjust the color.

(1) Display the [Color Adjustment] sheet.
(2) Adjust the color by moving [Preview Image] at the center of the adjustment grid.
† When [Preview Image] is at the center, the image has not been adjusted.



NOTE

About the color adjustment

- There are three methods to adjust color as follows:
  - Clicking the color buttons surrounding the adjustment grid deepens the color by one increment.
  - Clicking a desired color on the adjustment grid moves [Preview Image] to the clicked point.
  - Drag [Preview Image] onto the desired color.
- The X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) values for [Adjusted Position] show the position of [Preview Image].
- A sample image after adjustment is displayed in [Preview].

5. **Confirm the settings, then click [OK].**

→ The [Quality] sheet reappears.

6. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

7. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-40] Matching the Color on the Display

The methods for adjusting the color on the screen (RGB) and in the printer (YMC) are different. Therefore, color in a photo etc. viewed on the screen may not match that of the printout.
Using the color matching function to correct color of a printout, you can adjust the color of the printout to more closely match the color you see on the display.
You can also adjust the color by brightness without performing matching.

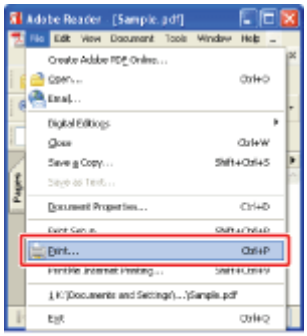
- Using the Matching Function to Correct Color
- Adjusting Color by Brightness (Gamma Adjustment)

Using the Matching Function to Correct Color

Using the color matching function, you can adjust the color of the printout to more closely match the color you see on the display.

---

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**



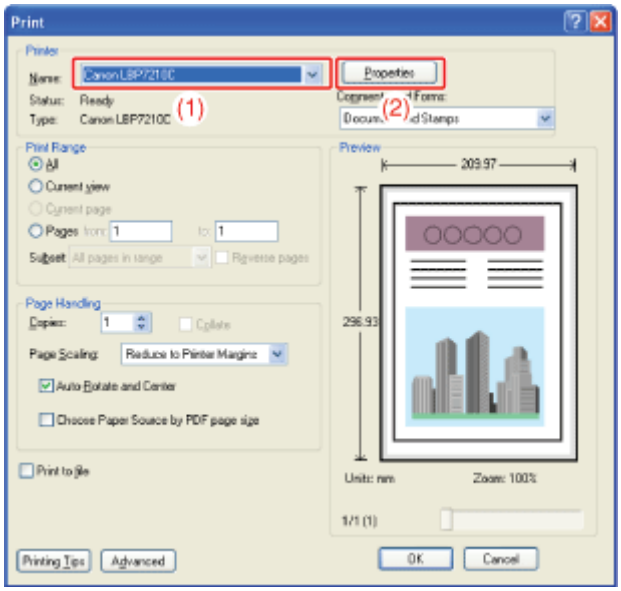
NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

---

2. **Open the printing preferences dialog box.**

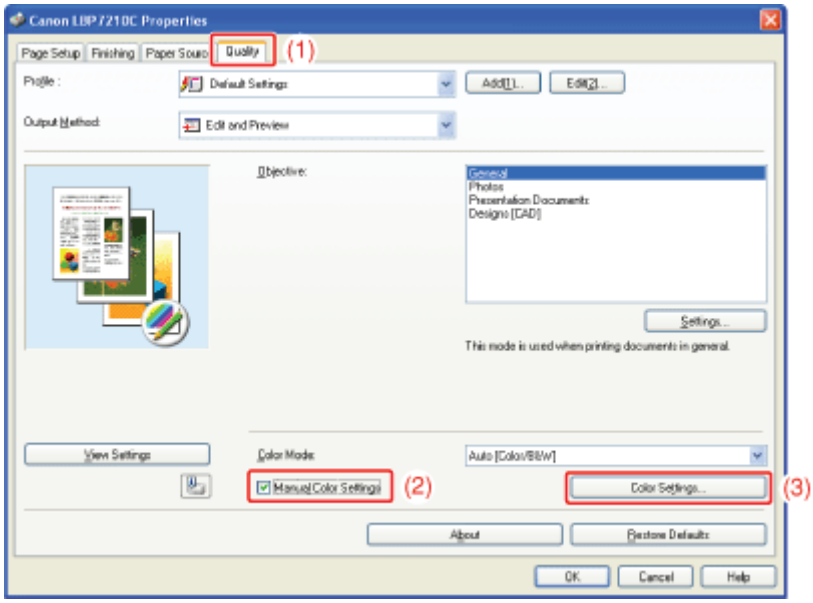
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Color Settings] dialog box.

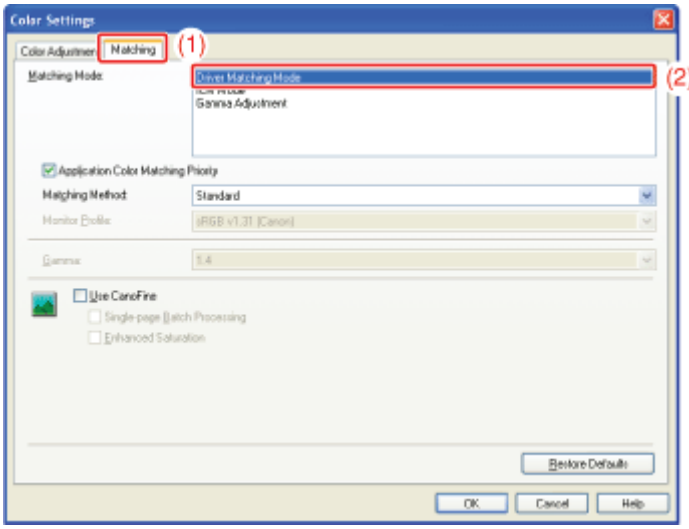
(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box.
(3) Click [Color Settings].



---

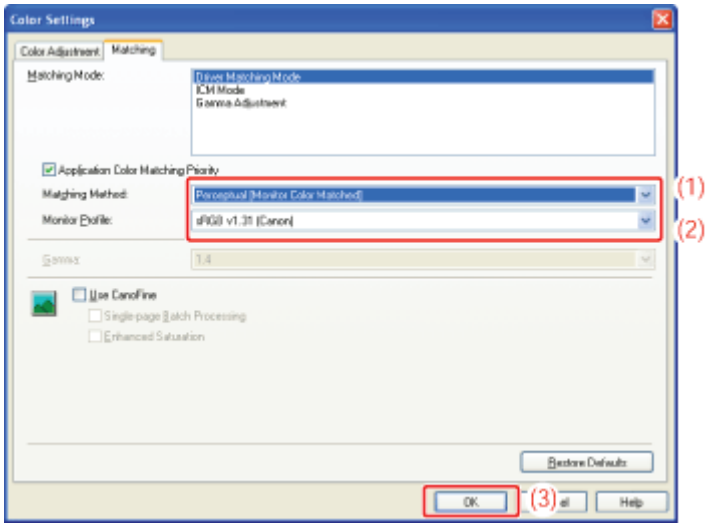
4. Specify the setting for [Matching Mode].

(1) Display the [Matching] sheet.
(2) Select [Driver Matching Mode].



5. Specify the setting for [Matching Method].

(1) Set [Matching Method] to [Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]].
(2) Select a profile you want to use.
(3) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Quality] sheet reappears.

NOTE

About the options for [Monitor Profile]
The profiles registered in your computer are displayed.

About [Application Color Matching Priority]
If the check box is cleared, you can prioritize the color matching process specified in the printer driver.
If you want to prioritize the color matching in the application, select the check box.

6. Click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

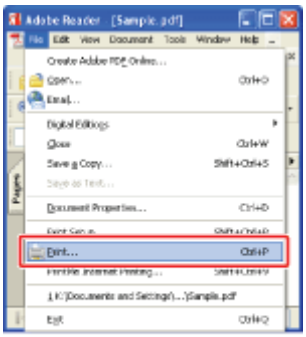
7. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

→ The printer starts printing.

Adjusting Color by Brightness (Gamma Adjustment)

You can adjust the brightness of the printout results without spoiling the lightest parts and darkest parts of the image data.
Use this option when the printout result is brighter than the original image or when you want to change the brightness of the image.

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**

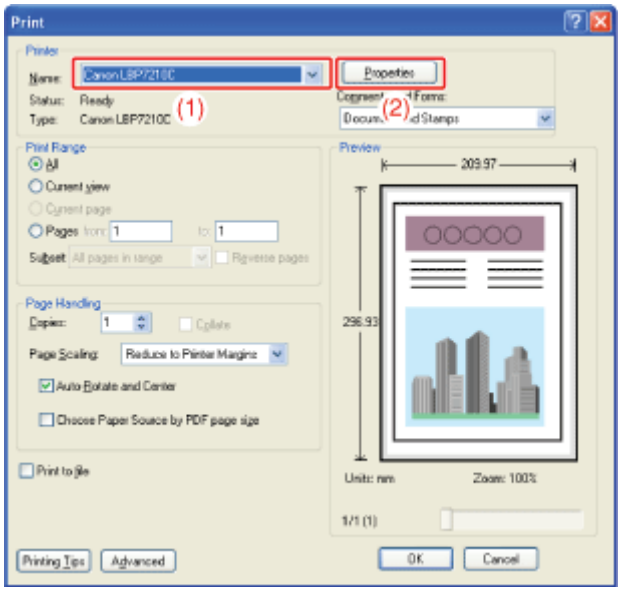


NOTE

About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. **Open the printing preferences dialog box.**

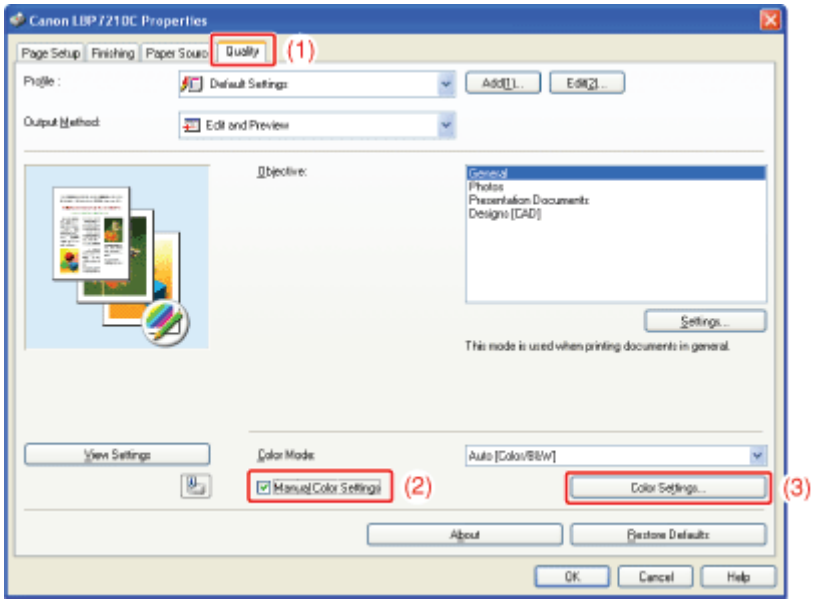
(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



---

3. Display the [Color Settings] dialog box.

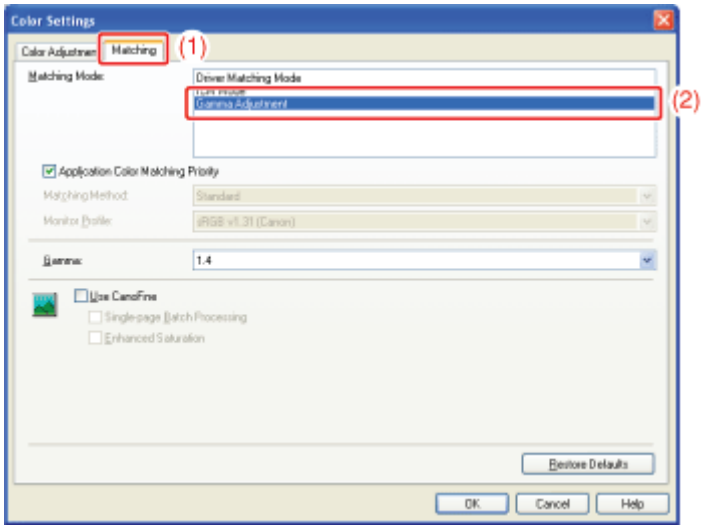
(1) Display the [Quality] sheet.
(2) Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box.
(3) Click [Color Settings].



---

4. Specify the setting for [Matching Mode].

(1) Display the [Matching] sheet.
(2) Select [Gamma Adjustment].



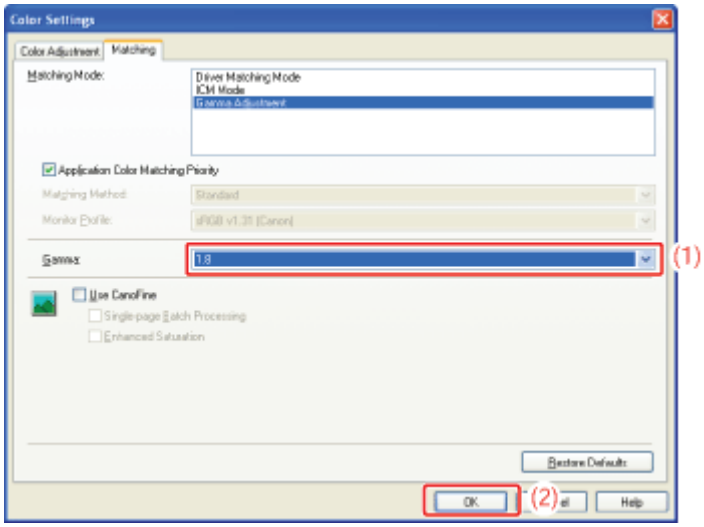
---

5. Specify the setting for [Gamma].

(1) Select a value for gamma.

† The larger the number is, the darker in color the data is printed.

(2) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].



→ The [Quality] sheet reappears.

---

6. Click [OK].

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

---

7. Click [OK] or [Print].

→ The printer starts printing.

[F-41] Calibrating the Printer

Perform calibration when the color has changed and the data is not printed in the correct colors (specified colors) or in other cases.

- Calibrating the Printer Immediately (Manual Calibration)
- Automatically Performing Calibration or Correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" Immediately after the Printer Is Turned On

NOTE

Calibration time
It takes approximately 60 seconds.

Calibrating the Printer Immediately (Manual Calibration)

IMPORTANT

Precautions when calibrating the printer
If you perform calibration frequently, this may affect the life of the toner cartridges.

---

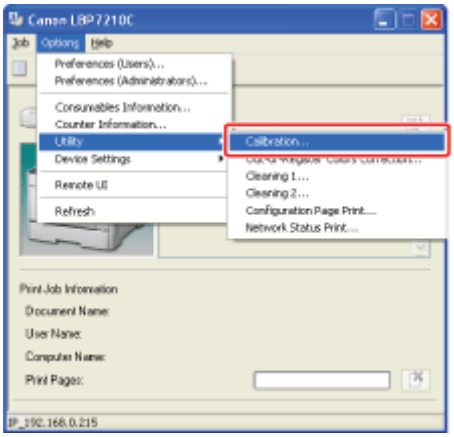
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

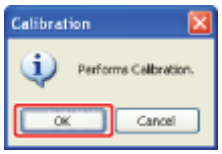
When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Calibration].**



3. **Click [OK].**



Automatically Performing Calibration or Correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" Immediately after the Printer Is Turned On

You can specify whether calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" should be automatically performed immediately after the printer is turned on.

IMPORTANT

Precautions when performing calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors"

The computer* connected to the printer needs to be running before you perform calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors".

* The print server for when the printer is shared on a network

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

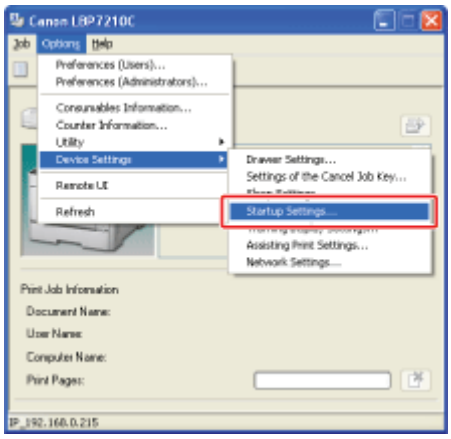
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Startup Settings].



3. You can configure the printer operation for immediately after the printer is turned on.

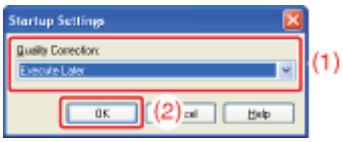
(1) Select whether or not to perform calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors".

[Execute Later]: Only correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is performed on completion of the first printing after the printer is turned on.

[Execute Immediately (Level 1)]: Only correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is performed immediately after the printer is turned on.

[Execute Immediately (Level 2)]: Calibration and correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" are performed immediately after the printer is turned on.

(2) Click [OK].



IMPORTANT

When [Execute Later] is selected

If correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is performed for some reason before the printer is turned ON and performs first printing, another correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is not performed after completion of the first printing even if [Execute Later] is selected.

When [Execute Immediately (Level 1)] or [Execute Immediately (Level 2)] is selected

Calibration and correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" may not be performed immediately after the printer is turned on depending on the inside state of the printer.

When less than eight hours has elapsed from the time the printer was turned Off until the time the printer was turned On again

Calibration or correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may not be performed immediately after the printer is turned On or after completion of the first printing.

When eight or more hours has elapsed from the time the printer entered the sleep mode until the time the sleep mode was canceled
Calibration or correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" will be performed according to the setting of [Quality Correction] when the sleep mode is canceled.

* Depending on your environment, calibration or correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may be performed even if less than eight hours has elapsed.

[F-42] Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors"

If a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" occurs, correct it.

- Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors" Immediately (Manual Correction of "Out-of-Register Colors")
- Automatically Performing Calibration or Correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" Immediately after the Printer Is Turned On

NOTE

Correction time
It takes approximately 50 seconds.

Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors" Immediately (Manual Correction of "Out-of-Register Colors")

IMPORTANT

Precautions when correcting "Out-of-Register Colors"
If "Out-of-Register Colors" are corrected frequently, this may affect the life of the toner cartridges.

---

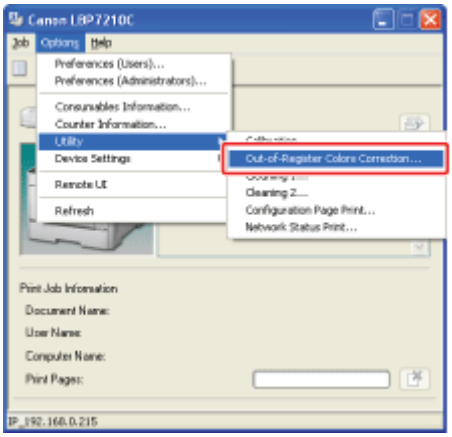
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Out-of-Register Colors Correction].**



3. **Click [OK].**

Automatically Performing Calibration or Correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" Immediately after the Printer Is Turned On

You can specify whether calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" should be automatically performed immediately after the printer is turned on.

IMPORTANT

Precautions when performing calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors"

The computer* connected to the printer needs to be running before you perform calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors".

* The print server for when the printer is shared on a network

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

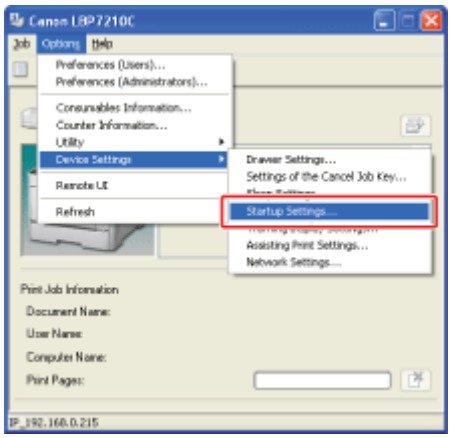
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Startup Settings].



---

3. You can configure the printer operation for immediately after the printer is turned on.

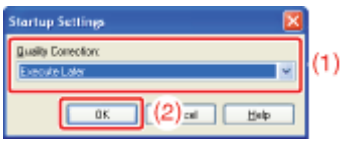
(1) Select whether or not to perform calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors".

[Execute Later]: Only correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is performed on completion of the first printing after the printer is turned On.

[Execute Immediately (Level 1)]: Only correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is performed immediately after the printer is turned On.

[Execute Immediately (Level 2)]: Calibration and correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" are performed immediately after the printer is turned on.

(2) Click [OK].



IMPORTANT

When [Execute Later] is selected

If correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is performed for some reason before the printer is turned ON and performs first printing, another correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" is not performed after completion of the first printing even if [Execute Later] is selected.

When [Execute Immediately (Level 1)] or [Execute Immediately (Level 2)] is selected

Calibration and correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" may not be performed immediately after the printer is turned on depending on the inside state of the printer.

When less than eight hours has elapsed from the time the printer was turned Off until the time the printer was turned ON again

Calibration or correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may not be performed immediately after the printer is turned on or after completion of the first printing.

When eight or more hours has elapsed from the time the printer entered the sleep mode until the time the sleep mode was canceled
Calibration or correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" will be performed according to the setting of [Quality Correction] when the sleep mode is canceled.

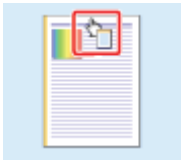
* Depending on your environment, calibration or correction of a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may be performed even if less than eight hours has elapsed.

[F-43] Using Preview to Configure the Printing Preferences

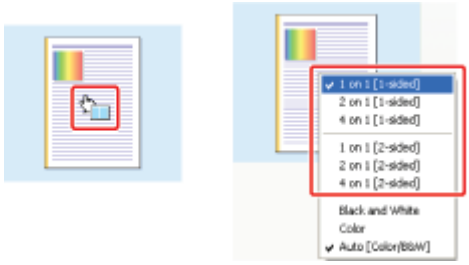
Using Preview in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], or [Paper Source] sheet in the printer driver, you can configure the printing preferences.
Depending on which icon on the upper left on Preview ([ ] or [ ]) is selected, the specifiable options vary.

When [ ] is selected
You can specify the following settings according to the clicked position on Preview.

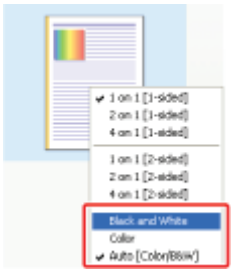
[Binding Location]: Left-click an edge of the document image.



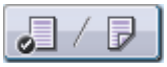
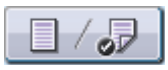
[Page Layout]: Repeatedly left-click within the document image or right-click on Preview.



[Color Mode]: Right-click on Preview.



The use of the buttons at the bottom of the preview pane is as follows.

Button	Use
	By clicking the button, you can switch the mode between [1-sided Printing] and [2-sided Printing]. • [1-sided Printing] •  [2-sided Printing]
	By clicking the button, you can specify the setting for [Color Mode]. • [Auto Detect] • [Black and White]

	• [Color]

When [ ] is selected

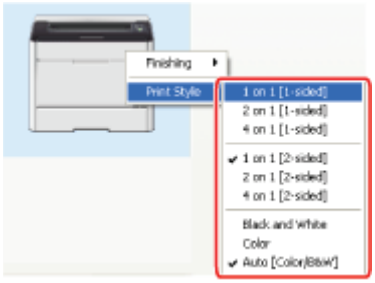
You can specify the following settings according to the clicked position on Preview.

[Paper Source]*: Left-click a paper source image (the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer).

If you want to switch the paper source automatically according to the size or type of paper to be printed, left-click [Auto] on the lower right on the preview pane.

[Finishing]: Right-click on Preview.

[Print Style]: Right-click on Preview.



* If you have selected any one of the following in [Paper Selection], you can specify the paper source for each page. (Select the page to be specified by right-clicking.)

- [Different for First, Others, and Last]
- [Different for First, Second, Others, and Last]
- [Different for Cover and Others]

If [Transparency Cover Sheets] in [Paper Selection] is selected, you can specify a paper source (paper drawer) used for [Cover Sheets].

The use of the buttons at the bottom of the preview pane is as follows.

Button	Use
	By clicking the button, you can switch the mode between [1-sided Printing] and [2-sided Printing]. • [1-sided Printing]

	• [2-sided Printing]
	By clicking the button, you can specify the setting for [Color Mode]. • [Auto Detect] • [Black and White] • [Color]

[F-44] Saving Frequently Used Printing Preferences (Profiles)

If you save frequently used printing preferences as a "Profile", you can perform printing using the saved preferences by simply selecting the "Profile".
Also, some are registered as the default "Profiles".

- Selecting a "Profile"
- Adding a "Profile"
- Editing an Added "Profile"
- Deleting an Added "Profile"

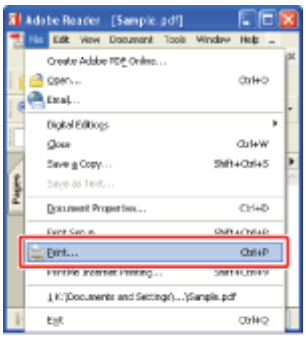
IMPORTANT

The settings that cannot be added as a "Profile"
The settings using the following options in the [Quality] sheet - [Custom Settings] dialog box cannot be added as a "Profile".

- [Color Halftones]
- [B & W Halftones]
- [Use Pure Black]
- [Prioritize Printing of Colored Lines and Text]

Selecting a "Profile"

1. **Select [Print] from the [File] menu in the application.**

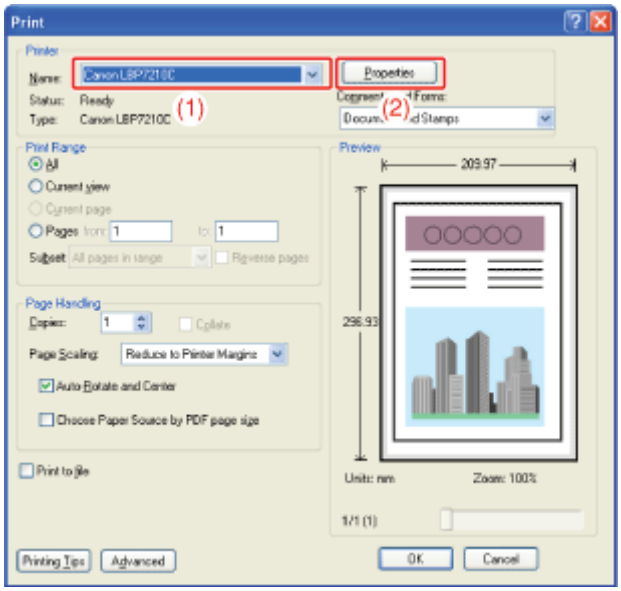


NOTE

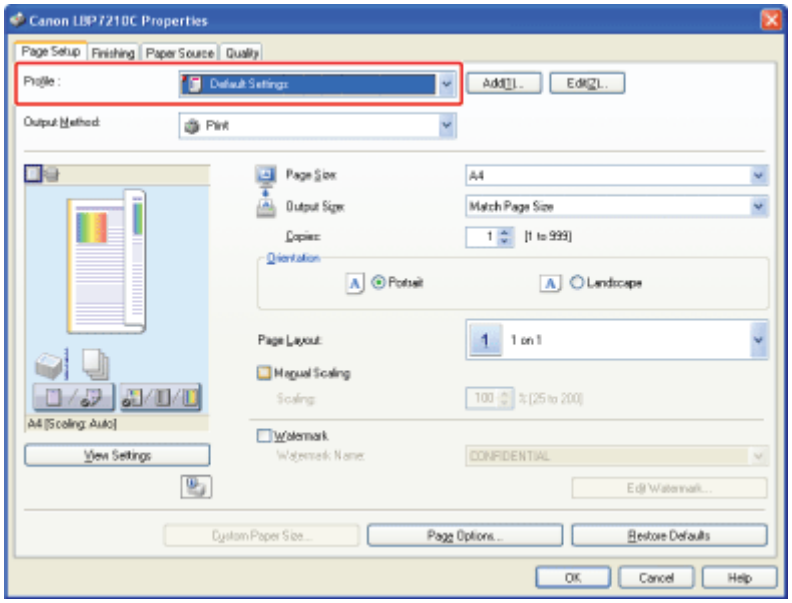
About the printing procedure
The printing procedure may differ depending on the application you are using.
For details on the printing procedures, see the instruction manual supplied with the application.

2. **Open the printing preferences dialog box.**

(1) Select this printer.
(2) Click [Properties] or [Preferences].



3. Select a "Profile".



NOTE

If you cannot select a "Profile"

- When the [Allow Profile Selection] check box in the [Profile] sheet is cleared, [Profile] is grayed out and cannot be specified.
  See "Allow Profile Selection or Editing" and select the [Allow Profile Selection] check box.

- If the printer name has been changed, any added "Profiles" cannot be used. To use the added "Profiles", change the printer name to its previous one.

4. **Click [OK].**

→ The [Print] dialog box reappears.

5. **Click [OK] or [Print].**

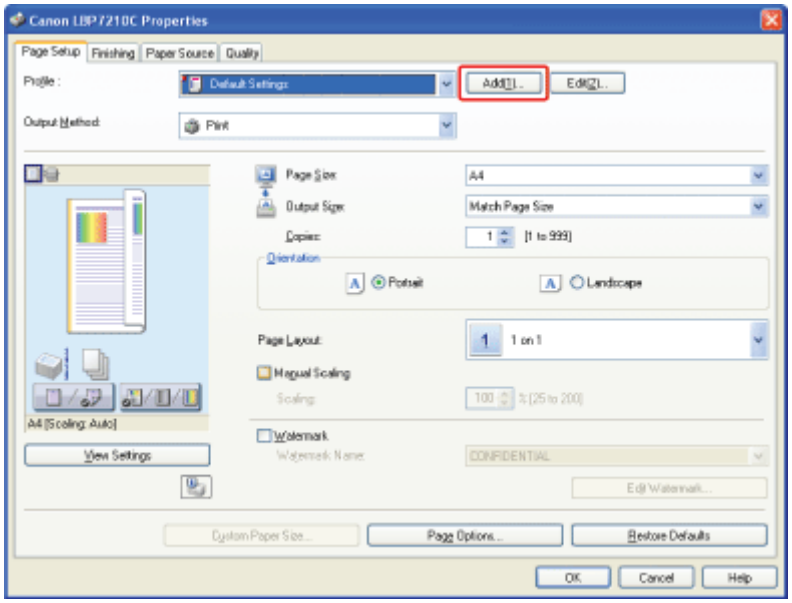
→ The printer starts printing.

Adding a "Profile"

1. **Specify printing references in the printer driver.**

Specify each option in the [Page Setup], [Finishing], [Paper Source], and [Quality] sheets.

2. **Click [Add].**



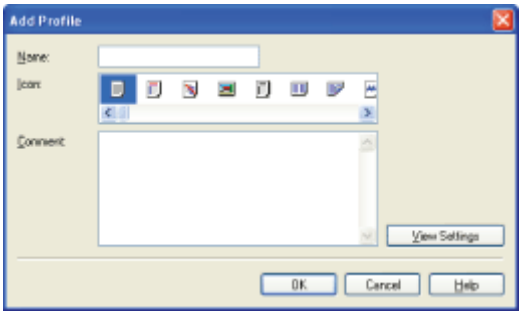
NOTE

If you cannot click [Add]

When the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes in the [Profile] sheet are cleared, [Add] is grayed out and cannot be specified.

See "Allow Profile Selection or Editing" and select the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes.

3. **Specify information about the "Profiles".**



[Name]: Enter the name for the "Profile". Up to 31 characters can be entered.
[Icon]: You can select the icon for the "Profile".
[Comment]: Enter the comment for the "Profile". Up to 255 characters can be entered.
[View Settings]: Display the [View Settings] dialog box.
The [View Settings] dialog box allows you to check the current printer driver settings.

---

4. Click [OK].

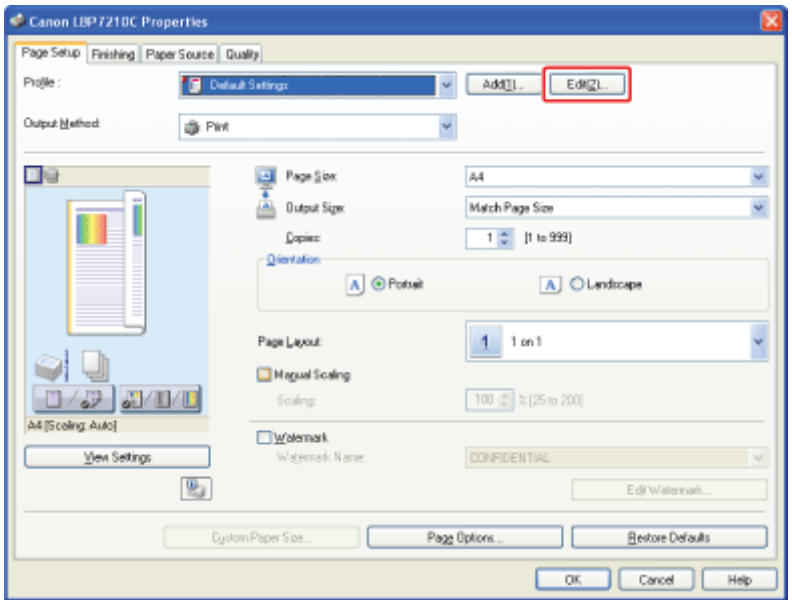
→ The original sheet reappears.
Make sure that the name of the added "Profile" is in [Profile].

Editing an Added "Profile"

You can change information about an added "Profile" or export a "Profile" as a file.

---

1. Click [Edit].



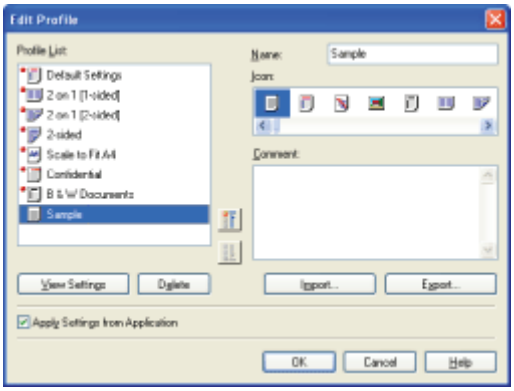
NOTE

If you cannot click [Edit]

When the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes in the [Profile] sheet are cleared, [Edit] is grayed out and cannot be specified.
See "Allow Profile Selection or Editing" and select the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes.

---

2. **Edit information about the "Profiles".**



NOTE

For details on the settings
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

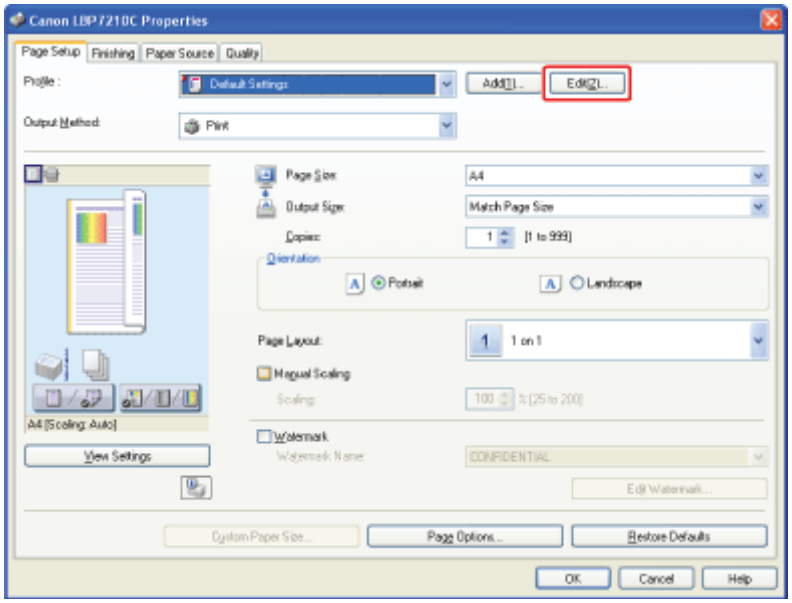
---

3. **Click [OK].**

→ The original sheet reappears.

Deleting an Added "Profile"

1. **Click [Edit].**



NOTE

If you cannot click [Edit]

When the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes in the [Profile] sheet are cleared, [Edit] is grayed out and cannot be specified.

See "Allow Profile Selection or Editing" and select the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes.

---

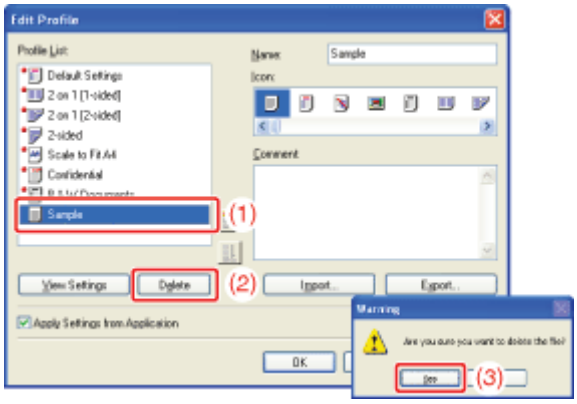
2. Delete a "Profile".

(1) Select a "Profile" you want to delete.

(2) Click [Delete].

† You cannot delete the default "Profiles" or a "Profile" which is being selected in the printing preferences dialog box.

(3) Click [Yes].

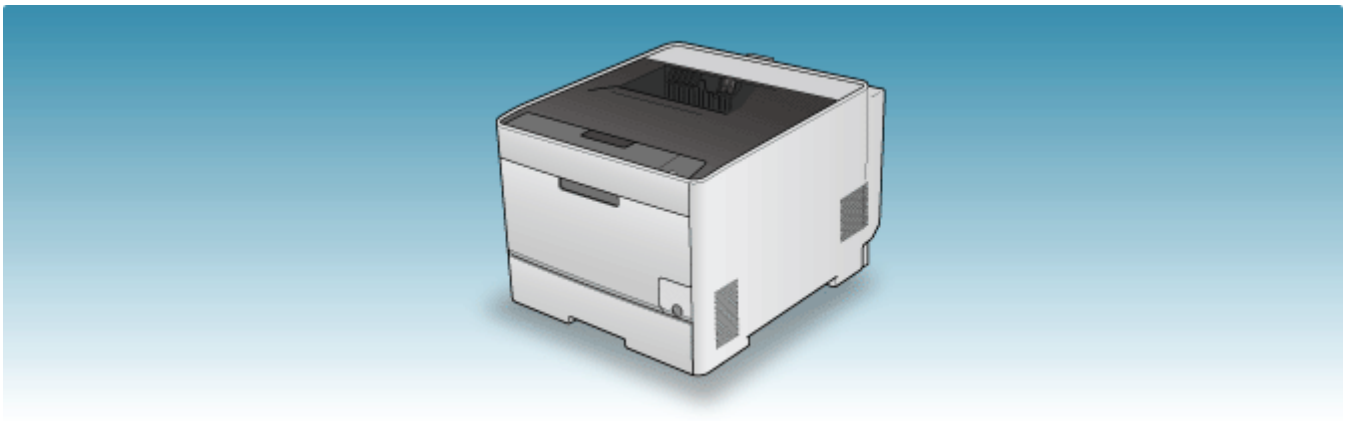


---

3. Click [OK].

→ The original sheet reappears.

[G] Maintenance



Consumables

- Checking the Printer Status
- Replacing or Handling Toner Cartridges
- Loading Paper

Adjustment

- Adjusting the Color or Image Quality

Cleaning and Handling

- Cleaning the Printer
- Moving the Printer

Others

- Installing the Optional Accessories
- Handling the Printer
- Location of the Serial Number

[G-02] Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window

Click the following link to view the contents.

- "Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window"

[G-03] Checking by the Remote UI

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Checking by the Remote UI"

[G-04] When a Message Appears

Toner cartridges are consumable products. When a toner cartridge is nearing the end of its life, a message will appear in the Printer Status Window. Follow the directions in the message.

Message	Contents and Solutions
[Message Area] (Auxiliary) The <Toner Color>* toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon.	• You can continue to print. • Have ready a new toner cartridge of the indicated color. • It is recommended that you replace the toner cartridge before printing a large amount of data.
[Message Area] Check the Toner Cartridges. [Message Area] (Auxiliary) (<Toner Color>*) Toner cartridges with print quality that cannot be guaranteed due to their decreasing lifetime etc., or used toner cartridges that have reached their lifetime, may have been inserted. Continuing to use these cartridges may cause a malfunction, so replacing these cartridges with new cartridges is recommended.	• The printer stops printing. • You can continue printing as is by clicking [ ] (Resolve Error), however, as this may result in damage to the printer, it is recommended to replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
[Message Area] Toner Cartridge Replacement Required [Message Area] (Auxiliary) The life of the <Toner Color>* toner cartridge has come to an end. Open the front cover to replace the toner cartridge.	• When the black toner cartridge has reached the end of its life, the printer stops printing, and you cannot continue the job. • When any of the toner cartridges (other than black) has reached the end of its life, you can print only in black and white. • Replace the toner cartridge of the indicated color with a new one.

* Black, yellow, magenta, or cyan will appear in <Toner Color>. (More than one color may appear.)

IMPORTANT

About replacement toner cartridges

For optimum print quality, using Canon genuine toner cartridges is recommended.

Model Name	Supported Canon Genuine Toner Cartridge
LBP7210Cdn	Canon Cartridge 718 Black Canon Cartridge 718 Yellow Canon Cartridge 718 Magenta Canon Cartridge 718 Cyan

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges

Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.

For more information, see **http://www.canon.com/counterfeit**.

NOTE

Average yield of the toner cartridges

- Replacement toner cartridges
  - Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 3,400 pages
  - Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 2,900 pages
- Toner cartridges included with this printer
  - Average yield of K (Black) toner cartridge: 1,200 pages
  - Average yield of Composite C (Cyan), M (Magenta), and Y (Yellow) toner cartridges: 1,400 pages

The average yield is on the basis of "ISO/IEC 19798"* when printing A4 size paper with the default print density setting.

* "ISO/IEC 19798" is the global standard related to "Method for the determination of toner cartridge yield for color printers and multi-function devices that contain printer components" issued by ISO (International Organization for Standardization).

About the life of the toner cartridges

The life of the toner cartridges is affected by the following conditions.

- Printing environment and conditions
  - Spaced printing
  - Paper size and paper type settings
- Printing ratio
  - Toner is used even when printing with a low printing ratio.
- Color printing
  - Multiple color toner cartridges may reach the end of their life at the same time.
- Printer configuration
  - Black-and-white printing may affect the life of the color toner cartridges.

Checking the status of the toner cartridges of each color

You can check the status of each of the color toner cartridges in the [Consumables Information] dialog box in the Printer Status Window.

"Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window"

[G-05] Replacing Toner Cartridges

- Precautions when Replacing Toner Cartridges
- Replacing Toner Cartridges

NOTE

Checking the status of the toner cartridges of each color
You can check the status of each of the color toner cartridges in the [Consumables Information] dialog box in the Printer Status Window.
"Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window"

Precautions when Replacing Toner Cartridges

WARNING

Do not dispose of a used toner cartridge in open flames.
This may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridges to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.

CAUTION

Precautions if you get toner on your hands or clothing
If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.
Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains.

IMPORTANT

About replacement toner cartridges
For optimum print quality, using Canon genuine toner cartridges is recommended.

Model Name	Supported Canon Genuine Toner Cartridge
LBP7210Cdn	Canon Cartridge 718 Black Canon Cartridge 718 Yellow Canon Cartridge 718 Magenta Canon Cartridge 718 Cyan

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges
Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.

For more information, see **http://www.canon.com/counterfeit**.

About disposal of the removed packing materials
Dispose of the packing materials according to local regulations.

NOTE

Handling toner cartridges
"Handling Toner Cartridges"

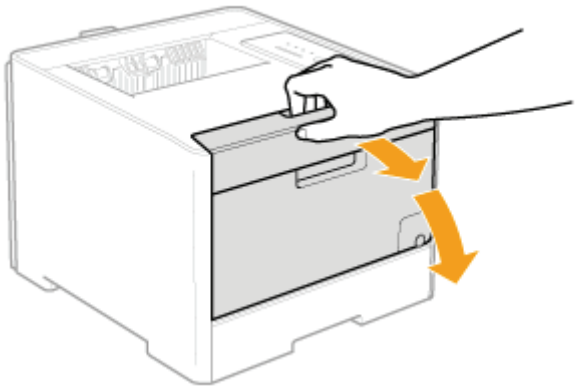
About the packing materials
The packing materials may be changed in form or placement, or may be added or removed without notice.

Replacing Toner Cartridges

NOTE

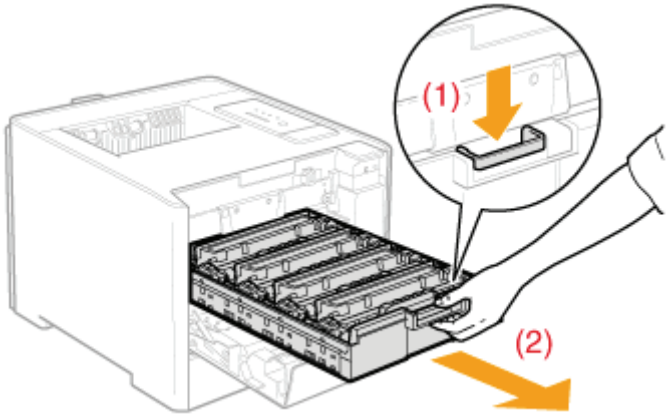
About the power of the printer
You can replace the toner cartridges either when the power of the printer is turned on or when it is turned off.

1. **Gently open the front cover.**



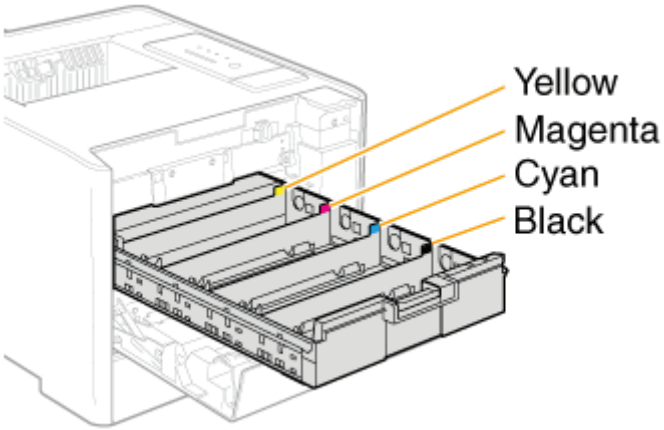
2. **Pull out the toner cartridge tray.**

(1) Press the lever on the handle.
(2) Pull out the toner cartridge tray until it stops.

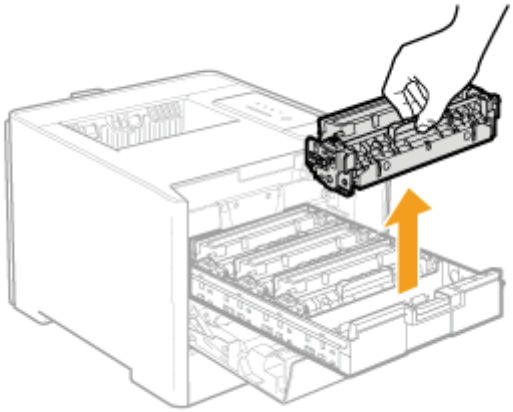


NOTE

Order of the toner cartridges



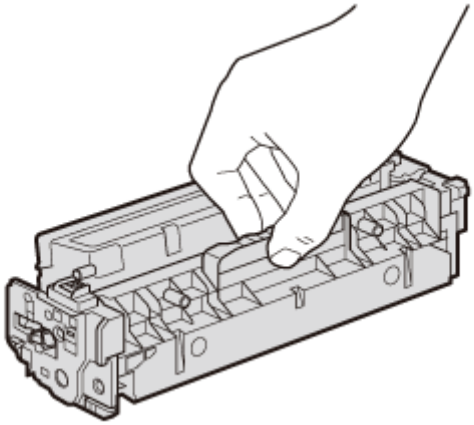
3. **Hold the toner cartridge to be replaced by its handle and pull it straight up and out of the printer.**



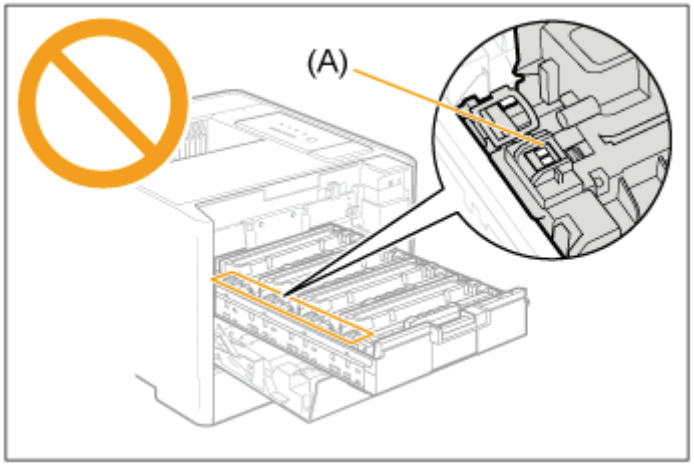
IMPORTANT

Hold the toner cartridges properly.

When handling the toner cartridges, hold them properly as shown in the figure. Do not place it vertically or upside-down.



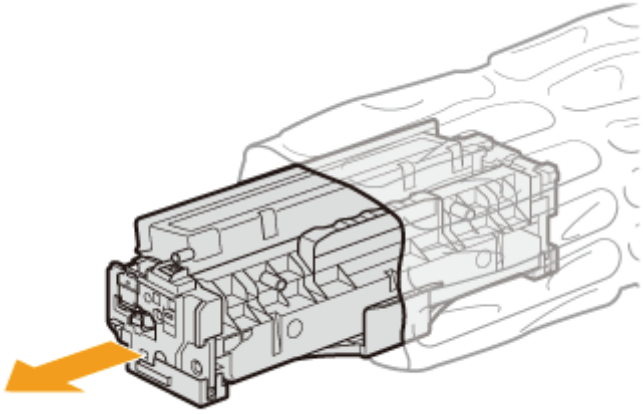
Do not touch the high-voltage contacts (A).
This may result in damage to the cartridge.



---

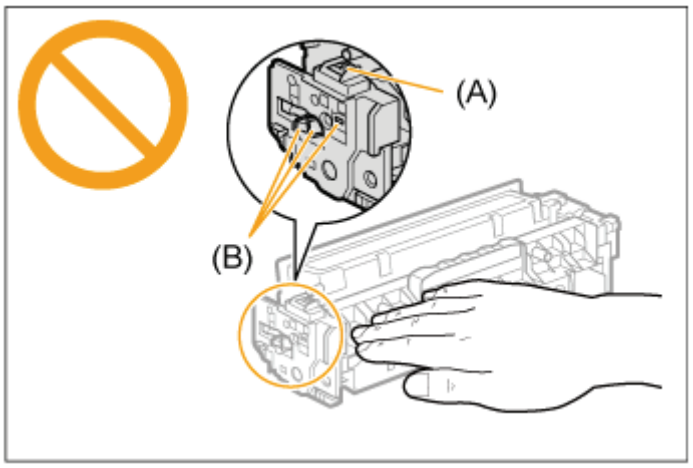
4. **Take out the new toner cartridge from the protective bag.**

You can open the protective bag with your hands from the notch.
When opening the protective bag with scissors, be careful not to damage the toner cartridge.



IMPORTANT

Do not touch the toner cartridge memory (A) or the electrical contacts (B).
This may result in damage to the cartridge.

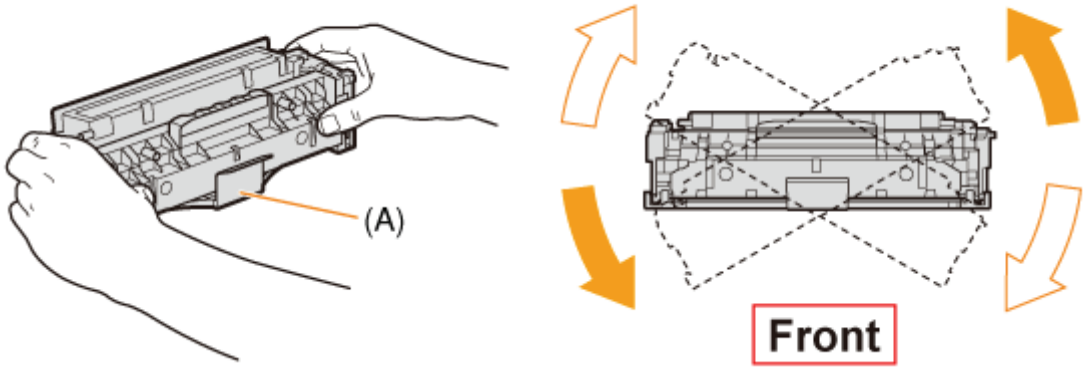


Keep the protective bag.
Keep the protective bag for the toner cartridge. You will need it when you remove the toner cartridge for printer maintenance or other purposes.

---

5. **Shake the toner cartridge to evenly distribute the toner inside the cartridge.**
Hold the toner cartridge as shown in the figure and shake it gently 5 or 6 times.

† Do not remove the drum protective cover (A).



CAUTION

If toner gets into your eyes or mouth
Wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

IMPORTANT

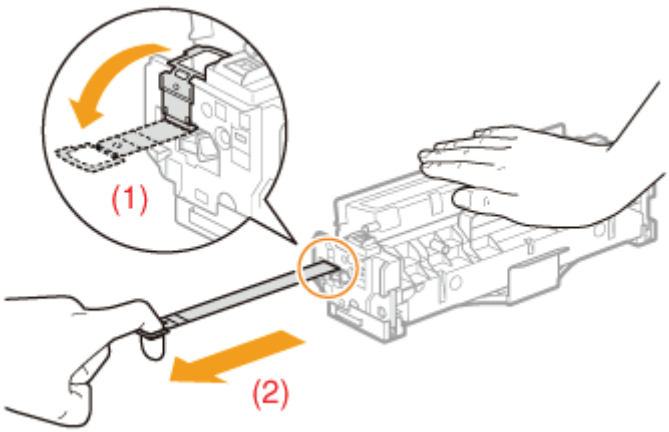
Be sure to perform this operation.
If toner is not distributed evenly, this may result in deterioration in print quality.

Be sure to shake the toner cartridge gently.
If you do not shake the cartridge gently, toner may spill out.

6. Place the toner cartridge on a flat surface.

7. Pull out the sealing tape.

(1) While holding the toner cartridge, hook your finger into the tab to remove it.
(2) Pull out the sealing tape (approx. 50 cm long) straight in the direction of the arrow gently.



CAUTION

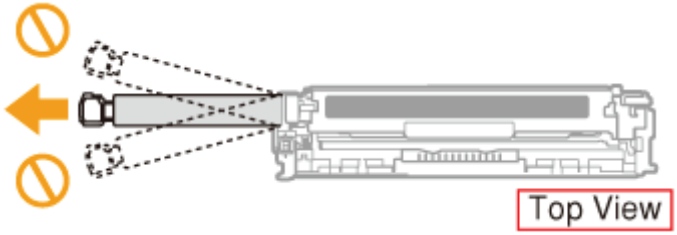
Be careful not to allow the toner to scatter.
Do not pull out the sealing tape forcefully or stop at midpoint, as this may cause toner to spill out.

If toner gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.

IMPORTANT

Pull the sealing tape completely out of the toner cartridge.

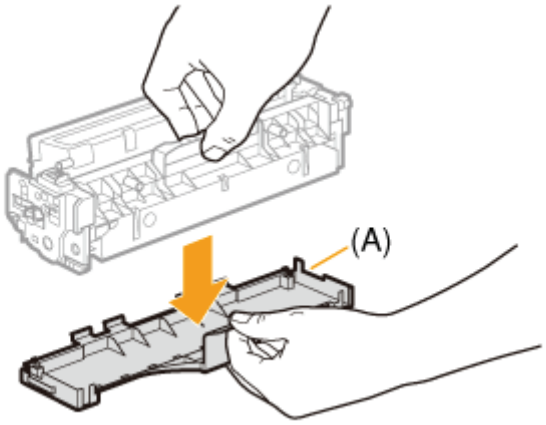
- Do not pull the sealing tape diagonally, upwards, or downwards. If the tape is severed, this may become difficult to pull out completely.



- If the sealing tape stops at midpoint, pull it out of the toner cartridge completely.

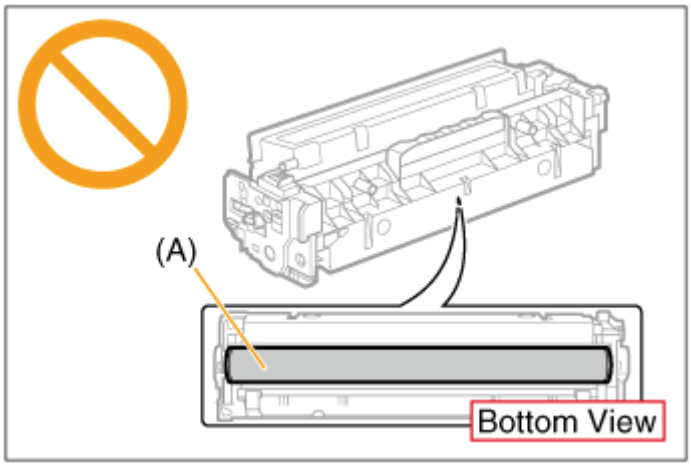
- If any tape remains in the toner cartridge, this may result in poor print quality.
- Dispose of the removed sealing tape according to local regulations.

8. Remove the drum protective cover (A).



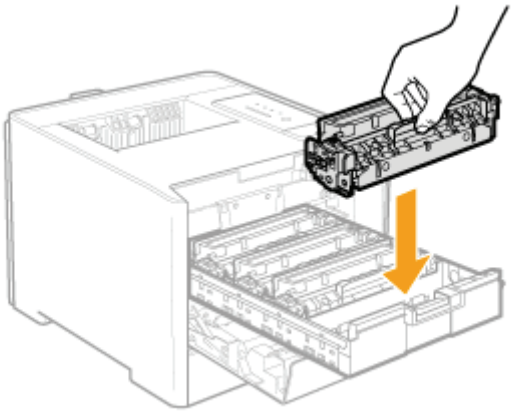
IMPORTANT

Do not touch the drum (A).
Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the drum (A) at the bottom of the toner cartridge.



Keep the drum protective cover.
Keep the removed drum protective cover. You will need it when you remove the toner cartridge for printer maintenance or other purposes.

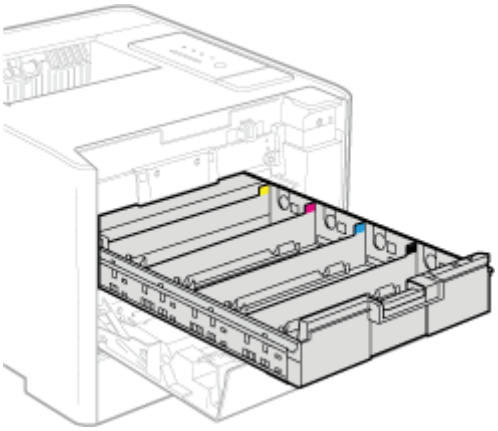
9. Install the toner cartridge.



IMPORTANT

Precautions when installing toner cartridges

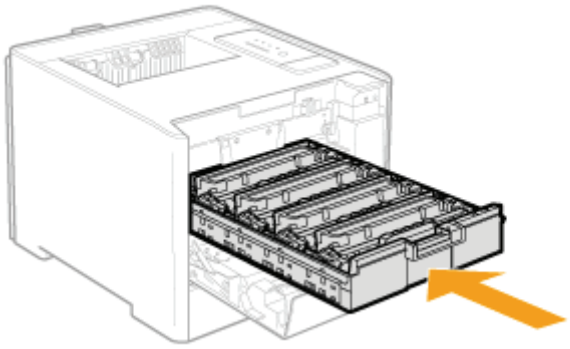
- When handling the toner cartridges, be careful not to let the drum impact the frame of the toner cartridge tray.
- The position of the toner cartridges in the printer is determined by the toner color. Install the toner cartridges in the slots that have labels of the same color.



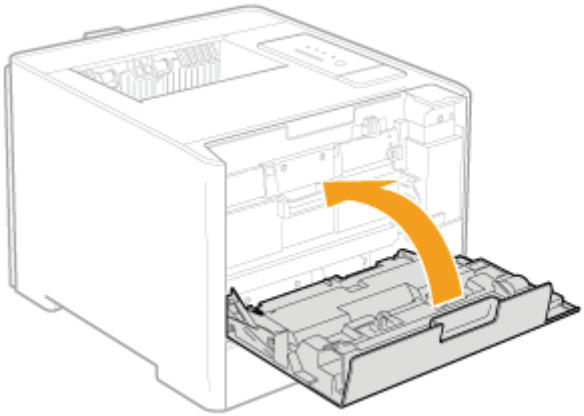
- Install the toner cartridges securely into the printer.

10. **Close the toner cartridge tray.**

Push it into the printer firmly.



11. **Gently close the front cover.**



CAUTION

Precautions when closing the front cover
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

IMPORTANT

If you cannot close the front cover
Make sure that the toner cartridge tray is closed.
Do not try to forcefully close the front cover, as this may damage the printer.

Do not leave the front cover open for a long time with the toner cartridges installed.
This may result in deterioration in print quality.

[G-06] Handling Toner Cartridges

The toner cartridges consist of light-sensitive components and precision mechanical components.
Handling the toner cartridges without due care may result in damage to the toner cartridges or deterioration in print quality.
Observe the following points when handling the toner cartridges.

WARNING

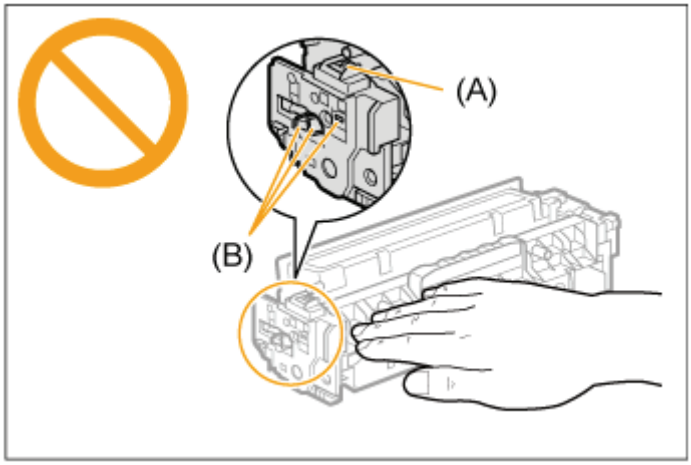
Do not dispose of a used toner cartridge in open flames.
This may cause the toner remaining inside the cartridges to ignite, resulting in burns or fire.

CAUTION

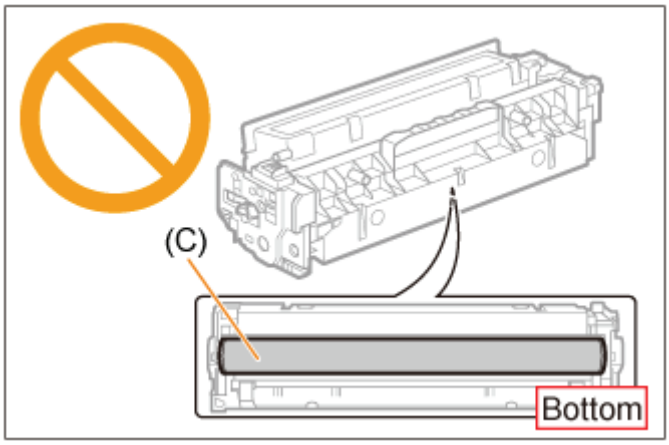
Precautions if you get toner on your hands or clothing
If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water.
Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains.

IMPORTANT

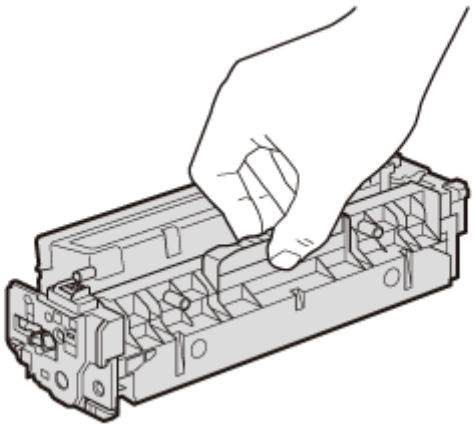
Do not touch the toner cartridge memory (A) or the electrical contacts (B).
This may result in damage to the cartridge.



Do not touch the drum (C).
Print quality may deteriorate if you touch or damage the drum (C) at the bottom of the toner cartridge.



Hold the toner cartridges properly.
When handling the toner cartridges, hold them properly as shown in the figure. Do not place it vertically or upside-down.



When removing a toner cartridge which is being used from the printer
Immediately attach the drum protective cover* to the toner cartridge and place it into the protective bag*, or wrap it with a thick cloth.

* The packing material in which the toner cartridge is originally packed.

Replace a toner cartridge with that of the same color.
When replacing a toner cartridge, be sure to replace the toner cartridge of the same color.

Other precautions

- Do not expose the toner cartridges to direct sunlight or strong light.
- Do not disassemble or modify the toner cartridges.
- Condensation (water droplets on the inside or outside) may form on the toner cartridges when they are brought into an environment with a sudden change in temperature or humidity.
  When moving a new toner cartridge to a location with change in temperature, leave the cartridge in the protective bag at the new location for two or more hours to allow it to adjust to the new temperature.
- Keep toner cartridges away from products that generate magnetic waves, such as a computer or computer display.

Be careful of counterfeit toner cartridges
Please be aware that there are counterfeit Canon toner cartridges in the marketplace. Use of counterfeit toner cartridge may result in poor print quality or machine performance. Canon is not responsible for any malfunction, accident or damage caused by the use of counterfeit toner cartridge.

For more information, see **http://www.canon.com/counterfeit**.

Storing Toner Cartridges

IMPORTANT

Precautions when storing toner cartridges
In order to use toner cartridges in a safe and trouble-free manner, store them in a place that fulfills the following conditions.

- Do not store the toner cartridges in a location exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not store the toner cartridges in a location subject to high temperature or humidity or in a location with dramatic changes in temperature or humidity.

  • Storage temperature range: 0 to 35 °C (32 to 95 °F)
  • Storage humidity range: 35 to 85% RH (no condensation)

- Do not store the toner cartridges in a location exposed to corrosive gases, such as ammonia, salt air, or large amounts of dust.
- Keep the toner cartridges out of the reach of small children.

Store the toner cartridges in the same orientation as when they are installed in the printer.
Do not store the toner cartridges vertically or upside-down.

When removing a toner cartridge which is being used from the printer
Immediately attach the drum protective cover* to the toner cartridge and place it into the protective bag*, or wrap it with a thick cloth.

* The packing material in which the toner cartridge is originally packed.

About new toner cartridges
Do not take a new toner cartridge out of the protective bag until it is ready to be used.

NOTE

About condensation
Even when the toner cartridges are stored within the recommended humidity range, water droplets may form on the inside or outside of the cartridges when moved to an environment with a sudden change in temperature or humidity. The formation of water droplets is called condensation. Condensation can adversely affect the print quality of the toner cartridges.

[G-08] Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)

Click the following link to view the contents.

- "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

[G-09] Loading Index Cards

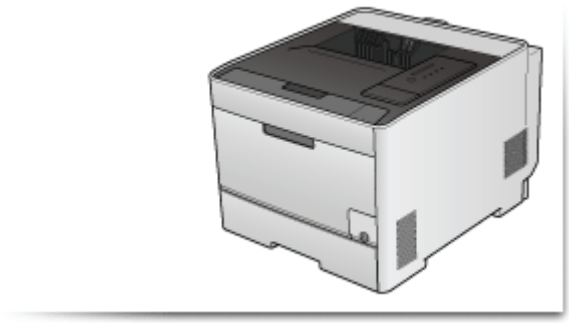
Click the following link to view the contents.

"Loading Index Cards"

[G-10] Loading Envelopes

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Loading Envelopes"



[G-11] Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)

Click the following link to view the contents.

- "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

[G-12] Performing Printing Appropriate for Particular Print Data

Click the following link to view the contents.

- "Performing Printing Appropriate for Particular Print Data"

[G-13] Correcting Rough-Textured Images

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Correcting Rough-Textured Images"

[G-14] Adjusting the Toner Density

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Adjusting the Toner Density"

[G-15] Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted"

[G-16] Adjusting the Color

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Adjusting the Color"

[G-17] Matching the Color on the Display

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Matching the Color on the Display"

[G-18] Calibrating the Printer

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Calibrating the Printer"

[G-19] Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors"

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors""

[G-20] Cleaning the Inside of the Printer

- Cleaning the Fixing Roller (Cleaning 1)
- Cleaning the Transfer Belt (Cleaning 2)

Cleaning the Fixing Roller (Cleaning 1)

If the printed paper has smudge marks, clean the fixing roller using the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

Have A4 size plain paper ready.
The fixing roller cannot be cleaned with any plain paper other than A4.
Be sure to load A4 size plain paper when cleaning the fixing roller.

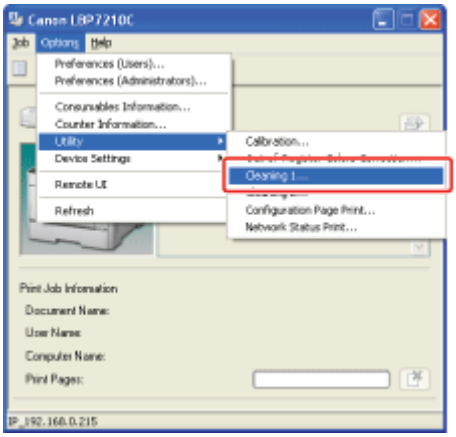
1. **Load A4-size plain paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer.**
"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

2. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

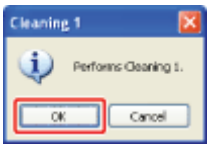
When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

3. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Cleaning 1].**



---

4. Click [OK].



→ The paper is fed into the printer, and the printer starts cleaning the fixing roller.
The cleaning is finished when the paper is output completely.
† Cleaning the fixing roller cannot be canceled. Please wait until it is completed.

IMPORTANT

Do not touch the paper until it is output completely while cleaning the fixing roller.
The paper is once output partially after the front side is printed, and then it is fed again to clean the fixing roller.

NOTE

Cleaning time for the fixing roller
It takes approximately 80 seconds.

Cleaning the Transfer Belt (Cleaning 2)

If the transfer belt of the ITB unit has dirt, this may result in deterioration in print quality. In this case, clean the transfer belt using the following procedure.

---

1. Display the Printer Status Window.

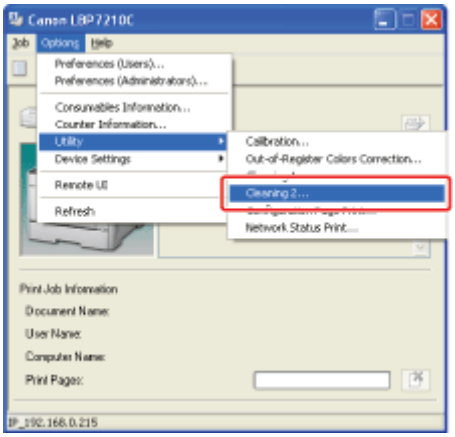
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

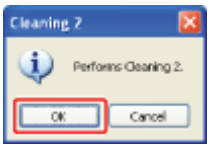
When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Cleaning 2].**



3. **Click [OK].**



→ The message <Cleaning> appears in the Printer Status Window, and the printer starts cleaning the transfer belt.
The cleaning is finished after the preceding message disappears.
† Cleaning the transfer belt cannot be canceled. Please wait until it is completed.

NOTE

Cleaning time for the transfer belt

It takes approximately 50 seconds.

[G-21] Cleaning the Outside of the Printer

Periodically clean the outer surfaces and ventilation slots of the printer to maintain the optimal printing quality.
When cleaning the printer, be careful of the following points in order to prevent electrical shocks or printer malfunctions.

WARNING

Turn off the printer and unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
Failure to do so can result in a fire or electrical shock.

Do not use alcohol, benzene, paint thinner, or other flammable substances.
If flammable substances come into contact with electrical parts inside the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

IMPORTANT

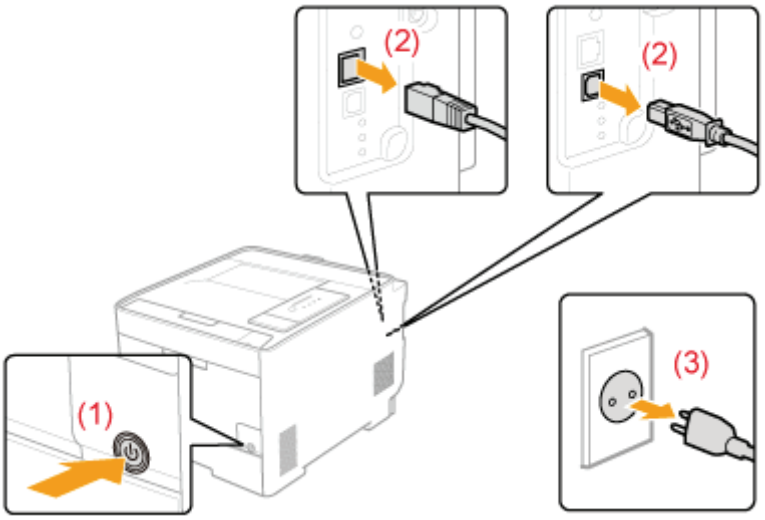
Precautions when cleaning the outside of the printer

- Do not use a cleaning agent other than water or a mild detergent diluted with water, as this may deform or crack the plastic materials in the printer.
- When using a mild detergent, be sure to dilute it with water.
- This printer does not need grease or oil. Do not apply grease or oil.

---

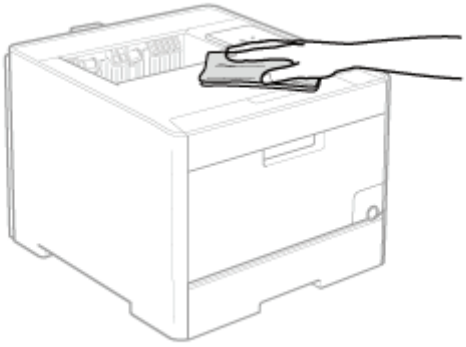
1. **Turn the printer off, then disconnect the cables from the printer.**

(1) Turn the printer off.
(2) If the interface cables are connected, turn the computer off, and then disconnect the interface cables from the printer.
(3) Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.



---

2. **Clean the printer with a soft, well wrung out cloth dampened with water or mild detergent diluted with water.**



NOTE

When using a mild detergent for cleaning
Be sure to wipe away any detergent remaining on the surface with a soft cloth dampened with water.

3. **After wiping off any dirt, wipe the printer with a dry cloth.**

4. **When the printer is completely dry, plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.**

5. **Connect the USB cable to the printer as needed.**

[G-22] Moving the Printer

When changing the location of the printer or moving the printer for maintenance, be sure to perform the following procedure.

⚠ WARNING

When moving the printer
Always turn off the power switch and unplug the power plug and interface cables.
Failure to do so can damage the cables or cords, resulting in a fire or electrical shock.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not carry the printer with the paper drawer installed.
If you do so, the paper drawer may drop, resulting in personal injury.

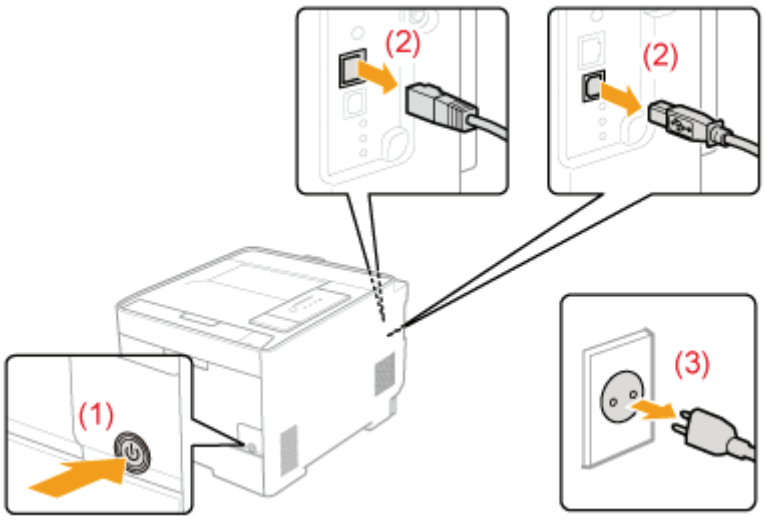
NOTE

About installation sites
"Installation Conditions of the Printer"

---

1. **Turn the printer off, then disconnect the cables from the printer.**

(1) Turn the printer off.
(2) If the interface cables are connected, turn the computer off, and then disconnect the interface cables from the printer.
(3) Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

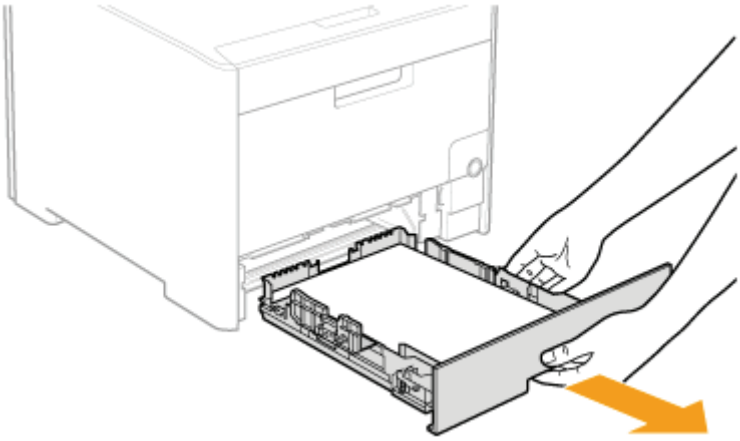


---

2. **Remove the power cord from the printer.**

---

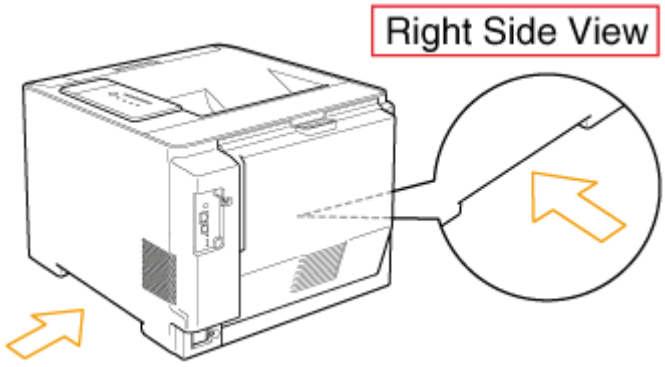
3. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



---

4. **Move the printer from the installation site.**

Carry the printer with two or more people by holding the lift handles on the lower portion of the printer and lifting it up at the same time.

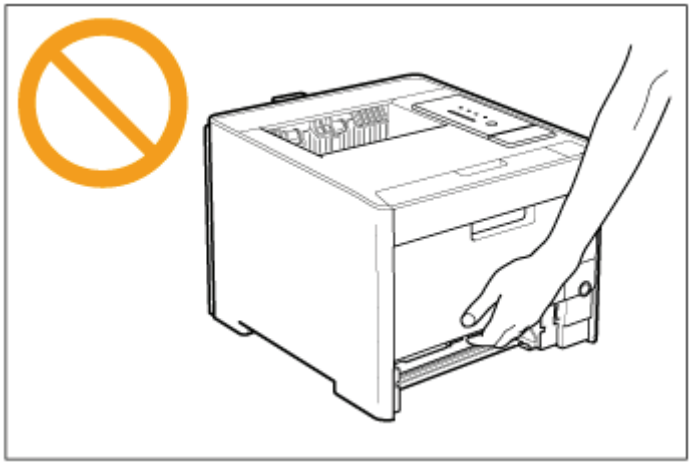


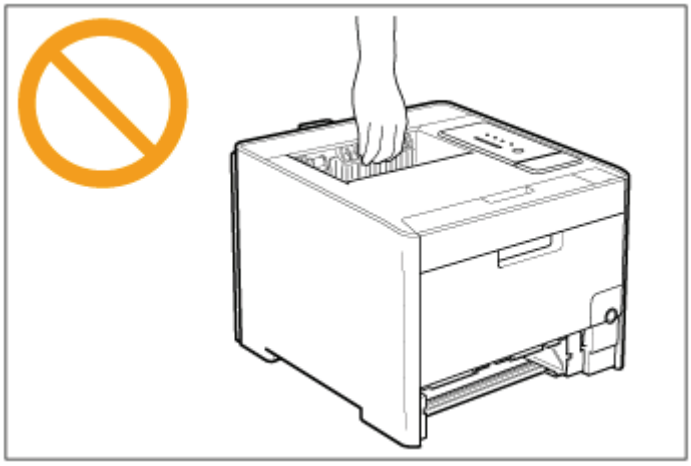
CAUTION

Carry the printer with two or more people.
This printer weighs approximately 25.1 kg. Please be careful not to hurt your back or other portions of your body when carrying the printer.

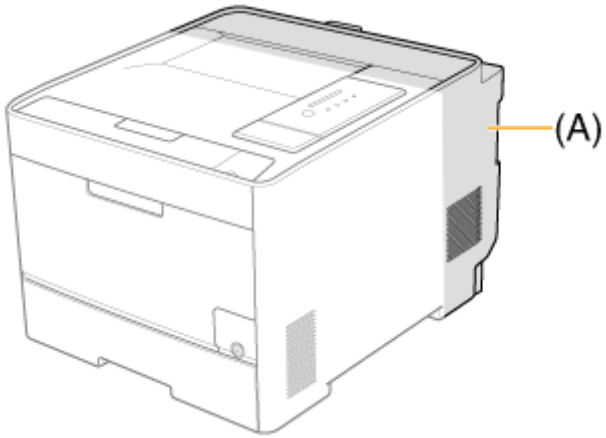
Be sure to hold the lift handles.

Do not hold the printer by the front portion, output area, or any portions other than the lift handles. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.

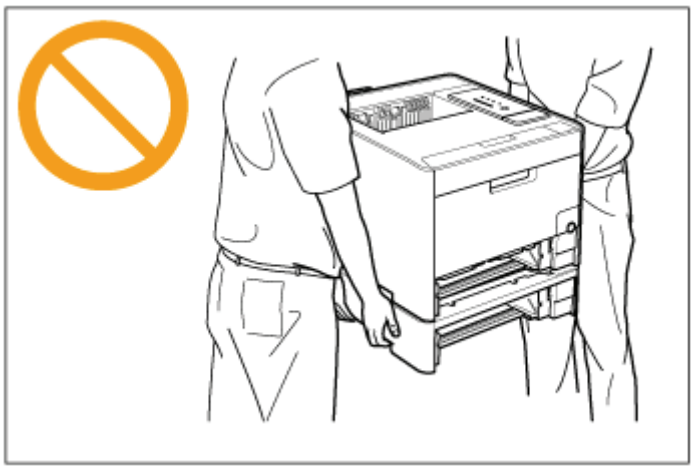




Pay attention to the balance.
The rear portion (A) of the printer is relatively heavy. Be careful not to become off-balance when lifting the printer. If you do so, you may drop the printer, resulting in personal injury.



Do not carry the printer with the paper feeder installed.
If you do so, the paper feeder may drop resulting in personal injury.



IMPORTANT

Do not carry the printer with a cover or tray open.
Make sure that the front cover and multi-purpose tray are closed before carrying the printer.

NOTE

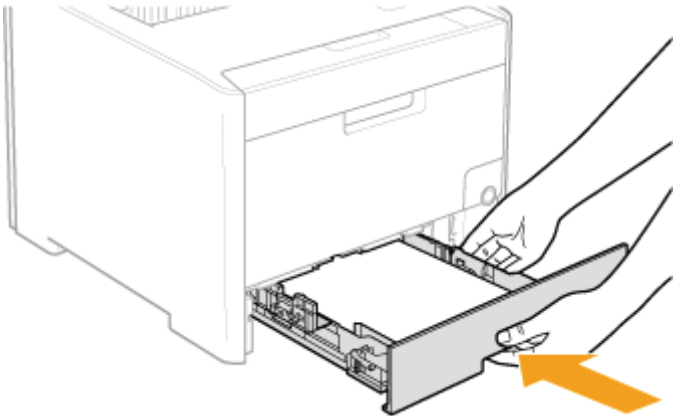
If the optional paper feeder is installed
Place the paper feeder on the new installation site before carrying the printer to the site.
For details on the procedure for installing the paper feeder, see "Paper Feeder".

5. **Put the printer unit down carefully at the new installation site.**

CAUTION

Put the printer down slowly and carefully.
Be careful not to hurt your hands or fingers.

6. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**
Push it into the printer firmly.



⚠CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

7. **Connect the LAN cable to the printer as needed.**

8. **Connect the power cord to the printer.**

9. **Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.**

10. **Connect the USB cable to the printer as needed.**

INFORMATION

When transporting the printer unit
To prevent damage to the printer during transport, perform the following.

- Remove the toner cartridges.
- Securely pack the printer in the original box with packing materials.

  † If the original box and packing materials are not available, find an appropriate box along with packing materials and pack the printer and the parts appropriately.

[G-23] Paper Feeder

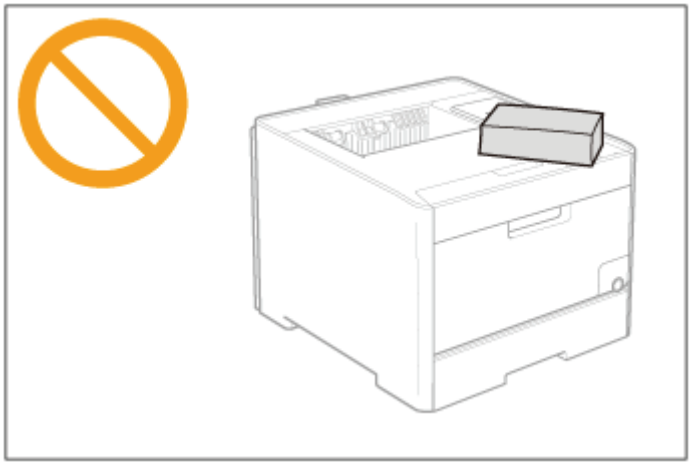
Click the following link to view the contents.

"Paper Feeder"

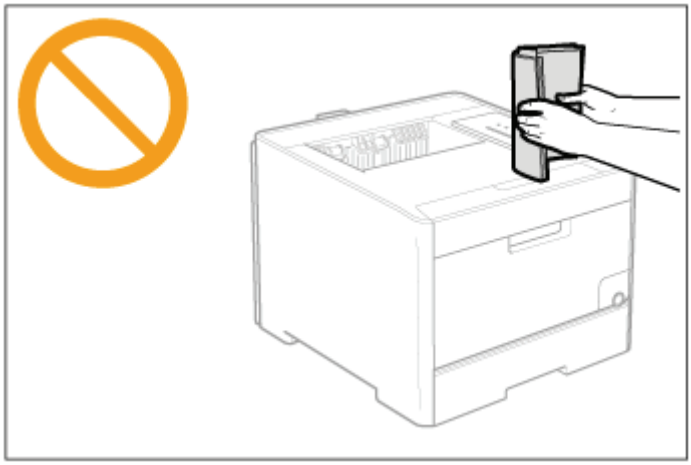
[G-24] Handling the Printer

This printer consists of various electronic and precision optical parts. Read the following section so that you can handle the printer properly.

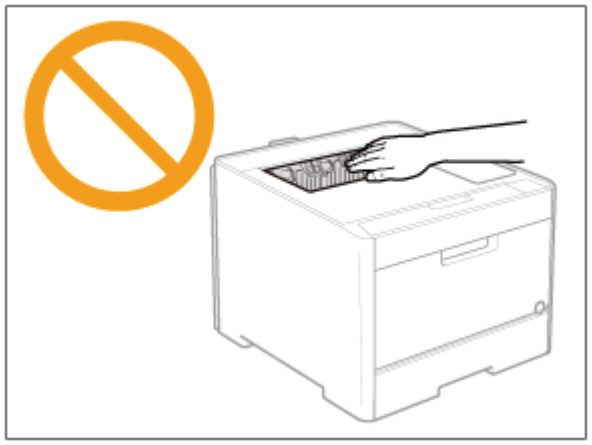
- For details on handling the printer, also read "Handling".
- Do not place any objects other than printing paper on the printer, trays, or covers. This may result in damage to the printer.



- Do not leave any covers open longer than required. Exposing the printer to direct sunlight or strong light may result in deterioration in print quality.
- Avoid shaking the printer. This may result in poor print quality or damage to the printer.



- Do not open the covers on the printer during printing. This may result in damage to the printer.
- Handle each cover gently when opening or closing it. Failure to do so may result in damage to the printer.
- If you want to put a cover on the printer to prevent dust from entering the printer, turn the power off and allow the printer to cool down sufficiently before covering the printer.
- If you do not plan to use the printer for a long period of time, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.
- Do not use or store the printer in a room where chemicals are used.
- The output tray and its surroundings become hot during or immediately after using the printer. Do not touch the output tray and its surroundings when removing the jammed paper or performing the related operation.

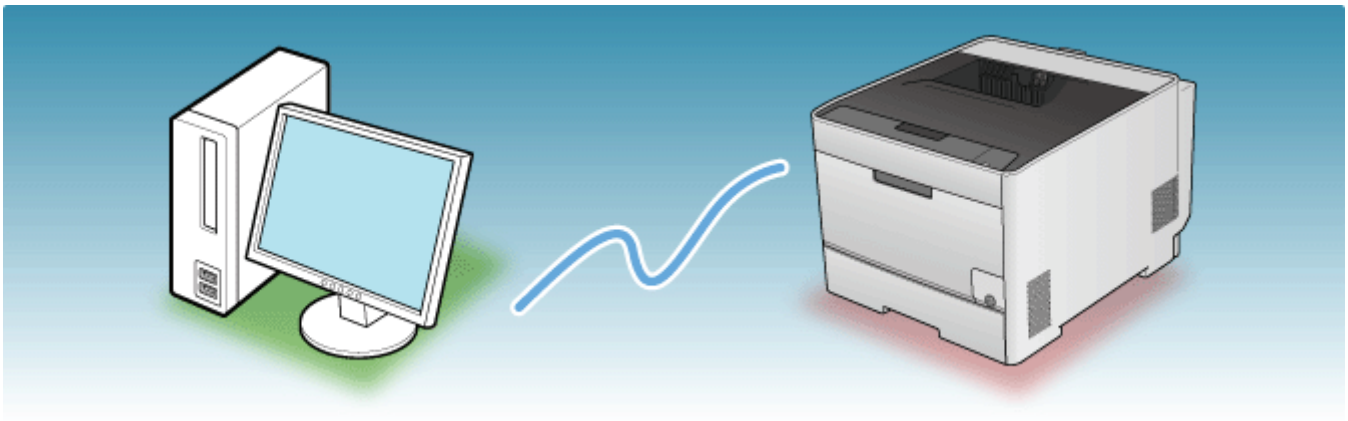


[G-25] Location of the Serial Number

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Location of the Serial Number"

[H] Troubleshooting



Computer

- The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled
- Printing Does Not Work
- A Message Appears in the Printer Status Window

Network

- The Printer Cannot Be Connected to the Network

Printer

- Paper Curls or Creases
- Poor Print Quality
- Paper Jams
- The Alarm Indicator Is On or Blinking

Others

- Miscellaneous Problems

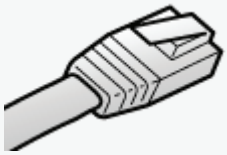
[H-02] The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled

This section describes solutions for when you cannot install or uninstall the printer driver.

- The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed
- The Printer Driver Cannot Be Uninstalled

The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed

Select a problem during the installation from any of the following.

Connection with a USB cable	When Installing the Printer Diver from the CD-ROM, the Printer Is Not Recognized Automatically after Connecting the USB Cable
Connection with a LAN cable 	When the Printer Driver Is Installed by Auto Setup, the Printer Cannot Be Searched for The Printer to Be Used Cannot Be Searched for in NetSpot Device Installer
Connection via the print server (client)	The Print Server for Connection Cannot Be Found The Shared Printer Cannot Be Accessed

The Printer Driver Cannot Be Uninstalled

If you cannot uninstall the printer driver using the uninstaller, implement the following solutions.

Solution 1	Uninstalling the Printer Driver in [Control Panel]

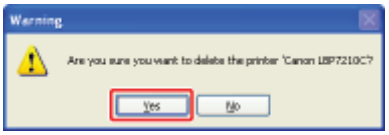
Solution 2 (Only when connecting with USB)	Uninstalling the USB Class Driver

NOTE

If a user without administrative rights installed the printer driver

The printer driver may not be able to uninstalled successfully using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller] depending on your operating system.
In this case, uninstall the printer driver using the following procedure.

1. Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].
2. Right-click the icon for this printer, then select [Delete] from the pop-up menu.
3. Click [Yes].



4. Uninstall the printer driver using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller].
   "Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]"

[H-03] When Installing the Printer Diver from the CD-ROM, the Printer Is Not Recognized Automatically after Connecting the USB Cable

When installing the printer driver from the CD-ROM, the printer is not recognized automatically after connecting the USB cable.	
Cause 1	The USB cable was already connected and the printer was turned on before the printer driver was installed.
Solution	Perform the following procedure. 1. Turn the printer off. 2. Disconnect the USB cable. 3. Connect the USB cable again. 4. Turn the printer on.
Cause 2	The printer is not turned on.
Solution	Turn the printer on.
Cause 3	The USB cable is not connected properly.
Solution	Make sure that the printer and computer are properly connected with the USB cable.
Cause 4	An inappropriate USB cable is being used.
Solution	Use a USB cable that is appropriate for the USB interface environment of the printer and has the following symbol. The following is the USB interface environment of this printer. • Hi-Speed USB • USB
Cause 5	The USB class driver is installed.
Solution	Uninstall the USB class driver. "Uninstalling the USB Class Driver"

[H-04] When the Printer Driver Is Installed by Auto Setup, the Printer Cannot Be Searched for

When the printer driver is installed by Auto Setup, the printer cannot be searched for.	
Cause 1	The printer is not turned on.
Solution	Turn the printer on.
Cause 2	The printer and cable are not connected properly.
Solution	Make sure that the printer is connected to the network by an appropriate cable, and then cycle the power of the printer.

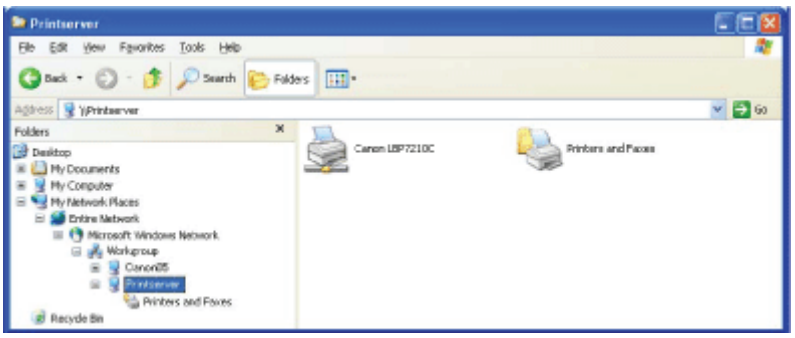
[H-05] The Printer to Be Used Cannot Be Searched for in NetSpot Device Installer

The printer to be used cannot be searched for in NetSpot Device Installer.	
Cause 1	The printer is not turned on.
Solution	Turn the printer on.
Cause 2	The printer and cable are not connected properly.
Solution	Make sure that the printer is connected to the network by an appropriate cable, and then cycle the power of the printer.
Cause 3	An operating system equipped with Windows Firewall is being used.
Solution	If Windows Firewall is enabled, you need to add "NetSpot Device Installer" to Windows Firewall. Perform either of the following procedures. • Adding "NetSpot Device Installer" to the [Exceptions] sheet in the [Windows Firewall] dialog box (See Readme of NetSpot Device Installer.) • Installing NetSpot Device Installer (You can add it to Windows Firewall during the installation.) To display Readme of NetSpot Device Installer, click [ ] in [NetSpot Device Installer for TCP/IP] in the [Additional Software Programs] screen in CD-ROM Setup.

[H-06] The Print Server for Connection Cannot Be Found

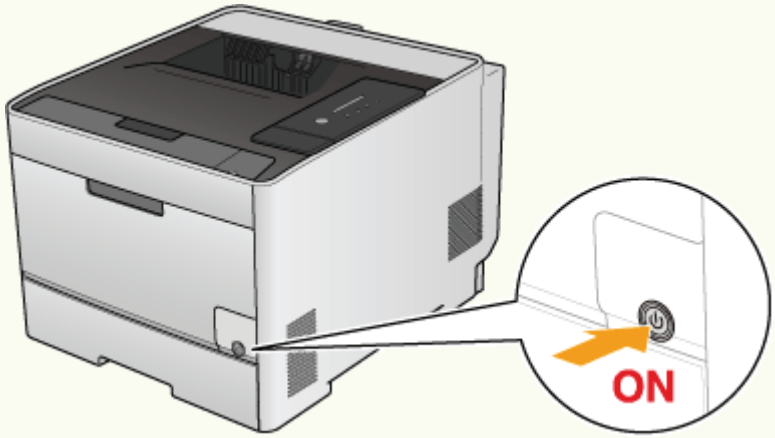
The print server for connection cannot be found.	
Cause 1	The interface cable is not connected properly.
Solution	Connect the print server to the client computer with the interface cable properly.
Cause 2	The print server has not been started up.
Solution	Start up the print server.
Cause 3	The printer is not specified as a shared printer.
Solution	Specify the printer as a shared printer. "Configuring the Print Server"
Cause 4	The user does not have permission to access the print server or printer.
Solution	Ask your network administrator to change the user permissions.
Cause 5	[Network discovery] is not set to [On]. (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Solution	Perform the following procedure. • Windows Vista 1. From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel]. 2. Click [View network status and tasks]. 3. Set [Network discovery] to [On]. • Windows Server 2008 1. From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel]. 2. Double-click [Network and Sharing Center]. 3. Set [Network discovery] to [On].

[H-07] The Shared Printer Cannot Be Accessed

The shared printer cannot be accessed.	
Cause 1	The user of the computer to be used has not been registered, or the password has not been specified yet.
Solution	Register the user of the computer to be used or specify the password on the print server. Contact your network administrator for more details.
Cause 2	The path to the network is not correct.
Solution 1	Check the following. 1. Display [Windows Explorer]. • Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008 From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Windows Explorer]. 2. Select the print server from [My Network Places] (from [Network] for Windows Vista and Server 2008), then confirm the icon for this printer.  • **If you cannot find the icon for this printer** Ask your network administrator about the problem. • **If you can find the icon for this printer** You can install the printer driver by performing either of the following procedures and following the instructions on the screen. • Double-clicking the icon for this printer • Dragging and dropping the icon for this printer into the [Printers and Faxes] folder or [Printers] folder
Solution 2	If you want to specify the network path directly, check if the network path is specified correctly as "\\the print server name (the computer name of the print server)\the printer name".

[H-08] Printing Does Not Work

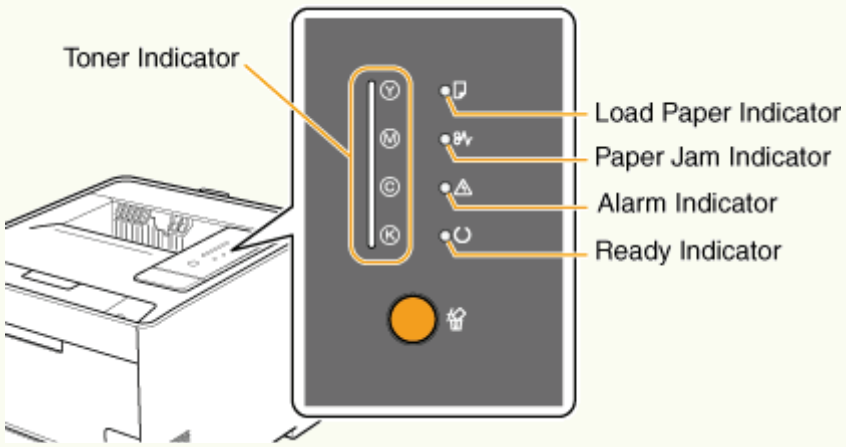
<Question 1> Is the printer turned on?



On	To <Question 2>
Off	Turn on the printer.
Cannot be turned on	There Is a Problem with the Printer Power Supply

<<Previous question

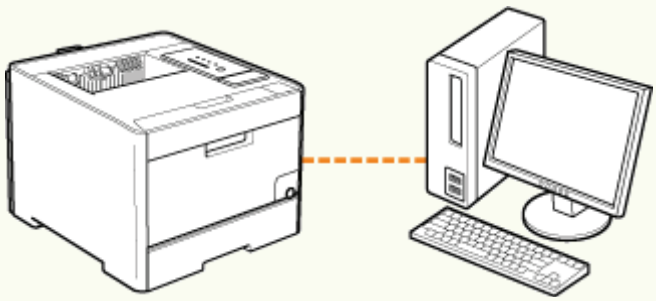
<Question 2> Check the indicators on the printer unit.



The ◯ (Ready) indicator is on.	To <Question 3>
The ◯ (Ready) indicator is blinking.	The printer is operating. Please wait a moment.
The Toner indicator is on or blinking.	Replacing Toner Cartridges
The (Load Paper) indicator is blinking.	"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)" "Loading Index Cards" "Loading Envelopes" "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"
The (Paper Jam) indicator is blinking.	Paper Jams
The ⚠ (Alarm) indicator is on.	The Alarm Indicator Is On
The ⚠ (Alarm) indicator is blinking.	The Alarm Indicator Is Blinking

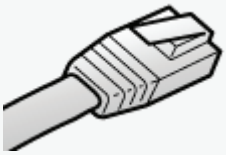
<<Previous question

<Question 3> How are the printer and computer connected?



With a USB cable	To <Question 4>

With a LAN cable



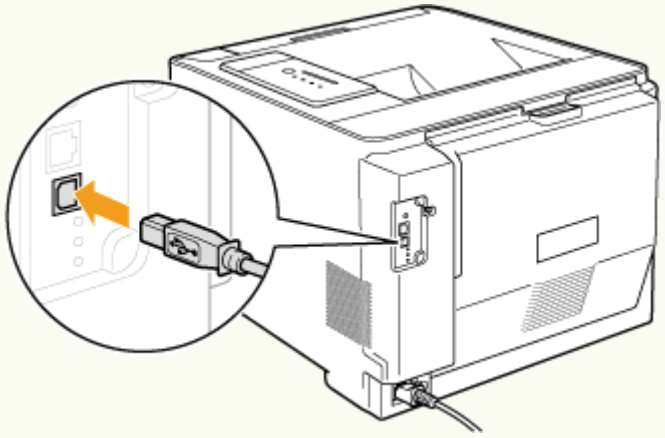
To <Question 11>

Via the print server (client)

To <Question 21>

<<Previous question

<Question 4> Is the USB cable connected properly?



The cable is connected properly.

Try the following points.

- If you are using a hub, connect the printer to the computer directly.
- If you are using a long USB cable, replace it with the short one.
- If you have another USB cable, use it.

Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 5>.

To <Question 5>

The cable is not connected properly.

Connect the cable properly.

<<Previous question

<Question 5> Can you print a test page?

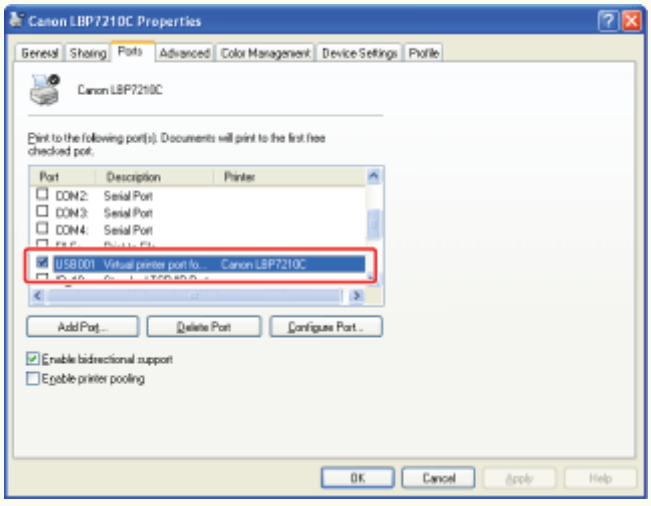
Printing a Test Page in Windows

Printable	Printing can be performed from the printer driver. Check the printing preferences in the application.
Not printable	To <Question 6>

<<Previous question

<Question 6> Is the port to be used selected correctly?

Checking the USB Port

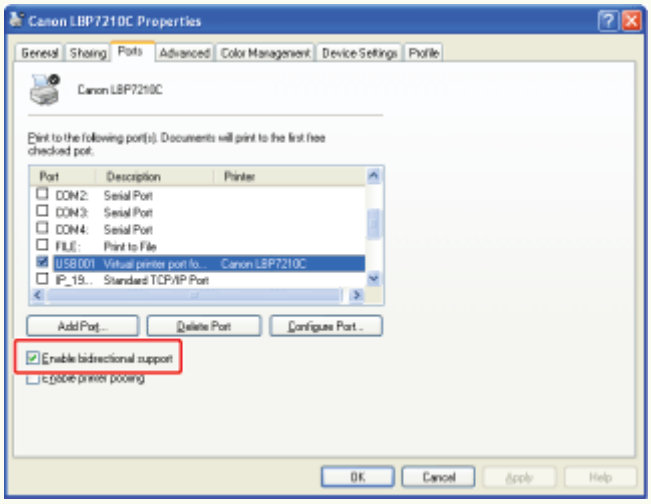


The port is selected correctly.	To <Question 7>
The port is not selected correctly.	Select the correct port.
The port to be used cannot be found.	Install the printer driver again. Installing from CD-ROM Setup Installing with Plug and Play

<<Previous question

<Question 7> Is bi-directional communication enabled?

Checking Bi-directional Communication



Enabled	To <Question 8>
Not enabled	Enable bi-directional communication and restart the computer and printer.

<<Previous question

<Question 8> Try the following points.

- Disable resident software including security software.
- If any other USB connection devices are connected to your computer, disconnect those unneeded.
- If any other drivers or software of USB connection devices are installed on your computer, uninstall those unneeded.
- Connect the USB cable to another USB port on your computer.
- Connect the printer to another computer with a USB cable.

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 9>. To <Question 9>

<<Previous question

<Question 9> Install the printer driver again.

- Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]
- Installing from CD-ROM Setup
- Installing with Plug and Play

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 10>. To <Question 10>

<<Previous question

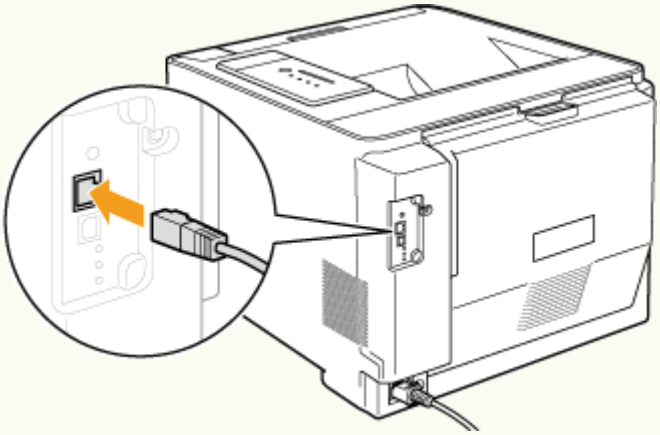
<Question 10> Uninstall the USB class driver, and then install the printer driver again.

- Uninstalling the USB Class Driver
- Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]
- Installing from CD-ROM Setup
- Installing with Plug and Play

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<<Previous question

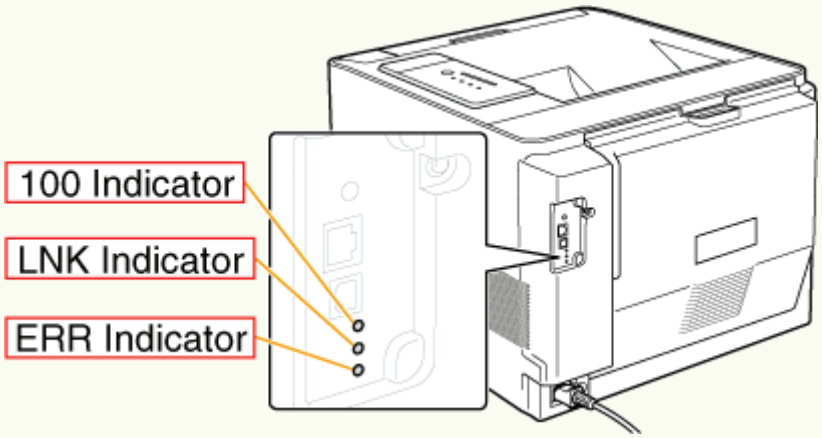
<Question 11> Is the LAN cable connected properly?



The cable is connected properly.	To <Question 12>
The cable is not connected properly.	Connect the cable properly.

<<Previous question

<Question 12> Check the indicators on the network board.



The LNK or 100 indicator is on.	To <Question 13>
All the indicators are off.	All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off
The ERR indicator is on.	The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On

The ERR indicator blinks at an interval of four times.	The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times
The ERR indicator is constantly blinking.	The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking

<<Previous question

<Question 13> Can you print a test page?

Printing a Test Page in Windows

Printable	Printing can be performed from the printer driver. Check the printing preferences in the application.
Not printable	To <Question 14>

<<Previous question

<Question 14> Is the IP address set properly?

Checking the IP Address

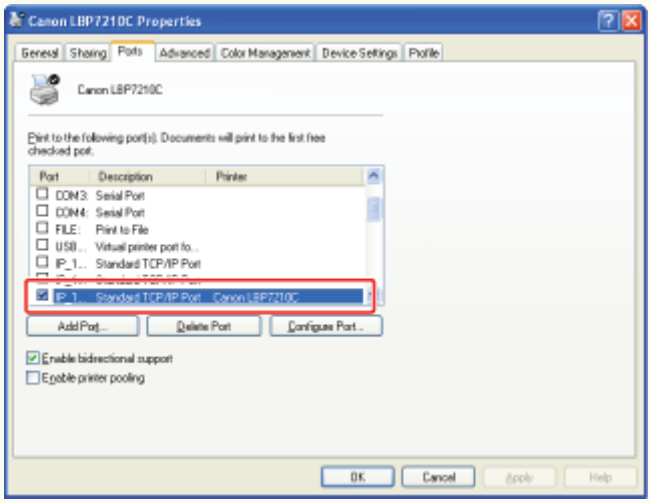
The IP address is set properly.

	To <Question 15>
The IP address is not set properly.	Set the IP address properly. Setting the IP Address

<<Previous question

<Question 15> Is the port to be used selected correctly?

Checking Standard TCP/IP Port



The port is selected correctly.	To <Question 16>
The port is not selected correctly.	Select the correct port.
The port to be used cannot be found.	Create the port. Specifying Standard TCP/IP Port
You changed the IP address.	Create the port. Specifying Standard TCP/IP Port
You are using a port created by "Manual	Install the printer driver again.

Setup" on Windows Vista or Server 2008.	Auto Setup (Recommended Method)

<<Previous question

<Question 16> Is there any problem with the computer that is trying to print a document?

Check the following points.

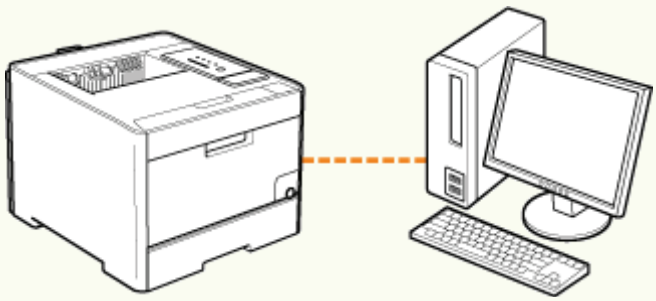
- The printer is specified as the default printer.
- The TCP/IP protocol is running.
- The users who can print are not restricted.
  Restricting the Users Who Can Print with IP Addresses

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 17>. To <Question 17>

<<Previous question

<Question 17> Is the unicast communication mode specified?

Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode



The normal mode (the broadcast communication mode) is specified.	To <Question 18>

The unicast communication mode is specified.	Reset it to the normal mode or contact your network administrator. Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode

<<Previous question

<Question 18> Try the following points.

- Connect the printer and computer with a cross cable.

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 19>. To <Question 19>

<<Previous question

<Question 19> Install the printer driver again.

- Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]
- Auto Setup (Recommended Method)
- Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 20>. To <Question 20>

<<Previous question

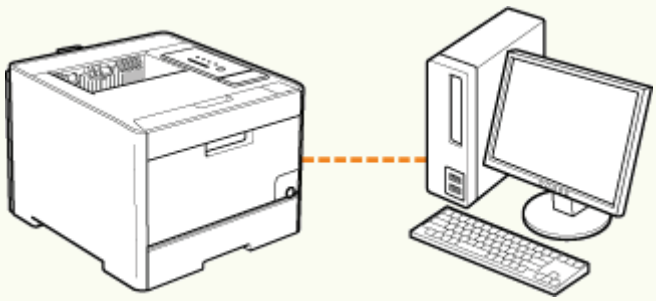
<Question 20> Can you print from another computer connected to the printer with a LAN cable?

Printable	Try the following point. • Disable resident software including security software.

Not printable	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

<<Previous question

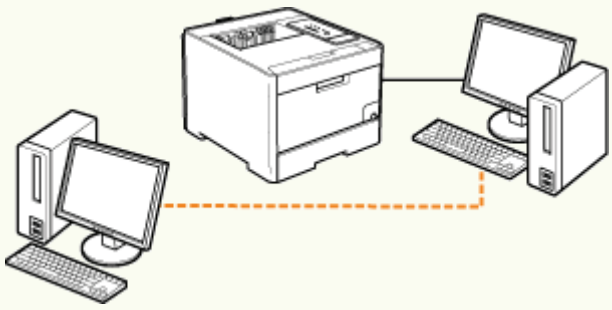
<Question 21> Is the printer connected to the print server properly?



The cable is connected properly.	To <Question 22>
The cable is not connected properly.	Connect the cable properly.

<<Previous question

<Question 22> Can your computer be connected to the print server or the shared printer?



Can be connected	To <Question 23>

Cannot be connected	The Print Server for Connection Cannot Be Found The Shared Printer Cannot Be Accessed

<<Previous question

<Question 23> Is there any problem with the print server?

Check the following points.

- The print server is connected to the network properly.
- The additional driver (alternate driver) is updated properly.
  Configuring the Print Server
- Printing can be performed from the print server.

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 24>. To <Question 24>

<<Previous question

<Question 24> Can you print a test page?

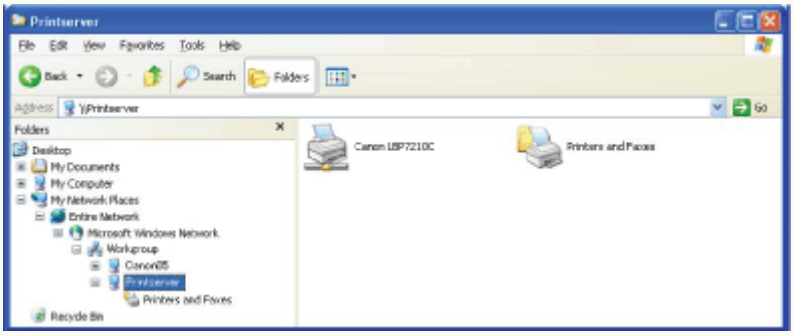
Printing a Test Page in Windows

Printable	Printing can be performed from the printer driver. Check the printing preferences in the application.
Not printable	To <Question 25>

<<Previous question

<Question 25> Is the printer on the print server displayed on the network?

- Checking the Printer on the Print Server



Displayed	To <Question 26>
Not displayed	Ask your network administrator about the problem.

<<Previous question

<Question 26> Install the printer driver again.

- Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]
- Installation on Clients

  Change the method for installing the printer driver. (Example: If you performed the local installation last time, change the installation method to the download installation.)

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 27>. To <Question 27>

<<Previous question

<Question 27> Can you print from another computer (client) connected to the printer via the print server?

Printable	Disable resident software including security software.
Not printable	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

[H-09] There Is a Problem with the Printer Power Supply

There is a problem with the printer power supply.	
Cause 1	The power plug is unplugged from the AC power outlet.
Solution	Plug the power plug into the AC power outlet.
Cause 2	The printer is plugged to an extension cord or multiple power strip.
Solution	Plug the power plug directly into an AC power outlet.
Cause 3	The breakers have tripped.
Solution	Reset the breakers on the switch board.
Cause 4	There is a break in the power cord.
Solution	If the printer can be turned on after replacing the power cord with one that is of the same type, then purchase a new power cord and replace the broken one.

[H-10] Checking the USB Port

Check the USB port using the following procedure.

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

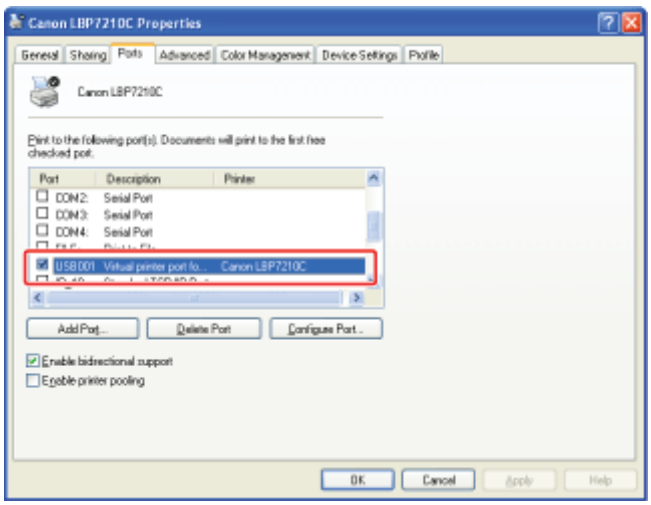
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**

---

3. **Display the [Ports] sheet.**

---

4. **Check whether the port to be used is selected properly.**



[H-11] Checking Bi-directional Communication

Check bi-directional communication using the following procedure.

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

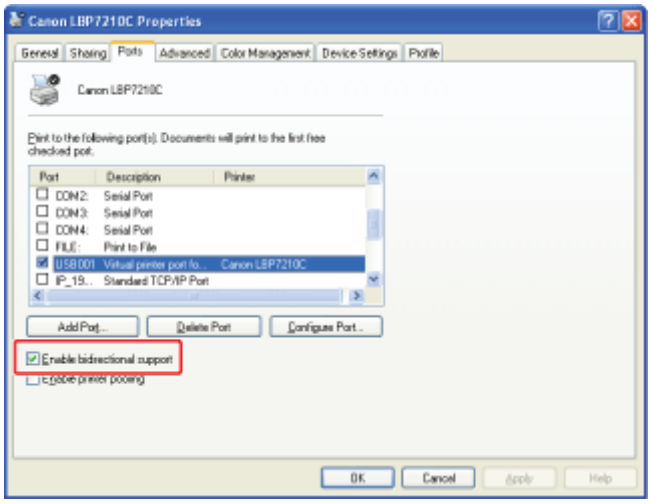
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**

---

3. **Display the [Ports] sheet.**

---

4. **Check if the [Enable bidirectional support] check box is selected.**



IMPORTANT

Do not clear the [Enable bidirectional support] check box
If the check box is cleared, you cannot perform printing.

NOTE

If you changed the setting
Restart the computer and printer.

[H-12] All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off

All the indicators on the network board are off.	
Cause 1	The LAN cable is not connected properly or broken.
Solution 1	Remove the LAN cable once, then connect it again.
Solution 2	Replace the LAN cable with another one, then connect it.
Cause 2	The cable is connected to the UP-LINK (cascade) port on the hub.
Solution 1	Connect the LAN cable to the port on the hub with an " X " mark.
Solution 2	If the hub has an UP-LINK (cascade) switch, switch to " X ".
Cause 3	A cross LAN cable is being used.
Solution 1	Replace the cable with a straight LAN cable.
Solution 2	Connect the cross LAN cable to the UP-LINK (cascade) port on the hub. If the hub has an UP-LINK (cascade) switch, switch to the " = " side. **NOTE** **About the cross-type LAN cable** Use this type of cable when connecting the printer directly to a computer.
Cause 4	Cannot communicate with the hub.
Solution	Make sure that the power of the hub is on.
Cause 5	The hardware of the network board is in an abnormal condition.
Solution	Report the problems to your local authorized Canon dealer.

[H-13] The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On

The ERR indicator on the network board is on.	
Cause 1	The LAN cable is not connected properly or broken.
Solution 1	Make sure the LAN cable is connected properly.
Solution 2	Replace the LAN cable with a proper one and check if there is no disconnection or damage.
Solution 3	If the ERR indicator still comes on even after applying the Solution 1 and 2, contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

[H-14] The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times

The ERR indicator on the network board blinks at an interval of four times.	
Cause	The network board was reset (the printer was turned on while pressing the reset button on the network board), resetting the network board to the default settings.
Solution	Turn the printer off, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it on.

[H-15] The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking

The ERR indicator on the network board is constantly blinking.	
Cause	The hardware of the network board is in an abnormal condition.
Solution	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer for servicing.

[H-16] Checking the IP Address

Use the following procedure to make sure that the IP address is set properly.

1. **Run Command Prompt.**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Command Prompt].

---

2. **Enter "ping <the IP address of the printer>", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   - Input Example: "ping 192.168.0.215"

---

3. **If the IP address is set properly, the following result is displayed. (This indicates that four packets were sent and four packets were successfully received.)**
   - Packets: Sent = **4**, Received = **4**, Lost = **0** (**0%** loss),

---

4. **Contact your network administrator if the following result is displayed.**
   - Packets: Sent = **4**, Received = **0**, Lost = **4** (**100%** loss),

---

5. **Enter "exit", and then press [ENTER] on the keyboard to exit Command Prompt.**

NOTE

When using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP
Consult your network administrator and perform either of the following settings.

- Set the DNS Dynamic Update function.
  "Configuring the Protocol Settings"
- Configure DHCP or other settings so that the same IP address is always assigned to the printer when the printer is started.
  "Configuring the Protocol Settings"

Checking and configuring the subnet
Enter the following command using Command Prompt.
"ipconfig"
Make sure that the computer and printer are on the same subnet.

- Example:

  When the following values are specified for your computer, the IP address of the printer needs to be "192.168.0.xxx" (xxx indicates an arbitrary number.)
  Subnet mask: "255.255.255.0"

IP address: "192.168.0.10"

[H-17] Checking Standard TCP/IP Port

Check Standard TCP/IP Port using the following procedure.

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

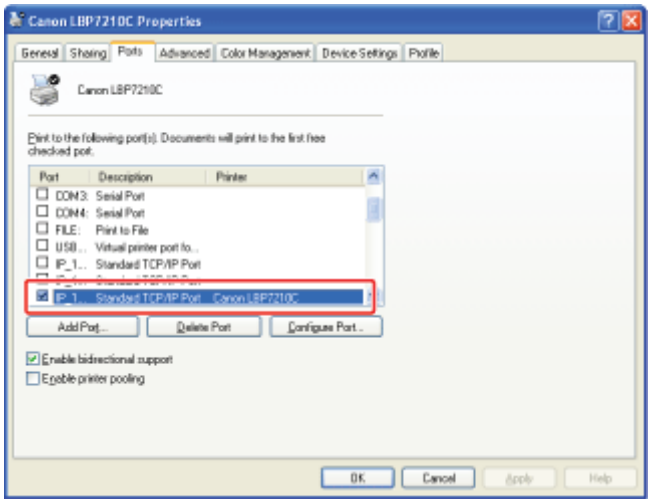
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**

---

3. **Display the [Ports] sheet.**

---

4. **Check whether the port to be used is selected properly.**



[H-18] Specifying Standard TCP/IP Port

IMPORTANT

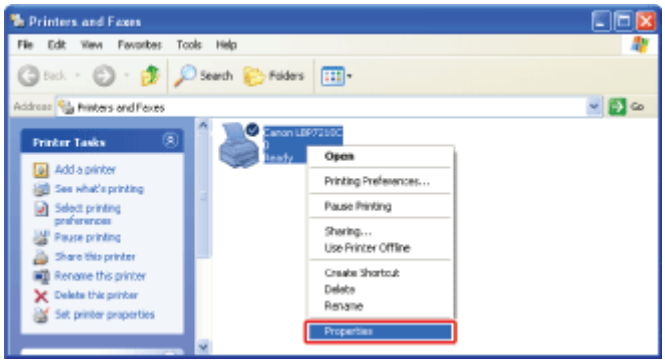
If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
You cannot use Standard TCP/IP Port to be created here.
Uninstall the printer driver, and then install the printer driver again from CD-ROM Setup.
"Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]"
"Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] [Printers and Faxes].

---

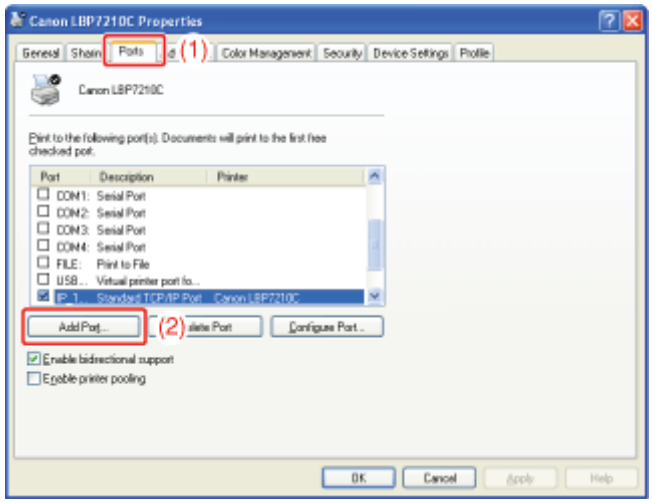
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**



---

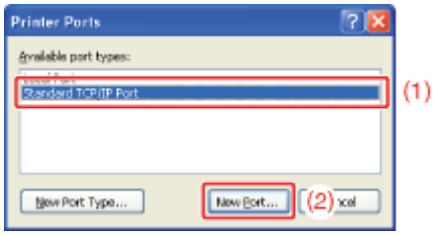
3. **Perform the following procedure.**

(1) Display the [Ports] sheet.
(2) Click [Add Port].

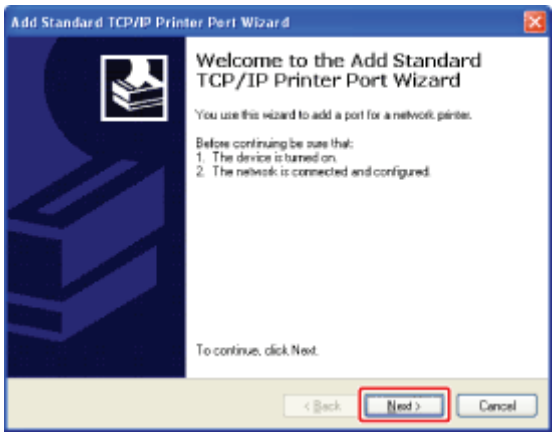


4. Select the port type.

(1) Select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
(2) Click [New Port].

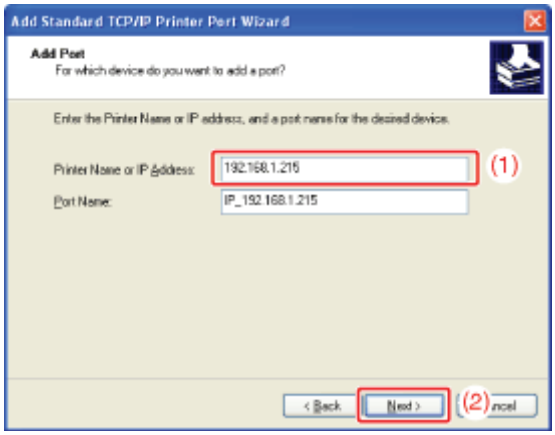


5. Click [Next].



6. Enter the IP address or name of the printer.

(1) Enter the IP address or name* of the printer in [Printer Name or IP Address].
* The DNS name to be registered on the DNS server (up to 78 characters)
(2) Click [Next].

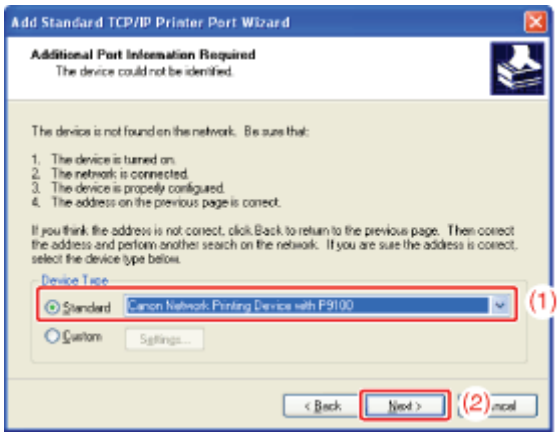


IMPORTANT

If the printer cannot be detected

The following screen appears. Perform either of the following operations.

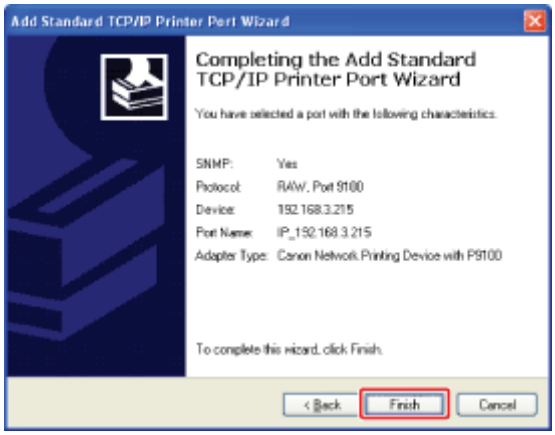
- **Follow the on-screen instructions and search again for the printer.**
- **Specify the setting for [Device Type].**
  (1) Select [Standard], and then select [Canon Network Printing Device with P9100].
  (2) Click [Next].



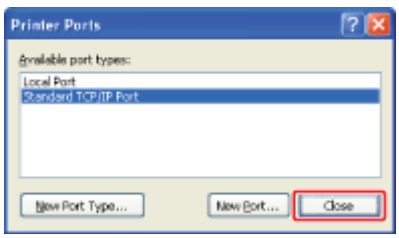
NOTE

If you are not sure about the value to enter
The value to be entered varies depending on how the IP address of the printer was set.
For more details, see "Settings for Adding a Port" or ask your network administrator.

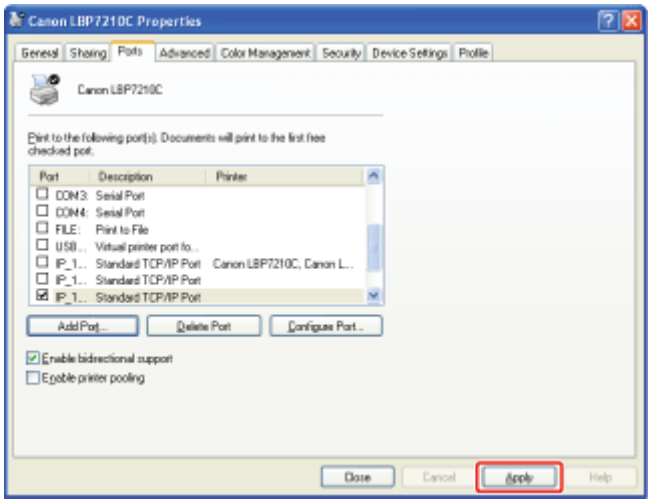
7. Click [Finish].



8. Click [Close].

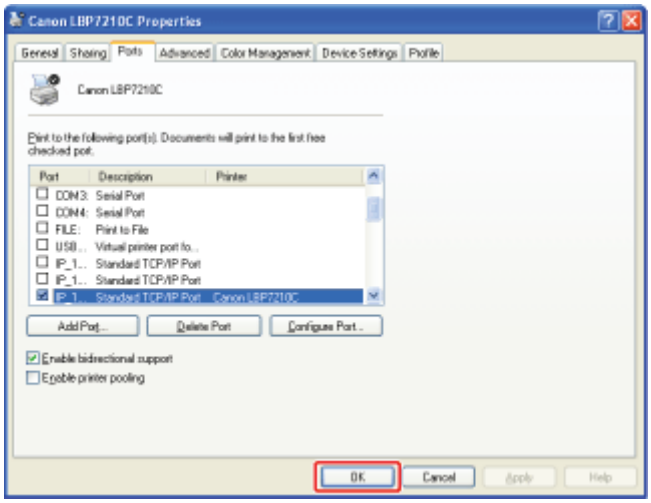


9. **Click [Apply].**



---

10. **Click [OK].**



NOTE

Deleting an unnecessary port

Select the port you want to delete on the [Ports] sheet, and then click [Delete Port].

[H-19] Checking the Printer on the Print Server

Check the printer using the following procedure.

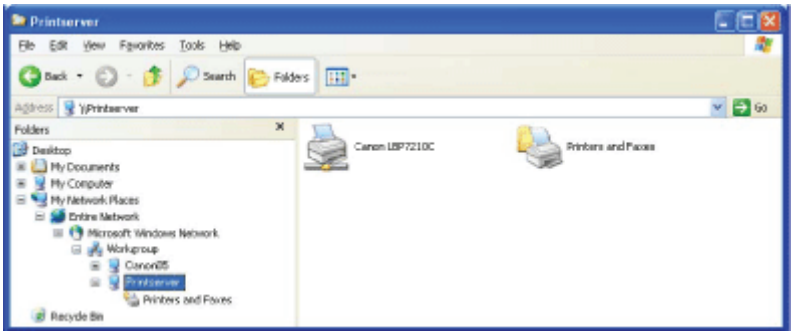
1. **Display [Windows Explorer].**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Windows Explorer].

---

2. **Select the print server from [My Network Places] (from [Network] for Windows Vista and Server 2008).**

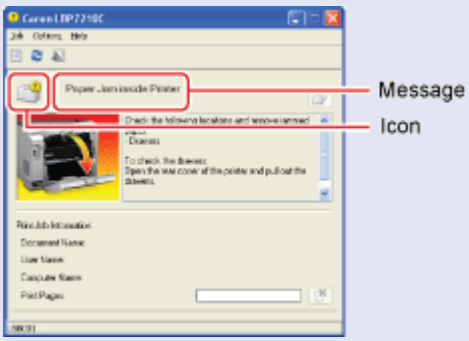
---

3. **Check if the icon for this printer is displayed.**



[H-20] A Message Appears in the Printer Status Window

This section describes solutions for when a message appears in the Printer Status Window.



The message type varies depending on the icon.

	It is a pause message (the state where the printer pauses for checking).
	It is an error message (a printer error for which printer problems need to be corrected).
	It is a warning message (an error which disables communication with the printer).
	It is an abnormality message (a service call).

- **Abnormality message**
  - Service Error
  - Scanner Error
  - Fixing Unit Error
- **Warning message**
  - Incompatible Printer
  - Cannot Communicate with Server
  - Communication Error
  - Network Board Error
  - Cannot Communicate with Printer
  - Incorrect Port
- **Error message**
  - Out-of-Register Colors Correction Error
  - Cannot Print
  - Could Not Print
  - Check the Printed Output
- **Error message**(continued)
  - Paper Jam inside Printer
  - Calibration Error
  - Insufficient Disk Space
  - No Toner Cartridge
  - Toner Cartridges Not Set in Correct Positions
  - Packing Materials on Toner Cartridges
  - Toner Cartridge Replacement Required
  - Check the Toner Cartridges
  - Output Tray Is Full
  - Updating Firmware
  - Printer Not Ready
  - Insufficient Memory
  - Out of Paper
  - Specified Paper Different from Set Paper
- **Pause message**

- Cover Open
- Check the Paper

Service Error	
Cause	The printer is in an abnormal condition.
Solution	Turn the printer off, wait for a while, and then turn it on again. If the service error appears even after cycling the power of the printer, turn the printer off, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer. When contacting your Canon dealer, please report the displayed error code and problems.

Scanner Error	
Cause	The scanner is in an abnormal condition.
Solution	Turn the printer off, wait for a while, and then turn it on again. If the scanner error appears even after cycling the power of the printer, turn the printer off, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Fixing Unit Error	
Cause	The fixing unit is in an abnormal condition.
Solution	Turn the printer off, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

Incompatible Printer	
Cause	The connected printer cannot be used.
Solution	Connect to the supported printer.

Cannot Communicate with Server	
Cause	The client computer cannot communicate with the print server.
Solution	Check the status of the print server and your computer.

Communication Error	
Cause	The USB cable is not connected, or the printer is not turned on.
Solution 1	Connect the USB cable.
Solution 2	Turn the printer on.

Network Board Error	
Cause	The LAN cable is not connected, or the printer is not turned on.
Solution 1	Connect the LAN cable.
Solution 2	Turn the printer on.

Cannot Communicate with Printer	
Cause 1	Because the bi-directional communication function is not enabled, the computer cannot

	communicate with the printer.
Solution	Enable bi-directional communication and restart the computer and printer. Checking Bi-directional Communication
Cause 2	The computer cannot communicate with the printer redirected in the terminal connection environment.
Solution	The Firewall settings etc. may be the cause. Check the communication settings for the server, clients, etc.

Incorrect Port

Cause	The printer is connected to a port which the printer does not support.
Solution	Check the port. Checking the USB Port Checking Standard TCP/IP Port

Out-of-Register Colors Correction Error

Cause	The printer could not properly adjust the print start position of each toner cartridge.
Solution 1	Cancel the job, and then correct "Out-of-Register Colors" again. Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors"
Solution 2	Clicking [ ] (Resolve Error) continues printing (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled). However, a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may occur.

Cannot Print

Cause	Printing cannot be performed due to security restrictions.
Solution	Contact your administrator.

Could Not Print

Cause	Data transfer to the printer timed out, or a transfer error has occurred.
Solution 1	Clicking [ ] (Resolve Error) continues printing (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled). However, the error message may appear again.
Solution 2	Click [Cancel Job], and then print again.

Check the Printed Output

Cause	You may not be able to obtain appropriate printout results.
Solution 1	Clicking [ ] (Resolve Error) continues printing (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled). However, the error message may appear again.
Solution 2	Click [Cancel Job], and then print again.

Cover Open

Cause	A cover is open.

Solution	Close the displayed cover.

Paper Jam inside Printer

Cause 1	A paper jam has occurred.
Solution	Remove the jammed paper according to the displayed message. Clearing Paper Jams (Drawer Area) Clearing Paper Jams (Multi-purpose Tray Area) Clearing Paper Jams (Output Area)
Cause 2	Because the paper drawer was not inserted, you could not print from the multi-purpose tray.
Solution	Insert the paper drawer, and then push it into the printer firmly. To resume printing, open and close the rear cover once.

Calibration Error

Cause	Calibration could not be finished properly.
Solution 1	Cancel the job, and then perform calibration again. Calibrating the Printer
Solution 2	Clicking [ ] (Resolve Error) continues printing (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled). However, data may not be printed in correct color.

Insufficient Disk Space

Cause	The disk space on the computer or server is insufficient.
Solution	Delete unnecessary files. Click [ ] (Resolve Error) to resume printing after deleting the unnecessary files (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled).

No Toner Cartridge

Cause	The toner cartridge of the indicated color is not installed.
Solution	Install the toner cartridge. Replacing Toner Cartridges

Toner Cartridges Not Set in Correct Positions

Cause	The toner cartridges are not installed in the correct positions.
Solution	Install the toner cartridges in the correct positions. Replacing Toner Cartridges

Packing Materials on Toner Cartridges

Cause	The sealing tape is attached to the toner cartridge of the indicated color.
Solution	Remove the sealing tape. Replacing Toner Cartridges

Toner Cartridge Replacement Required	
Cause	The toner cartridge of the indicated color has reached the end of its life.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. Replacing Toner Cartridges

Check the Toner Cartridges	
Cause 1	Any of the toner cartridges are not installed properly.
Solution 1	Install the toner cartridge again. Replacing Toner Cartridges
Solution 2	Cycle the power of the printer. Turning the Printer On/Off
Cause 2	Any of the toner cartridges are damaged.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. Replacing Toner Cartridges
Cause 3	Toner cartridges with print quality that cannot be guaranteed due to their decreasing lifetime etc., or used toner cartridges that have reached their lifetime, may have been inserted.
Solution	Continuing to use these cartridges may cause a malfunction, so replacing these cartridges with new cartridges is recommended. Replacing Toner Cartridges

Output Tray Is Full	
Cause	The output tray is filled with printed paper.
Solution	Remove the paper from the output tray.

Updating Firmware	
Cause	The firmware is being updated.
Solution	Please wait a moment.

Printer Not Ready	
Cause	The packing material (sheet) is left in the output area.
Solution	Turn off the printer once, remove the sheet, and then turn on the printer again. Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing the Packing Materials

Insufficient Memory	
Cause	The memory on the computer or server is insufficient.
Solution	Exit unnecessary applications.

Out of Paper	

Cause	The paper to be printed is not loaded in a paper source.
Solution 1	Load the indicated paper in the paper source.
Solution 2	If the indicated paper is loaded in the paper source, register the paper size again. Registering the Paper Size for the Paper Drawer
Solution 3	Clicking [ ] (Resolve Error) allows the printer to print on the currently loaded paper (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled). If no paper is loaded in the paper drawer, however, paper may be fed from the multi-purpose tray.

Specified Paper Different from Set Paper

Cause	Paper of the size different from that of the job was printed.
Solution 1	Load the indicated paper in the paper source.
Solution 2	If the indicated paper is loaded in the paper source, register the paper size again. Registering the Paper Size for the Paper Drawer
Solution 3	Clicking [ ] (Resolve Error) allows the printer to print on the currently loaded paper (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled).

Check the Paper

Cause	Printing is stopped to check if the paper loaded in the multi-purpose tray is appropriate.
Solution 1	If appropriate paper is loaded, click [ ] (Resolve Error) (only when [ ] (Resolve Error) is enabled).
Solution 2	Load appropriate paper.

[H-21] Registering the Paper Size for the Paper Drawer

This printer's paper drawer cannot automatically detect the paper size. Therefore, you need to register the size of the loaded paper.
Register the paper size using the following procedure.

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

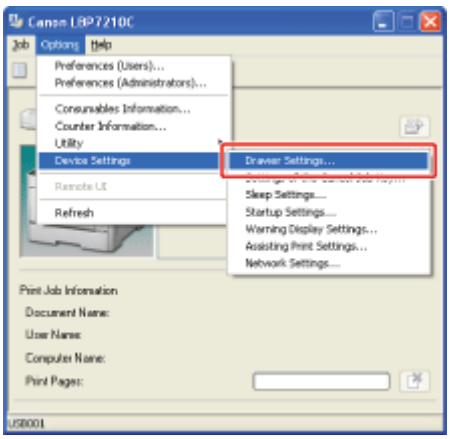
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Drawer Settings].**



NOTE

When registering a paper size
As you cannot register a paper size while printing is in progress, make sure that the printer is idle before registering the paper size.
However, you can register a paper size while one of the following messages is displayed.

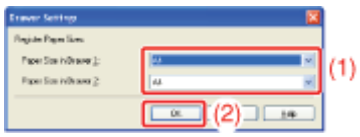
- <Specified Paper Different from Set Paper>
- <Out of Paper>

---

3. **Register the paper size.**

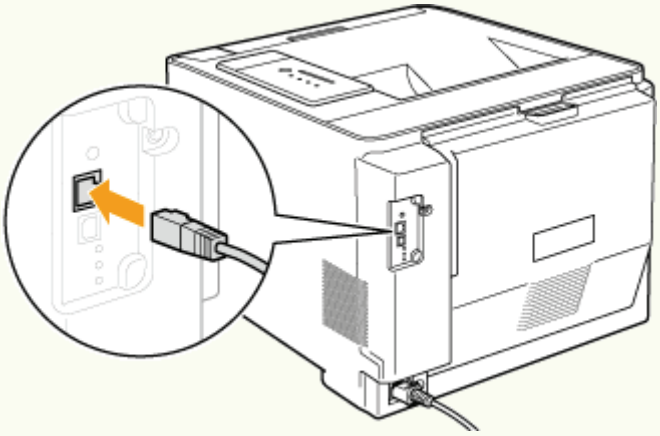
(1) Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper drawer.
- Drawer 1: The paper drawer supplied with the printer unit
- Drawer 2: The paper drawer of the optional paper feeder

(2) Click [OK].



[H-22] The Printer Cannot Be Connected to the Network

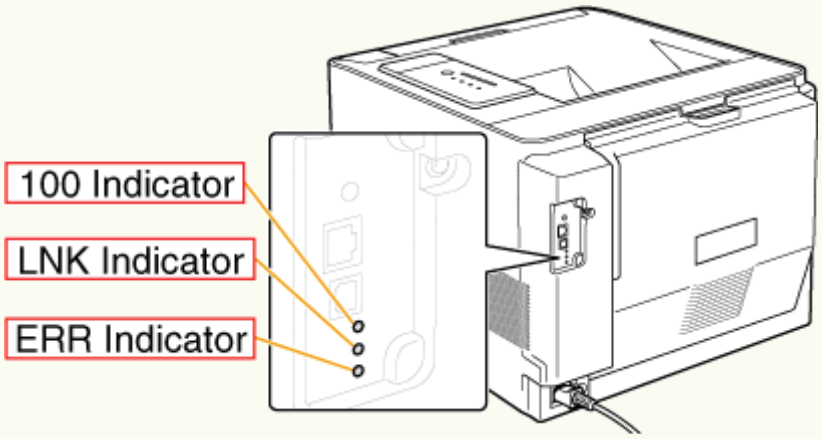
<Question 1> Is the LAN cable connected properly?



The cable is connected properly.	To <Question 2>
The cable is not connected properly.	Connect the cable properly.

<<Previous question

<Question 2> Check the indicators on the network board.



The LNK or 100 indicator is on.	To <Question 3>
All the indicators are	

off.	All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off
The ERR indicator is on.	The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On
The ERR indicator blinks at an interval of four times.	The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times
The ERR indicator is constantly blinking.	The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking

<<Previous question

<Question 3> Can you print a test page?

Printing a Test Page in Windows

Printable	Printing can be performed from the printer driver. Check the printing preferences in the application.
Not printable	To <Question 4>

<<Previous question

<Question 4> Is the IP address set properly?

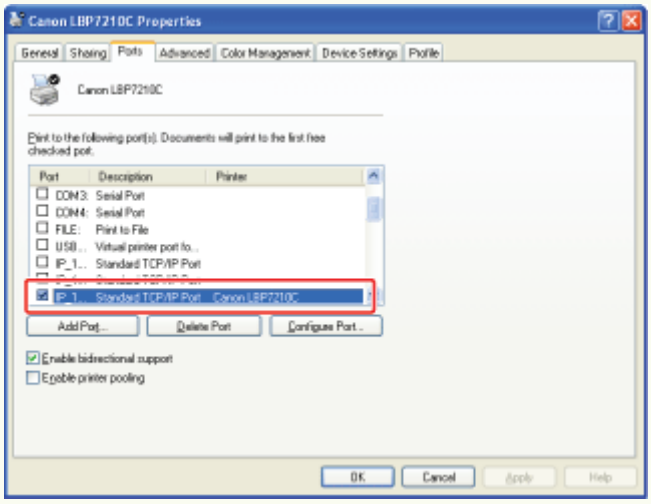
Checking the IP Address

The IP address is set properly.	To <Question 5>
The IP address is not set properly.	Set the IP address properly. Setting the IP Address

<<Previous question

<Question 5> Is the port to be used selected correctly?

Checking Standard TCP/IP Port



The port is selected correctly.	To <Question 6>
The port is not selected correctly.	Select the correct port.
The port to be used cannot be found.	Create the port. Specifying Standard TCP/IP Port
You changed the IP address.	Create the port. Specifying Standard TCP/IP Port

You are using a port created by "Manual Setup" on Windows Vista or Server 2008.	Install the printer driver again. Auto Setup (Recommended Method)

<<Previous question

<Question 6> Is there any problem with the computer that is trying to print a document?

Check the following points.

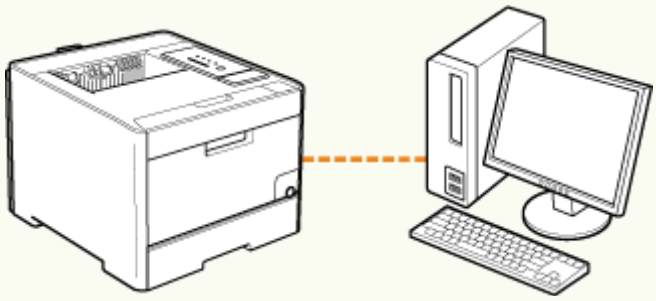
- The printer is specified as the default printer.
- The TCP/IP protocol is running.
- The users who can print are not restricted.
  Restricting the Users Who Can Print with IP Addresses

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 7>. To <Question 7>

<<Previous question

<Question 7> Is the unicast communication mode specified?

Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode



The normal mode (the broadcast	

communication mode) is specified.	To <Question 8>
The unicast communication mode is specified.	Reset it to the normal mode or contact your network administrator. Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode

<<Previous question

<Question 8> Try the following points.

- Connect the printer and computer with a cross cable.

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 9>. To <Question 9>

<<Previous question

<Question 9> Install the printer driver again.

- Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]
- Auto Setup (Recommended Method)
- Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)

Not printable	Nevertheless, if printing does not work, proceed to <Question 10>. To <Question 10>

<<Previous question

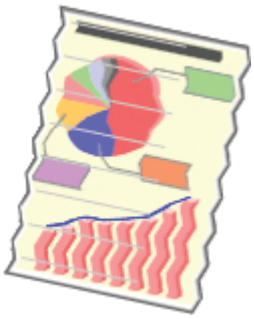
<Question 10> Can you print from another computer connected to the printer with a LAN cable?

Printable	Try the following point. • Disable resident software including security software.
Not printable	Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

[H-23] Paper Curls or Creases

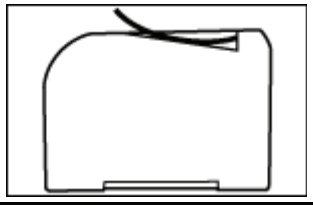
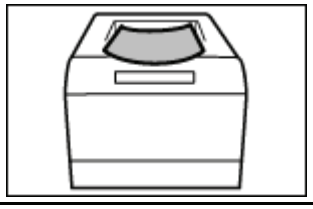
If printed paper curls or creases, implement the following solutions.

Paper Curls



Paper Creases

Paper Curls

Cause 1	Paper is damp due to being stored under unsuitable conditions.
Solution	Replace the paper with new paper in an unopened package. Storing Paper or Printouts
Cause 2	Appropriate paper is not being used.
Solution	Replace the paper with that which can be used with this printer. Usable Paper and Unusable Paper
Cause 3	Depending on the paper type or the operating environment, the paper may curl as either of the following. Side View  Front View 
Solution 1	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet. 2. Set [Paper Type] as follows.

Current Setting	Changed Setting
[Plain Paper L]	[Plain Paper L2]
[Plain Paper]	[Plain Paper L]

[Heavy Paper 1]	[Plain Paper]
[Heavy Paper 2]	[Heavy Paper 1]
[Heavy Paper 3]	[Heavy Paper 2]
[Envelope H]	[Envelope]
[Coated Paper 2]	[Coated Paper 1]
[Coated Paper 3]	[Coated Paper 2]
[Coated Paper 4]	[Coated Paper 3]

†If you perform the above procedure, the toner does not fix onto paper well, and the print may come out faint.

Solution 2

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Click [Advanced Settings].
3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 5].

Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 5] only if the described problems occur.

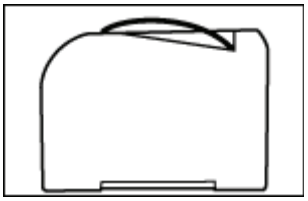
IMPORTANT

When [Special Settings 5] is selected
The printing speed drops.

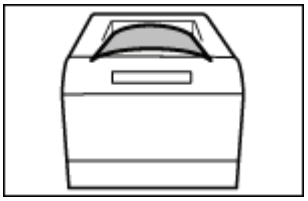
Cause 4

Depending on the paper type or the operating environment, the paper may curl as either of the following.

Side View



Front View



Solution 1

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
2. Set [Paper Type] as follows.

Current Setting	Changed Setting
[Plain Paper L2]	[Plain Paper L]
[Plain Paper L]	[Plain Paper]
[Plain Paper]	[Heavy Paper 1]
[Heavy Paper 1]	[Heavy Paper 2]
[Heavy Paper 2]	[Heavy Paper 3]
[Envelope]	[Envelope H]
[Coated Paper 1]	[Coated Paper 2]

[Coated Paper 2]	[Coated Paper 3]
[Coated Paper 3]	[Coated Paper 4]

†If you perform the above procedure, residual images may appear on non-printed areas.

Solution 2

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Click [Advanced Settings].
3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 6].

Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 6] only if the described problems occur.

Paper Creases

Cause 1

Paper is not loaded properly in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray.

Solution

Load the paper properly in the paper drawer or multi-purpose tray.

- Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)
- Loading Index Cards
- Loading Envelopes
- Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)

Cause 2

Paper is damp due to being stored under unsuitable conditions.

Solution

Replace the paper with new paper in an unopened package.

- Storing Paper or Printouts

Cause 3

Appropriate paper is not being used.

Solution

Replace the paper with that which can be used with this printer.

- Usable Paper and Unusable Paper

Cause 4

There is a foreign object inside the printer.

Solution

Remove the foreign object inside the printer.

Cause 5

Depending on the paper type or the operating environment (high humidity or high temperature environment), the paper may crease.

Solution 1

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
2. Set [Paper Type] as follows.

Current Setting	Changed Setting
[Plain Paper L]	[Plain Paper L2]
[Plain Paper]	[Plain Paper L]
[Heavy Paper 1]	[Plain Paper]
[Heavy Paper 2]	[Heavy Paper 1]
[Heavy Paper 3]	[Heavy Paper 2]
[Envelope H]	[Envelope]
[Coated Paper 2]	[Coated Paper 1]

[Coated Paper 3]	[Coated Paper 2]
[Coated Paper 4]	[Coated Paper 3]

†If you perform the above procedure, the toner does not fix onto paper well, and the print may come out faint.

Solution 2

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

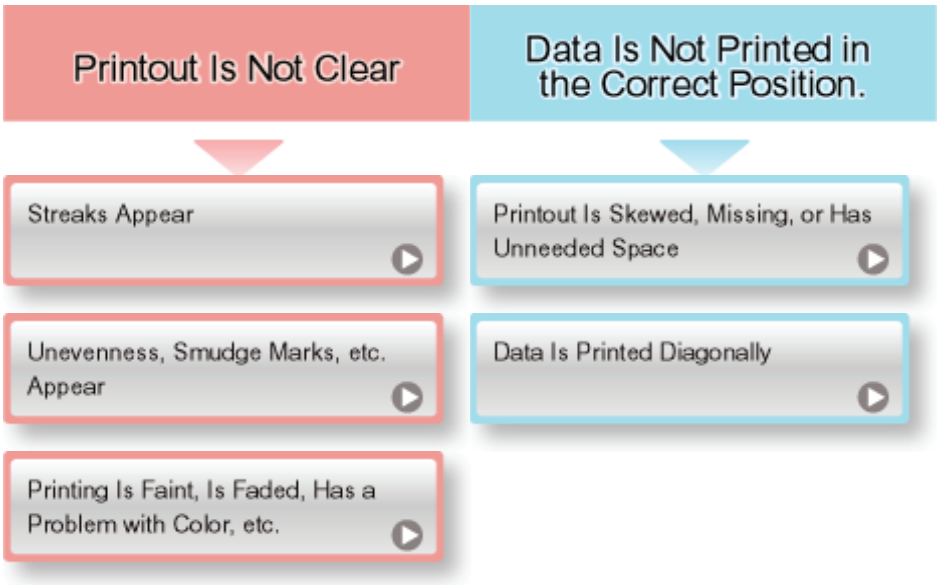
1. Display the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Click [Advanced Settings].
3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 5].

Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 5] only if the described problems occur.

IMPORTANT

When [Special Settings 5] is selected
The printing speed drops.

[H-24] Poor Print Quality



NOTE

About the color adjustment or image quality correction which this printer can perform
See "Adjusting the Color or Image Quality".

Contacting your local authorized Canon dealer
If a problem that is not indicated in the e-Manual occurs, if none of the suggested measures solve the problem, or if you cannot determine the problem, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

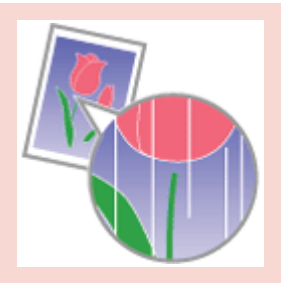
When using the printer in a certain environment
If you use the printer in a certain environment or print certain paper, the data may not be printed properly or result in deterioration in print quality.
To solve such problems, a service engineer may specify the print settings according to the operating environment or the paper.
The settings specified by the service engineer are registered in [Service Settings] in [Special Print Mode] in the printer driver.
If you want to use [Service Settings], print with [Service Settings] specified, following the instructions of the service engineer.

[H-25] Streaks (lines) Appear

If streaks (lines) appear on printout results, perform the following solutions.

Thin Lateral Streaks (lines) Appear

Thin Longitudinal Streaks (lines) Appear



White Streaks (lines) Appear

Thin Lateral Streaks (lines) Appear	
Cause	If the printer has not printed for an extended period of time, thin lateral streaks may appear in halftone areas of the printed paper.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 14]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 14] only if the described problems occur.

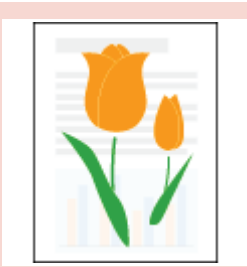
Thin Longitudinal Streaks (lines) Appear	
Cause	When printing images, thin longitudinal streaks may appear on the printed images.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 9]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 9] only if the described problems occur.

White Streaks (lines) Appear	
Cause	The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.

[H-26] Unevenness, Smudge Marks, etc. Appear

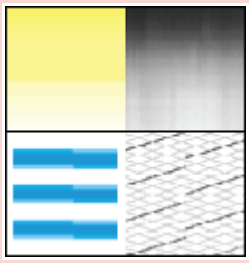
If unevenness, smudge marks, etc. appear on printout results, perform the following solutions.

Printed Pages Have White Specks



Residual Images Appear on Non-printed Areas

Printing Is Uneven



Colors Are Uneven or Not Printed Smoothly

The Toner Does Not Fix onto the Paper Well

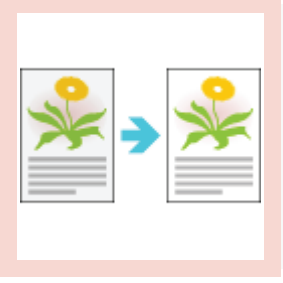
The Printed Paper Has Smudge Marks

The Back of the Printed Paper Has Smudge Marks

Poor Print Quality Including Spotty or Scaly Print Occurs

Smudge Marks of Spattering Toner Appear around the Text or Patterns

Toner Was Placed on Non-printed Areas



The Overall Print Result Is Dark

Printed Pages Have White Specks	
Cause 1	Appropriate paper is not being used.

Solution	Replace with paper that meets printing specifications. "Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"
Cause 2	The paper is moist.
Solution	Replace the paper with new paper in an unopened package. "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)" "Loading Index Cards" "Loading Envelopes" "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"
Cause 3	The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. "Replacing Toner Cartridges"

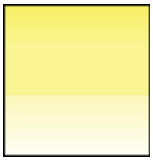
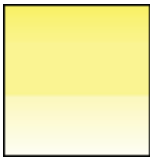
Residual Images Appear on Non-printed Areas	
Cause 1	Appropriate paper is not being used.
Solution	Replace with paper that meets printing specifications. "Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"
Cause 2	Depending on the printing pattern or paper type, images on the second previous page may be printed faintly on continuous printing.
Solution 1	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 12]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 12] only if the described problems occur.
Solution 2	If Solution 1 does not solve the problem, perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 13]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 13] only if the described problems occur.
Cause 3	Residual images appear depending on the printer status.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 4]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 4] only if the described problems occur. **IMPORTANT** **Precautions when specifying [Special Settings 4]** Toner fixation may deteriorate. In this case, do not specify [Special Settings 4].

Cause 4	The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. "Replacing Toner Cartridges"
Cause 5	Depending on the paper type or the operating environment (high humidity or high temperature environment), residual images may appear on non-printed areas.
Solution 1	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet. 2. Set [Paper Type] as follows. **Current Setting** → **Changed Setting** [Plain Paper L] → [Plain Paper L2] [Plain Paper] → [Plain Paper L] [Heavy Paper 1] → [Plain Paper] [Heavy Paper 2] → [Heavy Paper 1] [Heavy Paper 3] → [Heavy Paper 2] [Envelope H] → [Envelope] [Coated Paper 2] → [Coated Paper 1] [Coated Paper 3] → [Coated Paper 2] [Coated Paper 4] → [Coated Paper 3] †If you perform the above procedure, the toner does not fix onto paper well, and the print may come out faint.
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 5]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 5] only if the described problems occur. **IMPORTANT** **When [Special Settings 5] is selected** The printing speed drops.

Printing Is Uneven	
Cause 1	Paper is too moist or too dry.
Solution	Replace the paper with new paper in an unopened package. "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)" "Loading Index Cards" "Loading Envelopes"

	"Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"
Cause 2	The toner cartridge has run out of toner, has deteriorated, or is damaged.
Solution	Check the status of the toner cartridges. Replace the toner cartridge that is almost empty with a new one. "Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window" "Replacing Toner Cartridges"
Cause 3	The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. "Replacing Toner Cartridges"

Colors Are Uneven or Not Printed Smoothly

Cause	Large characters, wide lines, or diagrams with high color density were printed.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Select the appropriate mode for [Special Smoothing Mode]. Normally, select [Mode 1] for [Special Smoothing Mode]. If the following conditions occur when [Mode 1] is selected, select any setting between [Mode 2] and [Mode 6]. • **If gradations cannot be printed smoothly**  Select **[Mode 2]**. • **If the following problems occur at the same time** Gradations cannot be printed smoothly.  The areas around large characters or thick lines (especially those with low color density) are not printed smoothly. Select **[Mode 3]**. • **If the areas around large characters or thick lines (especially those with low color density) are not printed smoothly** Select **[Mode 4]**. • **If strip-shaped unevenness appears on gradations**

Select **[Mode 5]**.

- **If shaded patterns deviate (incorrect shaded patterns occur)**

Select **[Mode 6]**.

IMPORTANT

Precautions when specifying [Special Smoothing Mode]

- When [Mode 2] or [Mode 3] is selected, areas around diagrams may not be printed smoothly.
- When [Mode 3] or [Mode 4] is selected, color unevenness may appear on large characters and thick lines.
- When [Mode 5] is selected, characters, lines, and areas around diagrams may not be printed smoothly.
- When [Mode 6] is selected, color unevenness may appear on characters, lines, diagrams, and images (photographs etc.).

The Toner Does Not Fix onto the Paper Well	
Cause 1	Appropriate paper is not being used.
Solution	Replace with paper that meets printing specifications. "Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"
Cause 2	Depending on the paper type or the operating environment (low humidity or low temperature environment), the toner may not fix onto paper well, and the printing may appear faded.
Solution 1	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet. 2. Set [Paper Type] to [Heavy Paper 1], [Heavy Paper 2], or [Heavy Paper 3].
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 3]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 3] only if the described problems occur.

IMPORTANT

When using thin paper
Do not specify [Special Settings 3]. This may result in paper wound around the fixing unit or other problems.

Solution 3

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
2. Set [Paper Type] as follows.

Current Setting	Changed Setting
[Plain Paper L2]	[Plain Paper L]
[Plain Paper L]	[Plain Paper]
[Plain Paper]	[Heavy Paper 1]
[Heavy Paper 1]	[Heavy Paper 2]
[Heavy Paper 2]	[Heavy Paper 3]
[Envelope]	[Envelope H]
[Coated Paper 1]	[Coated Paper 2]
[Coated Paper 2]	[Coated Paper 3]
[Coated Paper 3]	[Coated Paper 4]

†If you perform the above procedure, residual images may appear on non-printed areas.

Solution 4

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Click [Advanced Settings].
3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 6].

Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 6] only if the described problems occur.

Cause 3

A problem has occurred inside the printer.

Solution

When the ⚠ (Alarm) indicator is on, perform the solution using the procedure in "The Alarm Indicator Is On".

The Printed Paper Has Smudge Marks

Cause

The fixing roller inside the printer is dirty.

Solution

Clean the fixing roller.
"Cleaning the Inside of the Printer"

IMPORTANT

Cleaning the fixing roller

- The cleaning process takes approximately 80 seconds to complete.
- The cleaning process cannot be canceled.

The Back of the Printed Paper Has Smudge Marks	
Cause	The size of the print data was larger than that of the loaded paper.
Solution	Check if the size of the print data matches that of the loaded paper.

Poor Print Quality Including Spotty or Scaly Print Occurs	
Cause	Images of blue color system were printed.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 11]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 11] only if the described problems occur.

Smudge Marks of Spattering Toner Appear around the Text or Patterns	
Cause 1	Appropriate paper is not being used.
Solution	Replace with paper that meets printing specifications. "Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"
Cause 2	Depending on the paper type or the operating environment, smudge marks of spattering toner may appear.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 7]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 7] only if the described problems occur.

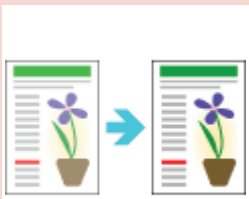
Toner Was Placed on Non-printed Areas	
Cause	When printing on glossy paper, toner may be placed on the non-printed areas.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 8]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 8] only if the described problems occur.

The Overall Print Result Is Dark	
Cause 1	The setting for [Toner Density] is not appropriate.

Solution	Adjust [Toner Density] in the printer driver to a lighter setting. "Adjusting the Toner Density"
Cause 2	The printer is exposed to direct sunlight or strong light.
Solution	Move the printer to a place where it will not be exposed to direct sunlight or strong light. If the printer is exposed to a strong light source, move the printer away from the light source.

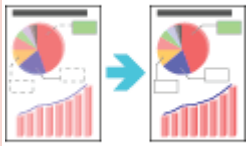
[H-27] Printing Is Faint, Is Faded, Has a Problem with Color, etc.

If printout is faint, faded, has a problem with color, etc., perform the following solutions.

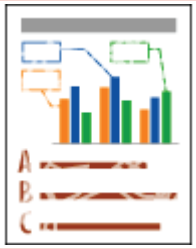


The Overall Print Result Is Faint

The Toner Does Not Fix onto the Paper Well



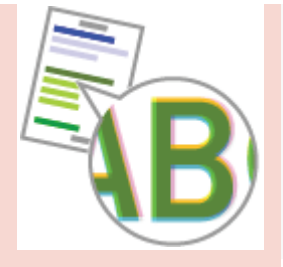
Thin Lines Are Faded or Halftone Images Are Faint

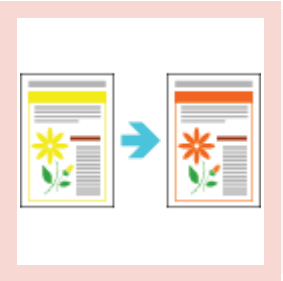


Colored Lines and Text Appear Faded

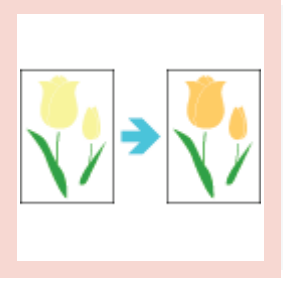
Colored Text Appears Blurred

Data Is Not Printed in the Correct Color (Specified Color), or Colored Text Appears Blurred Due to "Out-of-Register Colors"



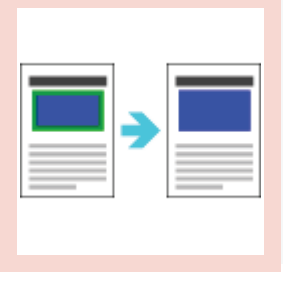


Thin Lines or Fill Patterns Are Not Printed with the Specified Colors or Do Not Appear At All



Shaded Patterns Are Not Printed in the Correct Color (Specified Color)

Photographs etc. Are Printed in Different Colors from Those Displayed on the Monitor



Fill Patterns and Borders Are Not Printed in the Correct Color (Specified Color) Even When the Same Color Is Specified for Them

The Overall Print Result Is Faint	
Cause 1	The setting for [Toner Density] is not appropriate.
Solution	Adjust [Toner Density] in the printer driver to a darker setting. "Adjusting the Toner Density"
Cause 2	[Toner Save] is enabled.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Click [Settings]. 3. Clear the [Toner Save] check box.

The Toner Does Not Fix onto the Paper Well

Cause 1

Appropriate paper is not being used.

Solution

Replace with paper that meets printing specifications.

"Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"

Cause 2

Depending on the paper type or the operating environment (low humidity or low temperature environment), the toner may not fix onto paper well, and the printing may appear faded.

Solution 1

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
2. Set [Paper Type] to [Heavy Paper 1], [Heavy Paper 2], or [Heavy Paper 3].

Solution 2

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Finishing] sheet.
2. Click [Advanced Settings].
3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 3].

Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 3] only if the described problems occur.

IMPORTANT

When using thin paper

Do not specify [Special Settings 3]. This may result in paper wound around the fixing unit or other problems.

Solution 3

Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

1. Display the [Paper Source] sheet.
2. Set [Paper Type] as follows.

Current Setting	Changed Setting
[Plain Paper L2]	[Plain Paper L]
[Plain Paper L]	[Plain Paper]
[Plain Paper]	[Heavy Paper 1]
[Heavy Paper 1]	[Heavy Paper 2]
[Heavy Paper 2]	[Heavy Paper 3]
[Envelope]	[Envelope H]
[Coated Paper 1]	[Coated Paper 2]
[Coated Paper 2]	[Coated Paper 3]
[Coated Paper 3]	[Coated Paper 4]

†If you perform the above procedure, residual images may appear on non-printed areas.

Solution 4	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 6]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 6] only if the described problems occur.
Cause 3	A problem has occurred inside the printer.
Solution	When the ⚠ (Alarm) indicator is on, perform the solution using the procedure in "The Alarm Indicator Is On".

Thin Lines Are Faded or Halftone Images Are Faint	
Cause 1	Appropriate paper is not being used.
Solution	Replace with paper that meets printing specifications. "Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"
Cause 2	Depending on the paper type or the operating environment (especially in a high-humidity environment), thin lines may be faded or halftone areas may be faint.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 2]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 2] only if the described problems occur.

Colored Lines and Text Appear Faded	
Cause	Thin lines or text are being used.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Click [Settings]. 3. Select the [Prioritize Printing of Colored Lines and Text] check box.

Colored Text Appears Blurred	
Cause	A bold font is being used for the colored text.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box. 3. Click [Color Settings]. 4. Display the [Matching] sheet. 5. Set [Matching Method] to [Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]].

Data Is Not Printed in the Correct Color (Specified Color), or Colored Text Appears Blurred Due to "Out-of-Register Colors"	
Cause 1	Any of the toner cartridges are not installed properly.

Solution	Make sure that the toner cartridge is installed properly. "Replacing Toner Cartridges"
Cause 2	Any of the four color toner cartridges is almost out of toner, or the drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.
Solution 1	Correct the "Out-of-Register Colors" on the Printer Status Window. "Correcting 'Out-of-Register Colors'"
Solution 2	Check the status of the toner cartridges. Replace the toner cartridge that is almost empty with a new one. "Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window" "Replacing Toner Cartridges"
Cause 3	Appropriate paper is not being used.
Solution	Replace with paper that meets printing specifications. "Usable Paper and Unusable Paper"
Cause 4	Data was sent before completing calibration or when the printer was turned on.
Solution	Make sure that calibration is completed before sending data to the printer. **NOTE** **Calibrating the printer after it is turned on** Use [Startup Settings] on the Printer Status Window to configure this setting. "Calibrating the Printer"

Thin Lines or Fill Patterns Are Not Printed with the Specified Colors or Do Not Appear At All	
Cause 1	Some of the colors cannot be reproduced because of the combination of colors or patterns.
Solution 1	Adjust the colors in the application and print again. See the instruction manual supplied with the application.
Solution 2	Change the patterns in the application and print again. See the instruction manual supplied with the application.
Cause 2	The colors may appear different depending on the halftone pattern.
Solution 1	Readjust to a darker color and print again. See the instruction manual supplied with the application.
Solution 2	Reload paper to change the feeding direction, then print again.

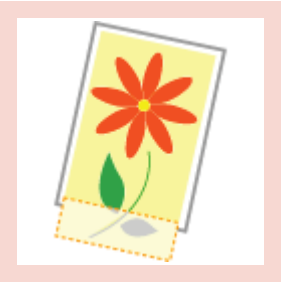
Shaded Patterns Are Not Printed in the Correct Color (Specified Color)	
Cause	The shaded pattern of the print data and the dither pattern of the printer are interfering with one another.
Solution 1	Print again without specifying a shaded pattern in the application. See the instruction manual supplied with the application.
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Click [Settings]. 3. Set [Color Halftones] or [B & W Halftones] to [Gradation] or [Color Tone].

Photographs etc. Are Printed in Different Colors from Those Displayed on the Monitor	
Cause	The methods for adjusting the color on the screen (RGB) and in the printer (YMC) are different. Therefore, the color on the screen may not be printed out exactly as it appears.
Solution 1	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box. 3. Click [Color Settings]. 4. Display the [Matching] sheet. 5. Set [Matching Method] to [Perceptual [Monitor Color Matched]].
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box. 3. Click [Color Settings]. 4. Display the [Matching] sheet. 5. Select [Gamma Adjustment] from [Matching Mode]. 6. Change the gamma value for [Gamma]. **NOTE** **About the gamma adjustment** The higher the gamma value, the darker the colors in the image become when printed.

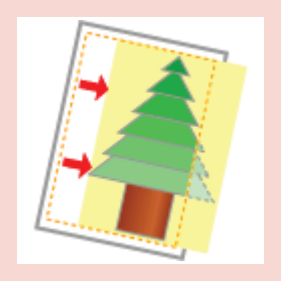
Fill Patterns and Borders Are Not Printed in the Correct Color (Specified Color) Even When the Same Color Is Specified for Them	
Cause	A special process may be applied depending on the line width of the border so that thin lines are printed clearly.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Select the [Manual Color Settings] check box. 3. Click [Color Settings]. 4. Display the [Matching] sheet. 5. Select [Gamma Adjustment] from [Matching Mode]. 6. Change the gamma value for [Gamma]. **NOTE** **About the gamma adjustment** The higher the gamma value, the darker the colors in the image become when printed.

[H-28] Printout Is Skewed, Missing, or Has Unneeded Space

If printout is skewed, missing, has unneeded space, etc., perform the following solutions.



A Portion of the Page Is Not Printed



The Printing Position Is Skewed

The Printing Position Is Skewed Slightly Depending on the Color to Be Printed

The Next Page Is Printed from Halfway across the Previous Page

A Portion of the Page Is Not Printed	
Cause 1	The scale factor is incorrect.
Solution 1	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Page Setup] sheet. 2. Clear the [Manual Scaling] check box. If the check box is cleared, the scale factor will be set according to [Page Size] and [Output Size] automatically.
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Page Setup] sheet. 2. Select the [Manual Scaling] check box, then specify an appropriate scale factor according to the paper size to be used.

Cause 2	The position of the paper is incorrect.
Solution	Load the paper properly. "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)" "Loading Index Cards" "Loading Envelopes" "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"
Cause 3	A document with no margins was printed.
Solution 1	Data is printed with a margin of 5 mm (10 mm for envelopes). Provide a margin around the data. **IMPORTANT** **When printing on Index Cards or envelopes** Printing data in the entire printable area may result in a deterioration in print quality. Adjust the data to a size slightly smaller than the printable area.
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Print with Upper Left of Sheet as Starting Point] to [On]. However, depending on the print data to be printed, the edge of paper may be missing partly during printing or may blot during color printing.

The Printing Position Is Skewed	
Cause 1	[Gutter] is specified.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Gutter]. 3. Set [Gutter] to "0".
Cause 2	"Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application are not specified properly.
Solution	Specify the settings for "Top Margin" and "Paper Position" in the application properly. See the instruction manual supplied with the application.

The Printing Position Is Skewed Slightly Depending on the Color to Be Printed	
Cause	Depending on the print image, a phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may be slightly conspicuous due to the structure of laser printers. †Laser printers are manufactured with technology of high precision. A phenomenon of "Out-of-Register Colors" may be slightly conspicuous depending on the print image. Please note that this is due to the structure of laser printers and is not a printer malfunction.
Solution 1	Correct the "Out-of-Register Colors" on the Printer Status Window. "Correcting 'Out-of-Register Colors'"
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver.

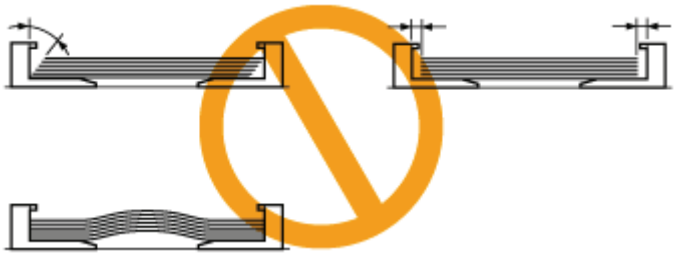
	1. Display the [Quality] sheet. 2. Click [Settings]. 3. Set [Use Pure Black] to [Never].

The Next Page Is Printed from Halfway across the Previous Page	
Cause	"Line Spacing" or "Lines/Page" in the application is not specified properly.
Solution	Specify the settings for "Line Spacing" or "Lines/Page" in the application so that the data fits in one page, and then print again. See the instruction manual supplied with the application.

[H-29] Data Is Printed Diagonally

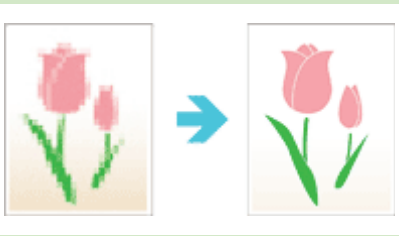
If data is printed diagonally, perform the following solutions.

Data Is Printed Diagonally on Small Size Paper

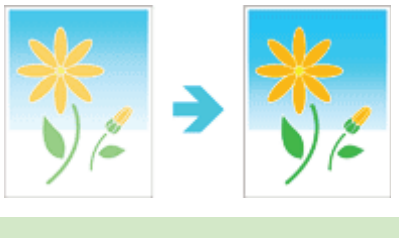
Data Is Printed Diagonally on Small Size Paper	
Cause 1	The position of the paper guides is not aligned with the paper.
Solution	Align the paper guides with the paper. If the paper guides are too loose or too tight, this may result in misfeeds. 
Cause 2	Data is printed from the multi-purpose tray.
Solution	Load paper in the paper drawer. "Loading Envelopes" "Loading Custom Size Paper (Non-Standard Size Paper)"

[H-30] Adjusting the Color or Image Quality

This printer allows you to perform the following adjustments and corrections.



Correcting Rough-Textured Images



Adjusting the Toner Density

Printing with Brightness and Contrast Adjusted

Adjusting the Color

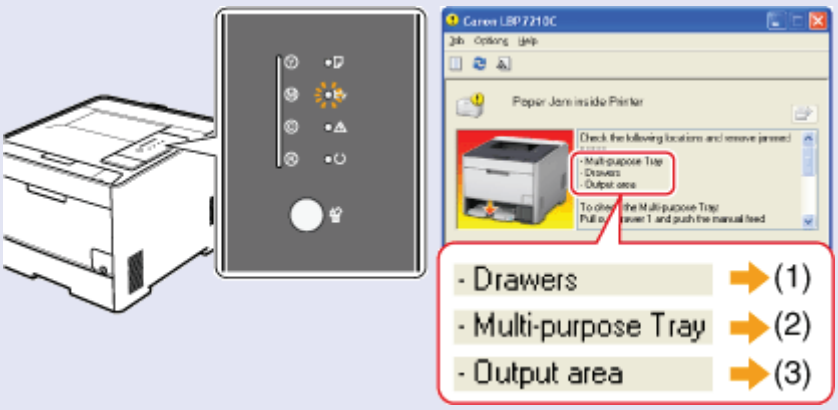
Matching the Color on the Display

Calibrating the Printer

Correcting "Out-of-Register Colors"

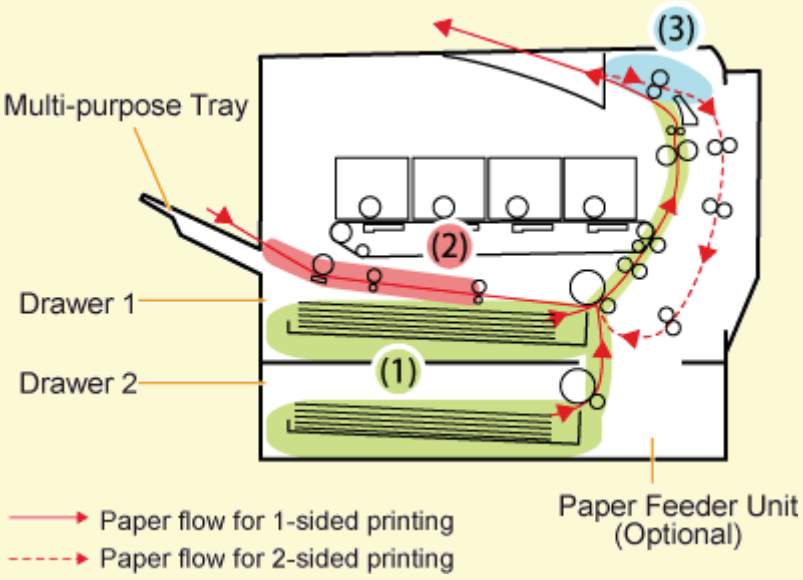
[H-31] Paper Jams

When a paper jam occurs, the (Paper Jam) indicator (orange) blinks, and a message appears in the Printer Status Window.



Remove the jammed paper according to the displayed message.

Precautions When Removing Jammed Paper



Paper Jam Area		Message	Clearance Procedure
(1)	Drawer area	<Drawers>	Clearing Paper Jams (Drawer Area)
(2)	Multi-purpose tray area	<Multi-purpose Tray>	Clearing Paper Jams (Multi-purpose Tray Area)
(3)	Output area	<Output area>	Clearing Paper Jams (Output Area)

NOTE

If the Printer Status Window is not displayed

"Printer Status Window"

[H-32] Precautions When Removing Jammed Paper

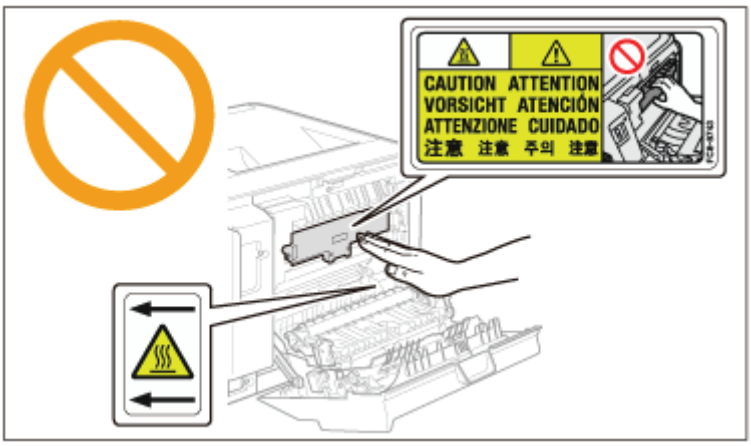
⚠ WARNING

Be careful not to allow jewelry or other metal objects to touch the inside of the printer.
There are some areas inside the printer which are subject to high voltages. If metal objects touch the inside of the printer, this may result in a fire or electrical shock.

⚠ CAUTION

Precautions when removing jammed paper

- Make sure that the fixing unit is completely cool before removing the jammed paper. Touching the fixing unit when it is still hot may result in burns.
- The output slot is hot during and immediately after printing. Do not touch the area surrounding the output slot, as this may result in burns.



- Printed paper may be hot immediately after being output. Be careful when removing the paper and aligning the removed paper, as this may result in burns.
- Be careful not to get any toner on your hands or clothing.

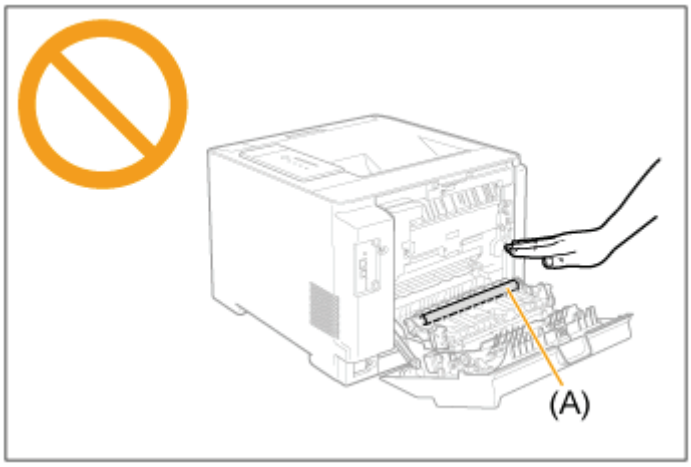
  If toner gets on your hands or clothing, wash them immediately with cold water. Washing with warm water sets the toner, making it impossible to remove the toner stains.
- When removing jammed paper, be careful not to allow the toner on the paper to scatter.

  If toner scatters and gets into your eyes or mouth, wash them immediately with cold water and consult a physician.
- When removing jammed paper, be careful not to cut your hands with the edges of the paper.
- Keep your hands and clothing away from the roller in the output area after removing jammed paper.
  The roller may suddenly rotate and catch your hands or clothing, resulting in personal injury.

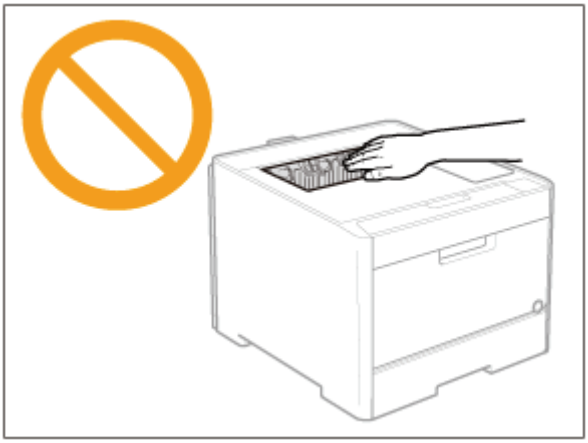
IMPORTANT

Precautions when operating the printer

- Leave the printer on when removing the jammed paper. If the power is turned off, the data being printed will be deleted.
- Removing jammed paper with excess force may cause the paper to tear or damage the inside of the printer.
  Pull out the jammed paper in the direction indicated.
- If the paper is torn, remove all remaining pieces of paper.
- After the jammed paper is cleared, the next printed paper may have toner stains.
- Do not touch the transfer roller (A), as this may result in deterioration in print quality.



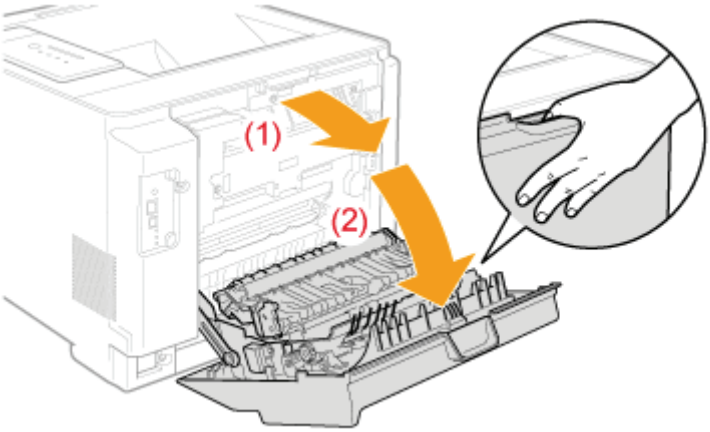
- The area surrounding the output tray is hot during and immediately after printing. Do not touch the area surrounding the output tray when removing paper or clearing a paper jam.



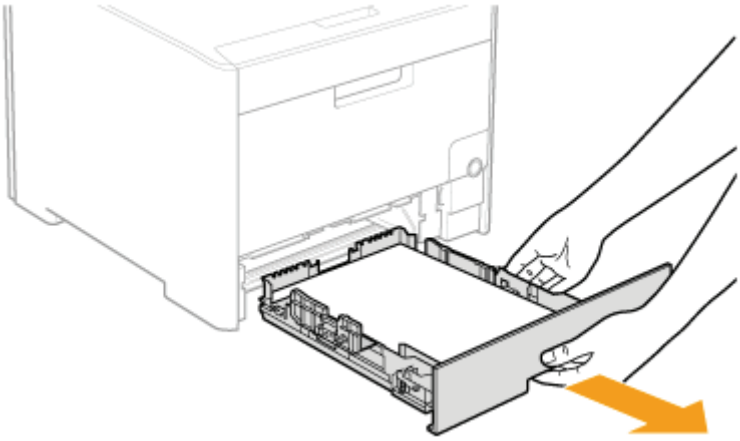
[H-33] Clearing Paper Jams (Drawer Area)

1. **Open the rear cover.**

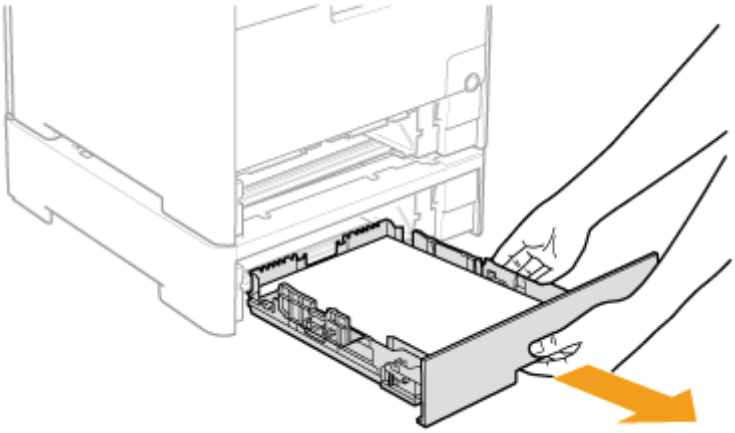
   Open it completely.



2. **Pull out the paper drawer.**

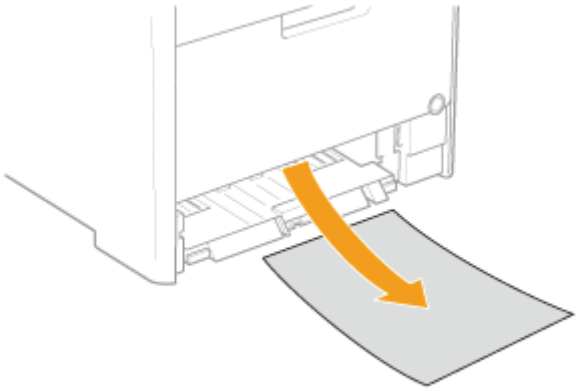


   If the paper feeder is installed, pull out the paper drawer of the paper feeder also.

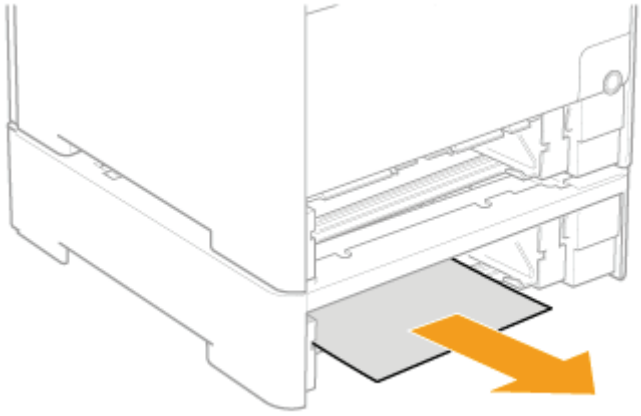


3. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**

   - In case of the printer unit

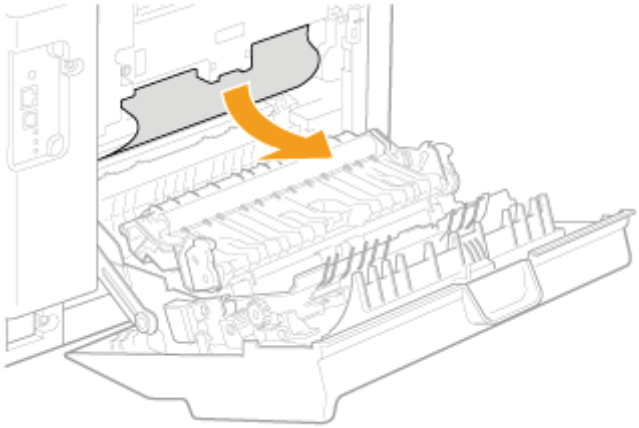


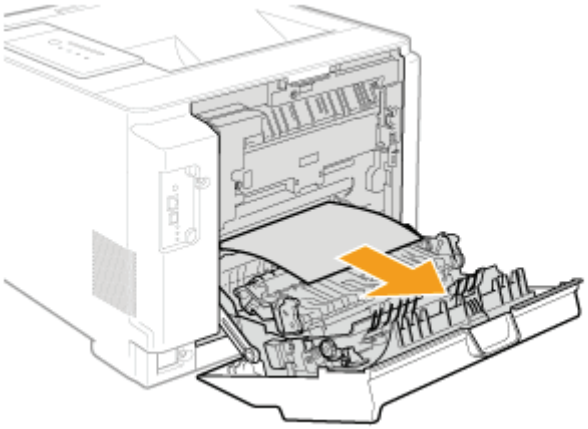
- In case of the paper feeder

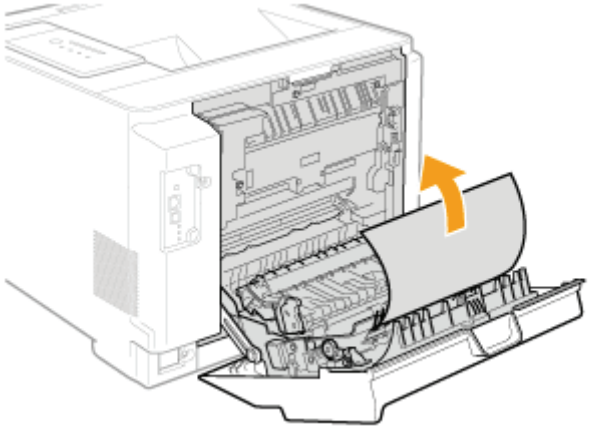


---

4. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**



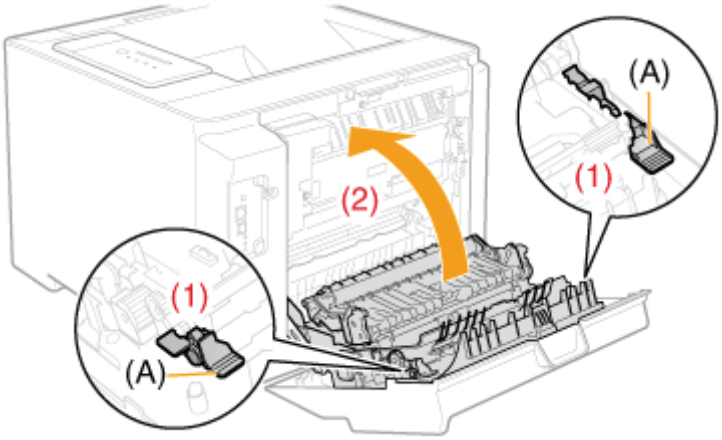


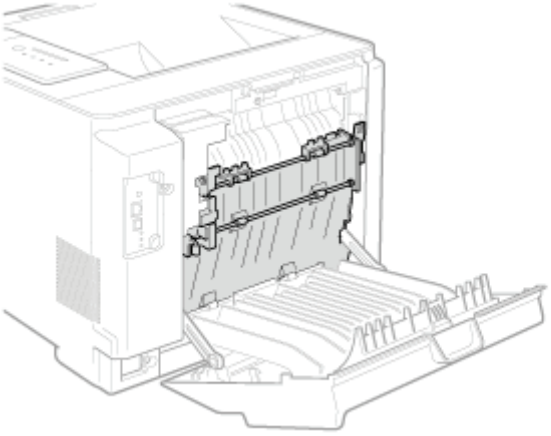


---

5. **Close the duplex print transport guide.**

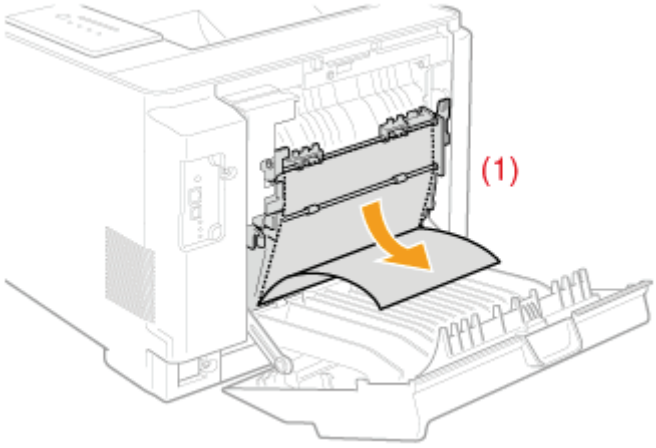
(1) Hold the tabs (A) on both sides.
(2) Close the guide firmly until it clicks.

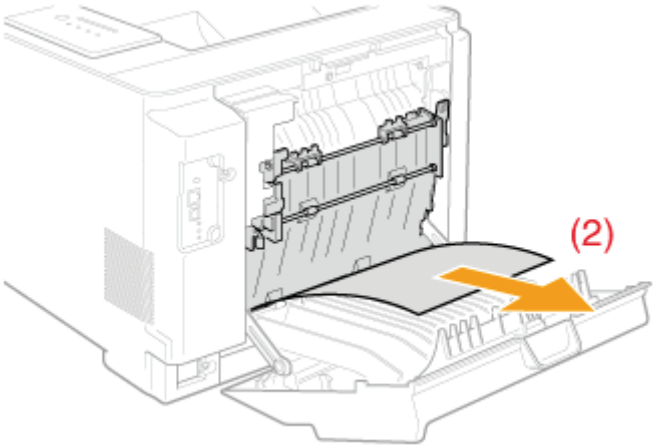




6. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**

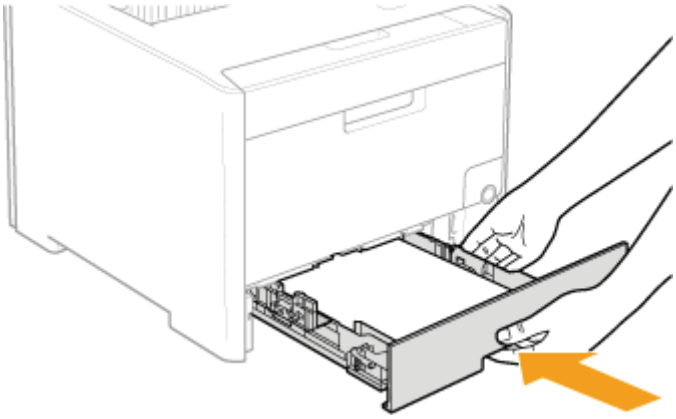
(1) Pull out the top edge of the paper.
(2) Remove the paper by pulling it gently.



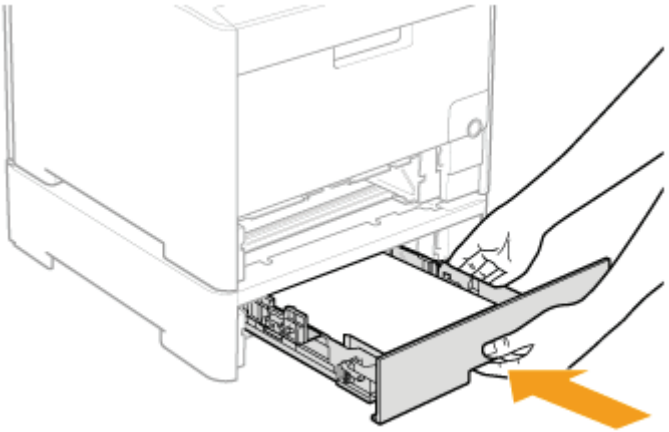


7. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**

Push it into the printer firmly.



If the paper feeder is installed, insert the paper drawer of the paper feeder also.

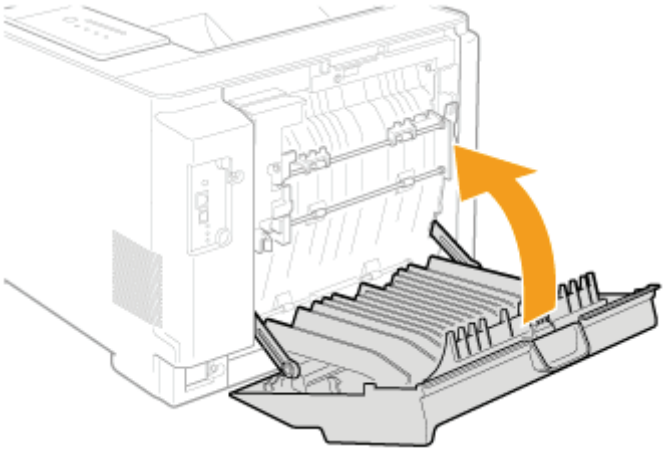


CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer
Be careful not to catch your fingers.

---

8. **Close the rear cover.**
Close it securely.



→ The (Paper Jam) indicator turns off, and the printer is ready to print.

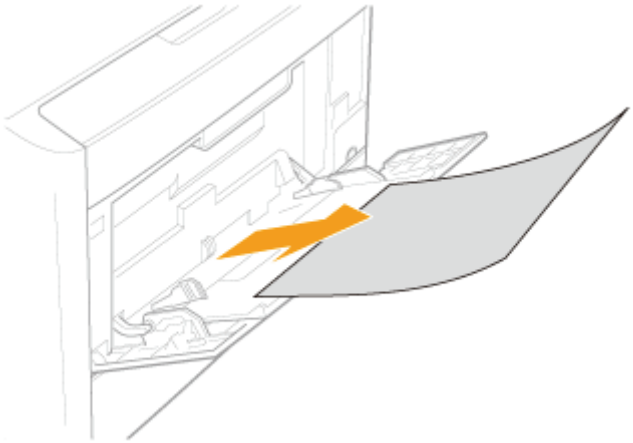
IMPORTANT

If the (Paper Jam) indicator does not turn off even after removing the paper

Paper may be jammed in another area. Check another area also and remove the paper.
Also, check if the paper drawer is inserted into the printer firmly.

[H-34] Clearing Paper Jams (Multi-purpose Tray Area)

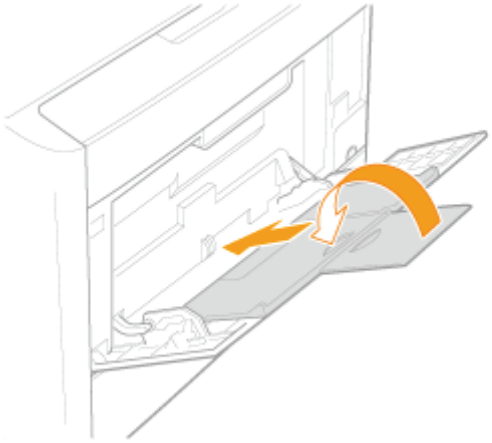
1. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**

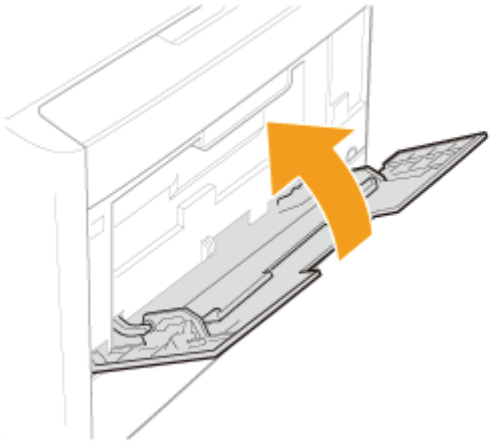


IMPORTANT

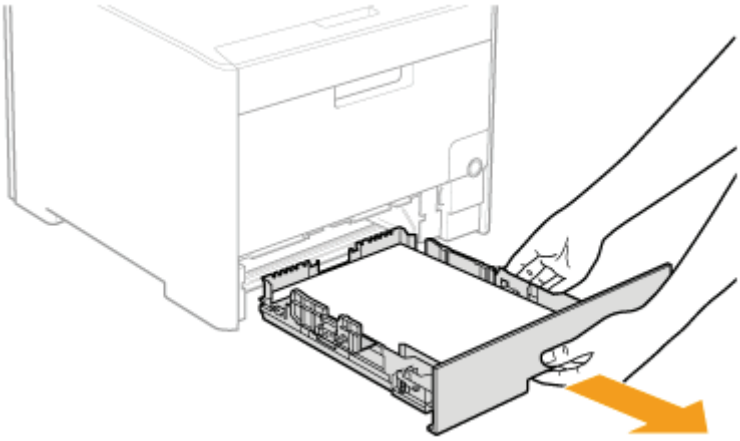
If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily
Do not try to remove it forcefully but proceed to Step 2.

2. **Close the multi-purpose tray.**



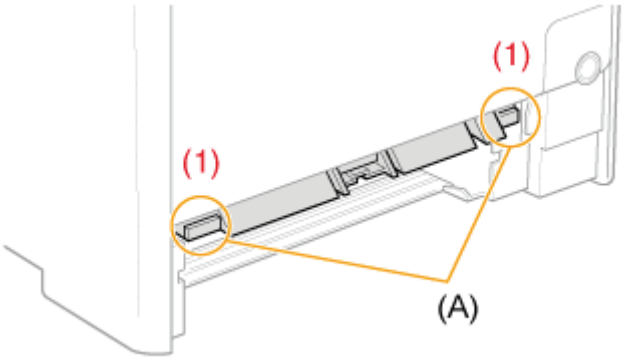


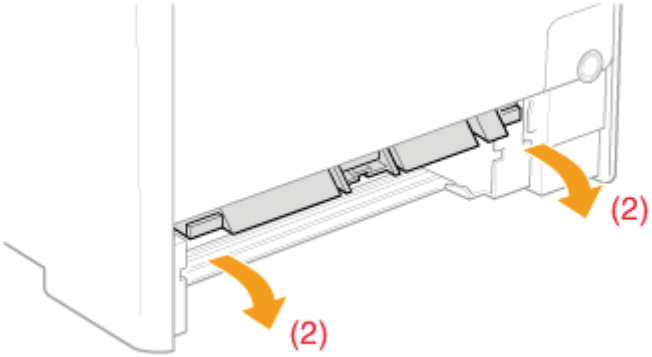
3. **Pull out the paper drawer.**



4. **Lower the manual feed transport guide.**

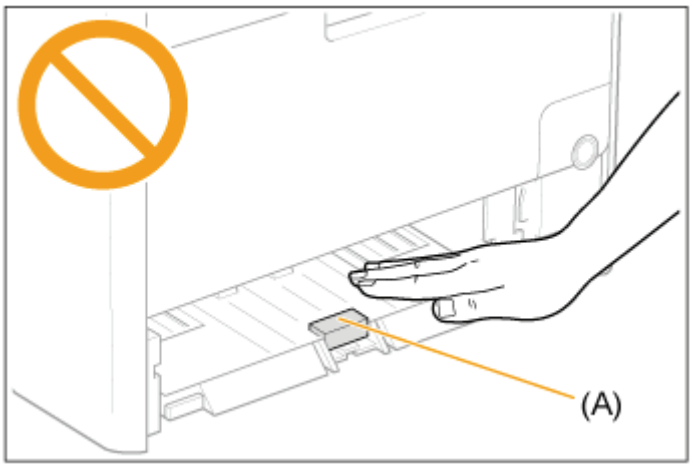
(1) Hold the tabs (A) on both sides.
(2) Push them down.



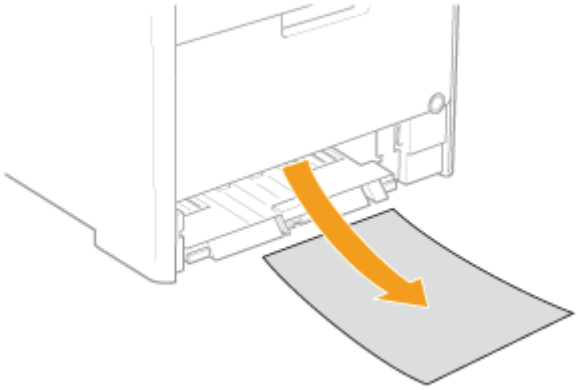


IMPORTANT

Do not touch the rubber pad (A).
Touching it may result in deterioration in print quality.



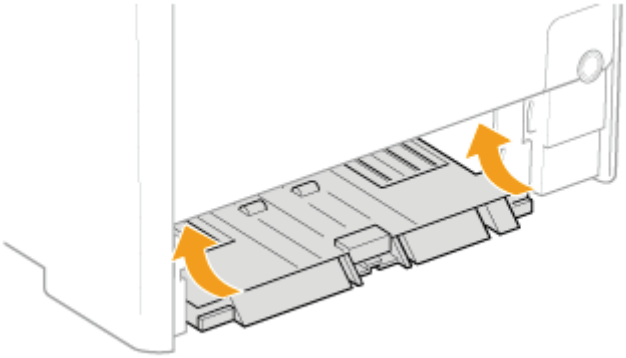
5. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**



IMPORTANT

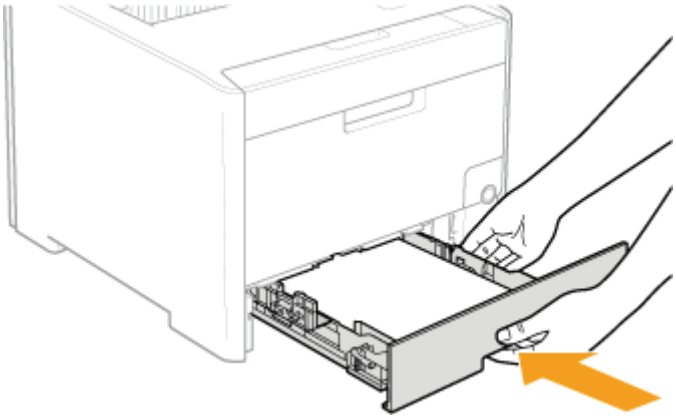
If the jammed paper cannot be removed easily
Do not try to remove it forcefully but open the rear cover, and then remove the jammed paper.
"Clearing Paper Jams (Drawer Area)"

6. **Return the manual feed transport guide to its original position.**



7. **Insert the paper drawer into the printer.**

Push it into the printer firmly.



CAUTION

Precautions when inserting the paper drawer

Be careful not to catch your fingers.

8. **Open and close the front cover.**

→ The (Paper Jam) indicator turns off, and the printer is ready to print.

IMPORTANT

If the (Paper Jam) indicator does not turn off even after removing the paper

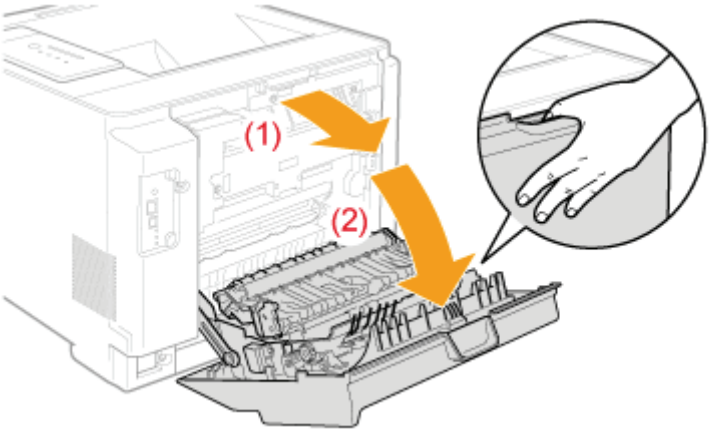
Paper may be jammed in another area. Check another area also and remove the paper.

Also, check if the paper drawer is inserted into the printer firmly.

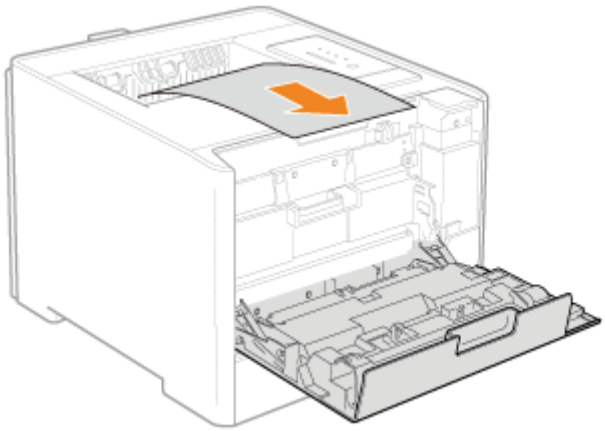
[H-35] Clearing Paper Jams (Output Area)

1. **Open the rear cover.**

Open it completely.

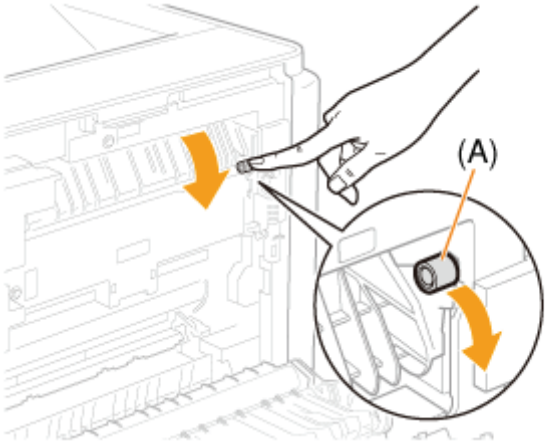


2. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**

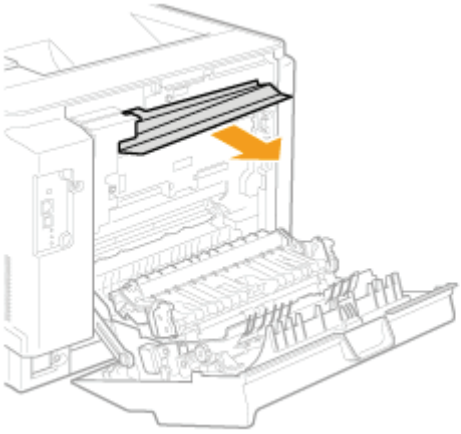


3. **Open the paper output guide.**

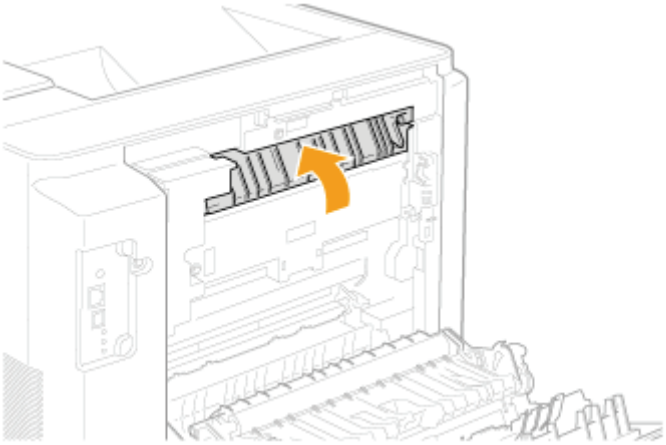
Open it by holding the green projection (A).



4. **Remove the jammed paper by pulling it gently in the direction of the arrow.**



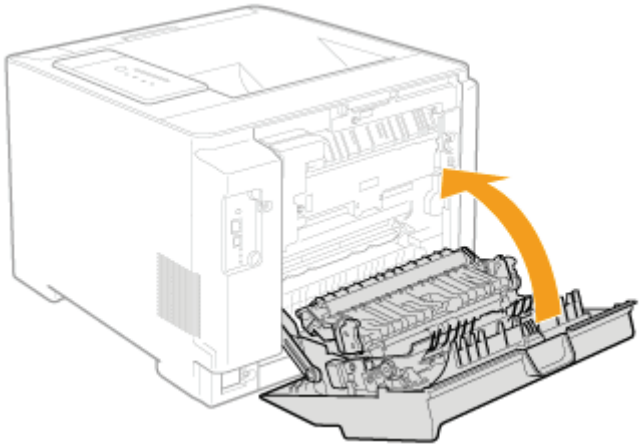
Make sure that no paper is jammed inside the paper output guide, and then close it.



---

5. **Close the rear cover.**

Close it securely.



→ The (Paper Jam) indicator turns off, and the printer is ready to print.

IMPORTANT

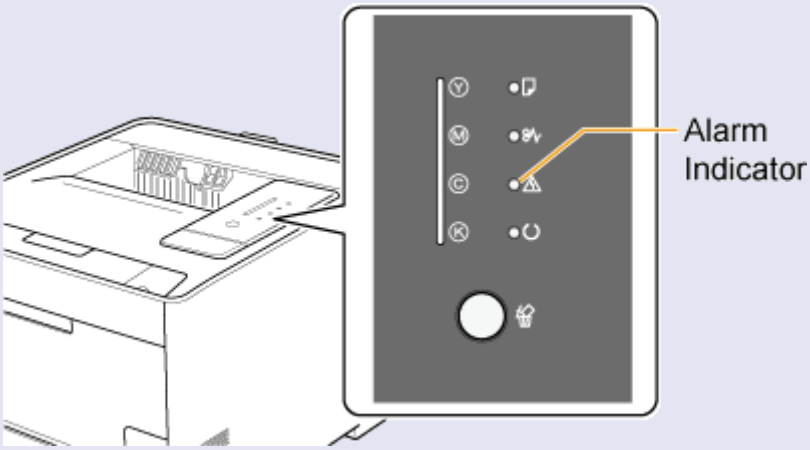
If the (Paper Jam) indicator does not turn off even after removing the paper

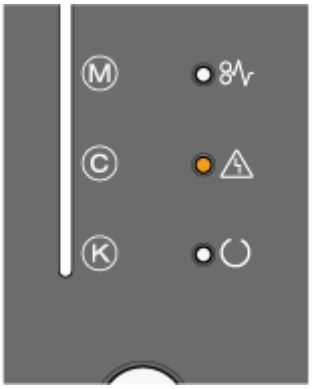
Paper may be jammed in another area. Check another area also and remove the paper.

Also, check if the paper drawer is inserted into the printer firmly.

[H-36] The Alarm Indicator Is On or Blinking

When the ⚠ (Alarm) indicator is on or blinking, implement the following solutions.



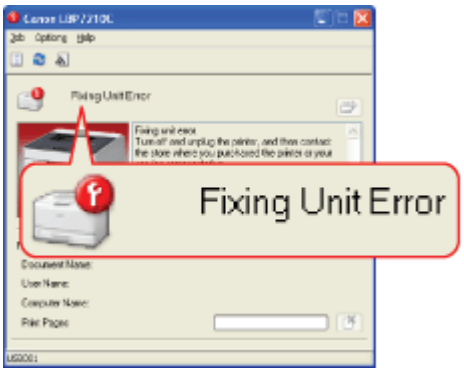
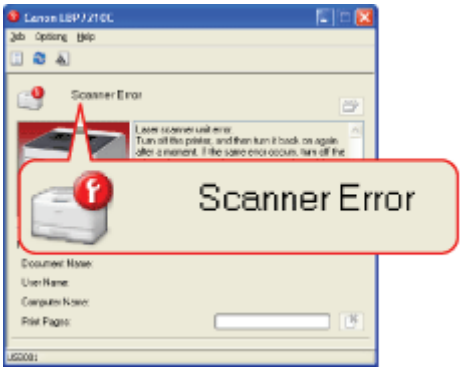
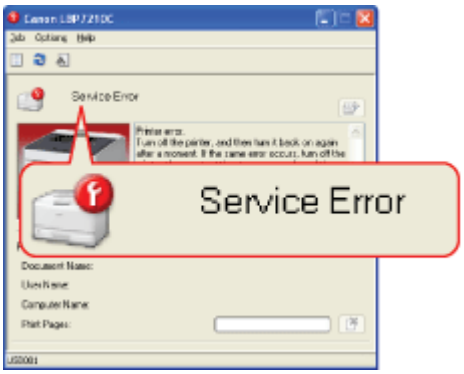


The Alarm Indicator Is On

The Alarm Indicator Is Blinking

[H-37] The Alarm Indicator Is On

Implement the following solutions according to the message displayed in the Printer Status Window.

Service Call	Cause	Solution
	A problem occurred in the fixing unit.	If a fixing unit error is displayed, you need to request service. Follow the procedure in "If a Fixing Unit Error Is Displayed", and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer to request service.
	A problem occurred in the scanner.	Following the procedure in "If a Scanner Error or Service Error Is Displayed", cycle the power of the printer.
	A problem occurred in the printer.	

NOTE

If the Printer Status Window is not displayed

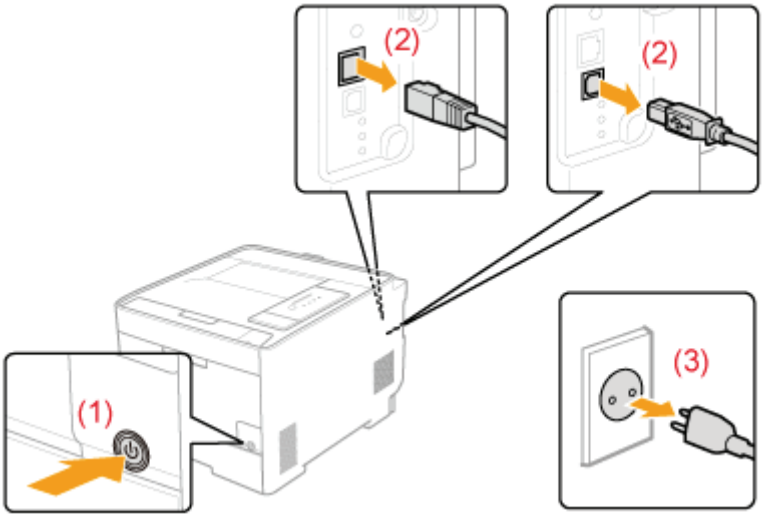
"Printer Status Window"

If a Fixing Unit Error Is Displayed

1. **Turn the printer off, then disconnect the cables from the printer.**

(1) Turn the printer off.

(2) If the interface cables are connected, turn the computer off, and then disconnect the interface cables from the printer.
(3) Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.



IMPORTANT

Do not turn on the printer again.
A fixing unit error is displayed. Do not turn on the printer after turning it off.

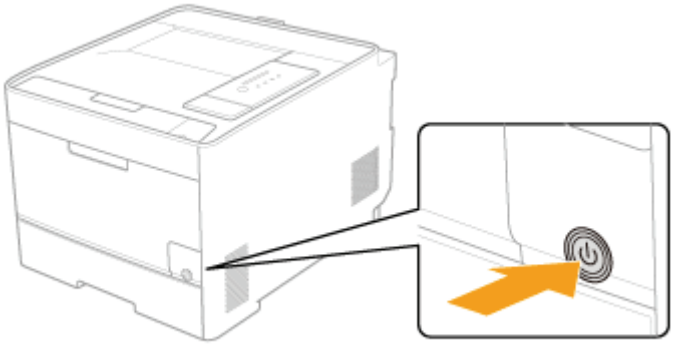
2. **Contact your local authorized Canon dealer to request service.**

NOTE

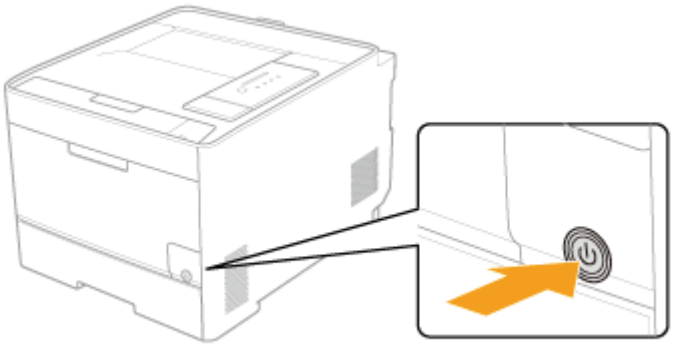
If you are not sure what the problem is
Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

If a Scanner Error or Service Error Is Displayed

1. **Turn the printer off.**



2. Wait at least 10 seconds before turning on the printer.

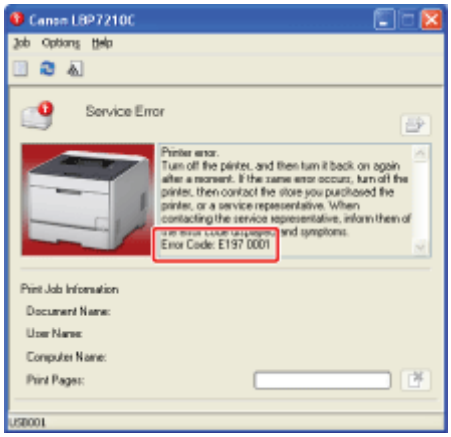


If the message does not reappear, the printer is ready.

If the message reappears, you need to request service.

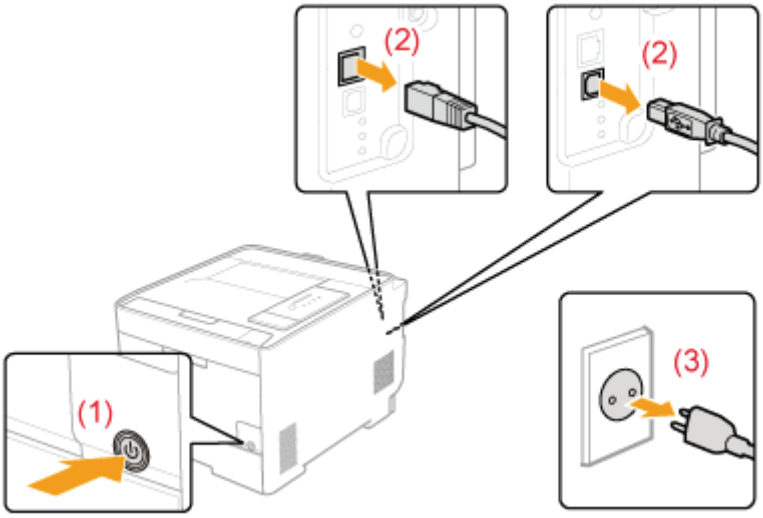
→ Follow the procedure below, and then contact your local authorized Canon dealer to request service.

3. If a service error is displayed, note down the error code displayed in the Printer Status Window.



4. Turn the printer off, then disconnect the cables from the printer.

(1) Turn the printer off.
(2) If the interface cables are connected, turn the computer off, and then disconnect the interface cables from the printer.
(3) Unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.



---

5. Contact your local authorized Canon dealer to request service.

If a service error is displayed, please report also the error code which you noted down in Step 3.

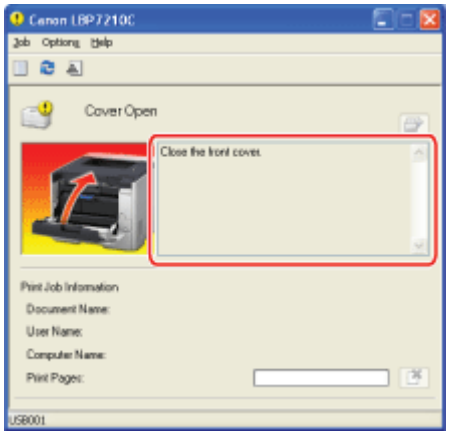
NOTE

If you are not sure what the problem is
Contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

[H-38] The Alarm Indicator Is Blinking

Solve the problem following the message displayed in the Printer Status Window.

"A Message Appears in the Printer Status Window"



NOTE

If the Printer Status Window is not displayed

"Printer Status Window"

[H-39] Miscellaneous Problems

This section describes solutions for when the following problems occur.

- An Error Message Is Displayed after the Printer Is Unpacked and Turned On for the First Time
- The Flap of the Printed Envelope Sticks
- Nothing Is Printed on the Paper
- Paper Is Output in a Certain Color with Nothing Printed on It
- Multiple Sheets of Paper Are Fed at a Time
- The Printout Is Different from What Is Displayed on Screen or The Printer Takes a Long Time to Print
- The Printer Takes a Long Time to Start the Next Print Job after Printing
- The Printer Pauses during Printing, and then Printing Repeatedly Starts and Stops
- CD-ROM Setup Does Not Appear Automatically (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
- The Printer Driver Settings Cannot Be Changed
- "Profiles" Cannot Be Selected or Edited

NOTE

If an application software is configured to start up automatically in Remote Desktop Connection

Even if you exit the application software which automatically started up after printing from the software, Remote Desktop may not be disconnected automatically.

If a problem that is not indicated in this section occurs or if none of the suggested measures solve the problem, contact your local authorized Canon dealer.

An Error Message Is Displayed after the Printer Is Unpacked and Turned On for the First Time	
Cause 1	The sealing tape is not pulled out of the toner cartridges.
Solution	Turn off the printer, and pull out the sealing tape from each of the four toner cartridges inside the printer. "Preparing the Toner Cartridges"
Cause 2	The packing material (sheet) is left in the output area.
Solution	Turn off the printer, and then remove the packing material (sheet). Carrying the Printer to the Installation Site and Removing the Packing Materials

The Flap of the Printed Envelope Sticks	
Cause 1	The envelope is inappropriate.
Solution	Replace the envelope with one that can be used and print again. Usable Paper and Unusable Paper
Cause 2	The printer is being used in an environment with high humidity.
Solution	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 1]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 1] only if the described problems occur.

Nothing Is Printed on the Paper	
Cause	Multiple sheets of paper were fed at a time.
Solution 1	If you are using transparencies, labels, or coated paper, fan them thoroughly before loading them.
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 10]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 10] only if the described problems occur.

Paper Is Output in a Certain Color with Nothing Printed on It	
Cause 1	The drum in any of the toner cartridges has deteriorated.
Solution	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one. "Replacing Toner Cartridges"
Cause 2	A problem has occurred inside the printer.
Solution	When the ⚠ (Alarm) indicator is on, perform the solution using the procedure in "The Alarm Indicator Is On".

Multiple Sheets of Paper Are Fed at a Time	

Cause	You are using paper which tends to be fed at a time.
Solution 1	If you are using transparencies, labels, or coated paper, fan them thoroughly before loading them.
Solution 2	Perform the following procedure in the printer driver. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Set [Special Print Mode] to [Special Settings 10]. Normally, use the printer with [Special Print Mode] set to [Off]. Specify [Special Settings 10] only if the described problems occur.

The Printout Is Different from What Is Displayed on Screen or The Printer Takes a Long Time to Print	
Cause	This problem may occur in some applications depending on the spooling type of the print data.
Solution	Performing the following procedure in the printer driver may be able to solve the problem. 1. Display the [Finishing] sheet. 2. Click [Advanced Settings]. 3. Change the [EMF Spooling] setting. †When [EMF Spooling] is set to [On], the Printer Status Window may not be displayed automatically. In this case, display it manually. (For details on methods for displaying the Printer Status Window, see "Printer Status Window".)

The Printer Takes a Long Time to Start the Next Print Job after Printing	
Cause	The fixing unit is being cooled down (especially after printing narrower paper) to maintain print quality.
Solution	Please wait a moment. The printer cools down the fixing unit automatically. Printing resumes after cooling down the fixing unit.

The Printer Pauses during Printing, and then Printing Repeatedly Starts and Stops	
Cause	If the printer is used continuously for an extended period of time, the internal temperature of the printer increases, activating a safety mechanism and pausing printing temporarily. † When performing 1-sided printing on A4 size paper: After continuously printing for approximately 6 minutes at a room temperature of 27 °C (80.6 °F), the printer stops for approximately one minute. When performing 2-sided printing on A4 size paper: After continuously printing for approximately 3 minutes at a room temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), the printer stops for approximately one minute.
Solution	Please wait a moment. When the inside of the printer cools down, printing resumes. If the internal temperature of the printer has not decreased sufficiently, the safety mechanism is reactivated and printing is paused temporarily. When the inside temperature cools down sufficiently, the printer resumes the normal printing speed. The time until the safety mechanism activates or until the printer resumes the normal printing speed varies depending on the printer usage conditions.

CD-ROM Setup Does Not Appear Automatically (Windows Vista and Server 2008)	
Cause	CD-ROM Setup is not specified to appear automatically.
Solution	Perform the following procedure. • Windows Vista 1. Click [Play CDs or other media automatically] in [Control Panel]. 2. Select the [Use AutoPlay for all media and devices] check box. 3. Set [Software and games] to [Install or run program]. • Windows Server 2008 1. Double-click [AutoPlay] in [Control Panel]. 2. Select the [Use AutoPlay for all media and devices] check box. 3. Set [Software and games] to [Install or run program].

The Printer Driver Settings Cannot Be Changed	
Cause	[Spooling at Host] is set to [Disabled].
Solution	Set [Spooling at Host] to [Auto]. Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host

"Profiles" Cannot Be Selected or Edited	
Cause	Selecting or Editing "Profiles" is not allowed.
Solution	Change the settings for the [Profile] sheet. Allow Profile Selection or Editing

[H-40] Changing the Setting for Spooling at Host

You can change the setting for [Spooling at Host] (whether the jobs are processed in the computer) using the following procedure.

---

1. Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.

- Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
  From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows XP Home Edition
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
- Windows Vista
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
- Windows Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

---

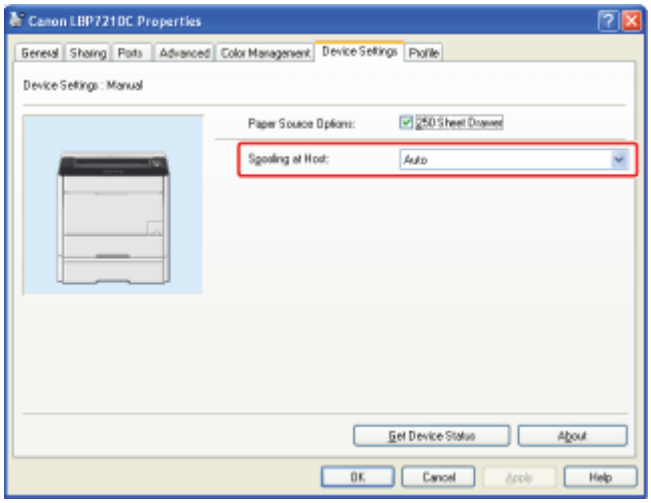
2. Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.

---

3. Display the [Device Settings] sheet.

---

4. Select [Auto] for [Spooling at Host].



NOTE

If the setting cannot be changed
You need administrative rights to change the setting.
Contact your system administrator.

---

5. **Click [OK].**

[H-41] Allow Profile Selection or Editing

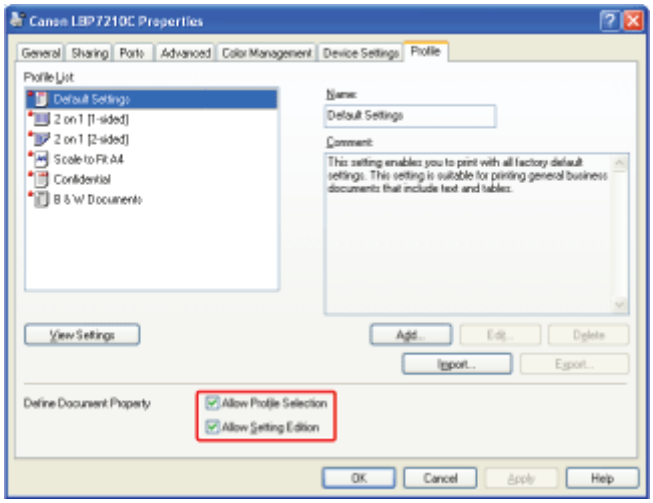
If selecting or editing "Profiles" is not allowed, change the setting using the following procedure.

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows Vista
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printer].
   - Windows Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then double-click [Printers].

2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**

3. **Display the [Profile] sheet.**

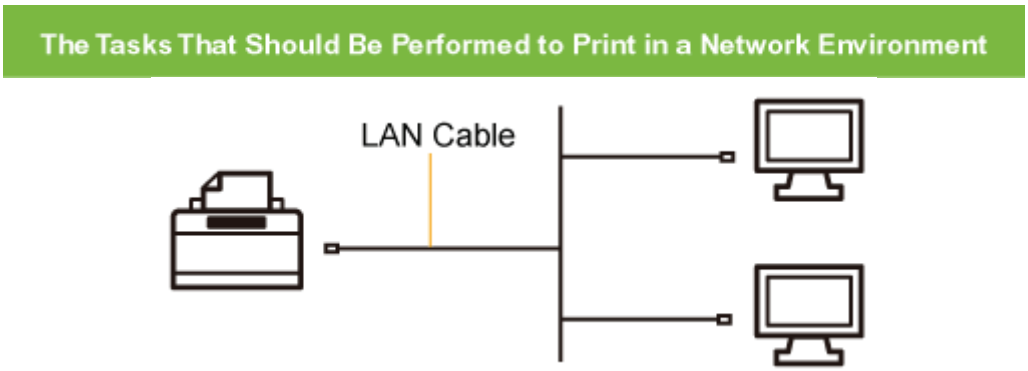
4. **Select the [Allow Profile Selection] and [Allow Setting Edition] check boxes.**



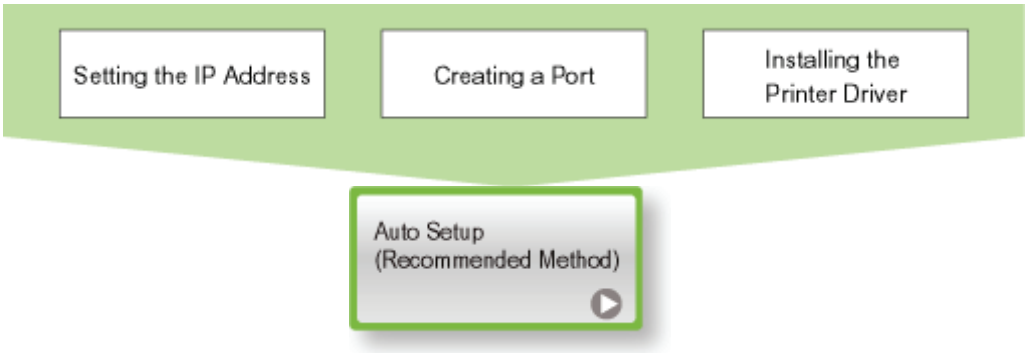
NOTE

If the setting cannot be changed
You need administrative rights to change the setting.
Contact your system administrator.

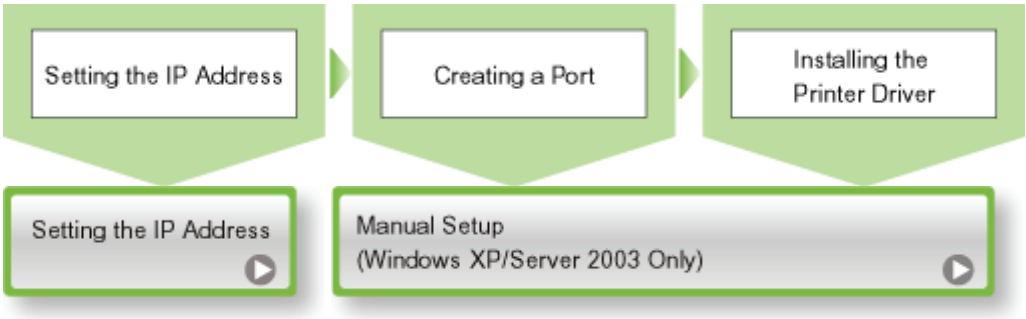
5. **Click [OK].**



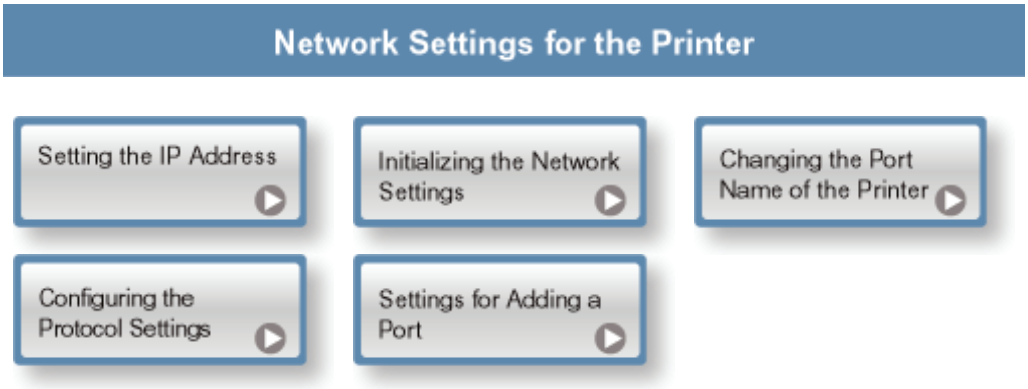
Auto Setup (Recommended Method)
Performs the following operations which are required for printing all at once.



Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)
Performs the following operations which are required for printing one at a time.



†If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008, you cannot print using a port created by "Manual Setup". Be sure to install the printer driver using "Auto Setup".



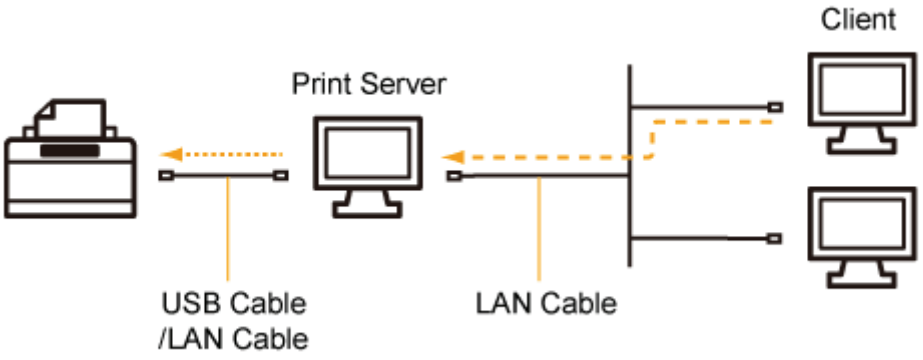
Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode

Setting Items

Changing the Network Transmission Speed or Transfer Mode

Checking the MAC Address

If you share the printer in the print server environment



Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing)

Configuring the Print Server

Installation on Clients

[I-02] Auto Setup (Recommended Method)

This section describes the procedure for installing the printer driver from the supplied CD-ROM (CD-ROM Setup) on a computer connected to the printer with a LAN cable.

Step 1: **Connecting a LAN Cable**
Step 2: **Installing the Printer Driver from CD-ROM**
Step 3: **After the Installation**

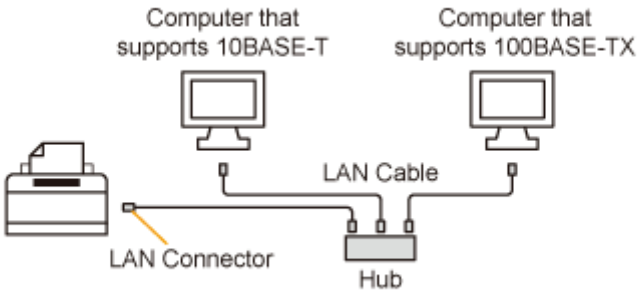
IMPORTANT

If your hard disk does not have sufficient space to install the printer driver
A message indicating that your hard disk does not have sufficient space appears during installation.
Cancel the installation, free up space on your hard disk, and then reinstall the software.

Step 1: Connecting a LAN Cable

NOTE

About the network environment
This printer supports 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX connections.

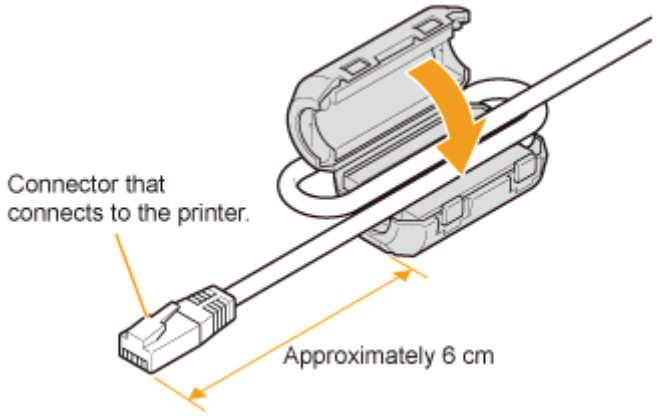


About the LAN cable

- This printer does not come with a LAN cable or a hub. Have cables or a hub ready as needed.
  Use a Category 5 twisted pair cable for the LAN.
- If you want to connect the printer to a 100BASE-TX Ethernet network, all the devices to be connected to the LAN (hub, LAN cable, and network board for computer) must support 100BASE-TX.
  Contact your local authorized Canon dealer for more details.

1 **Attach the ferrite core to the LAN cable as shown in the figure.**

- Attach the ferrite core at 6 cm or less from the end of the connector connected to the printer.

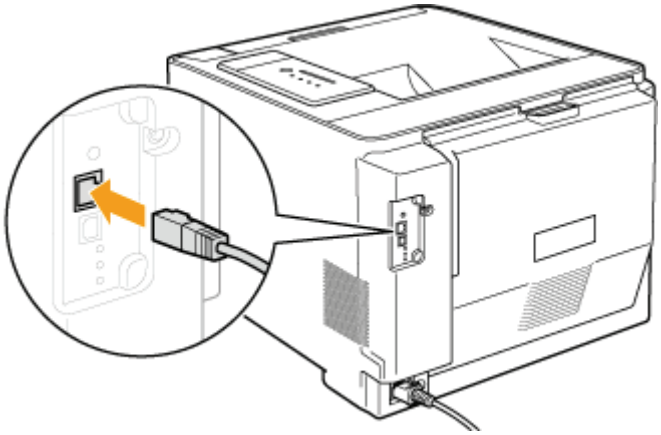


NOTE

About a ferrite core
A ferrite core is supplied with the printer.

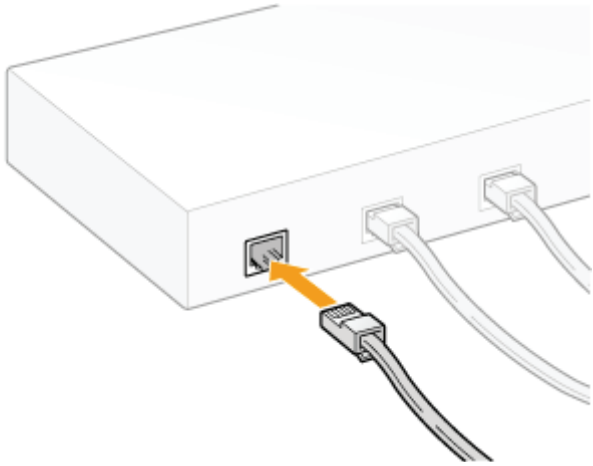
---

2. Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector of this printer.

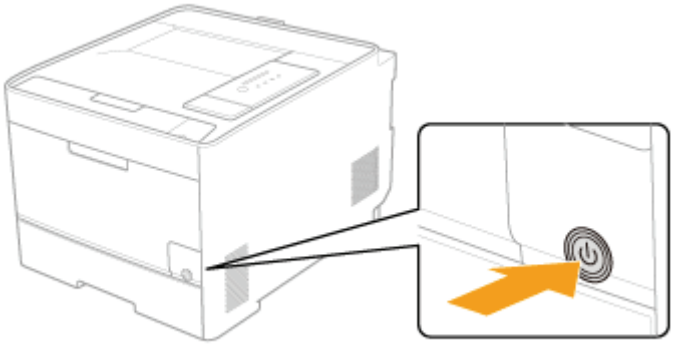


---

3. Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the hub.

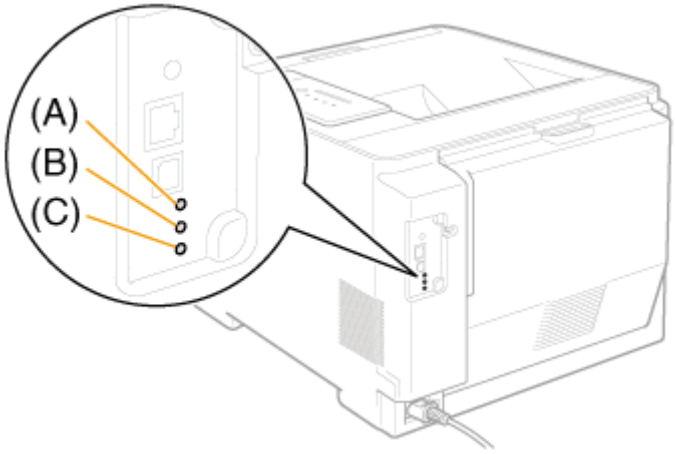


4. **Press the power switch to turn the printer on.**



5. **Make sure that the LNK indicator (B) on the printer's network board is on.**

- If the printer is connected by 10BASE-T
  If the LNK indicator (B) is on, the printer is connected properly.
- If the printer is connected by 100BASE-TX
  If the LNK indicator (B) and 100 indicator (A) are on, the printer is connected properly.



NOTE

When all the indicators are off

"All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off"

When the ERR indicator (C) is on or blinking

"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking"

Step 2: Installing the Printer Driver from CD-ROM

NOTE

If Windows Firewall is enabled
If the IP address is not set for the printer, you need to configure Windows Firewall to unblock communication during the installation process.
If you do not want to unblock Windows Firewall, set the IP address for the printer in advance.
"Setting the IP Address"

---

1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

---

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

---

3. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**
If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.
† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear
Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

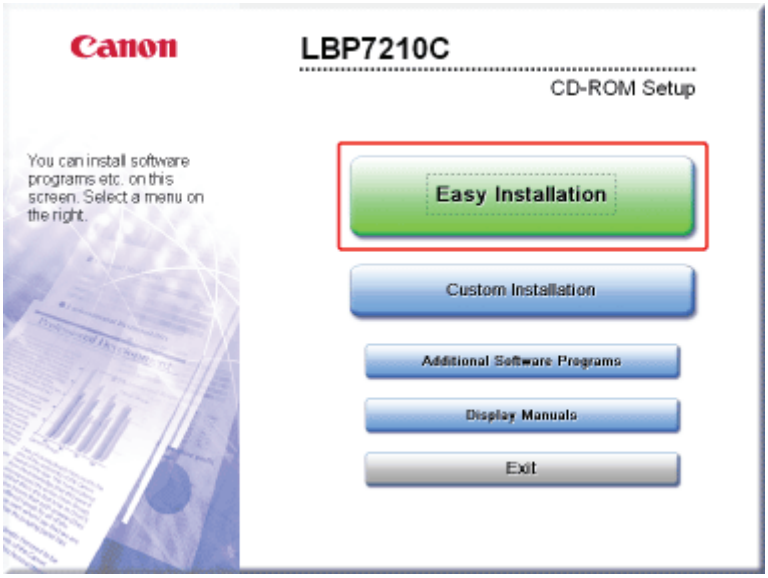
If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

---

4. **Click [Easy Installation].**

The printer driver and the e-Manual are installed.

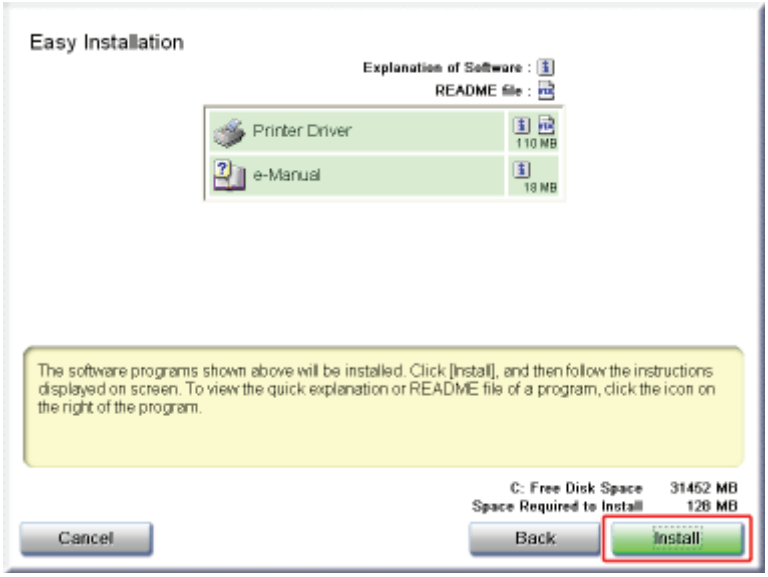


NOTE

If you do not want to install the e-Manual
Click [Custom Installation].

---

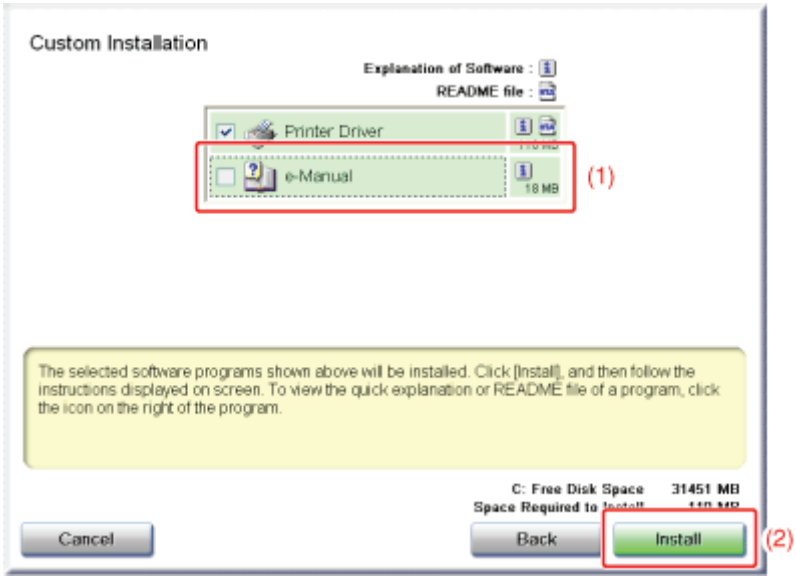
5. **Click [Install].**



NOTE

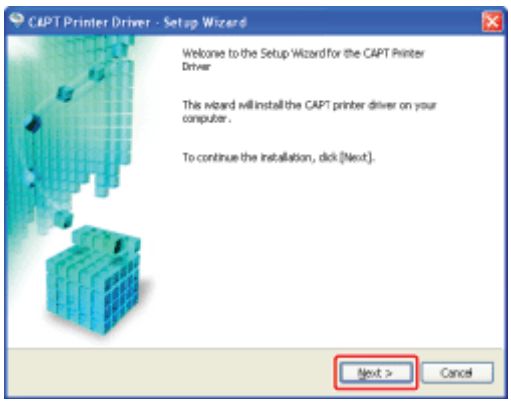
If you selected [Custom Installation] in Step 4

(1) Clear the [e-Manual] check box.
(2) Click [Install].



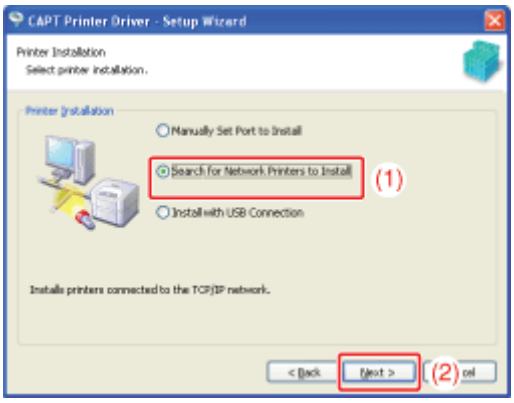
6. Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].

7. Click [Next].



8. Select the method of installation.

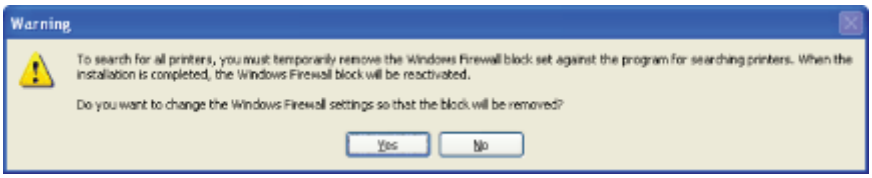
(1) Select [Search for Network Printers to Install].
(2) Click [Next].



→ The TCP/IP port on the network is searched, and the printer is detected automatically.

NOTE

If Windows Firewall is enabled
The following dialog box appears.



If the IP address of the printer has been already set, click [No].
If you want to clear the block and detect the printers in which the IP address has not been set yet, click [Yes].

9. Operation procedure varies depending on the content displayed in [Product Name] in [Printer List].

- If [LBP7210C] is displayed in [Product Name]
- If [Unknown Device] is displayed in [Product Name]

NOTE

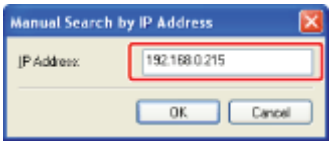
If no devices are displayed in [Printer List]
Perform the following procedure.

1. Make sure that the computer and printer are connected via the network.
2. Make sure that the printer is on.
3. Click [Auto Search Again].
   (The printers on the network are searched for again.)

If any devices are not displayed by performing the above procedure, perform the following procedure.

1. Click [Manual Search by IP Address].

2. Enter the IP address of the printer to be installed.
(The default IP address of the printer is "192.168.0.215".)

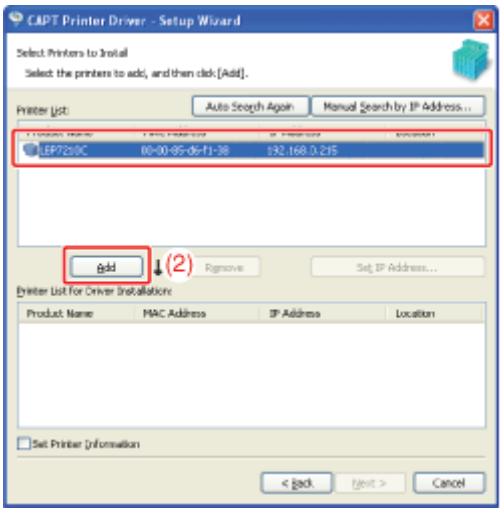


3. Click [OK].

If [LBP7210C] is displayed in [Product Name]

1. **Add [LBP7210C] to [Printer List for Driver Installation].**

(1) Select [LBP7210C].
(2) Click [Add].



NOTE

If "192.168.0.215" is displayed in [IP Address] in [Printer List]
The value is the default IP address of the printer. If you want to change the IP address, change it after the installation.
"Setting the IP Address"

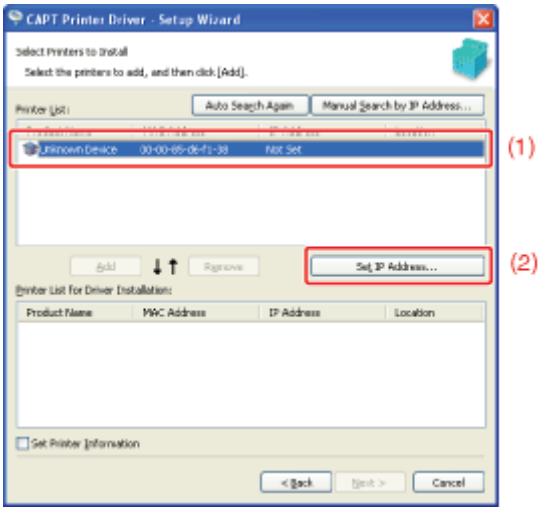
If you changed the IP address after the installation
Specify the port to be used again in the printer driver.
"Setting the IP Address"

2. **Proceed to Step 10.**

If [Unknown Device] is displayed in [Product Name]

1. Display the [Set IP Address] dialog box.

(1) Select [Unknown Device].
(2) Click [Set IP Address].



NOTE

If [Unknown Device] appears for multiple devices
Perform the following procedure.

1. Turn off all other devices except the printer or disconnect them from the network.
2. Click [Auto Search Again].
   (The printers on the network are searched for again.)
3. After installing the printer, restore all existing devices to their original condition.

---

2. Set the IP address.

(1) Enter the IP address of the printer.
[Get automatically]: Obtains an IP address using DHCP.
[Use the following IP address]: Allows you to set the IP address directly.
(Enter the IP address by separating the numbers with a period (.), for example, AAA.BBB.CCC.DDD.)

(2) Click [OK].

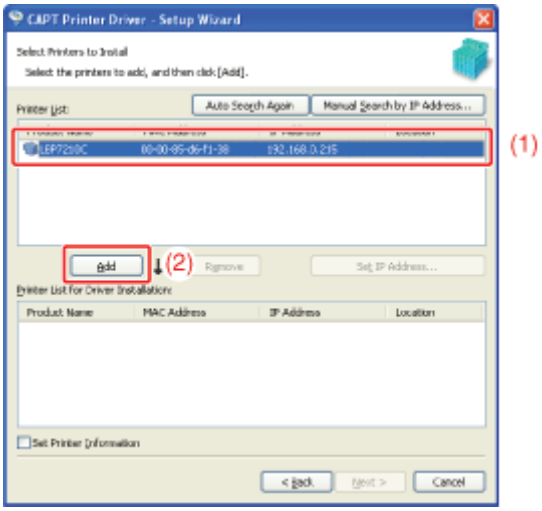
NOTE

When using DHCP
A DHCP server must be started.

For more details on configuring the DHCP server, ask your network administrator.

3. **Add [LBP7210C] to [Printer List for Driver Installation].**

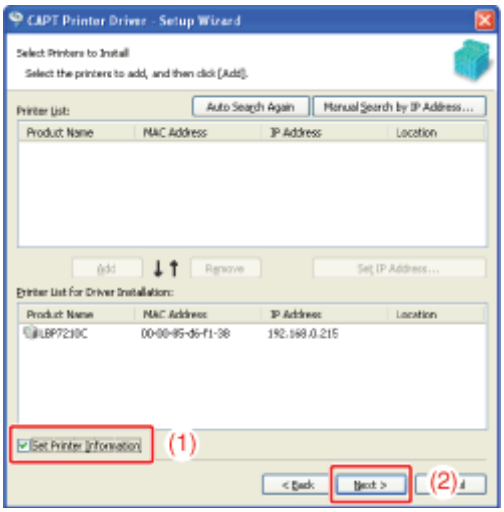
(1) Select [LBP7210C].
(2) Click [Add].



4. **Proceed to Step 10.**

10. **Perform the following procedure.**

(1) If you want to specify the settings for printer information such as the printer sharing settings, select the [Set Printer Information] check box.
(2) Click [Next].



If you selected the [Set Printer Information] check box

Proceed to Step 11.

If you did not select the [Set Printer Information] check box

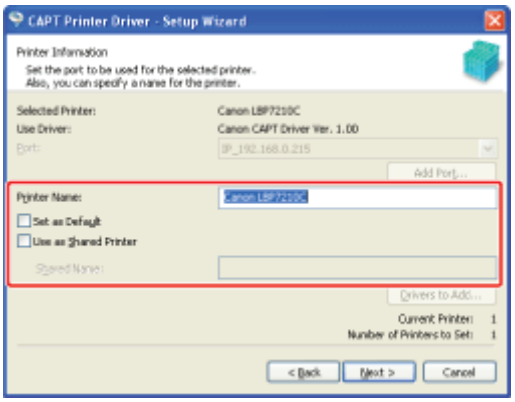
Proceed to Step 13.

NOTE

About the settings for printer information
You can specify the settings for printer information such as the printer sharing settings also in the [Printers and Faxes] folder or the [Printers] folder after the installation.

---

11. Set the printer information.



[Printer Name]: Enter a new name if you want to change the printer name.
[Set as Default]: Select the check box if you want to use this printer as the default printer.
[Use as Shared Printer]: Select the check box to use the computer on which the printer driver is being installed as the print server.
† For details on the print server environment (printer sharing), see "Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing)".
[Shared Name]: Change the shared name as needed.

If you selected the [Use as Shared Printer] check box

- **For a 32-bit operating system**

  If any client is using a 64-bit operating system, perform the following procedure.

  (1) Click [Drivers to Add].
  (2) Select [Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003, 2008 (x64)].
  (3) Click [OK].

- **For a 64-bit operating system**

  If any client is using a 32-bit operating system*, perform the following procedure.

  (1) Click [Drivers to Add].
  (2) Select [Windows XP/Vista/Server 2003, 2008 (x86)].

(3) Click [OK].

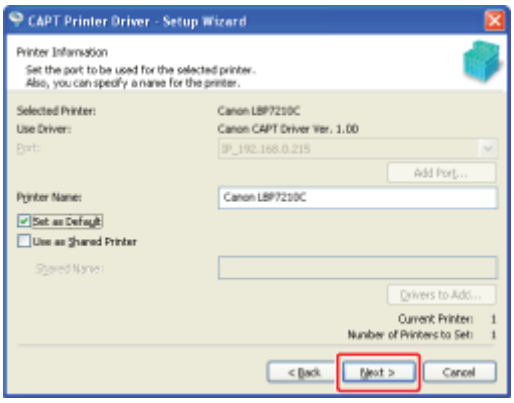
* If a 64-bit operating system is running on the print server, the download installation for the following client computers on which a 32-bit operating system is running is not supported due to the Windows restriction.

- Windows XP (on which no service pack or SP1 is installed)
- Windows Server 2003 (on which no service pack is installed)

If you download and install the printer driver on any of the above 32-bit operating systems, you may fail to install the driver and may not be able to open the printing preferences dialog box.

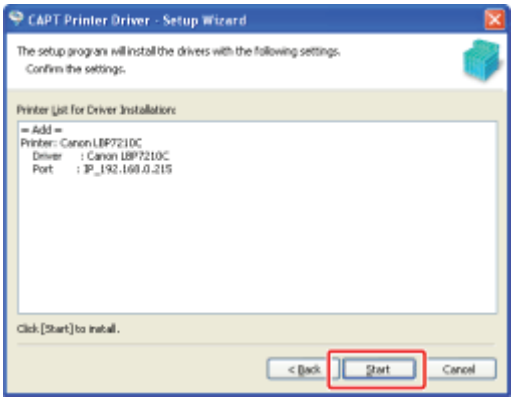
---

12. Click [Next].



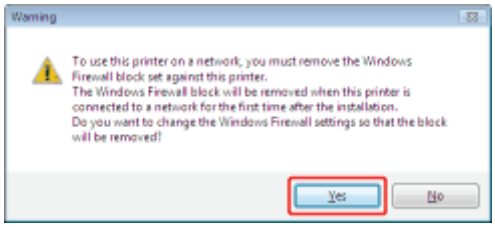
---

13. Click [Start].

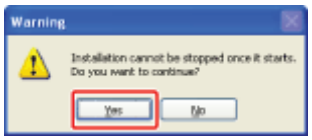


NOTE

If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
The following screen appears. Click [Yes].



14. Click [Yes].

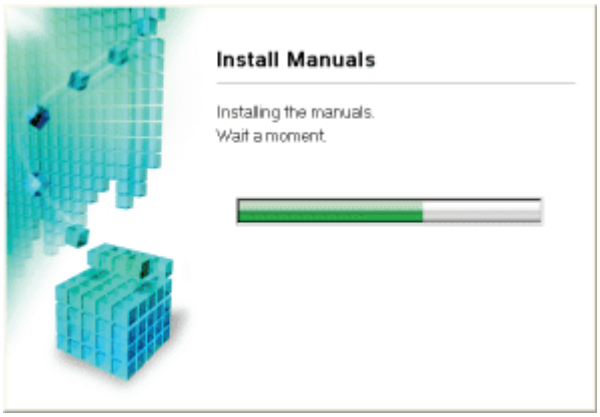


→ Installation of the printer driver starts.

† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.

Installation of the e-Manual starts automatically after the printer driver installation.
Wait until the following screen disappears.

† It may take time to install the software depending on your environment.

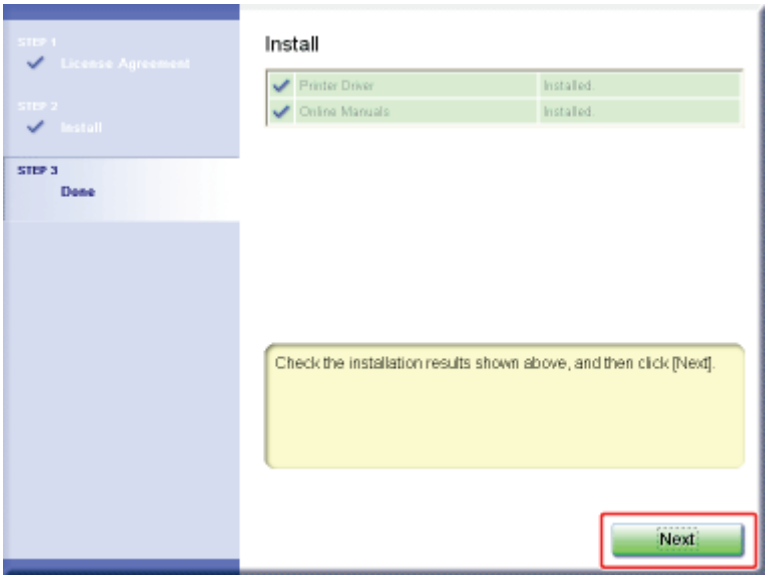


NOTE

If you selected [Custom Installation] in Step 4

The e-Manual is not installed.

15. Check the installation results, and then click [Next].



NOTE

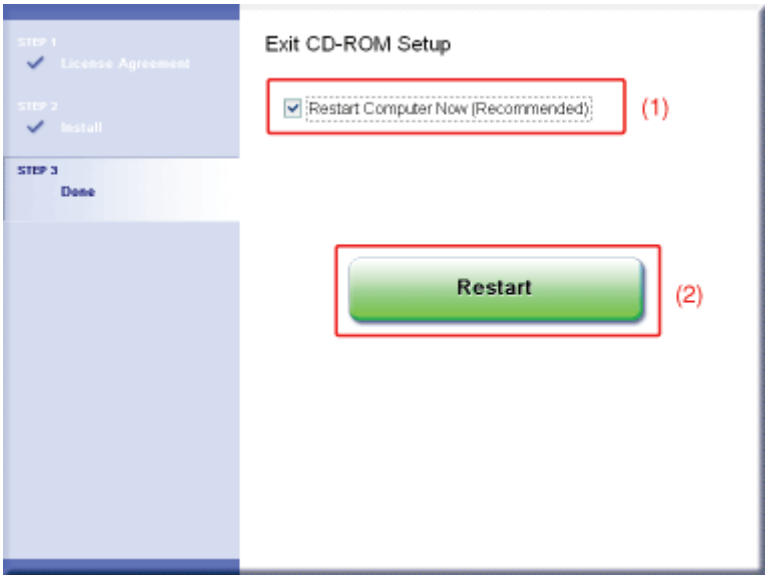
If the printer driver is not installed properly

"The Printer Driver Cannot Be Installed or Uninstalled"

---

16. **Restart your computer.**

(1) Select the [Restart Computer Now (Recommended)] check box.
(2) Click [Restart].



NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM

You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

When viewing the e-Manual

"Viewing the e-Manual"

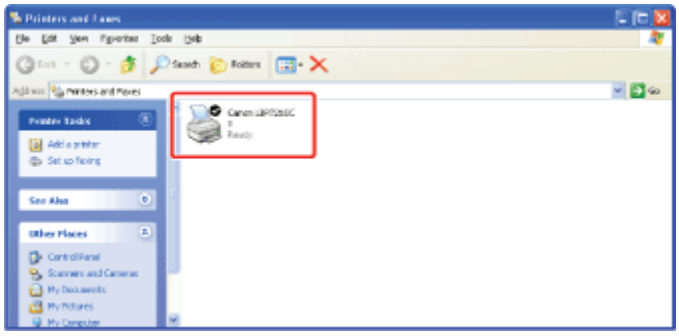
"Searching for Information"

Step 3: After the Installation

The following icons, folders, etc. are added to the following locations.

- **[Printers and Faxes] folder ([Printers] folder for Windows Vista and Server 2008)**

  Printer icon for this printer



- **Task tray**

  Printer Status Window icon

  † The icon does not appear if you did not restart your computer after the printer driver installation.

- **[All Programs] under the [Start] menu**

  [Canon Printer Uninstaller] - [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]

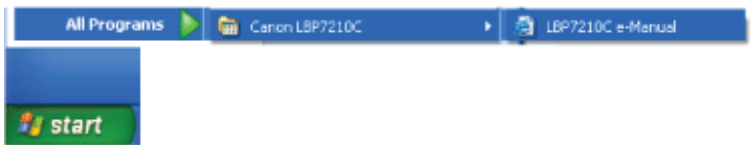
- **Desktop**

  [LBP7210C e-Manual]

  † The icon does not appear if you did not install the e-Manual.

- **[All Programs] under the [Start] menu**

  [Canon LBP7210C] - [LBP7210C e-Manual]



  †

The icon does not appear if you did not install the e-Manual.

NOTE

Configuring DNS, WINS, and other advanced network settings

"Configuring the Protocol Settings"

Created port

Standard TCP/IP Port is created.

[I-03] Manual Setup (Windows XP/Server 2003 Only)

This section describes the procedure for installing the printer driver with "Manual Setup"* on a computer connected to the printer with a LAN cable.

* "Manual Setup" allows you to set the IP address, create a port, and install the printer driver manually one at a time.

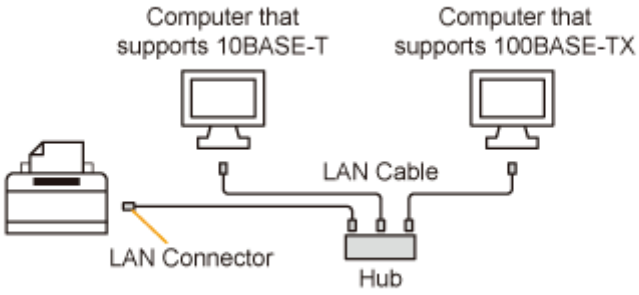
† **If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008, you cannot print using a port created by "Manual Setup". Be sure to install the printer driver using "Auto Setup".**
"Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"

Step 1: Connecting a LAN Cable
Step 2: Setting the IP Address
"Setting the IP Address"
Step 3: Creating a Port and Installing the Printer Driver
Step 4: After the Installation

Step 1: Connecting a LAN Cable

NOTE

About the network environment
This printer supports 10BASE-T and 100BASE-TX connections.

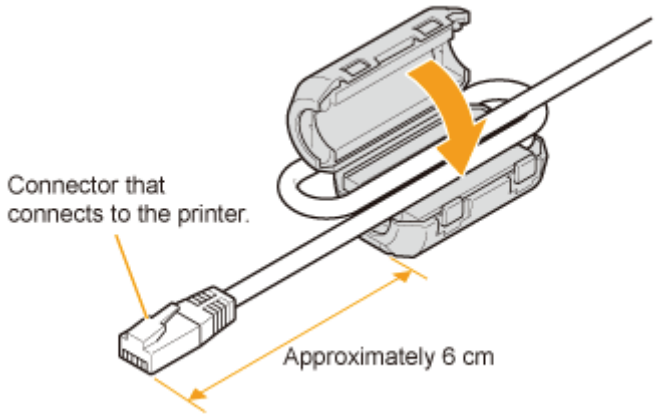


About the LAN cable

- This printer does not come with a LAN cable or a hub. Have cables or a hub ready as needed.
  Use a Category 5 twisted pair cable for the LAN.
- If you want to connect the printer to a 100BASE-TX Ethernet network, all the devices to be connected to the LAN (hub, LAN cable, and network board for computer) must support 100BASE-TX.
  Contact your local authorized Canon dealer for more details.

1. **Attach the ferrite core to the LAN cable as shown in the figure.**

Attach the ferrite core at 6 cm or less from the end of the connector connected to the printer.



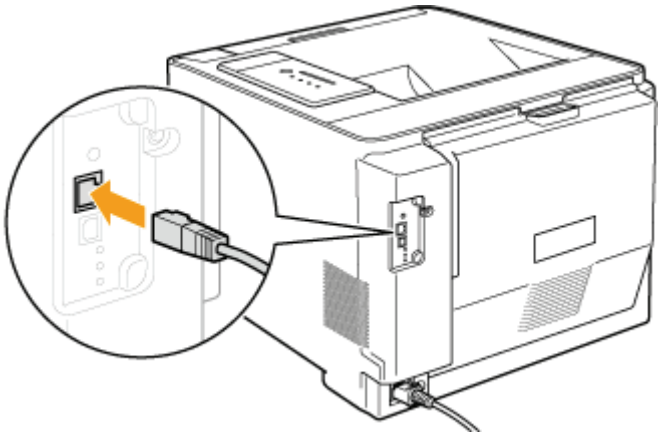
NOTE

About a ferrite core

A ferrite core is supplied with the printer.

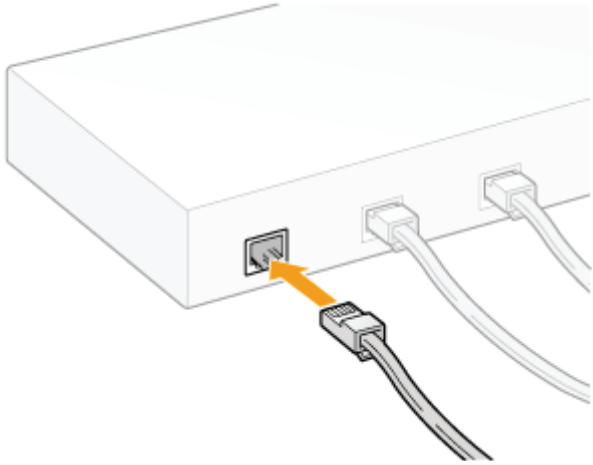
---

2. **Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector of this printer.**

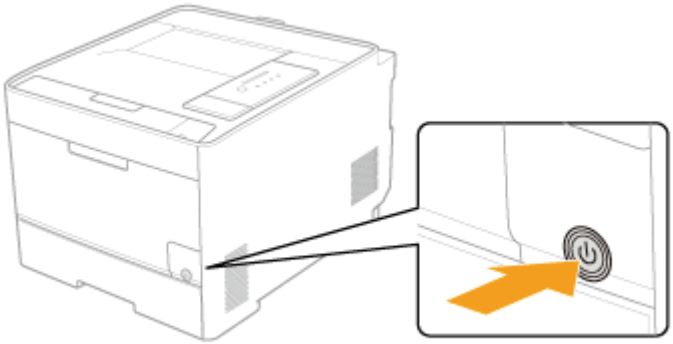


---

3. **Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the hub.**

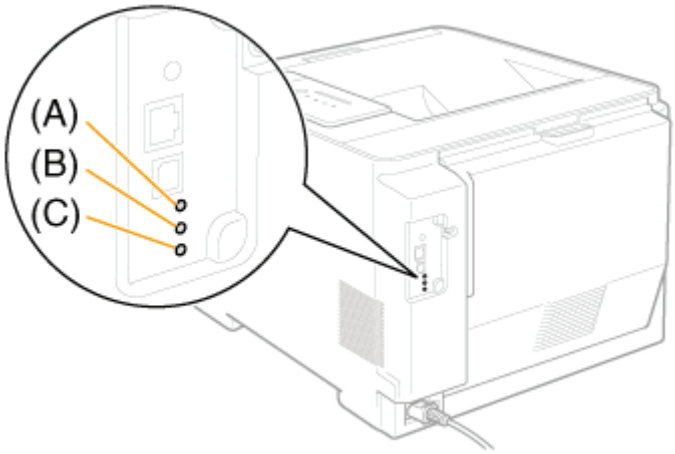


4. **Press the power switch to turn the printer on.**



5. **Make sure that the LNK indicator (B) on the printer's network board is on.**

- If the printer is connected by 10BASE-T
  If the LNK indicator (B) is on, the printer is connected properly.
- If the printer is connected by 100BASE-TX
  If the LNK indicator (B) and 100 indicator (A) are on, the printer is connected properly.



NOTE

When all the indicators are off

"All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off"

When the ERR indicator (C) is on or blinking

"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking"

Step 2: Setting the IP Address

For details on the procedure for setting the IP address, see "Setting the IP Address".

Step 3: Creating a Port and Installing the Printer Driver

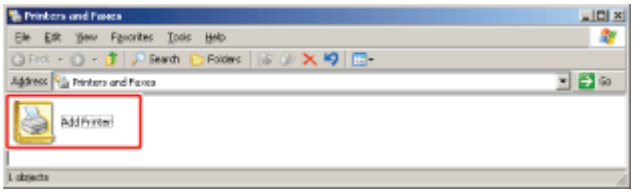
1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

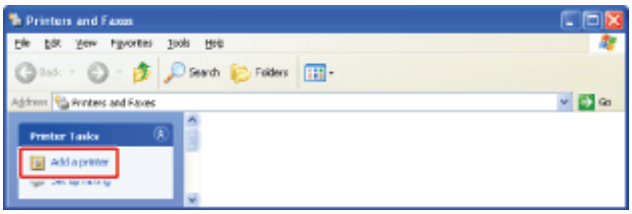
> **IMPORTANT**
>
> **If you are not sure about your administrative rights**
> Contact your system administrator.

3. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].

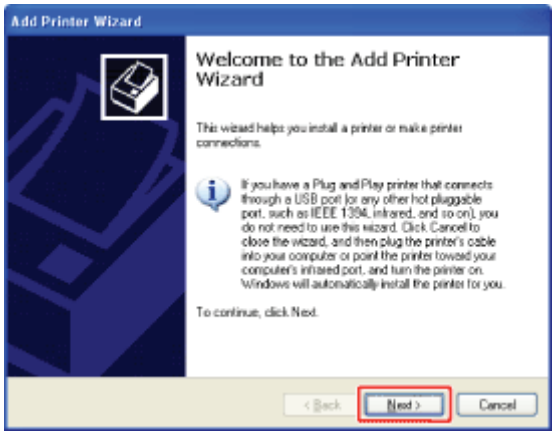
4. **Display [Add Printer Wizard].**
   - Windows Server 2003
     Double-click [Add Printer].



   - Windows XP
     Click [Add a printer].



5. Click [Next].

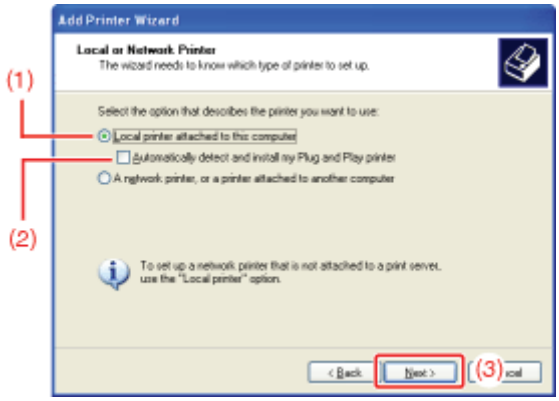


---

6. Specify the type of printer to be used.

- Windows XP and Server 2003

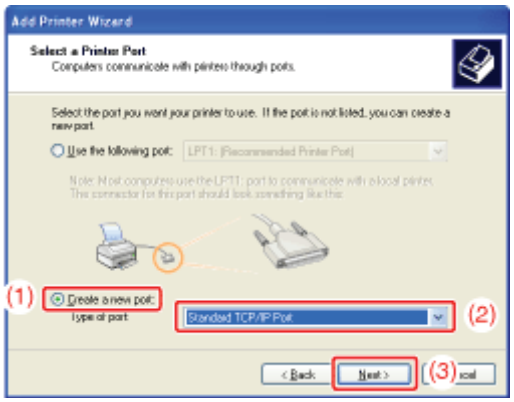
(1) Select [Local printer attached to this computer].
(2) Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box.
(3) Click [Next].



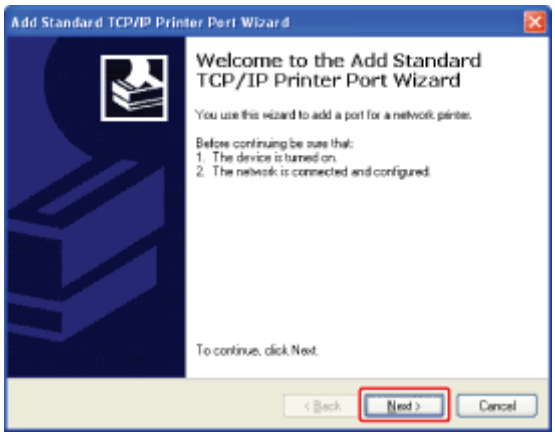
---

7. Create a port.

(1) Select [Create a new port].
(2) Select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
(3) Click [Next].



8. Click [Next].

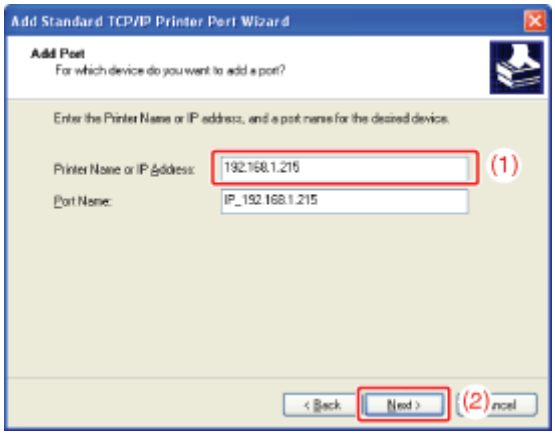


9. Enter the IP address or name of the printer.

(1) Enter the IP address or name* of the printer in [Printer Name or IP Address].

* The DNS name to be registered on the DNS server (up to 78 characters)

(2) Click [Next].



IMPORTANT

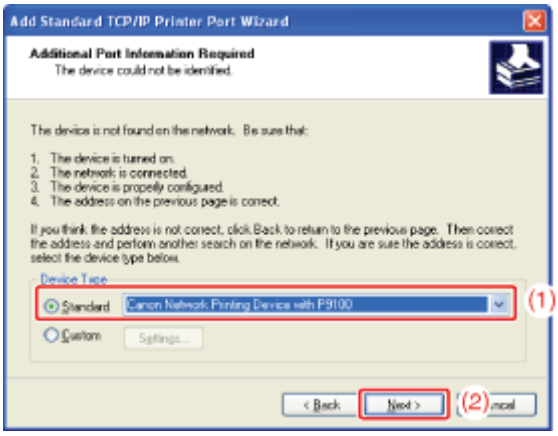
If the printer cannot be detected

The following screen appears. Perform either of the following operations.

- **Follow the on-screen instructions and search again for the printer.**
- **Specify the settings for [Device Type].**

  (1) Select [Standard], and then select [Canon Network Printing Device with P9100].

  (2) Click [Next].



NOTE

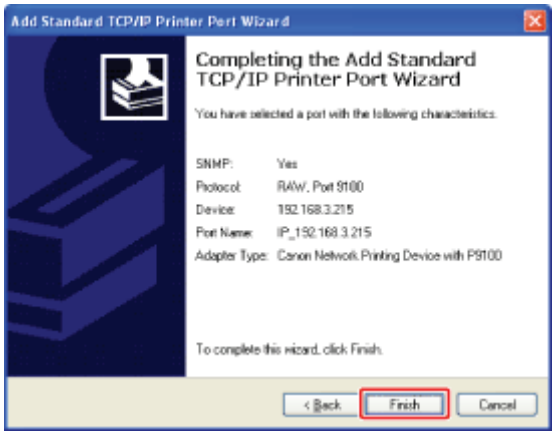
If you are not sure about the value to enter

The value to be entered varies depending on how the IP address of the printer was set.

For more details, see "Settings for Adding a Port" or ask your network administrator.

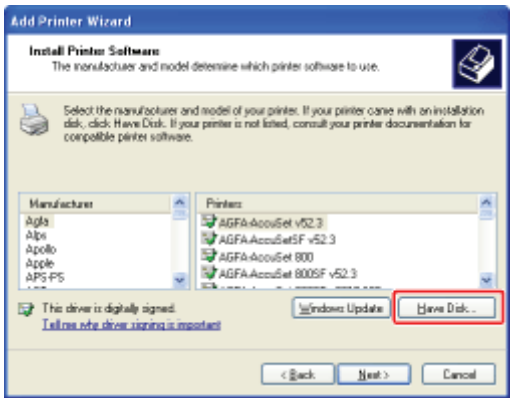
---

10. Click [Finish].



---

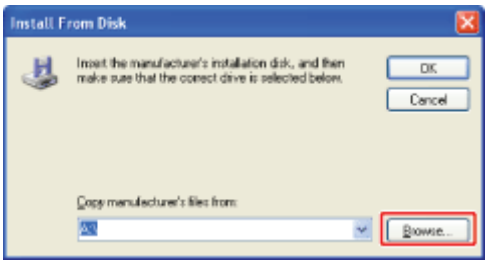
11. Click [Have Disk].



---

12. Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer, and then click [Browse].

If CD-ROM Setup appears, click [Exit].



---

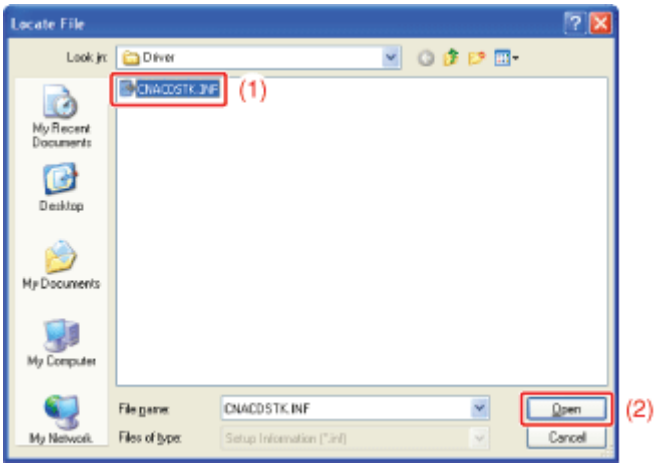
13. Open the folder in which the printer driver is included.

- For Windows XP and Server 2003 (32-bit version)
  Open the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [32bit] - [Driver].
- For Windows XP and Server 2003 (64-bit version)
  Open the folders in the supplied CD-ROM: [English] - [x64] - [Driver].

---

14. Open the INF file.

(1) Select the INF file.
(2) Click [Open].

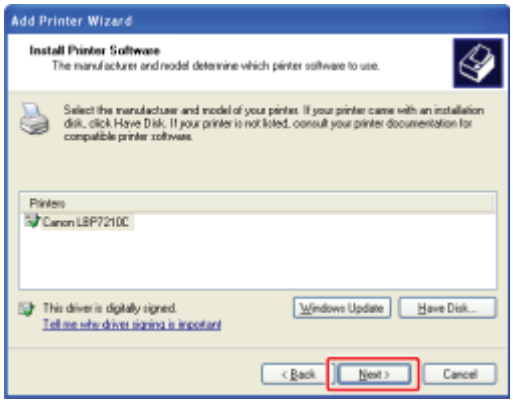


---

15. Click [OK].

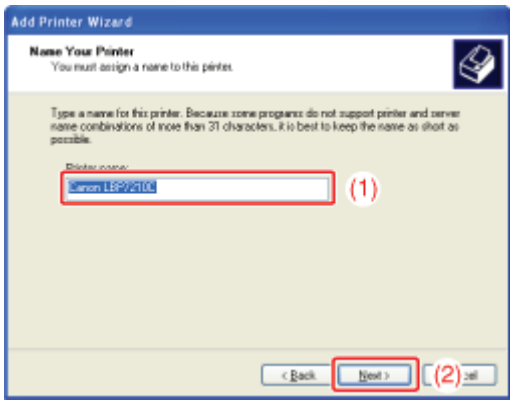
---

16. Click [Next].



17. Specify the printer name.

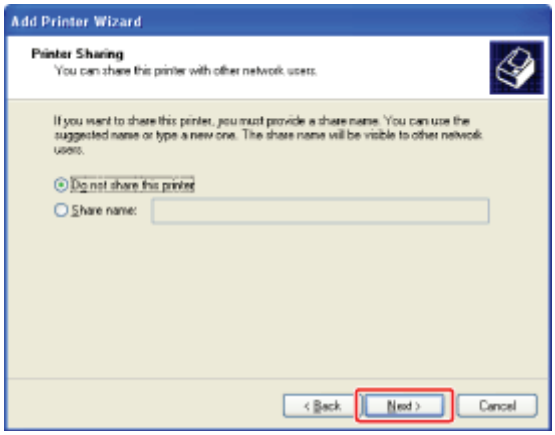
(1) Enter a new name if you want to change the printer name.
(2) Click [Next].



NOTE

If another printer driver has already been installed
The message appears. Select [Yes] or [No].

18. Click [Next].



NOTE

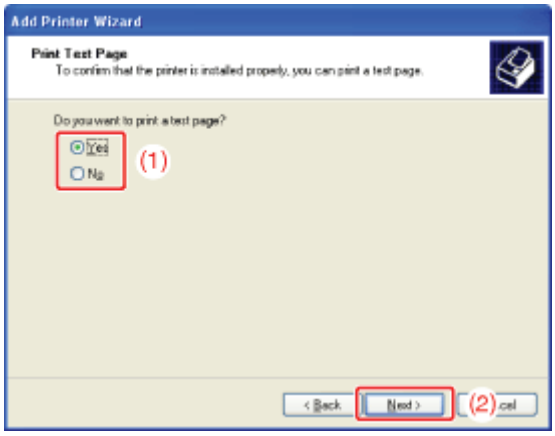
To share this printer on a network

Perform the following procedure.

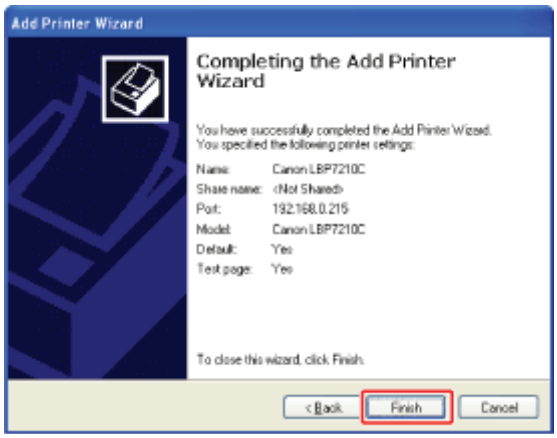
1. Select [Share name] and enter a name for the shared printer.
2. Click [Next].
3. The window for entering [Location] and [Comment] is displayed. Enter them as needed.
4. Click [Next].

19. Select whether to print a test page.

1. Select whether to print a test page.
2. Click [Next].



20. Click [Finish].



→ The installation starts.

When printing a test page, a confirmation dialog box appears. Click [OK] to close the dialog box.

NOTE

Removing the CD-ROM

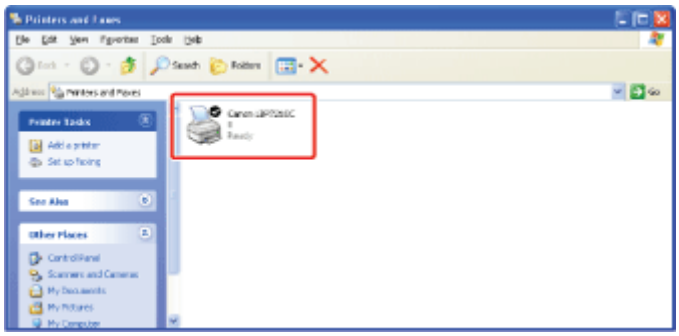
You can remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive after the installation is completed.

Step 4: After the Installation

The following icons and folders are added to the following locations.

- [Printers and Faxes] folder

  Printer icon for this printer



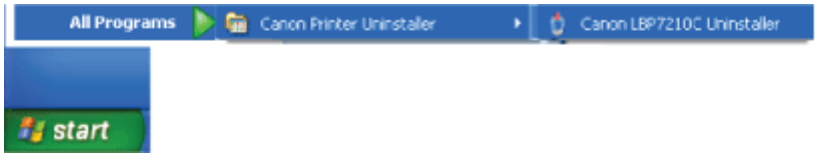
- Task tray

  Printer Status Window icon

  † The icon does not appear if you did not restart your computer after the printer driver installation.

- [All Programs] under the [Start] menu

  [Canon Printer Uninstaller] - [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]



[I-04] Setting the IP Address

There are the following three methods for setting the IP address.

- **Setting the IP Address Using NetSpot Device Installer**
  Set the IP address using NetSpot Device Installer in the supplied CD-ROM.
- **Setting the IP Address Using the ARP/PING Command**
  If you are using an operating system equipped with Windows Firewall, set the IP address using the ARP/PING command.
- **Setting the IP Address Using the Printer Status Window**
  If the printer driver is installed and the printer and computer are connected by a USB cable, set the IP address using the Printer Status Window.

If you changed the IP address of the printer after installing the printer driver, reset the port to be used for the printer driver.

- **After Changing the IP Address (Changing the Port)**

Setting the IP Address Using NetSpot Device Installer

IMPORTANT

If Windows Firewall is enabled

- It is recommended that you set the IP address using the ARP/PING command.
- If you want to set the IP address using NetSpot Device Installer, you need to add "NetSpot Device Installer" to Windows Firewall in advance. Perform either of the following procedures.

  • Adding "NetSpot Device Installer" to the [Exceptions] sheet in the [Windows Firewall] dialog box
  Readme of NetSpot Device Installer
  † To display Readme of NetSpot Device Installer, click [ ] in [NetSpot Device Installer for TCP/IP] in the [Additional Software Programs] screen in CD-ROM Setup.
  • Installing NetSpot Device Installer (You can add it to Windows Firewall during the installation.)
  "NetSpot Device Installer"

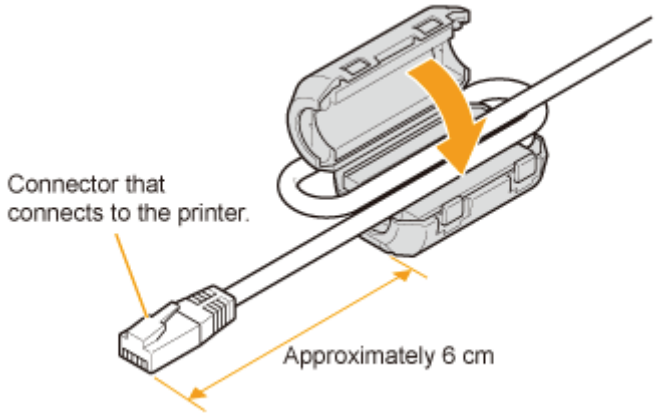
NOTE

About the screenshots of NetSpot Device Installer
The screenshots may be different from those actually you see on the screen.

How to install NetSpot Device Installer
This section describes the procedure for using NetSpot Device Installer without installing it.
For details on the procedures for installing NetSpot Device Installer, see "NetSpot Device Installer".

1. **Attach the ferrite core to the LAN cable as shown in the figure.**

Attach the ferrite core at 6 cm or less from the end of the connector connected to the printer.



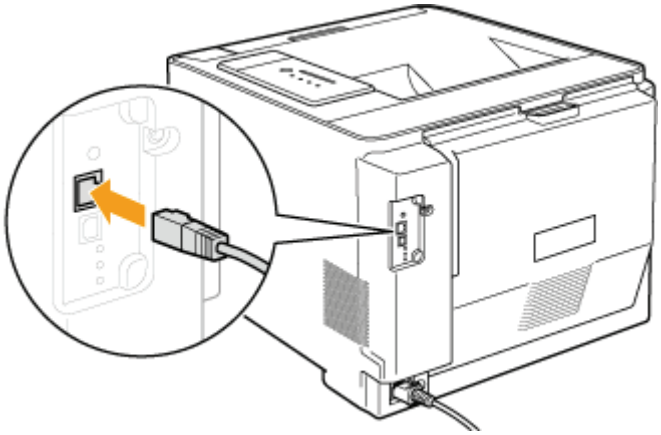
NOTE

About a ferrite core

A ferrite core is supplied with the printer.

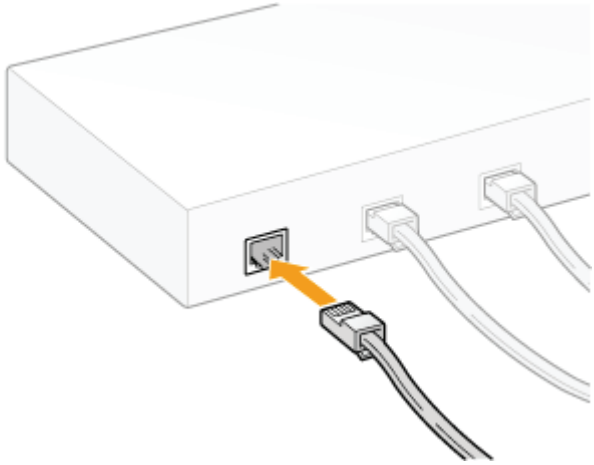
---

2. **Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector of this printer.**

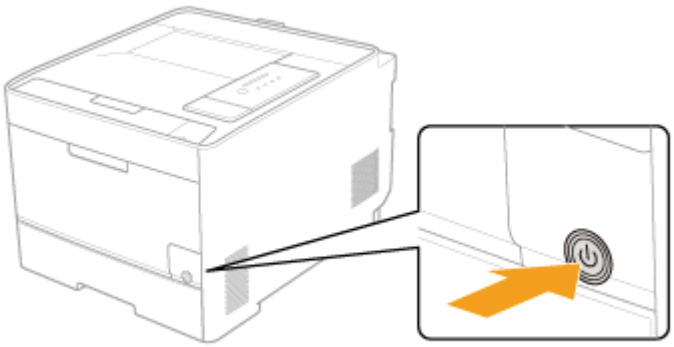


---

3. **Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the hub.**

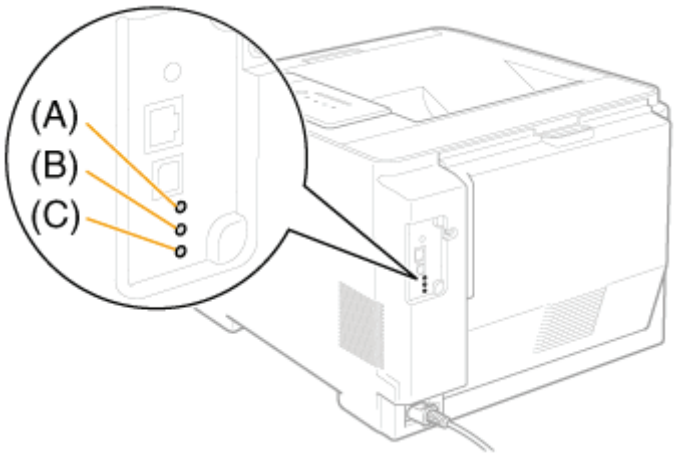


4. **Press the power switch to turn the printer on.**



5. **Make sure that the LNK indicator (B) on the printer's network board is on.**

- If the printer is connected by 10BASE-T
  If the LNK indicator (B) is on, the printer is connected properly.
- If the printer is connected by 100BASE-TX
  If the LNK indicator (B) and 100 indicator (A) are on, the printer is connected properly.



NOTE

When all the indicators are off

"All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off"

When the ERR indicator (C) is on or blinking

"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking"

---

6. Turn on the computer and start Windows.

---

7. Log on as a user with administrative rights.

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights

Contact your system administrator.

---

8. Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.

If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.

† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear

Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

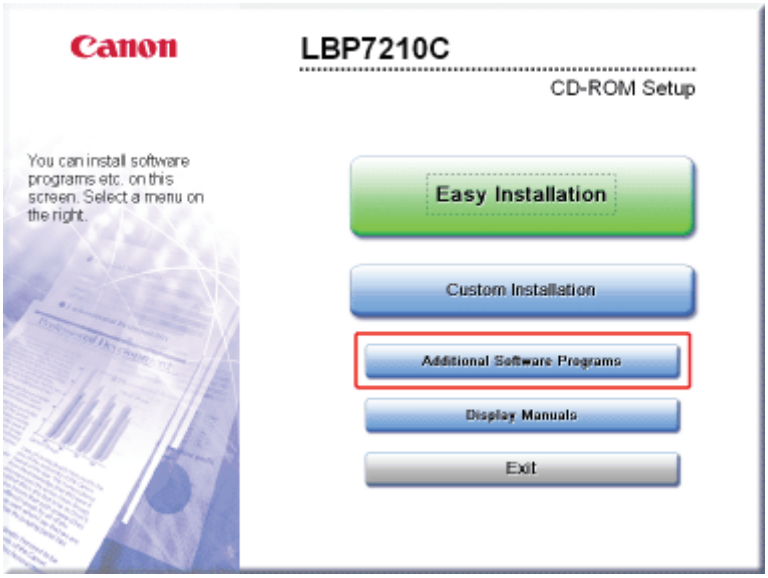
If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

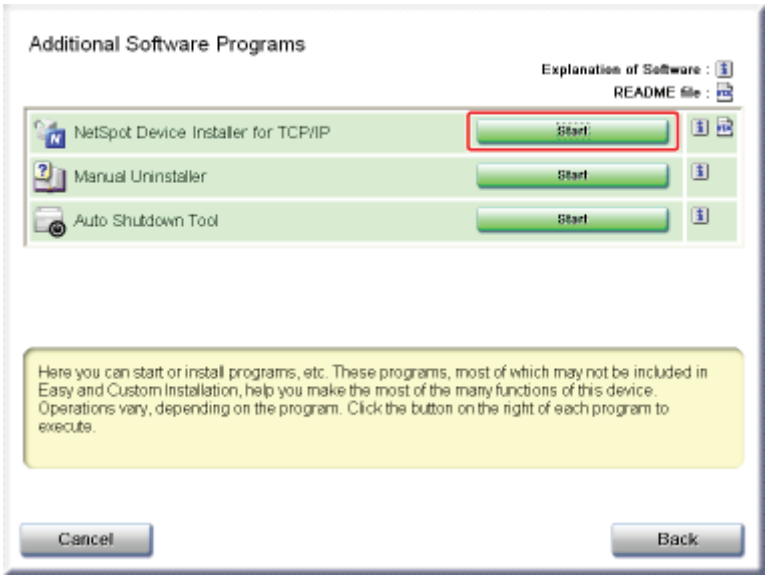
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

Click [Continue].

9. **Click [Additional Software Programs].**



10. **Click [Start] for [NetSpot Device Installer for TCP/IP].**



→ NetSpot Device Installer runs, and the target printer search starts.

NOTE

If the [License Agreement] dialog box appears
Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

11. **Set the IP address.**

- If [Status] is set to [Not Configured], and the device of which [Device Name] is a MAC address is displayed
- If any devices in which [IP Address] is set to [192.168.0.215] are displayed
- If your case falls within neither of the above cases

If [Status] is set to [Not Configured], and the device of which [Device Name] is a MAC address is displayed

See Help of NetSpot Device Installer and specify the initial settings for the IP address.

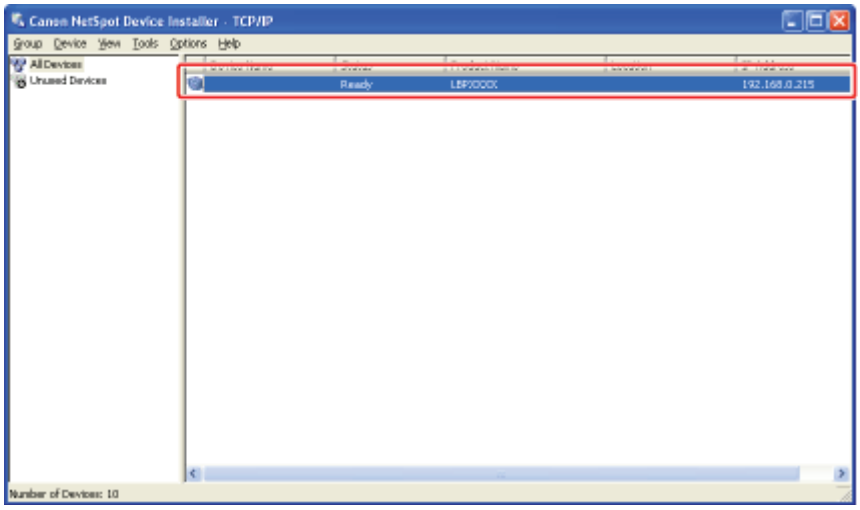
† Help is displayed by clicking [Help] in the [Help] menu.

NOTE

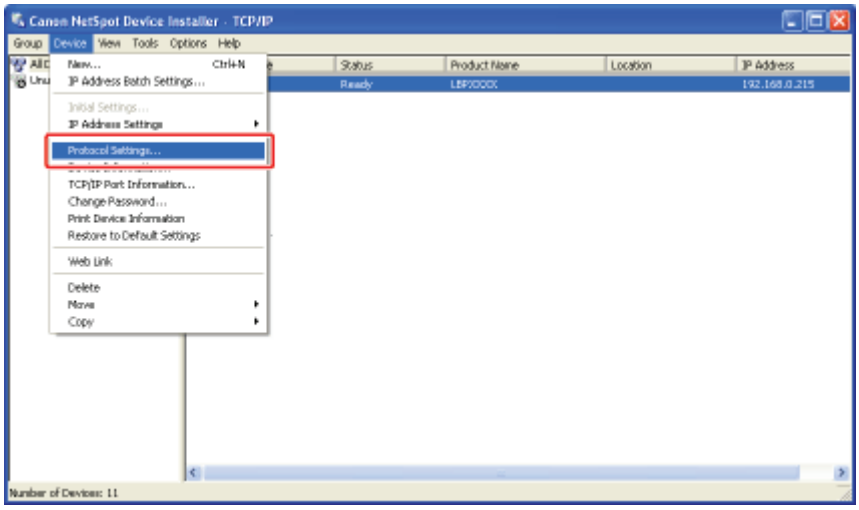
If you changed the IP address after installing the printer driver
Specify the port to be used again in the printer driver.
After Changing the IP Address (Changing the Port)

If any devices in which [IP Address] is set to [192.168.0.215] are displayed

1. **Select the device.**



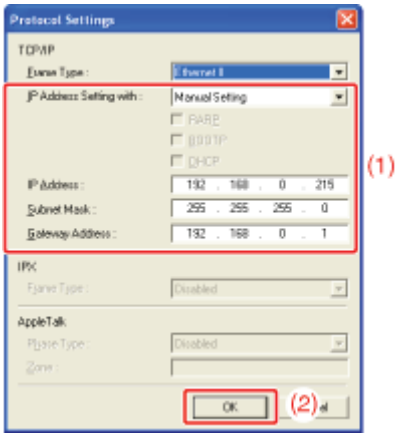
2. **Select [Protocol Settings] from the [Device] menu.**



---

3. Set the IP address.

(1) Specify each setting.
(2) Click [OK].



[IP Address Setting with]: Select the method for setting the IP address.

- [Manual Setting]: Allows you to set the IP address directly. The IP address entered in [IP Address] is set for the printer.
- [Auto Detect]: Obtains an IP address using RARP, BOOTP, or DHCP.
- [RARP]: Obtains an IP address using RARP. (The RARP daemon needs to be running.)
- [BOOTP]: Obtains an IP address using BOOTP. (The BOOTP daemon needs to be running.)
- [DHCP]: Obtains an IP address using DHCP. (The DHCP server needs to be running.)

[IP Address]: Enter the IP address of the printer.
[Subnet Mask]: Enter the subnet mask as needed.
[Gateway Address]: Enter the gateway address as needed.

NOTE

When selecting [RARP]

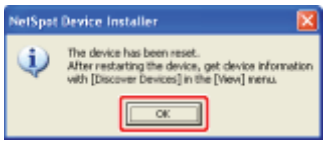
You cannot enter any values in [IP Address].

When selecting [BOOTP] or [DHCP]
You cannot enter any values in [IP Address], [Subnet Mask], and [Gateway Address].

If RARP, BOOTP, or DHCP cannot be used
Select [Manual Setting].

---

4. **When the message <The device has been reset.> appears, click [OK].**



→ To perform a reset operation properly, wait for approximately 20 seconds or longer as is after clicking [OK].
After completing the reset, the settings are enabled.

NOTE

If you changed the IP address after installing the printer driver
Specify the port to be used again in the printer driver.
After Changing the IP Address (Changing the Port)

If your case falls within neither of the above cases

A device on the network may have the same IP address as that set for the printer.
In this case, perform the following procedure.

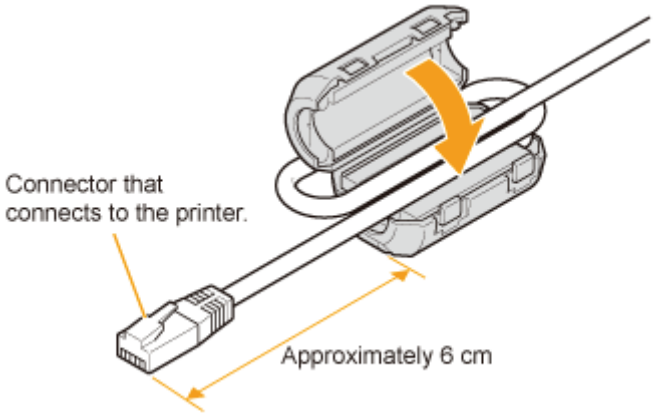
1. Turn off the device that has the same IP address or remove the device from the network.
2. Repeat the procedure from the beginning.
3. After completing the settings for this printer, restore the devices to their original states.

† If you cannot set the IP address using NetSpot Device Installer including the case where this procedure is not possible, set the IP address using the ARP/PING command.
Setting the IP Address Using the ARP and PING Commands

Setting the IP Address Using the ARP and PING Commands

1. **Attach the ferrite core to the LAN cable as shown in the figure.**

Attach the ferrite core at 6 cm or less from the end of the connector connected to the printer.

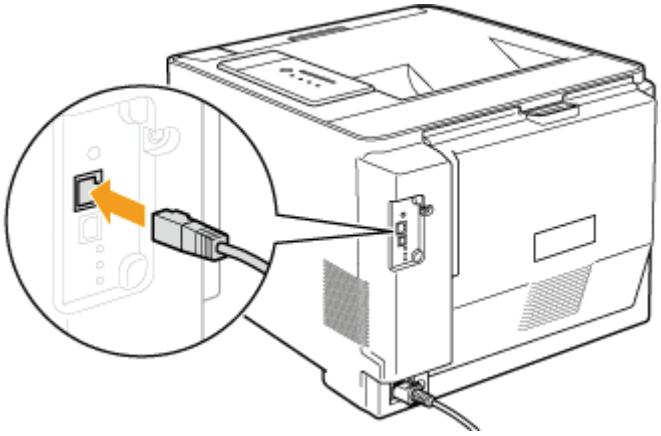


NOTE

About a ferrite core
A ferrite core is supplied with the printer.

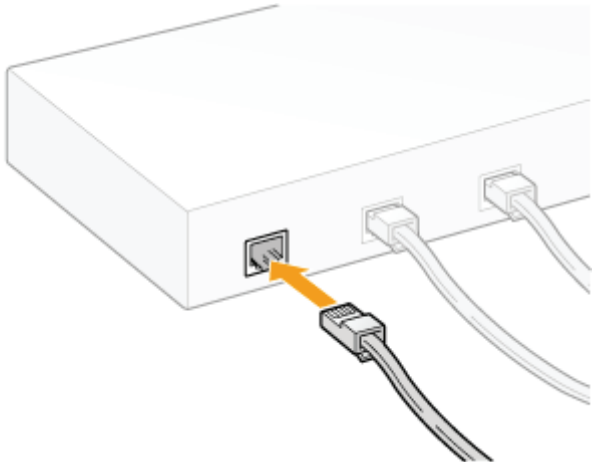
---

2. **Connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector of this printer.**



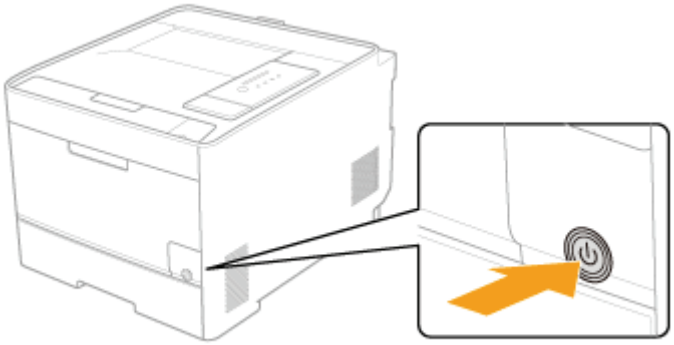
---

3. **Connect the other end of the LAN cable to the hub.**



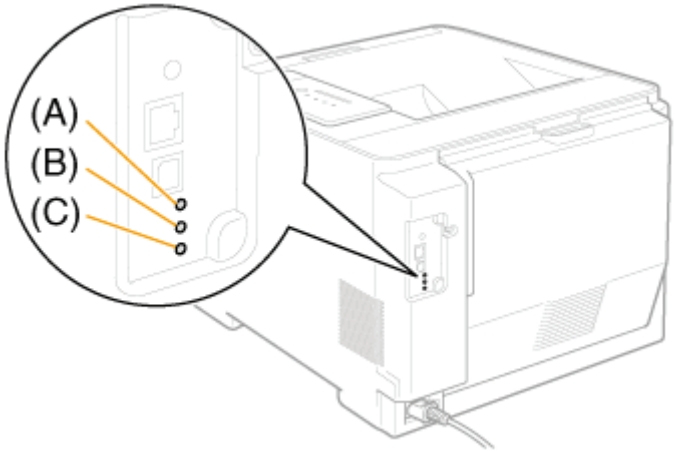
---

4. **Press the power switch to turn the printer on.**



5. **Make sure that the LNK indicator (B) on the printer's network board is on.**

- If the printer is connected by 10BASE-T
  If the LNK indicator (B) is on, the printer is connected properly.
- If the printer is connected by 100BASE-TX
  If the LNK indicator (B) and 100 indicator (A) are on, the printer is connected properly.



NOTE

When all the indicators are off

"All the Indicators on the Network Board Are Off"

When the ERR indicator (C) is on or blinking

"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is On"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Blinks at an Interval of Four Times"
"The ERR Indicator on the Network Board Is Constantly Blinking"

6. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

7.

7. Log on as a user with administrative rights.

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

---

8. Run Command Prompt.

- Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Command Prompt].

---

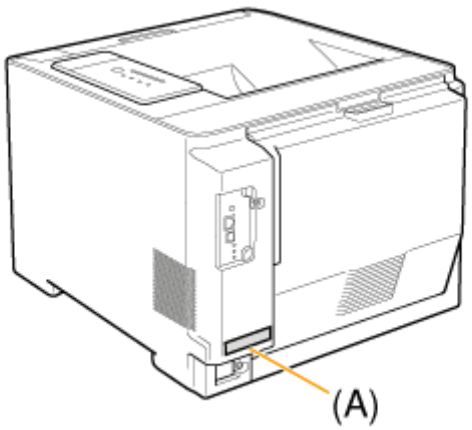
9. Enter "arp -s <IP address> <MAC address>", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

<IP address>: Enter the IP address to assign to the printer.
Specify the address with four numbers (from 0 to 255) separated with a period (.).
<MAC address>: Enter the MAC address of the printer.
Separate the number every two digits with a hyphen (-).

- Input Example: "arp -s 192.168.0.215 00-00-85-05-70-31"

NOTE

MAC address location
The MAC address is listed at (A) on the printer.



---

10. Enter "ping <IP address> -l 479", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

<IP address>: Enter the same IP address as the one entered in Step 9.

† Enter a lowercase "L" for "-l".

- Input Example: "ping 192.168.0.215 -l 479"

→ The IP address is set for the printer.

† The subnet mask and gateway address are set to [0.0.0.0].

---

11. Enter "exit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

→ Command Prompt closes.

NOTE

If you changed the IP address after installing the printer driver

Specify the port to be used again in the printer driver.

After Changing the IP Address (Changing the Port)

Setting the IP Address Using the Printer Status Window

1. Display the Printer Status Window.

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

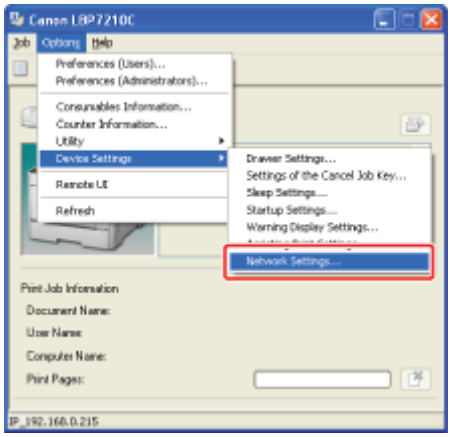
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Network Settings].

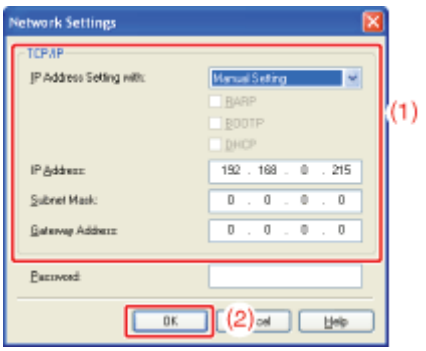


---

3. Set the IP address.

(1) Specify each setting.

(2) Click [OK].



[IP Address Setting with]: Select the method for setting the IP address.

[Manual Setting]: Allows you to set the IP address directly. The IP address entered in [IP Address] is set for the printer.

[Auto Detect]: Obtains an IP address using RARP, BOOTP, or DHCP.

[RARP]: Obtains an IP address using RARP. (The RARP daemon needs to be running.)

[BOOTP]: Obtains an IP address using BOOTP. (The BOOTP daemon needs to be running.)

[DHCP]: Obtains an IP address using DHCP. (The DHCP server needs to be running.)

[IP Address]: Enter the IP address of the printer.

[Subnet Mask]: Enter the subnet mask as needed.

[Gateway Address]: Enter the gateway address as needed.

[Password]: Enter the administrator password for the printer (the password that is specified in the Remote UI).
If the password is not specified, it is not required to enter any value.

NOTE

When selecting [RARP]
You cannot enter any values in [IP Address].

When selecting [BOOTP] or [DHCP]
You cannot enter any values in [IP Address], [Subnet Mask], and [Gateway Address].

If RARP, BOOTP, or DHCP cannot be used
Select [Manual Setting].

If you changed the IP address after installing the printer driver
Specify the port to be used again in the printer driver.
After Changing the IP Address (Changing the Port)

After Changing the IP Address (Changing the Port)

If you changed the IP address or name of the printer (the DNS name to be registered on the DNS server) after installing the printer driver, you need to change the port to be used in the printer driver.

† **You cannot print unless you change the port.**

IMPORTANT

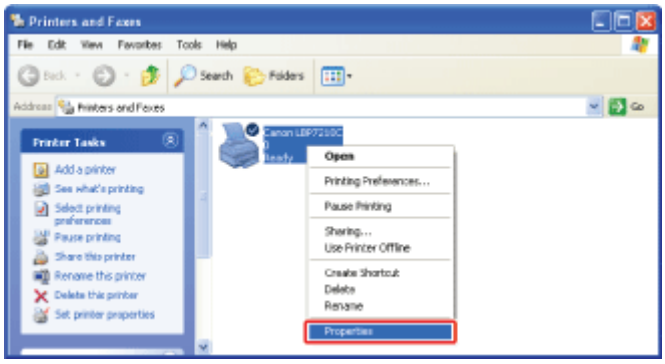
If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
You cannot use Standard TCP/IP Port to be created here.
Uninstall the printer driver, and then install the printer driver again from CD-ROM Setup.
"Uninstalling the Printer Driver Using [Canon LBP7210C Uninstaller]"
"Auto Setup (Recommended Method)"

---

1. **Open the [Printers and Faxes] or [Printers] folder.**
   - Windows XP Professional and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Faxes].
   - Windows XP Home Edition
     From the [Start] menu, select [Control Panel], and then click [Printers and Other Hardware] → [Printers and Faxes].

---

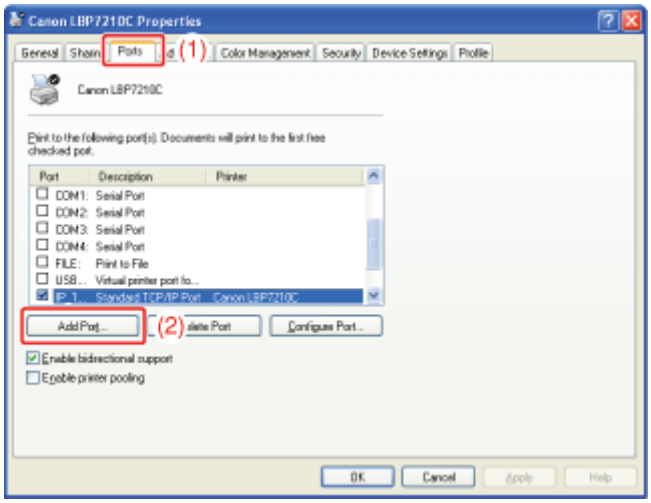
2. **Right-click the icon for this printer, and then select [Properties] from the pop-up menu.**



---

3. **Perform the following procedure.**

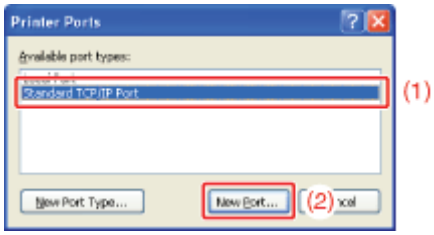
(1) Display the [Ports] sheet.
(2) Click [Add Port].



---

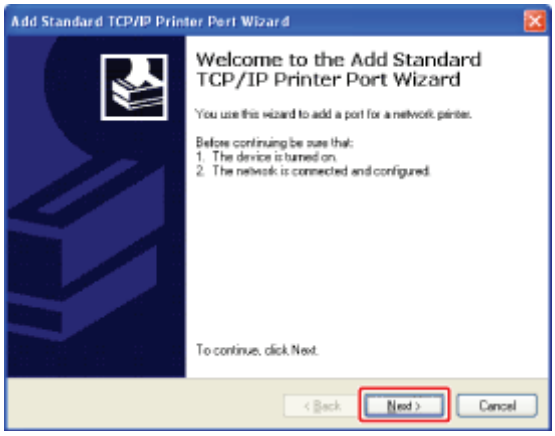
4. Select the port type.

(1) Select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
(2) Click [New Port].



---

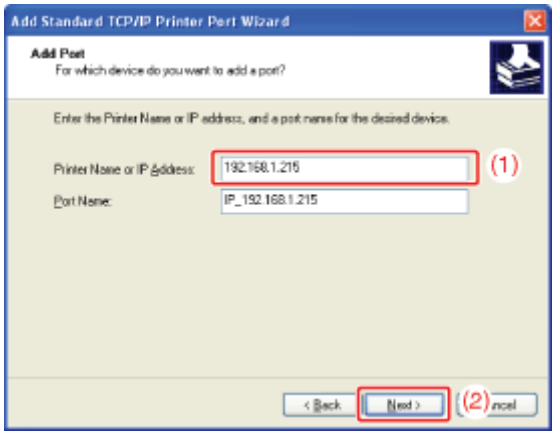
5. Click [Next].



---

6. Enter the new IP address or name of the printer.

(1) Enter the IP address or name* of the new printer in [Printer Name or IP Address].
* The DNS name to be registered on the DNS server (up to 78 characters)
(2) Click [Next].



IMPORTANT

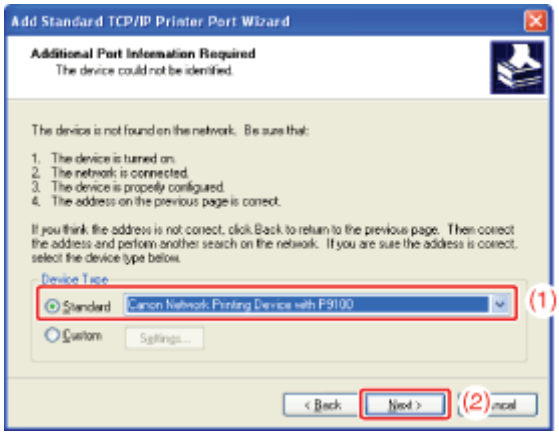
If the printer cannot be detected

The following screen appears. Perform either of the following operations.

- **Follow the on-screen instructions and search again for the printer.**
- **Specify the settings for [Device Type].**

  (1) Select [Standard], and then select [Canon Network Printing Device with P9100].

  (2) Click [Next].



NOTE

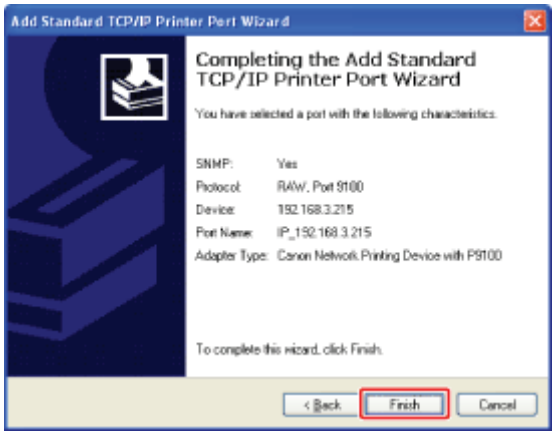
If you are not sure about the value to enter

The value to be entered varies depending on how the IP address of the printer was set.

For more details, see "Settings for Adding a Port" or ask your network administrator.

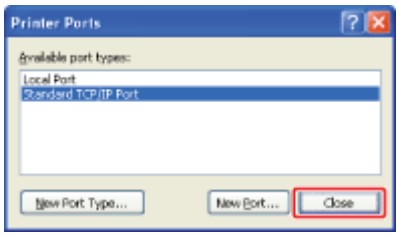
---

7. **Click [Finish].**



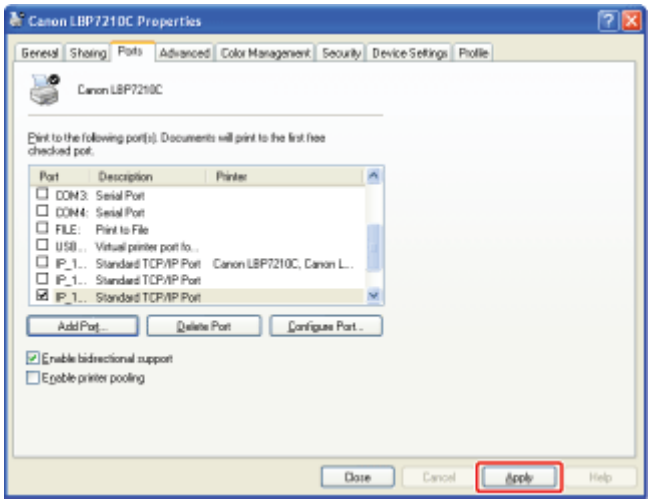
---

8. Click [Close].



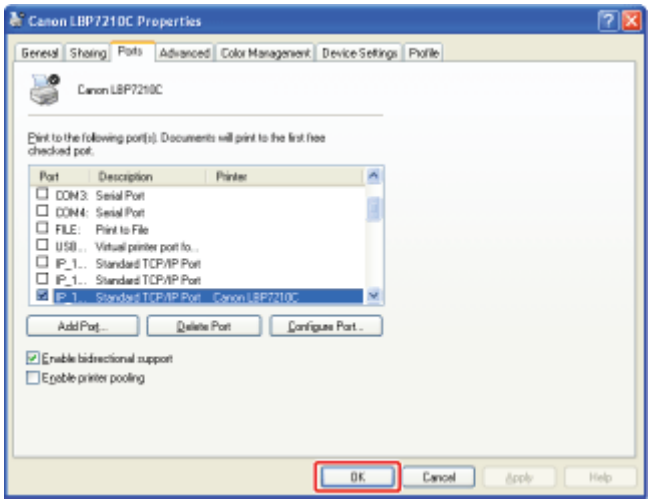
---

9. Click [Apply].



---

10. Click [OK].



NOTE

Deleting an unnecessary port

Select the port you want to delete on the [Ports] sheet, and then click [Delete Port].

[I-05] Configuring the Protocol Settings

You can configure the protocol settings using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.
- **NetSpot Device Installer**
  You can configure the basic protocol settings using the Canon software, NetSpot Device Installer, in the supplied CD-ROM.
  If you want to configure the settings such as the DNS server settings, use the Remote UI or FTP Client.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

Specifying the settings using NetSpot Device Installer
"NetSpot Device Installer"

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**

→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

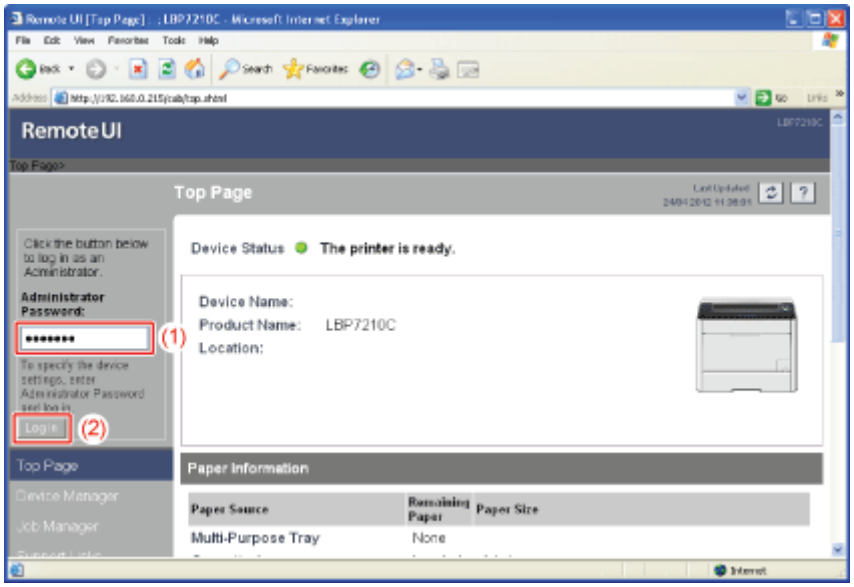
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

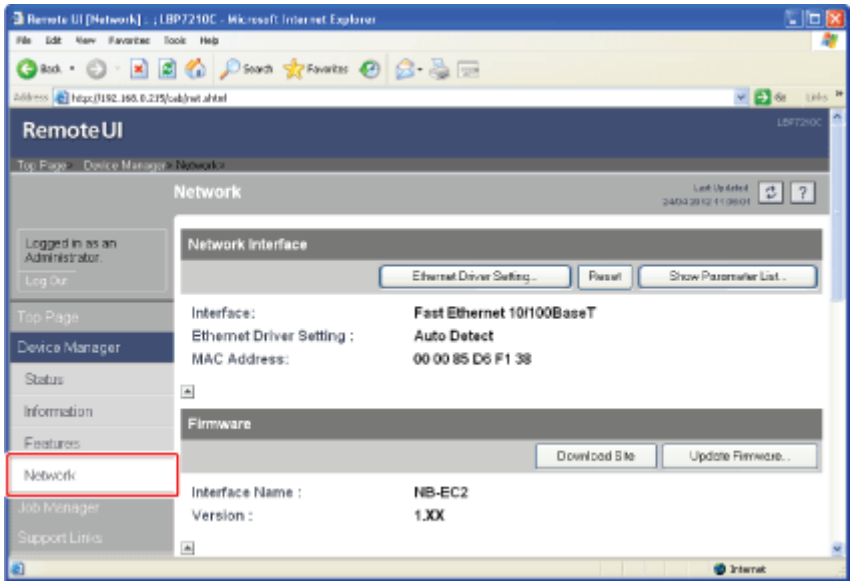


NOTE

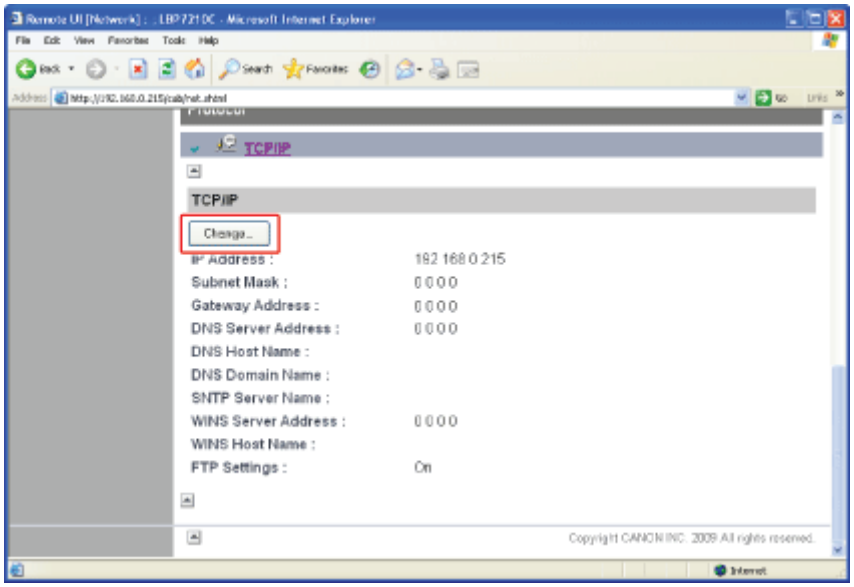
If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

---

4. Select [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.



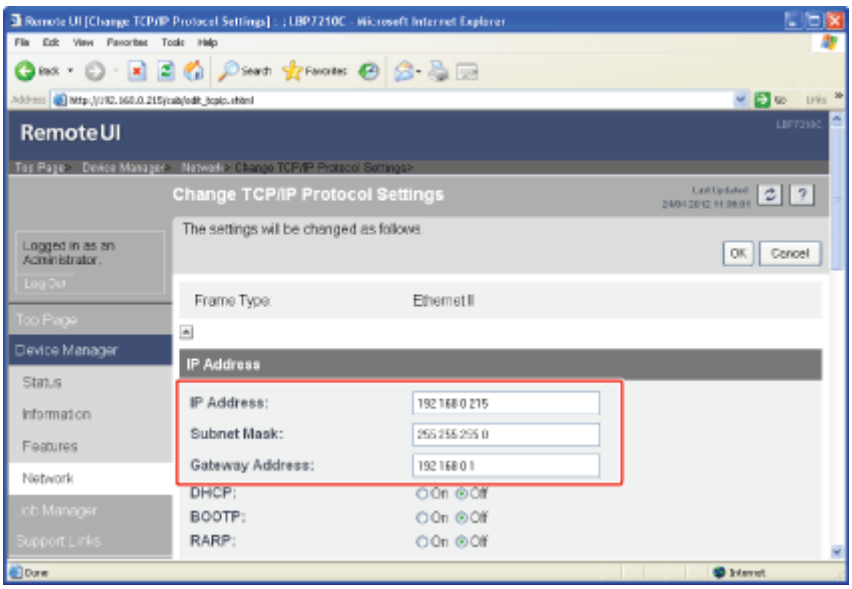
5. **Click [Change] under [TCP/IP].**



6. **Configure the protocol settings.**
   - Setting the IP Address
   - Configuring the DNS Settings
   - Configuring the WINS Settings
   - Configuring the FTP Settings
   - Configuring the SNTP Settings (Notifying the printer of the Time via an SNTP Server)
   - Configuring the Multicast Discovery Settings

Setting the IP Address

1. **Specify [IP Address], [Subnet Mask], and [Gateway Address].**



[IP Address]: **Enter the IP address of the printer.**
[Subnet Mask]: **Enter the subnet mask that is being used on the TCP/IP network.**
[Gateway Address]: Enter the gateway address that is being used on the TCP/IP network.

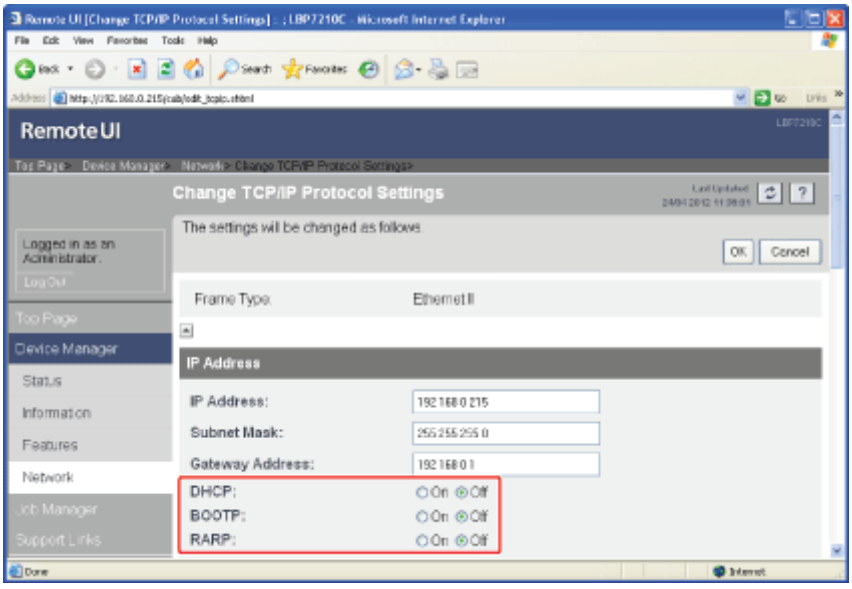
NOTE

When using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP
After the network board of the printer is reset, the values obtained from DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP are displayed.
(If the values have been specified previously, they overwrite the obtained ones.)

If you changed the IP address
If you changed the IP address of the printer after installing the printer driver, reset the port to be used for the printer driver.
For details on the procedure for resetting the port, see "Setting the IP Address".

---

2. **Select [On] for the option to be used when setting the IP address, as needed.**



As well as by assigning the IP address directly, you can set the IP address by using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP.
When restarting or resetting the printer, whether the options for which [On] is selected are available is checked, and the IP address is assigned by the method that is determined to be available the soonest. The options for which [Off] is specified are not checked.
If you can use none of these, assign the IP address set in [IP Address].

IMPORTANT

For details on the procedure for setting a port when using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP
See "Settings for Adding a Port" or ask your network administrator.

NOTE

When using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP

- Because it takes one to two minutes to check whether DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP are available, it is recommended that you set the unused protocol(s) to [Off].
- Each server or daemon (the DHCP server, BOOTP daemon, or RARP daemon) must be running on the network.
- Even if you are using DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP, specify the settings for [IP Address], [Subnet Mask], and [Gateway Address] manually. If you cannot obtain information from the servers of DHCP, BOOTP, and RARP, the values specified manually are used.

When using DHCP
If you cycle the power of the printer, you may not be able to print. This is because a different IP address from the one that has been used is assigned.
When using DHCP, consult your network administrator and perform either of the following settings.

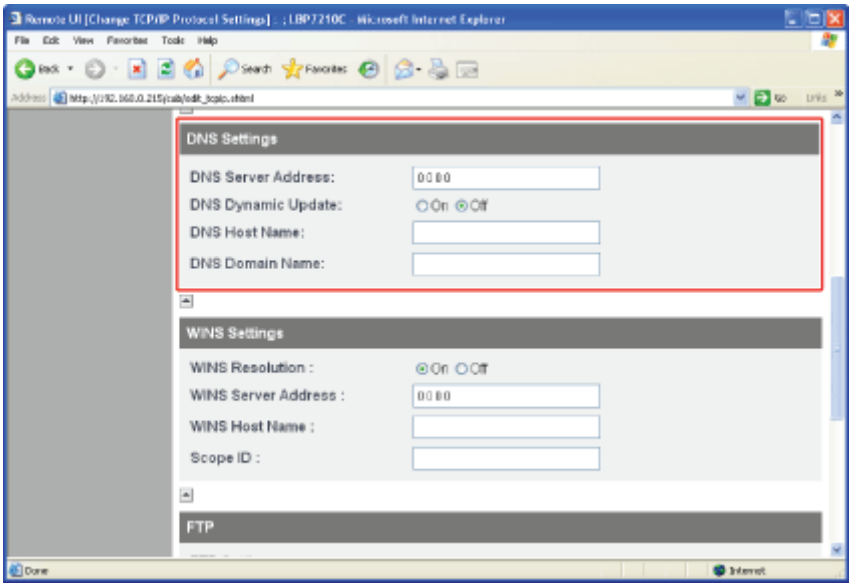
- Specifying the DNS Dynamic Update function

  Configuring the DNS Settings
- Specifying the settings so that the same IP address is always assigned when the printer starts up

3. **Proceed to Step 7 if you do not specify the settings for the other options.**

Configuring the DNS Settings

1. **Specify the settings for [DNS Settings].**



[DNS Server Address]:	**Enter the IP address of the DNS server.**
[DNS Dynamic Update]:	**If you want to use the DNS Dynamic Update function, set the option to [On].** **If you do not want to use the DNS Dynamic Update function, set the option to [Off].**
[DNS Host Name]:	**Enter the host name to be added to the DNS server.**
[DNS Domain Name]:	**Enter the name of the domain to which the printer belongs.** • **Input Example: "example.com"**

† **In the following case, DNS is to be used.**

When performing name resolution using the SNTP server name to set the SNTP client function (When you specify the SNTP server name)

Configuring the SNTP Settings (Notifying the printer of the Time via an SNTP Server)

IMPORTANT

DNS Dynamic Update

DNS Dynamic Update is a function that adds the IP address of the device and the names specified as the host name and domain name to the DNS server automatically.
This function can be used in the environment in which a Dynamic DNS server is being used.

When using the DNS Dynamic Update function

You need to set the IP address, host name, and domain name of the DNS server.

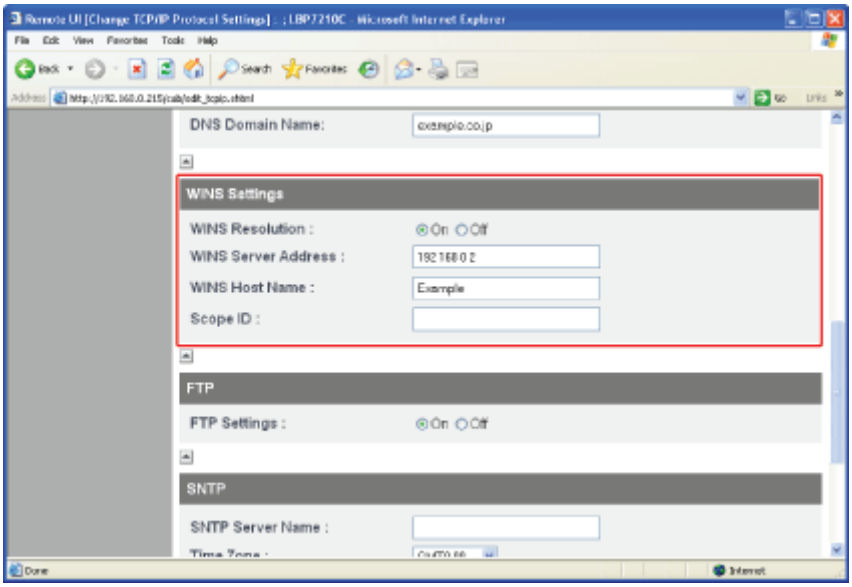
For details on the procedure for setting a port when using DNS

See "Settings for Adding a Port" or ask your network administrator.

2. **Proceed to Step 7 if you do not specify the settings for the other options.**

Configuring the WINS Settings

1. **Specify the settings for [WINS Settings].**



If you want to use WINS Resolution

1. Set [WINS Resolution] to [On].
2. Enter the IP address of the WINS server in [WINS Server Address].
3. Enter the host name to be added to the WINS server in [WINS Host Name].
4. In [Scope ID], enter the Scope ID of the NetBIOS name that you want to search for from the WINS server.
   You can refine the search by separating the character string with "." (period).

If you do not want to use WINS Resolution

Set [WINS Resolution] to [Off].

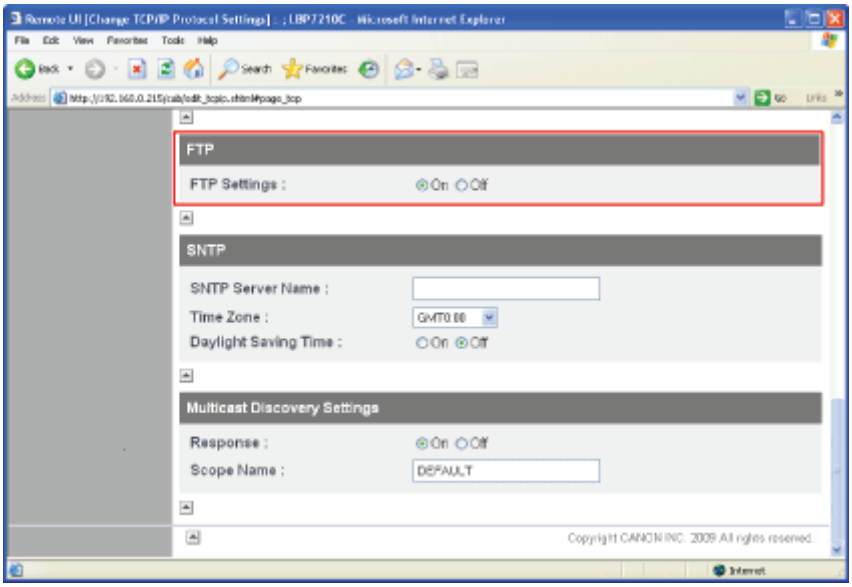
---

2. **Proceed to Step 7 if you do not specify the settings for the other options.**

Configuring the FTP Settings

1. **Specify the setting for [FTP].**

Set [FTP Settings] to [On] when using the FTP server.
Set [FTP Settings] to [Off] when not using the FTP server.

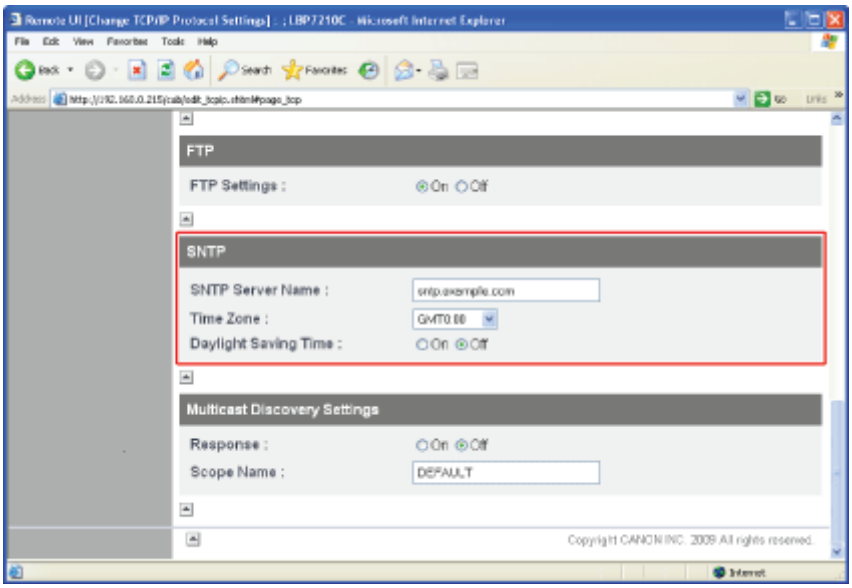


---

2. **Proceed to Step 7 if you do not specify the settings for the other options.**

Configuring the SNTP Settings (Notifying the printer of the Time via an SNTP Server)

1. **Specify the settings for [SNTP].**



If the DNS server is configured

1. Enter the server name of the SNTP server in [SNTP Server Name].
2. Select [Time Zone].
3. To set daylight saving time, set [Daylight Saving Time] to [On].

If the DNS server is not configured

1. Enter the IP address of the SNTP server in [SNTP Server Name].
2. Select [Time Zone].

3. To set daylight saving time, set [Daylight Saving Time] to [On].

NOTE

If an SNTP server is not available

- You can notify the printer of the time set on the computer using the following procedure.
  1. Display the Printer Status Window.

     "Printer Status Window"
  2. Select [Preferences (Administrators)] from the [Options] menu.
  3. Select [Always] in [Monitor Printer Status], and then select the [Notify the Printer of the Time] check box.
- Time Zone: The standard time zones of the world are expressed globally in terms of the difference in hours (± up to 12 hours) from GMT* (± 0 hours). A time zone is a region throughout which this time difference is the same.
  * The time at the Greenwich Observatory in England is called GMT (Greenwich Mean Time).
- Daylight Saving Time: In some countries and regions, time is advanced throughout the summer season.

---

2. **Proceed to Step 7 if you do not specify the settings for the other options.**

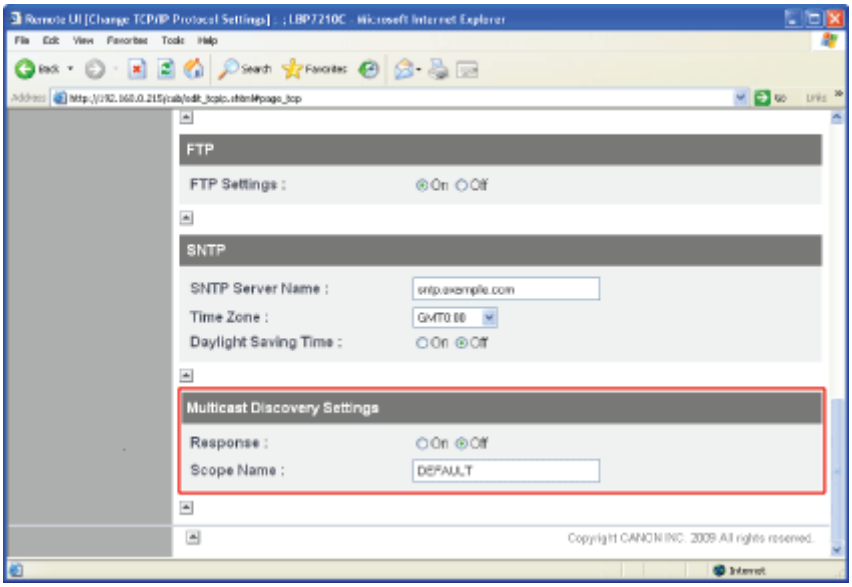
Configuring the Multicast Discovery Settings

NOTE

Multicast discovery
This is a function that searches for certain devices using Service Location Protocol (SLP).
By using the multicast discovery function, you can search for only the devices whose values in [Scope Name] are verified, using the service location protocol (SLP) from utility software, such as NetSpot Device Installer.

---

1. **Specify the settings for [Multicast Discovery Settings].**



If you want to set the printer so that it responds to searches that use the multicast discovery function

1. Set [Response] to [On].
2. In [Scope Name], enter the scope name to be used when searching for certain devices from utility software, such as NetSpot Device Installer, by multicast.

If you want to set the printer so that it does not respond to searches that use the multicast discovery function

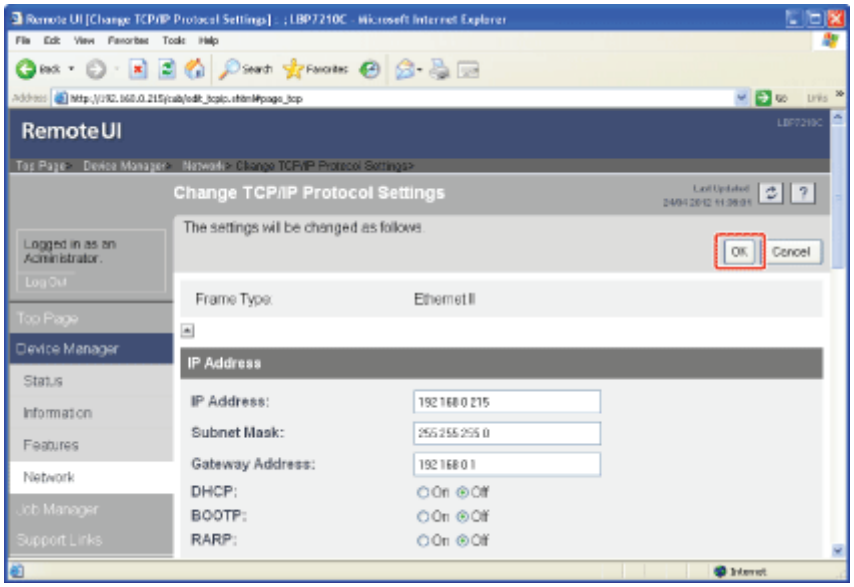
Set [Response] to [Off].

---

2. **Proceed to Step 7 if you do not specify the settings for the other options.**

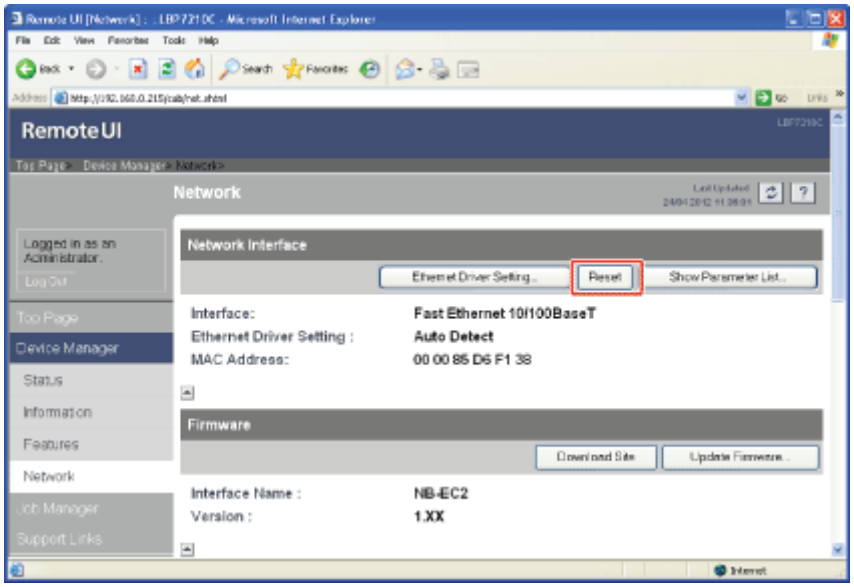
---

7. Click [OK].



---

8. When the following screen appears, click [Reset].



→ After completing the reset of the printer's network board, the settings are effective.

† The settings also become effective by restarting the printer. (Turn off the printer once, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it on.)

[I-06] Setting Items

The following are the setting items which you can change by using a web browser (Remote UI), FTP Client, or NetSpot Device Installer.

- General Settings
- TCP/IP Settings

NOTE

About the item names

In the following table, the characters shown in parentheses are exclusively for FTP Client.
For example, "Device Name (SYS_NAME)" is displayed differently as follows, depending on the application.

• Web browser (Remote UI): [Device Name]
• NetSpot Device Installer: [Device Name]
• config file of FTP Client: [SYS_NAME]

About the annotations

The asterisk marks, "*1" and "*2" attached to the end of some option names, indicate the following:

*1: Cannot be specified using NetSpot Device Installer. Specify these options using the Remote UI or FTP Client.
*2: Can be specified using FTP Client only.

General Settings

Item	Description	Default Setting
[Print Server Name] (PS_NAME) *1	The name of the printer's network board (print server) (1 to 15 characters)	CANONXXXXXX
[Device Name] (SYS_NAME)	The name of the device (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
[Location] (SYS_LOC)	The installation site of the device (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
[Administrator] (SYS_CONTACT)	The name of the administrator of the device (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
[Phone] (SYS_CONTACT_TEL) *1	The telephone number of the administrator of the device (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)

[Comments] (SYS_CONTACT_COMMENT) *1	Comments from the administrator of the device (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
(SERVICE_MAN_NAME) *2	The name of the service person (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
(SERVICE_TEL) *2	The telephone number of the service person (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
(SERVICE_COMMENT) *2	Comments from the service person (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
[Administrator Password] (ROOT_PWD)	The password of the device (0 to 15 characters)	(Blank)
[Display Language] (DISP_LANG) *1	The language displayed in the Remote UI (English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Japanese, Default)	Default
[Link] (LINK_NAME1) *1 (LINK_NAME2) *1	The links displayed in [Support Links] in the Remote UI (0 to 32 characters)	(Blank)
[URL] (LINK_URL1) *1 (LINK_URL2) *1	The URL displayed in [Support Links] in the Remote UI (0 to 128 characters)	(Blank)
[Comments] (LINK_COMMENT1) *1 (LINK_COMMENT2) *1	The comments displayed in [Support Links] in the Remote UI (0 to 64 characters)	(Blank)
[Link] (DOWNLOAD_SITE_NAME) *1	The links displayed in [Support Links] in the Remote UI (0 to 32 characters)	Download Service
[URL] (DOWNLOAD_SITE_URL) *1	The URL displayed in [Support Links] in the Remote UI The URL displayed when [Download Site] in the [Device Manager] - [Network] page in the Remote UI is clicked (0 to 128 characters)	http://www.canon.com/download/
[Comments] (DOWNLOAD_SITE_COMMENT) *1	The comments displayed in [Support Links] in the Remote UI (0 to 64 characters)	Update network firmware
[SNMP v. 1] (SNMP_V1_ACCESS_ENB) *1	Access using the SNMP v. 1 protocol	YES
[Access Rights]	The operation mode of the SNMP v. 1 agent (Read-only or	Read and Write

(SNMP_V1_ACCESS_MODE) *1	Read and Write)	
[Community Name] (PUB_COMMUNITY) *1	The community name of SNMP (0 to 32 characters)	public
[SNMP v. 3] (SNMP_V3_ACCESS_ENB) *1	Access using the SNMP v. 3 protocol	NO
[Restrict TCP/IP Printing] (TCP_CONT_ENB) *1	Whether to restrict the users who can print	NO
[Permit Specified Addresses] [Reject Specified Addresses] (TCP_CONT_MODE) *1	Accept or reject print jobs from users specified in [IP Addresses] (Accept, Reject)	Accept
[IP Addresses] (TCP_CONT_LIST) *1	The IP addresses rejected to perform TCP/IP printing	(Blank)
[Restrict SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes] (SNMP_CONT_ENB) *1	Whether to restrict users who can monitor or change the SNMP settings	NO
[Permit Specified Addresses] [Reject Specified Addresses] (SNMP_CONT_MODE) *1	Accept or reject monitoring and changing of settings using the SNMP protocol for users specified in [IP Addresses] (Accept, Reject)	Accept
[IP Addresses] (SNMP_CONT_LIST) *1	The IP addresses rejected to monitor/change the SNMP setting	(Blank)
[Restrict Multicast Discovery] (SLP_CONT_ENB) *1	Whether to restrict the users who can perform the multicast discovery	NO
[Respond to Specified IP Addresses] [Do Not Respond to Specified Addresses] (SLP_CONT_MODE) *1	Accept or reject the response to multicast discovery searches performed by users specified in [IP Addresses] (Accept, Reject)	Accept
[IP Addresses] (SLP_CONT_LIST) *1	The IP addresses rejected to perform the multicast discovery	(Blank)
[Restrict MAC Address Access] (MAC_CONT_ENB)	Whether to restrict the devices that can access	NO
[Permit Specified Addresses] [Reject Specified Addresses] (MAC_CONT_MODE)	Accept or reject access by a device specified in [MAC Addresses] (Accept, Reject)	Accept
[MAC Addresses] (MAC_CONT_LIST)	The MAC addresses permitted or rejected to access	(Blank)
[Access Logs] (SEC_LOG_ENB) *1	Whether to obtain security access logs	NO

[Log Types] (SEC_LOG_KIND) *1	Security access logs to obtain 0: No Access Log to Obtain 1: Rejected TCP/IP Print Jobs 2: Rejected SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes 3: Rejected TCP/IP Print Jobs and Rejected SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes 4: Rejected Multicast Discoveries 5: Rejected TCP/IP Print Jobs and Rejected Multicast Discoveries 6: Rejected SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes and Rejected Multicast Discoveries 7: Access All the Logs	0
[Ethernet Driver Setting] (NETWORK_SPEED) *1	The network transmission speed or transfer mode (AUTO_SENSE, 10_HALF_DX, 10_FULL_DX, 100_HALF_DX, 100_FULL_DX)	AUTO_SENSE

TCP/IP Settings

Item	Description	Default Setting
[Frame Type] (TCP_FRAME_TYPE)	The frame type used by TCP/IP	Ethernet II
(G_ARP_ENB) *2	Whether to use the Gratuitous ARP function	YES
[DHCP] (DHCP_ENB)	Whether to use DHCP for the IP address setting	NO
[BOOTP] (BOOTP_ENB)	Whether to use BOOTP for the IP address setting	NO
[RARP] (RARP_ENB)	Whether to use RARP for the IP address setting	NO
[IP Address] (INT_ADDR)	The IP address of the printer	192.168.0.215
[Subnet Mask] (NET_MASK)	Subnet mask	0.0.0.0
[Gateway Address] (DEF_ROUT)	Gateway address	0.0.0.0
[DNS Server Address]		

(DNS_ADDR) *1	The IP address of the DNS server	0.0.0.0
[DNS Dynamic Update] (DDNS_ENB) *1	Whether to register this device in DNS dynamically	NO
[DNS Host Name] (HOST_NAME) *1	The host name of this device (0 to 63 characters)	(Blank)
[DNS Domain Name] (DOMAIN_NAME) *1	The name of the domain to which this device belongs (0 to 64 characters)	(Blank)
[WINS Resolution] (WINS_ENB) *1	Whether to use WINS Resolution	YES
[WINS Server Address] (WINS_ADDR1) *1	The WINS server address	0.0.0.0
[WINS Host Name] (WINS_HOSTNAME) *1	Registration of the WINS host name (0 to 15 characters)	(Blank)
[Scope ID] (NBT_SCOPE_ID) *1	The identifier for determining the communication range of the printer and computer (0 to 220 characters)	(Blank)
[SNTP Server Name] (SNTP_ADDR) *1	The IP address or name of the SNTP server (0 to 64 characters)	(Blank)
(SNTP_CHECK_INTERVAL) *2	The time interval for SNTP updates (10 min, 30 min, 1 hour, 3 hours, 6 hours, 12 hours, or 24 hours)	1hour
[Multicast Discovery Settings] (SLP_ENB) *1	Whether to respond to multicast discovery searches	YES
[Scope Name] (SLP_SCOPE) *1	The scope name to be used in multicast discovery (0 to 32 characters)	default
(USE_IP_PORT_NAME) *2	Whether to use the unicast communication mode	NO
[FTP Settings] (FTP_ENB) *1	Whether to use the FTP server	YES
[Restrict User FTP Access] (FTP_LIMIT_GENUSR) *1	Whether to restrict the FTP access from end-users	NO
[Time Zone] (TIME_ZONE)	Time Zone	GMT + 0:00
[Daylight Saving Time] (DAYLIGHT_SAVING)	Whether to set the daylight saving time	NO

[I-07] Initializing the Network Settings

If you want to reset the network settings for the printer to the default values, use any method from among Remote UI, FTP Client, and NetSpot Device Installer.
Even if none of the above methods work, you can initialize the network settings by using the reset button on the printer.

- Initializing the Network Settings Using the Remote UI
- Initializing the Network Settings Using FTP Client
  See "FTP Client".
- Initializing the Network Settings Using NetSpot Device Installer
  See "NetSpot Device Installer".
- Initializing the Network Settings Using the Reset Button

IMPORTANT

Precautions when initializing the network settings
Make sure that the printer is not operating before initializing the network settings.
If you initialize the network settings while the printer is printing or receiving data, the received data may not be printed properly, or may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.

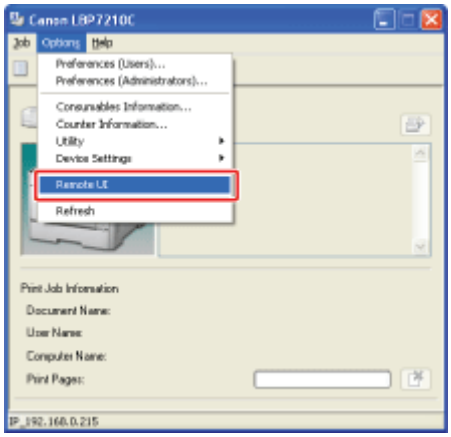
Initializing the Network Settings Using the Remote UI

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

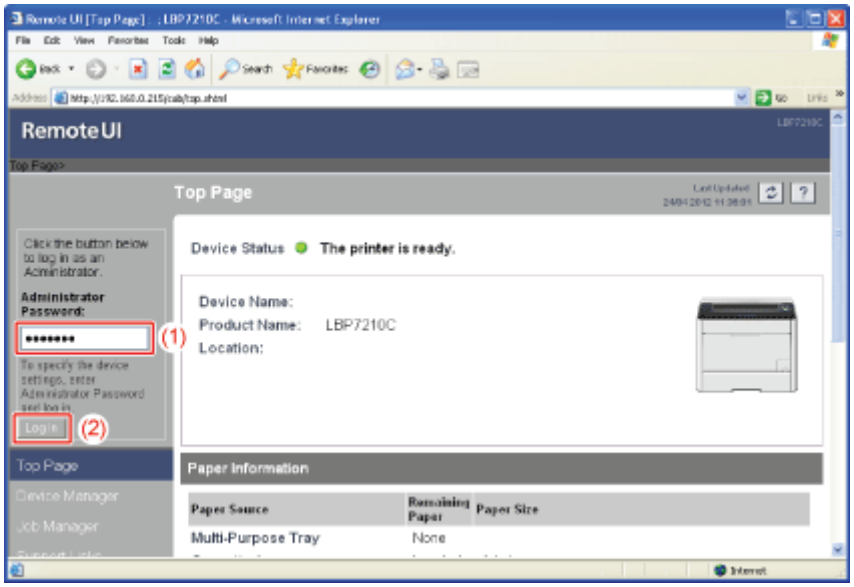
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

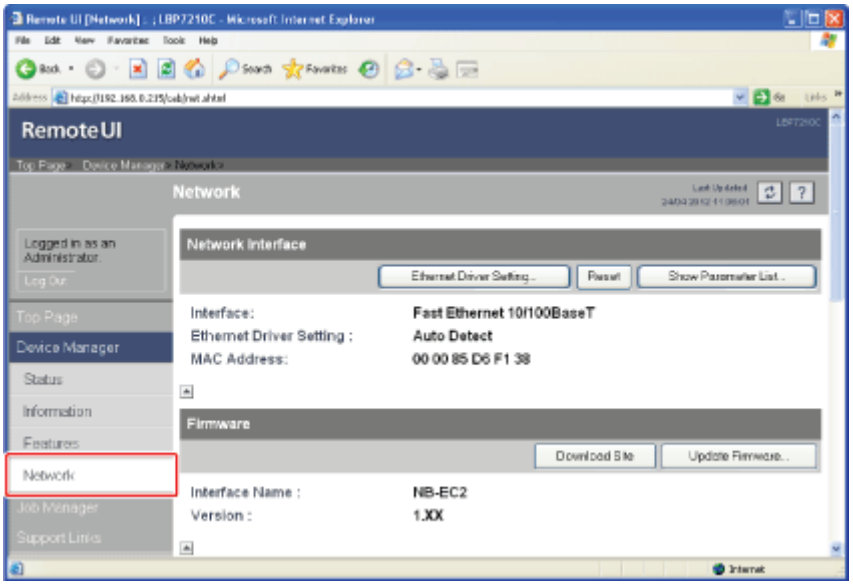


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

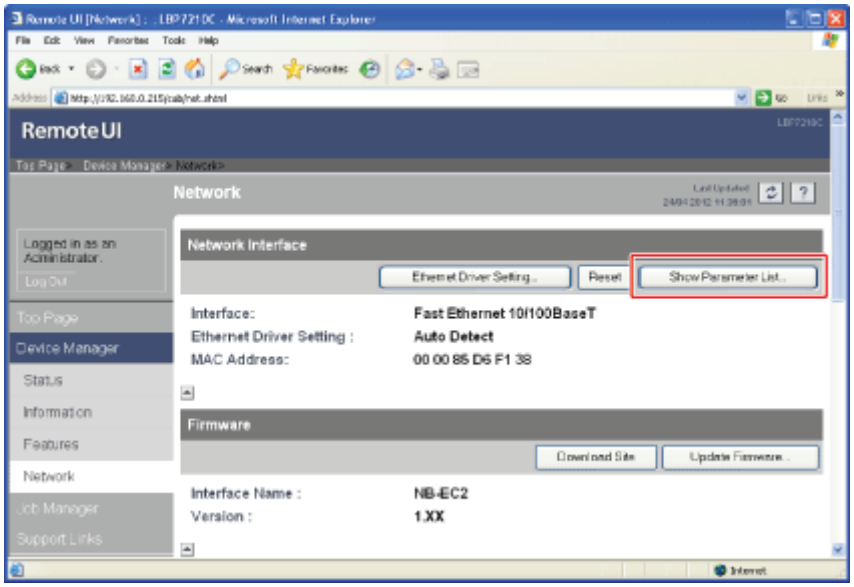
---

4. **Select [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.**



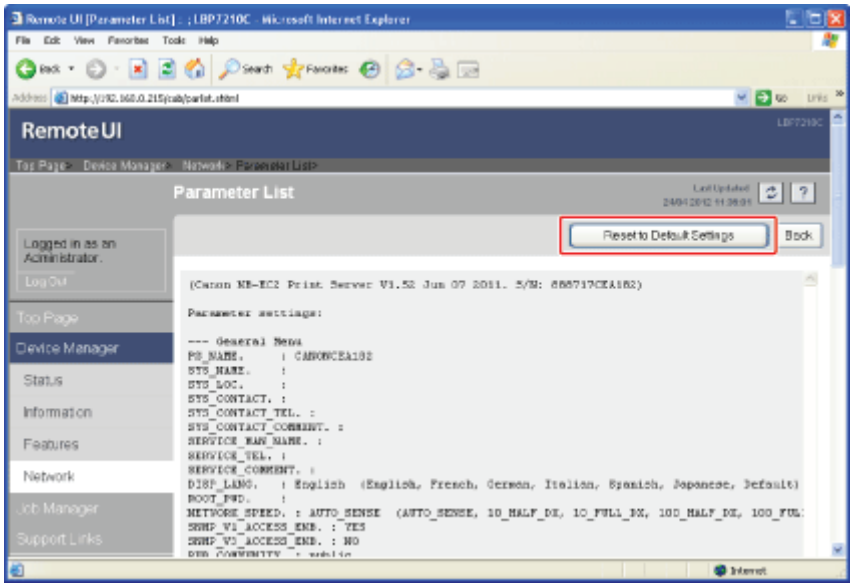
---

5. **Click [Show Parameter List] under [Network Interface].**



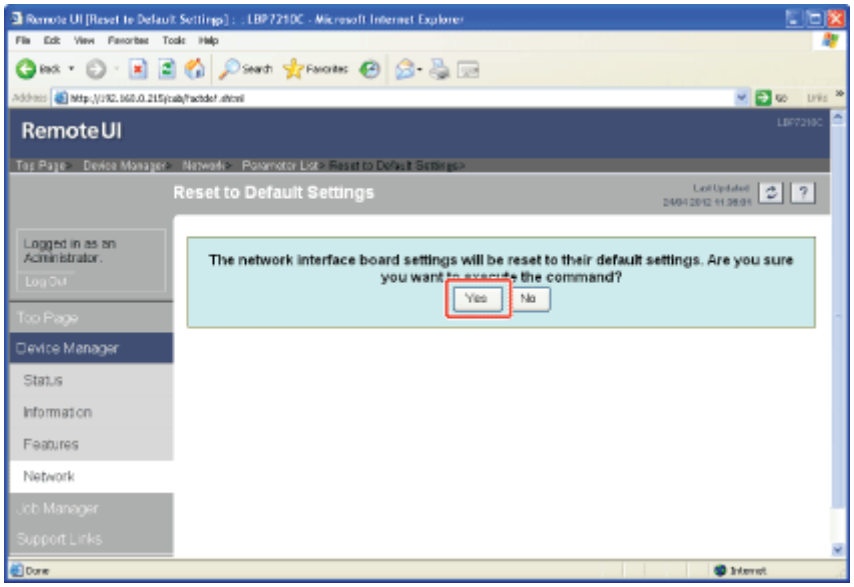
---

6. **Click [Reset to Default Settings].**



---

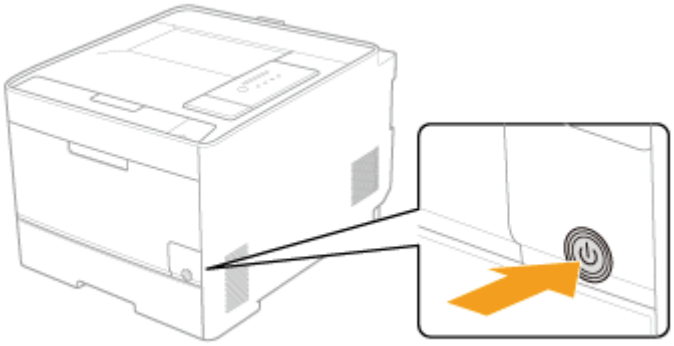
7. **Click [Yes].**



→ The network settings are initialized.

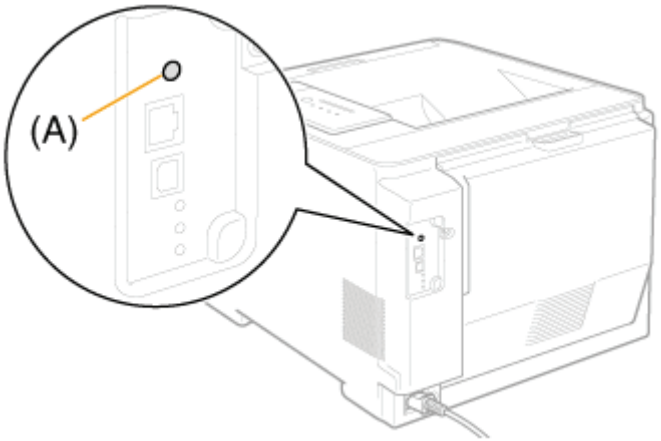
Initializing the Network Settings Using the Reset Button

1. **Turn the printer off.**



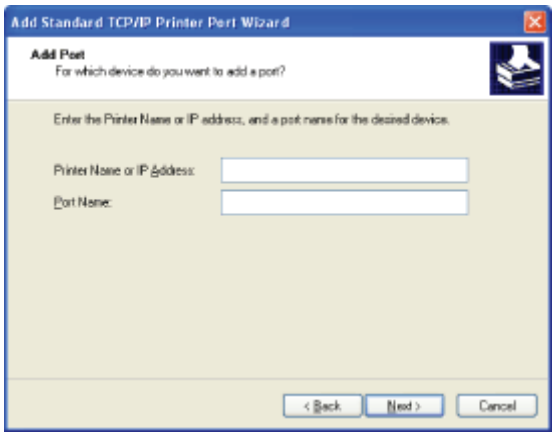
2. **Turn on the printer while pressing the reset button (A).**

Press the reset button with the tip of a ball-point pen etc.



[I-08] Settings for Adding a Port

Depending on the method for setting the IP address of the printer, the value to be entered in [Printer Name or IP Address] on the following screen displayed in the process of port addition varies.



- **If you want to set the IP address to be assigned to the printer manually (If you know the IP address to use)**
  - Enter the IP address in [Printer Name or IP Address].
  - If you want to set the IP address using the DNS server, specify the DNS settings for the printer. Then, enter the printer name (the DNS name to be registered on the DNS server) within up to 78 characters in [Printer Name or IP Address].
    For example, enter the printer name as "AAA.BBB.com" if you have specified the host name as "AAA" and the domain name as "BBB.com". However, enter "AAA.CCC.com" if you can obtain the domain name (CCC.com) simultaneously when you obtain the IP address from DHCP etc.

- **If you want to set the IP address to be assigned to the printer using DHCP etc.**
  - Specify the settings such as the DHCP settings so that the same IP address is always assigned to the printer when you start up the printer. For more details, see "If you want to set the IP address to be assigned to the printer manually" above.
  - If a different IP address is assigned to the printer each time the printer starts up, specify the DNS settings for the printer first. Then, enter the printer name (the DNS name to be registered on the DNS server) within up to 78 characters in [Printer Name or IP Address].
    For example, enter the printer name as "AAA.BBB.com" if you have specified the host name as "AAA" and the domain name as "BBB.com". However, enter "AAA.CCC.com" if you can obtain the domain name (CCC.com) simultaneously when you obtain the IP address from DHCP etc.

IMPORTANT

If you are using Windows Vista or Server 2008
You cannot use Standard TCP/IP Port created in the [Printers] folder.
(You can use only Standard TCP/IP Port created automatically by performing the procedure in "Auto Setup (Recommended Method)".)

NOTE

About the DNS settings
See "Configuring the Protocol Settings".

[I-09] Changing the Network Transmission Speed or Transfer Mode

You can change the network transmission speed or transfer mode using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can change the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can change the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for changing the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

About the network transmission speed and transfer mode
Usually, you do not need to change the setting, since the transmission speed and transfer mode of the network are detected automatically.
If the printer cannot communicate with other devices on the network successfully, set the network transmission speed or transfer mode manually.

When changing the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

---

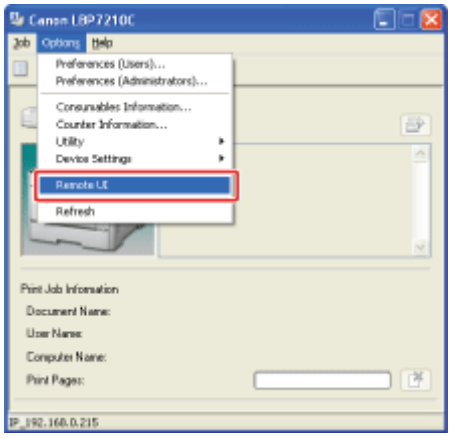
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

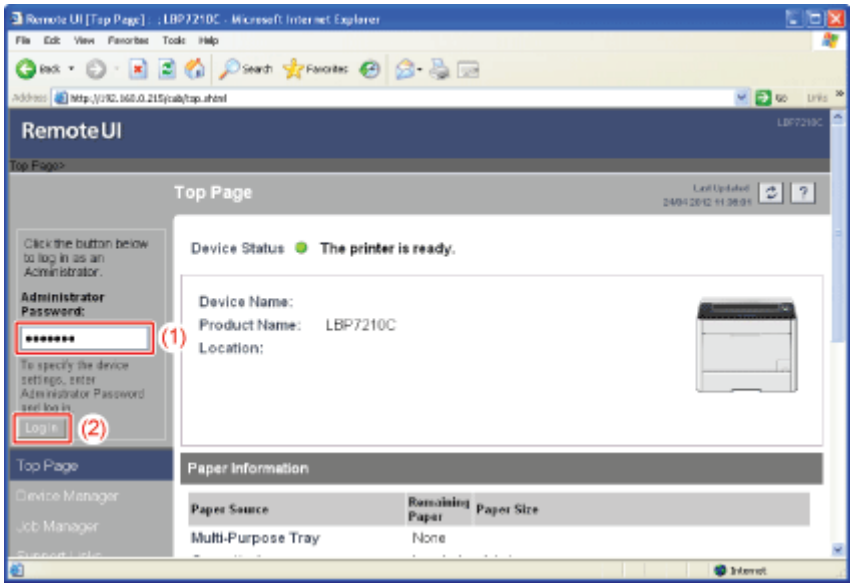
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

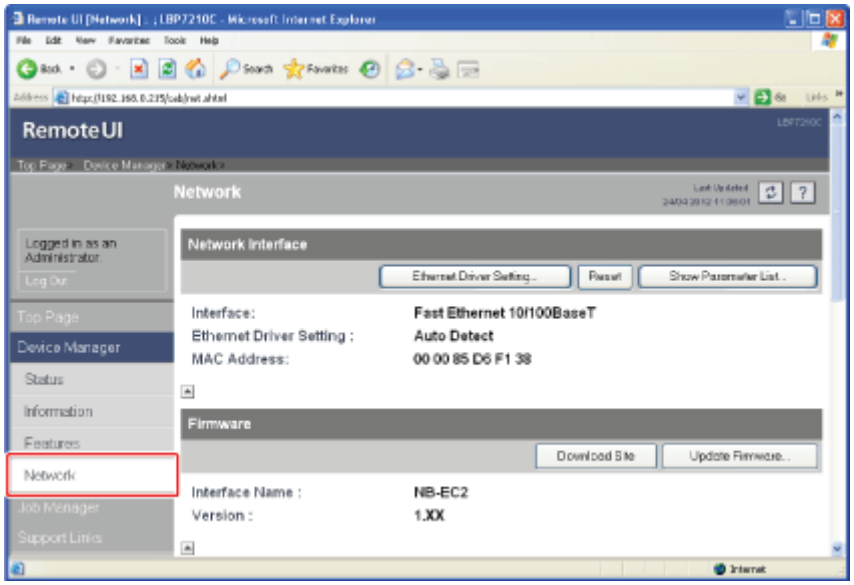


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

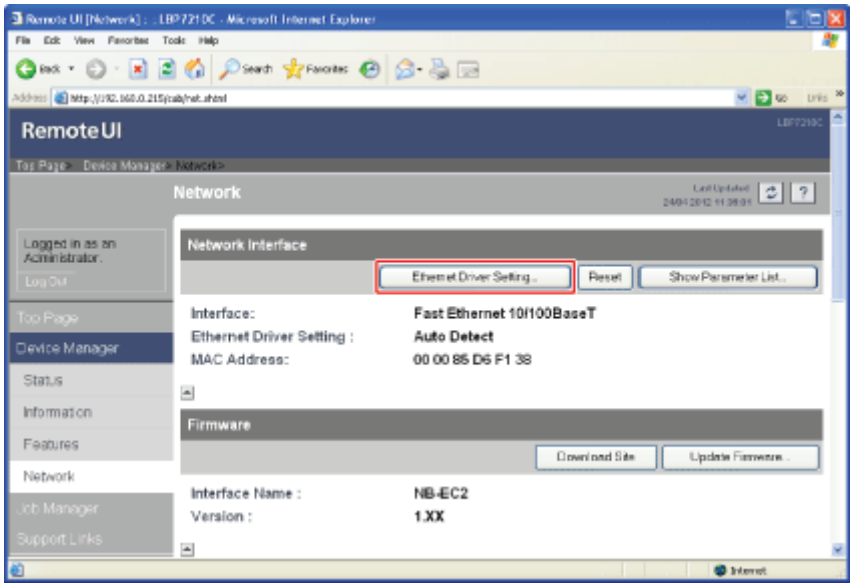
---

4. Select [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.



---

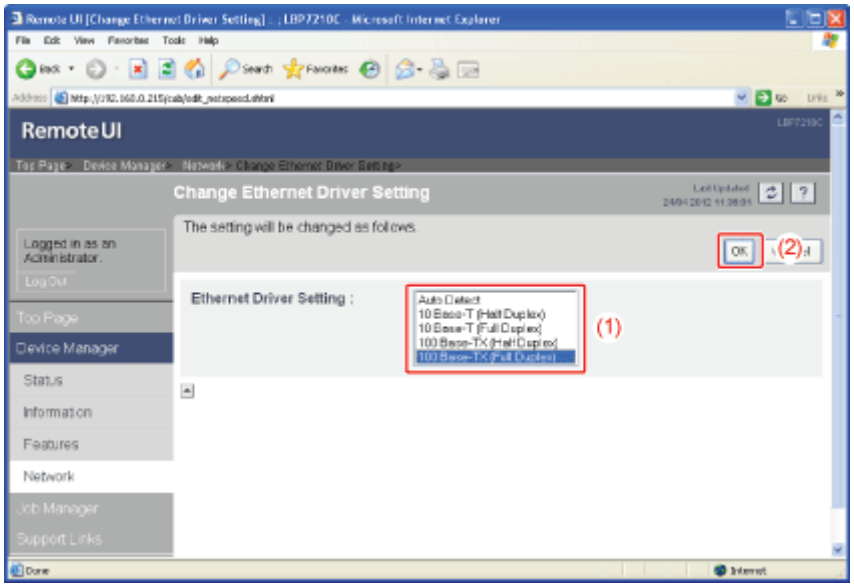
5. Click [Ethernet Driver Setting] under [Network Interface].



---

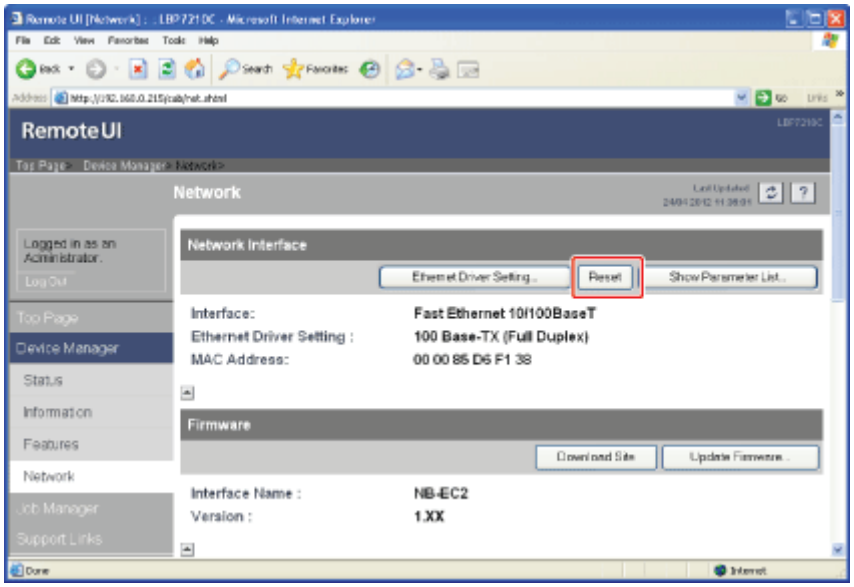
6. Change the setting for [Ethernet Driver Setting].

(1) Change the network transmission speed or transfer mode.
(2) Click [OK].



---

7. When the following screen appears, click [Reset].



→ After completing the reset of the printer's network board, the settings are effective.

† The settings also become effective by restarting the printer. (Turn off the printer once, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it on.)

[I-10] Changing the Port Name of the Printer

You can change the port name of the printer (the print server name) using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can change the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can change the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for changing the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

When changing the settings using FTP Client

"FTP Client"

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

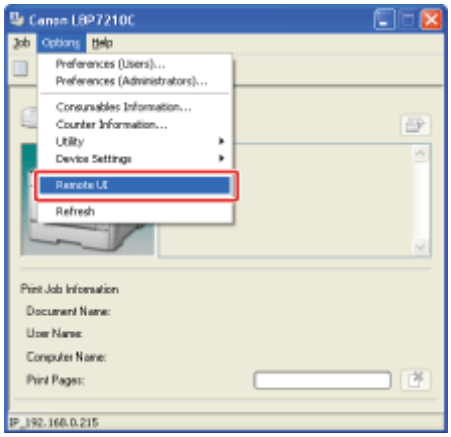
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]

You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

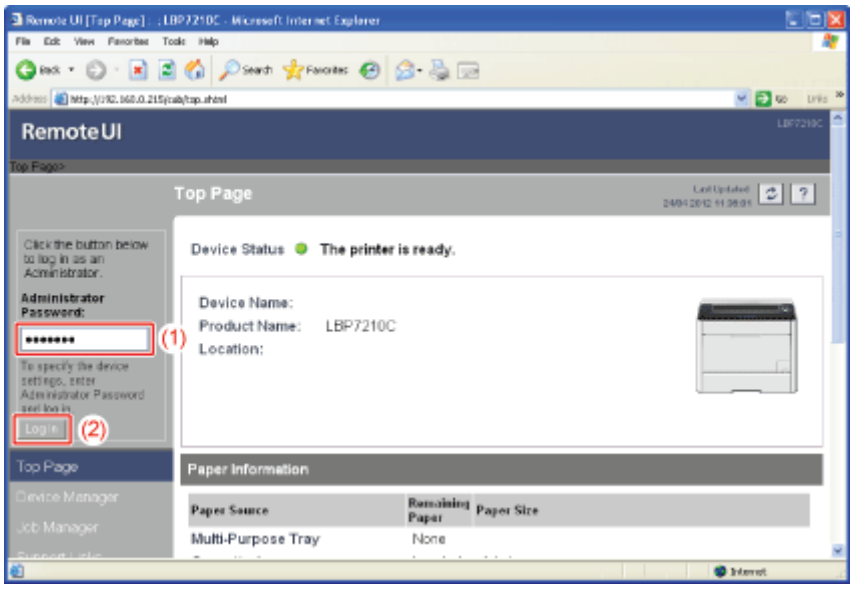
When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].



NOTE

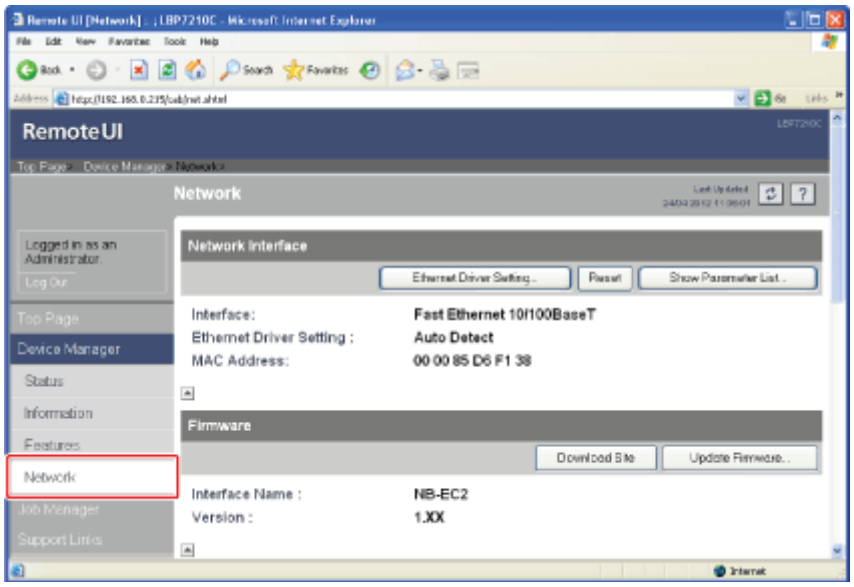
If the administrator password is not set

It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

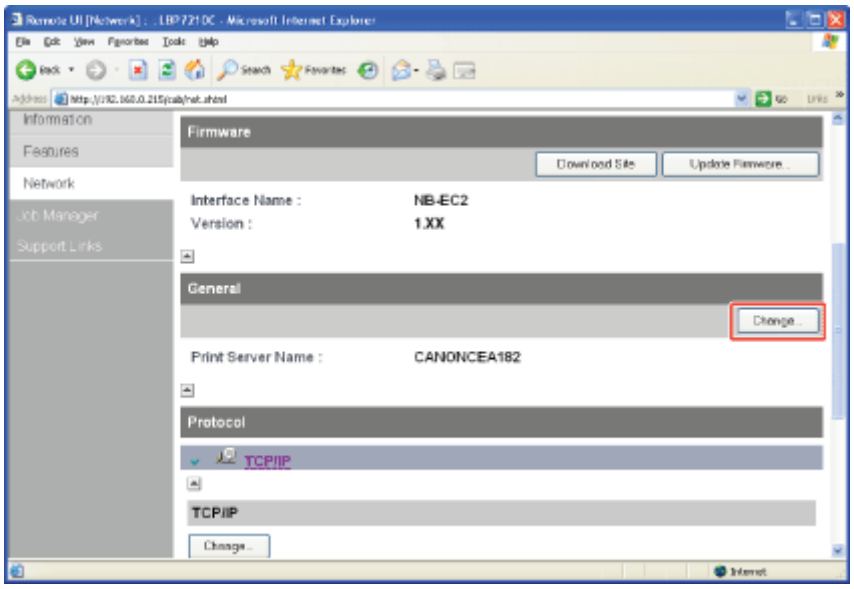
---

4. Select [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.



---

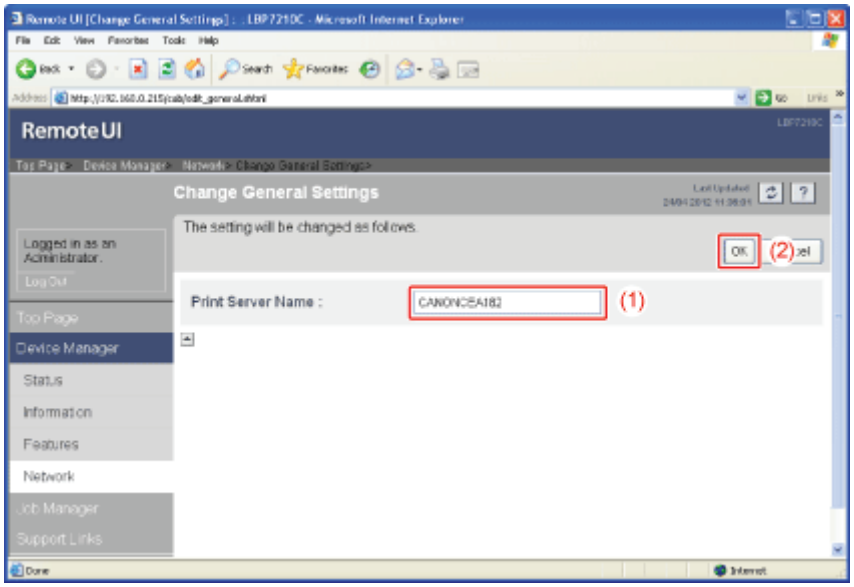
5. Click [Change] under [General].



---

6. Change the [Print Server Name] setting.

(1) Change the port name of the printer (the print server name).
(2) Click [OK].



[I-11] Checking and Specifying the Unicast Communication Mode

About the Unicast Communication Mode

The unicast communication mode makes communication by using the unicast method in sending status from the printer, which is not normally performed by the broadcast communication mode.
If you want to use the printer in a network environment in which the broadcast communication mode is not used, you need to switch the mode to the unicast communication mode.
If you want to use the unicast communication mode, set the printer settings to enter into the unicast communication mode using FTP Client.

IMPORTANT

When using the Unicast Communication Mode
Because this affects the administration of your network environment, be sure to consult your network administrator.

Setting the Printer to Enter into the Unicast Communication Mode

1. **Run Command Prompt.**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Command Prompt].

2. **Enter "ftp <the IP address of the printer>", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   - Input Example: "ftp 192.168.0.215"

NOTE

If you are not sure about the IP address of the printer
Refer to the Network Status Print printed in "Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status" or ask your network administrator.

3. **Enter "root" as the user name, then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

4. **Enter the administrator password, then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   If the administrator password has not been specified yet, do not enter any value, but press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

5. Enter "get config<the file name>", and then press [ENTER] on your keyboard.

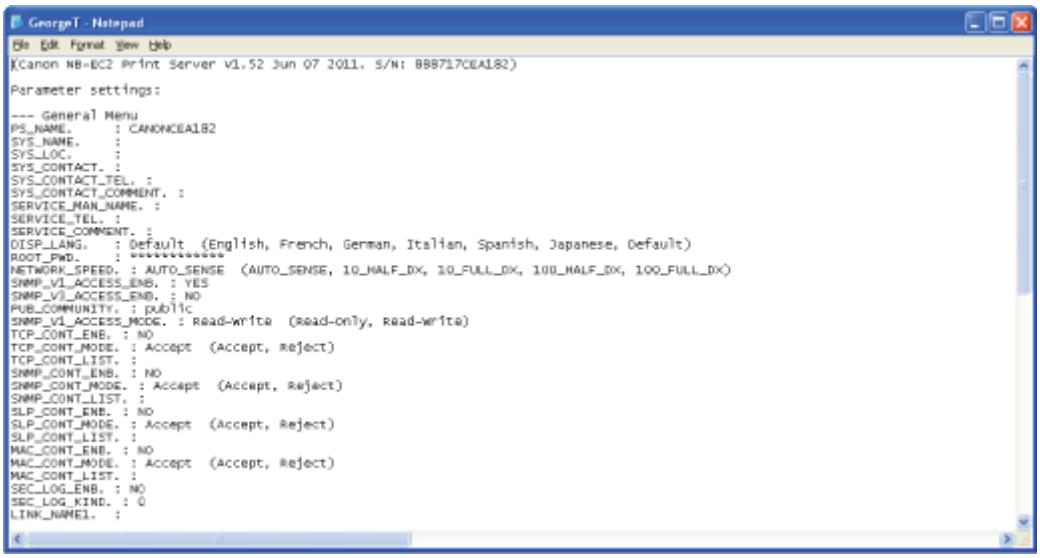
→ The config file is downloaded.
The characters entered for <the file name> become the name of the downloaded config file.

NOTE

If the config file cannot be found
Search for the config file using the file search function of your operating system.
(The download directory for the config file varies depending on the operating system or settings.)

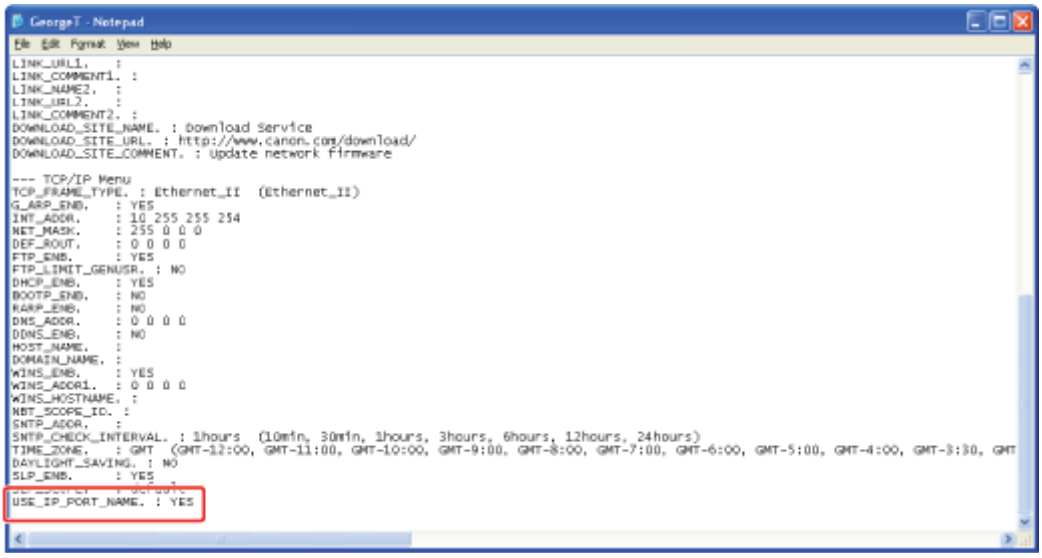
---

6. Open the downloaded config file in Notepad or a similar text editor.



---

7. Change "USE_IP_PORT_NAME" to "YES".



---

8. Save and close the config file.

9. **Enter "put<the file name> CONFIG", and then press [ENTER] on your keyboard.**

In <the file name>, enter the name of the config file that was entered when the file was downloaded.

10. **Enter "get reset", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

→ After completing the reset of the printer's network board, the settings are effective.

† The settings also become effective by restarting the printer. (Turn off the printer once, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it on.)

11. **Enter "quit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

12. **Enter "exit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

→ Command Prompt closes.

IMPORTANT

When returning to the normal mode (broadcast communication mode)
Change "USE_IP_PORT_NAME" to "NO".

NOTE

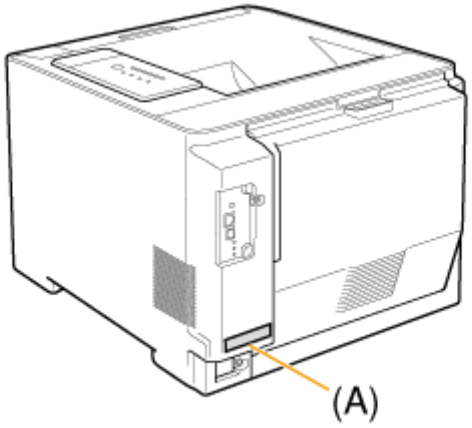
If the message <Network Board Error> appears
If the message <Network Board Error> appears in the Printer Status Window after setting the unicast communication mode, refresh the display of the Printer Status Window.

[I-12] Checking the MAC Address

You can check the MAC address of the printer using the following methods.

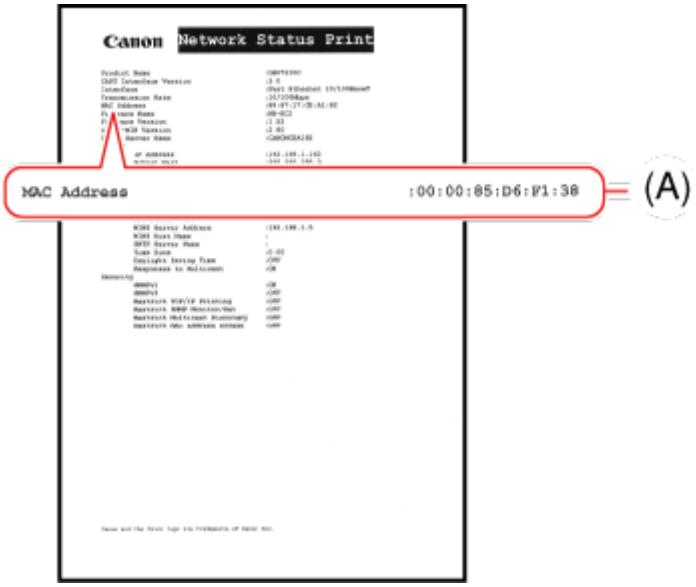
Checking on the printer unit

The MAC address is indicated at (A) on the printer unit as shown in the following figure.



Checking by Network Status Print

The MAC address is indicated at (A) on Network Status Print as shown in the following figure.



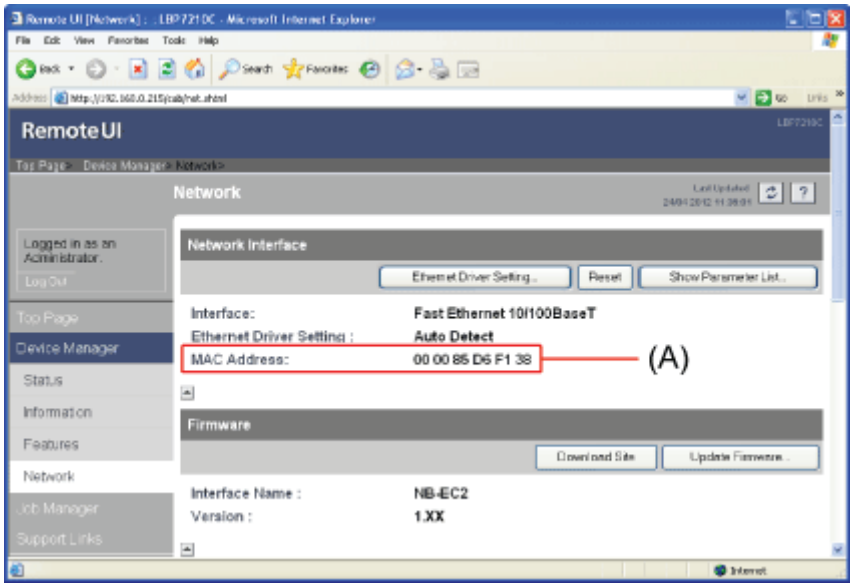
NOTE

How to print Network Status Print

"Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status"

Checking by the Remote UI

The MAC address is indicated at (A) in the [Network] page in [Device Manager] as shown in the following figure.



NOTE

About the Remote UI

See "Remote UI".

[I-13] Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing)

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Print Server Environment (Printer Sharing)"

[I-14] Configuring the Print Server

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Configuring the Print Server"

[I-15] Installation on Clients

Click the following link to view the contents.

"Installation on Clients"

[J] Managing and Configuring the Printer

[J-02] Printer Status Window

The Printer Status Window allows you to check the printer status (such as the operation status and job information), control the printer operation, and so on.

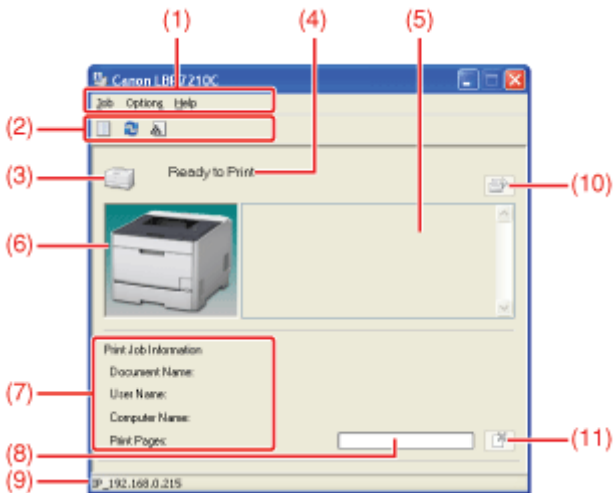
- Available Operations in the Printer Status Window
- Functions on the Printer Status Window
- Displaying the Printer Status Window

Available Operations in the Printer Status Window

You can perform the following operations and so on using the Printer Status Window.

- **Checking the settings and solutions if an error occurs or printing is not performed**
  "A Message Appears in the Printer Status Window"
- **Canceling a job**
  "Canceling a Job"
- **Checking the printer status and information (such as the user name and document name) about the current print job**
  "Checking the Printer Status Using the Printer Status Window"
- **Performing utility functions including calibration and cleaning the fixing roller**
  "Calibrating the Printer"
  "Correcting 'Out-of-Register Colors'"
  "Cleaning the Inside of the Printer"
  "Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status"
- **Specifying the settings for the printer unit including registering paper sizes for drawers and setting the IP address**
  "Loading Paper and Registering the Paper Size"
  "Setting the Energy-saving Mode"
  "Setting the IP Address"

Functions on the Printer Status Window



(1) Menu bar

[Job] menu: You can cancel a job, resume a job which is paused during printing for some reason, or display the print queue.

[Options] menu: You can perform utility functions, specify the settings for the printer unit, and so on.

[Help] menu: Use this menu to display Help and the version information.

(2) Tool bar

(Print queue): Displays the print queue, a function of Windows.
For details on the print queue, see Windows Help.

(Refresh): Obtains the printer status and refreshes the Printer Status Window display.

(Consumables Information): Displays the [Consumables Information] dialog box. You can check the status of the toner cartridges.

(3) [Icon]: Displays the printer status.

(4) [Message Area]: Displays messages about the printer status.

(5) [Message Area] (Auxiliary): Displays additional information (situation explanation, solutions, etc.) if an error or other such event occurs.

(6) [Animation Area]: Displays the printer status using an animated graphic. Displays the printing progress or error conditions depending on the printer status.

(7) [Job Information Area]: Displays information about the job.

(8) [Progress Bar]: Displays the printing progress of the current job. The bar gradually grows indicating the printing progress.

(9) [Status Bar]: Displays the device to which the printer is connected.

(10) (Resolve Error): You can resume a job when it is paused during printing for some reason.

(11) (Cancel Job): Cancels the current job. While another user's job is being printed, the [Cancel Job] button is displayed in gray.

NOTE

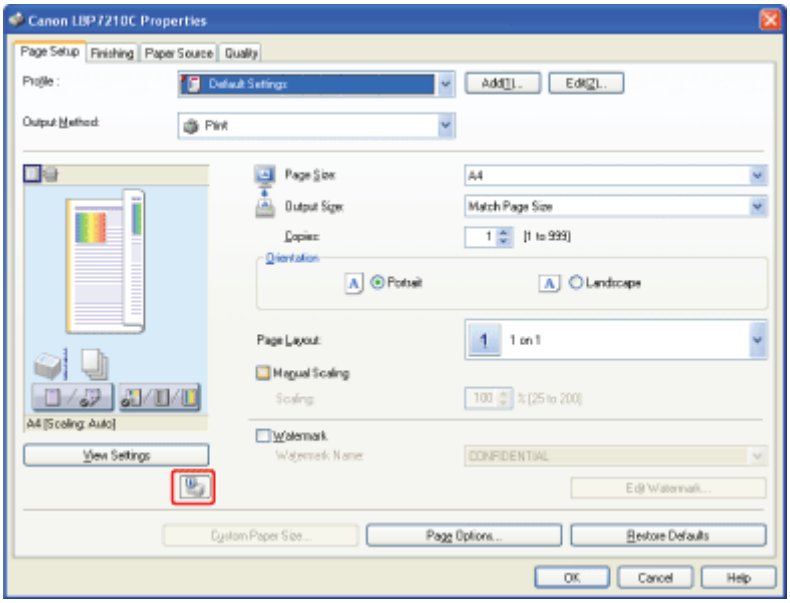
For details on each option in the Printer Status Window
See Help.
"How to Use Help"

Displaying the Printer Status Window

There are the following two ways to display the Printer Status Window.

- Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

- Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet in the printer driver.



NOTE

Displaying the Printer Status Window automatically

When the Printer Status Window is not displayed, the Printer Status Window icon is displayed automatically under the following situations.

- When an error has occurred while printing
- When a toner cartridge needs to be replaced soon while printing
- When a toner cartridge has reached the end of its life while printing

Clicking this icon can display the Printer Status Window.

† The icon may not be displayed even under the above situations depending on the settings for the [Preferences (Users)] or [Preferences (Administrators)] dialog box in the Printer Status Window.
For details on the [Preferences (Users)] or [Preferences (Administrators)] dialog box, see Help.
"How to Use Help"

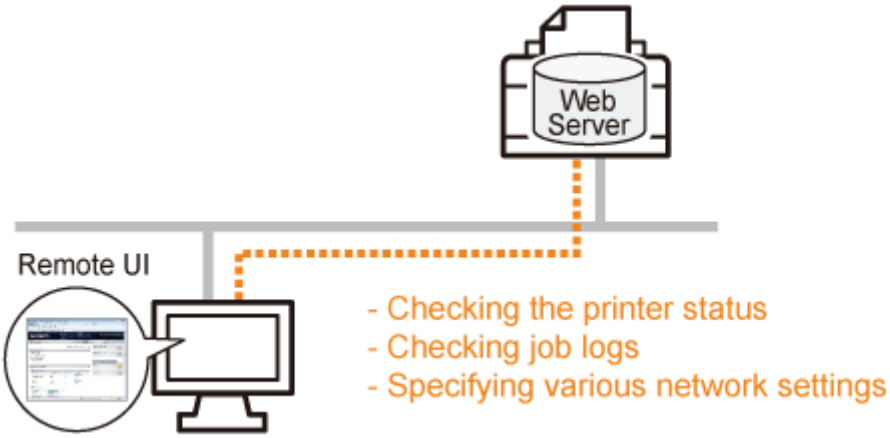
[J-03] Remote UI

The Remote UI is software that allows you to manage the printer using a web browser.
By accessing the printer from the web browser via a network, you can check the printer status or job logs, and specify various settings.

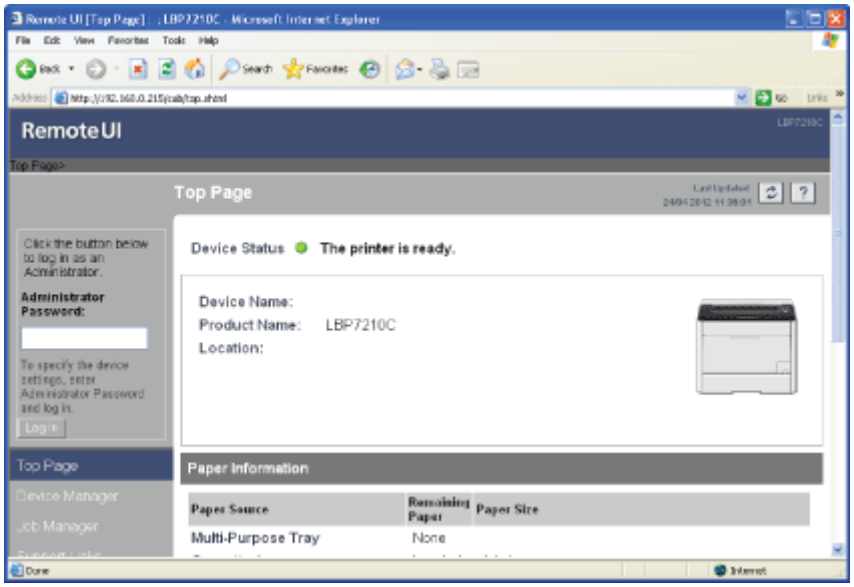
- Features of the Remote UI
- Remote UI System Requirements
- Starting the Remote UI
- Screen Layout of the Remote UI
- Logging in as Administrator
- Changing the Remote UI Display Language
- Managing Print Jobs
- Displaying or Changing Support Links

Features of the Remote UI

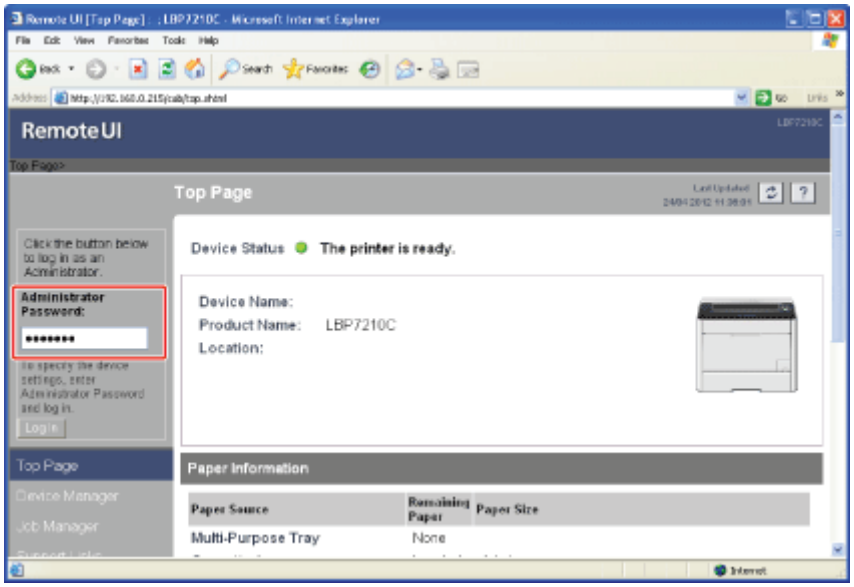
No specific software is needed.
The Remote UI can be operated in a Web browser. You do not need specific software to operate the Remote UI.



The printer status can be checked from a remote location.
You can check the current printer status, printer information, print job logs, etc. You can manage the printer from a remote computer.



Central management of all the printer settings with the administrator password
Only the administrator can configure the settings or perform the operations related to the printer management by setting the administrator password.



Remote UI System Requirements

- Web browser: Internet Explorer 4.01 SP1 or later
  Netscape Navigator 4.7 or later
- Operating system: An operating system on which the above Web browsers can run
- Display: Resolution 800 x 600 pixels or more
  Display colors 256 colors or more

Starting the Remote UI

There are the following two ways to start the Remote UI.

- Starting the Remote UI from the Printer Status Window
- Starting the Remote UI Directly from a Web Browser

Starting the Remote UI from the Printer Status Window

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

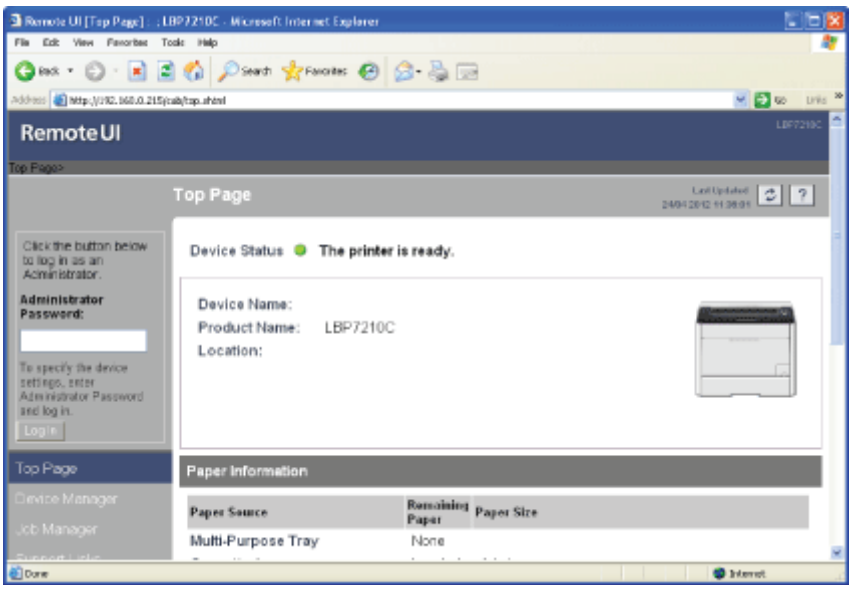
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**

→ The Remote UI is displayed.



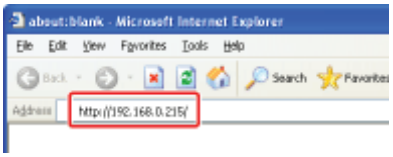
NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

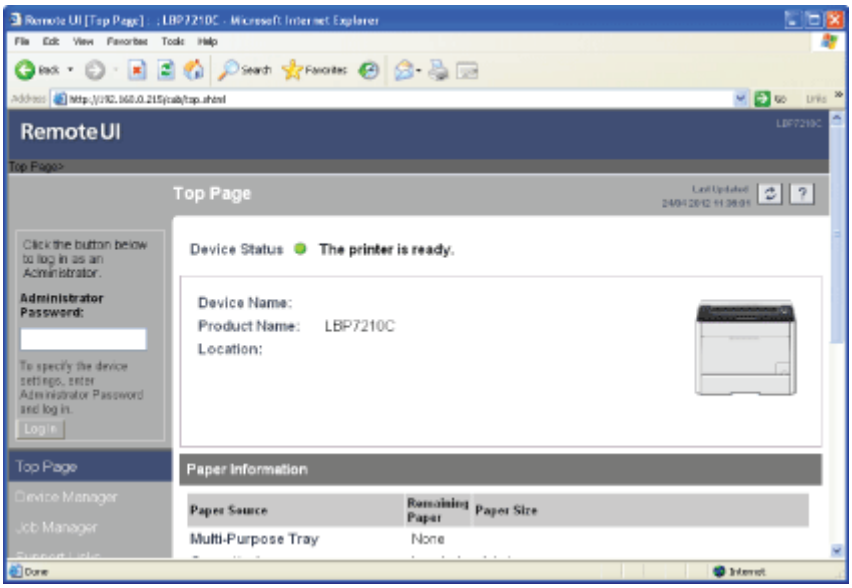
Starting the Remote UI Directly from a Web Browser

1. **Start the web browser.**

2. **Enter "http:// <the IP address of the printer> /" in the address field, and then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   - Input Example: "http://192.168.0.215/"



→ The Remote UI is displayed.



NOTE

If you are not sure about the IP address of the printer
Use either of the following methods to check it.

- Refer to Network Status Print.
  "Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status"
- Consult your network administrator.

If the host name of the printer is registered in the DNS server
You can enter ["hostname"."domain name"] instead of the IP address.

- Input Example: "http://my_printer.xy_dept.company.com/"

If the Remote UI top page is not displayed in the Web browser
Make sure that the IP address or ["hostname"."domain name"] is correct.
If the Remote UI top page is not displayed even when the value is correctly entered, consult your network administrator.

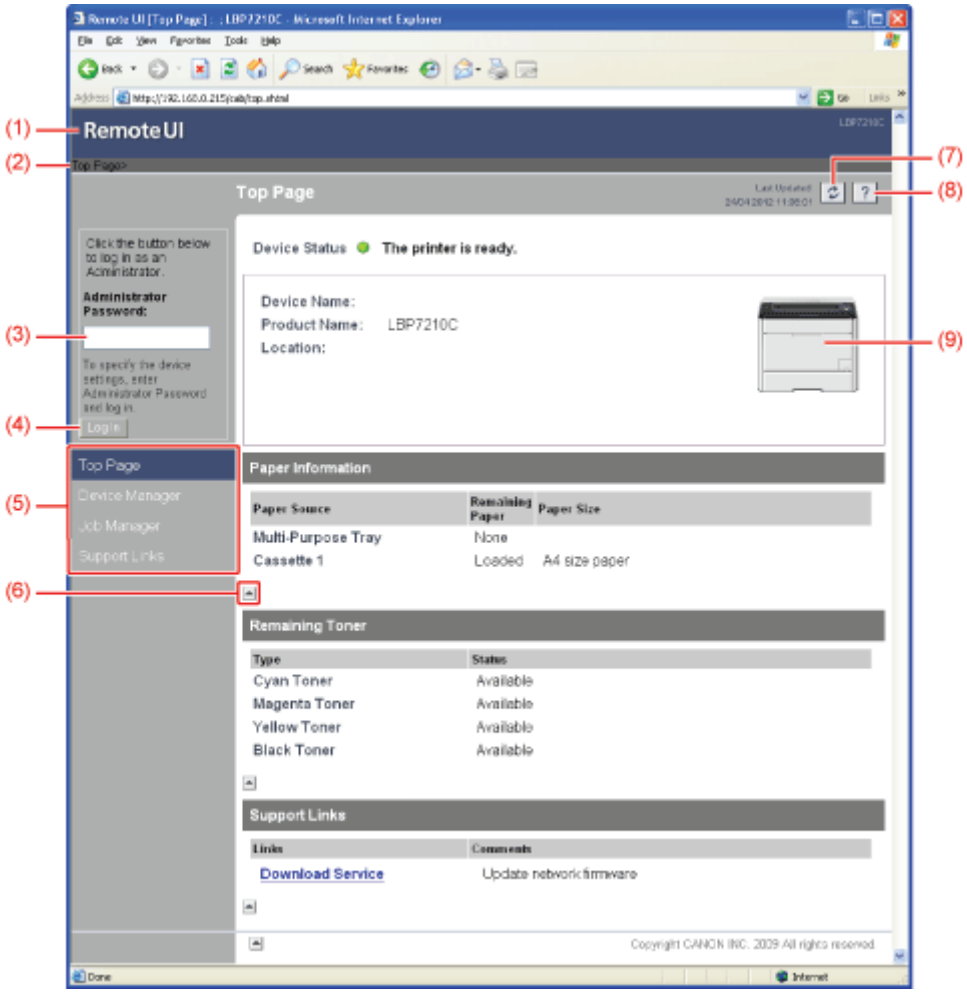
When using a proxy server
On the settings for the proxy server of the web browser, add the IP address of the printer to [Exceptions] (the addresses that do not use the proxy server).
The settings vary depending on the network environment. Consult your network administrator.

About Cookies
Configure your Web browser to enable cookies.

Starting the Remote UI
If the Remote UI is running on multiple computers at a time, the latest settings are valid.
If you want to log in as Administrator, it is recommended that only one Remote UI should be running at a time.

If the Remote UI is not displayed using the above procedure
Enter "http:// <the IP address of the printer> /cab/top.shtml" in the address field to redisplay the Remote UI.

Screen Layout of the Remote UI



(1) Displays the Remote UI top page.
(2) Displays the hierarchy of the currently displayed page.
Clicking a displayed page name displays the page of which you clicked the name.
(3) When you log in as Administrator, enter the administrator password.
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"
(4) You can log in as Administrator by entering the administrator password, then clicking this button.
If you are using the Remote UI as Administrator, you can log out by clicking this button.
(5) Displays each setting page.
(6) If the page is scrolled down, moves the scroll box up to the top of the page.
(7) Updates the information in the currently displayed page to the latest one.
(8) Displays Help for the currently displayed page in a new window.
(9) Displays an image of the printer.
The displayed image varies depending on the availability of the paper source options.

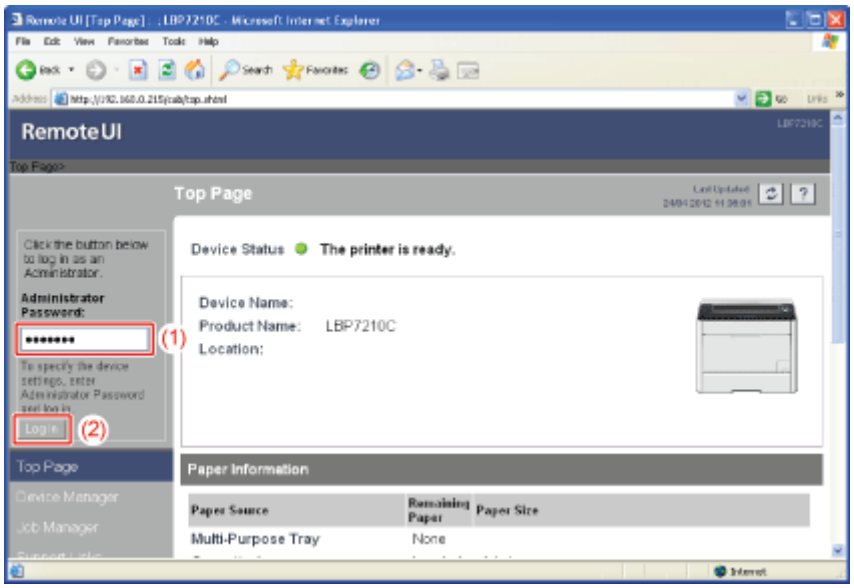
Logging in as Administrator

By logging in as Administrator, you can perform all the operations and settings of the Remote UI.

---

1. **Log in as Administrator.**

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].



NOTE

If the administrator password is not set

It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

When exiting the administrator mode

Click [Log Out].

Changing the Remote UI Display Language

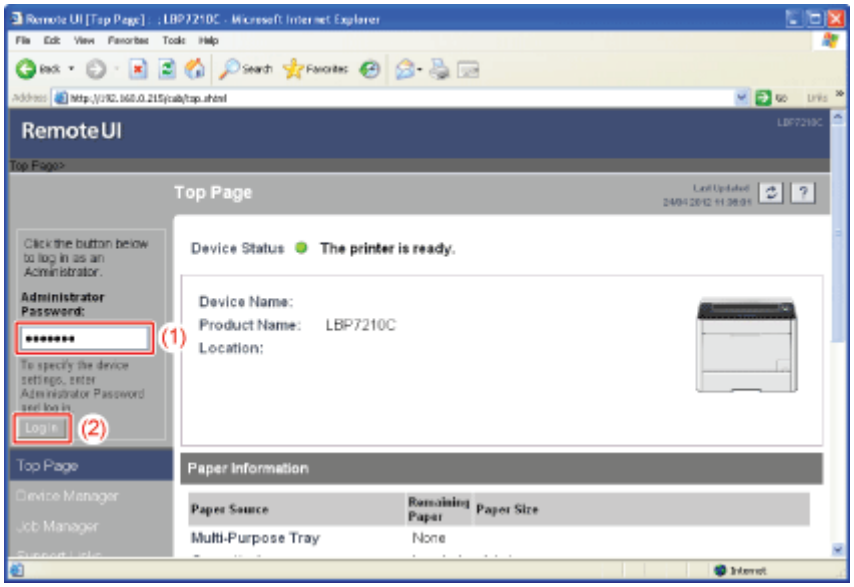
Select English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, or Japanese for the Remote UI display language.

---

1. **Log in as Administrator.**

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].

(2) Click [Log In].



NOTE

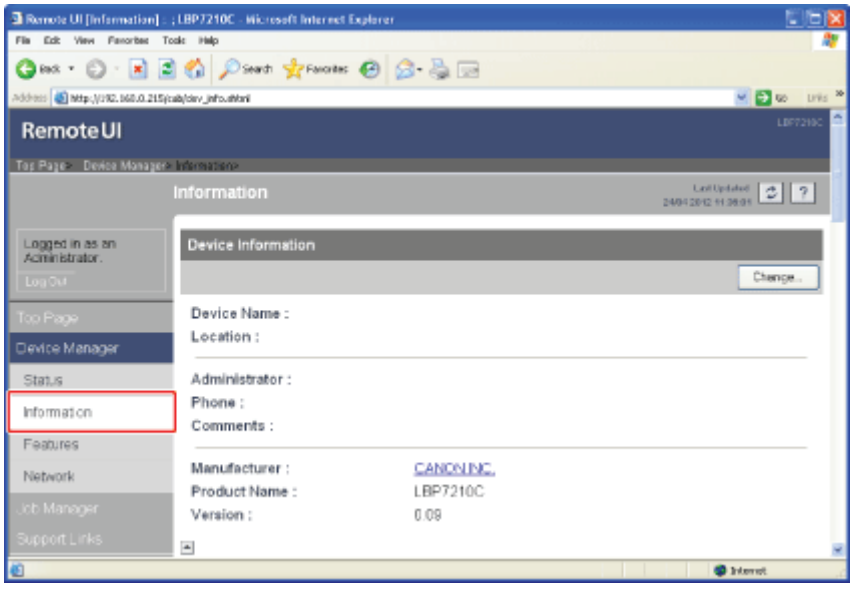
If the administrator password is not set

It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

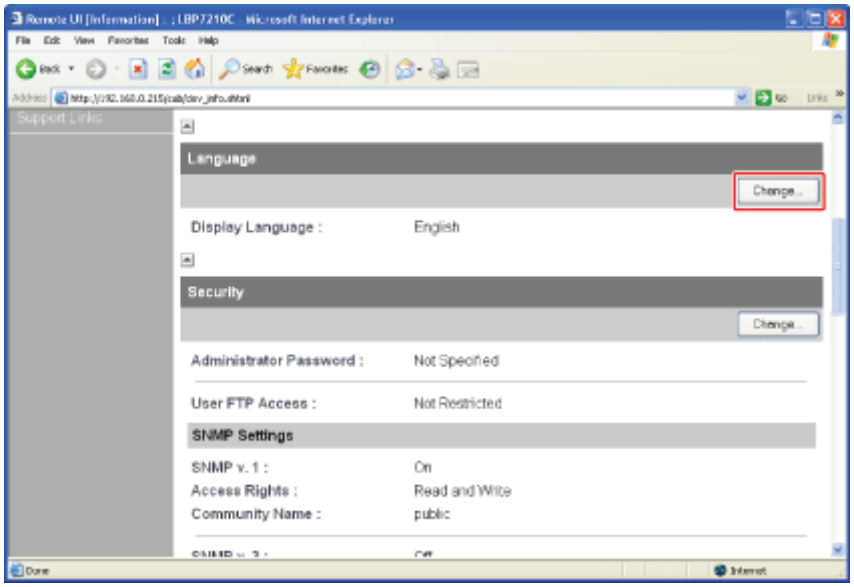
---

2. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



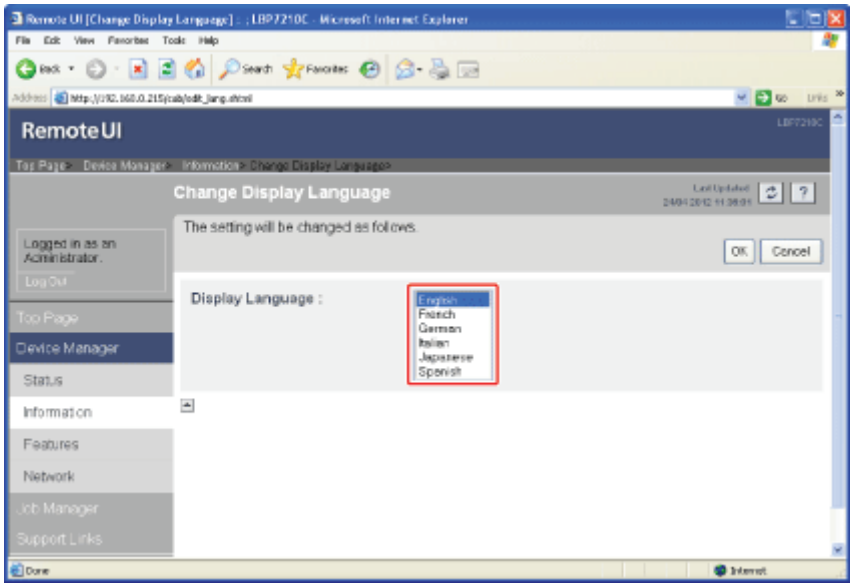
---

3. Click [Change] under [Language].



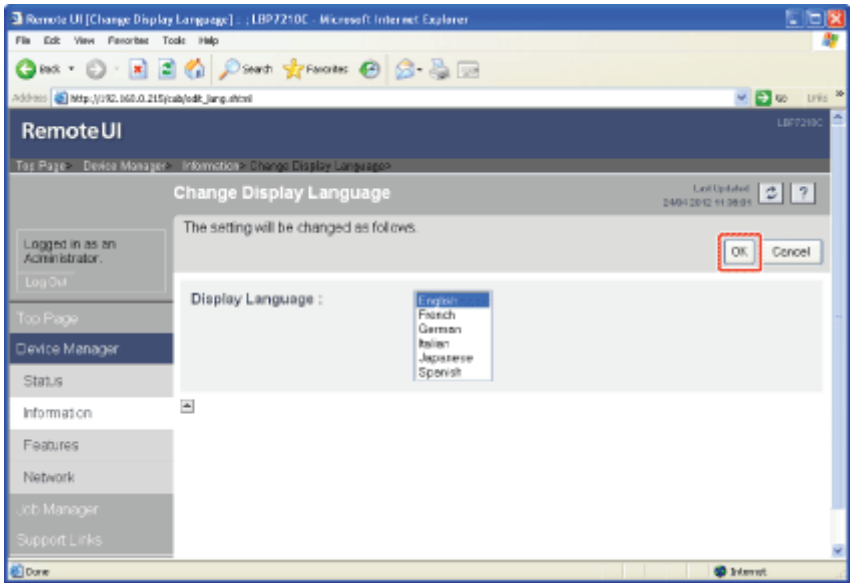
---

4. Select [Display Language].



---

5. Click [OK].



Managing Print Jobs

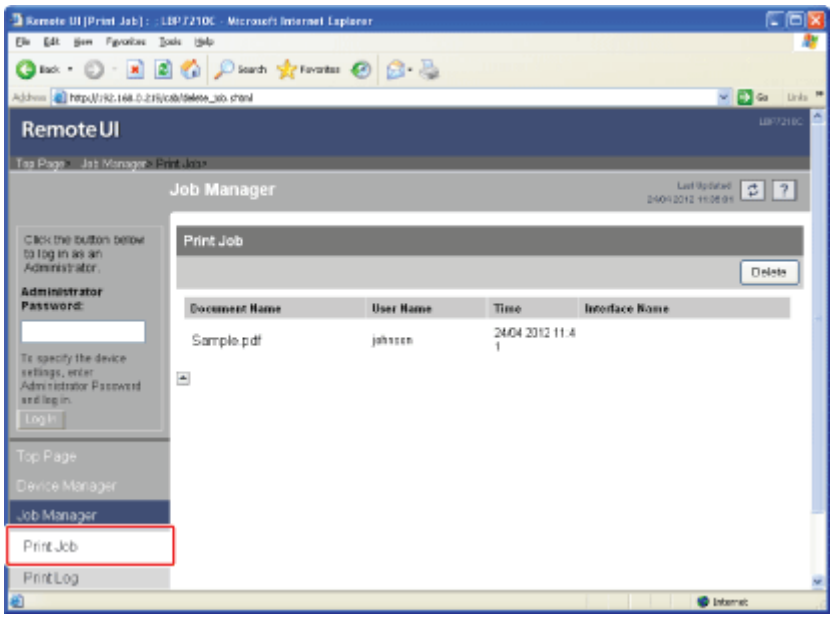
- Displaying and Deleting Print Jobs
- Displaying Print Logs

Displaying and Deleting Print Jobs

You can check the job currently being printed or delete jobs.

---

1. **From the [Job Manager] menu, select [Print Job].**



→ The job currently being printed is displayed.

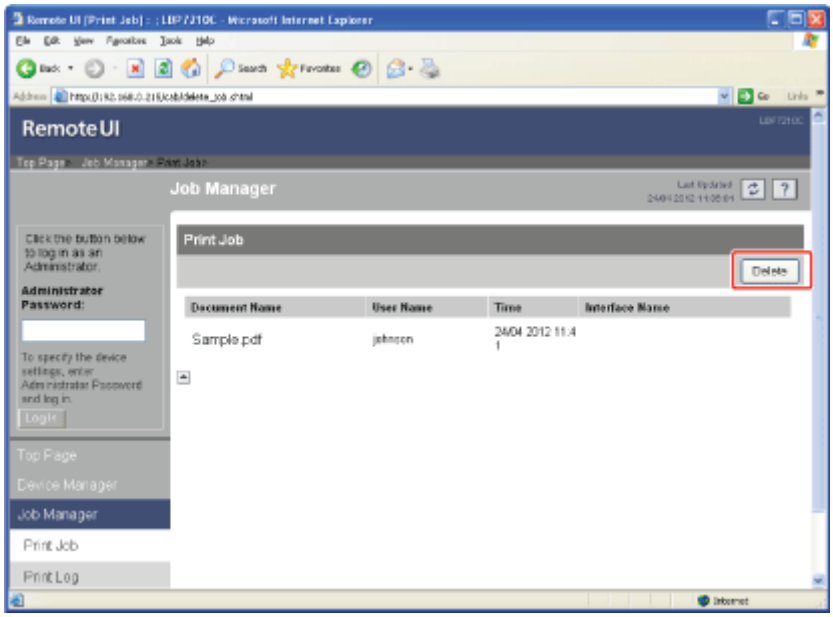
NOTE

About [Document Name]
A job file name of up to 20 characters can be displayed. If the number of characters exceeds 20, the characters after the limited number are not displayed, or some characters are not displayed properly.
Also, depending on the application, the application name may be added to the beginning of the file name.

About [Interface Name]
If you print via USB, [Local] is displayed in [Interface Name]. If you print via the network, nothing is displayed in the field.

---

2. **If you want to delete the job, click [Delete].**



NOTE

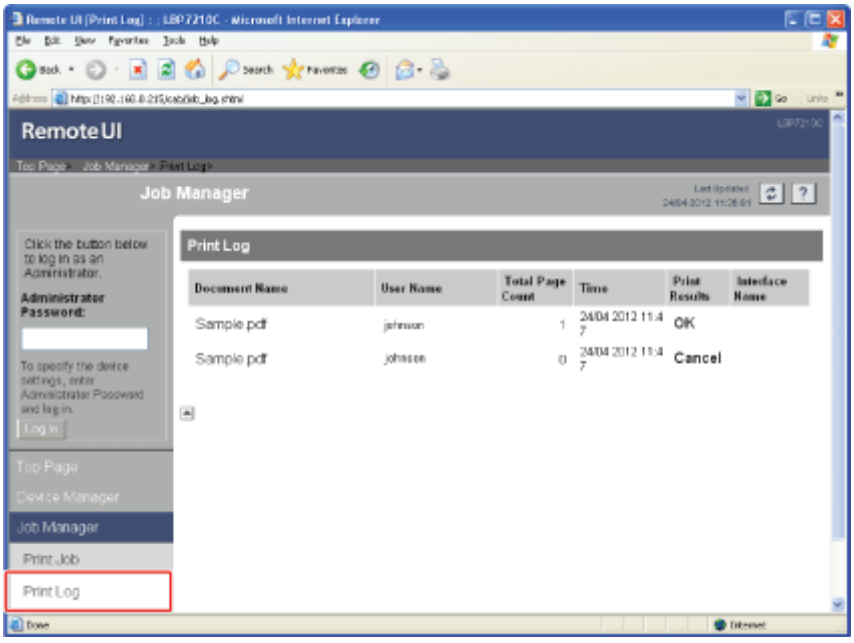
About the pages in process of printing

The pages in process of printing when [Delete] is clicked will be printed.

Displaying Print Logs

Allows you to check the job logs.

1. **Select [Print Log] from the [Job Manager] menu.**



NOTE

Print logs

- Up to 32 jobs can be displayed.
- When the number of jobs exceeds 32, the print logs are automatically deleted starting from the oldest one.
- The print logs are deleted when you turn off the printer.

About [Document Name]

A job file name of up to 20 characters can be displayed. If the number of characters exceeds 20, the characters after the limited number are not displayed, or some characters are not displayed properly.
Also, depending on the application, the application name may be added to the beginning of the file name.

About [Interface Name]

If you print via USB, [Local] is displayed in [Interface Name]. If you print via the network, nothing is displayed in the field.

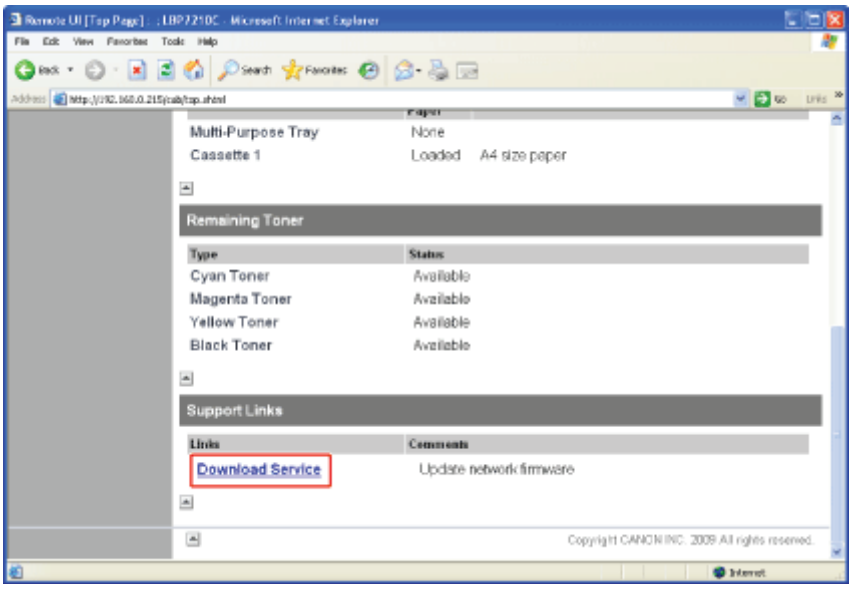
Displaying or Changing Support Links

The links to the sites that provide information about the printer support are supplied in the Remote UI, and you can access the sites from the Remote UI as needed. If you have logged in as Administrator, you can change the links.

- Displaying a Support Page
- Changing Support Links

Displaying a Support Page

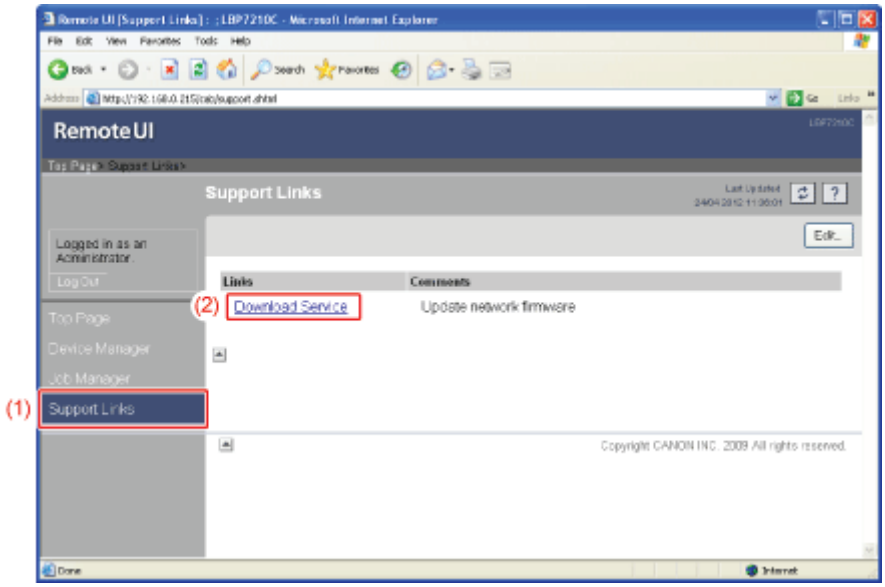
1. **Click a link you want to display.**



NOTE

Displaying a support page from the [Support Links] page

(1) Select [Support Links].
(2) Click a link you want to display.

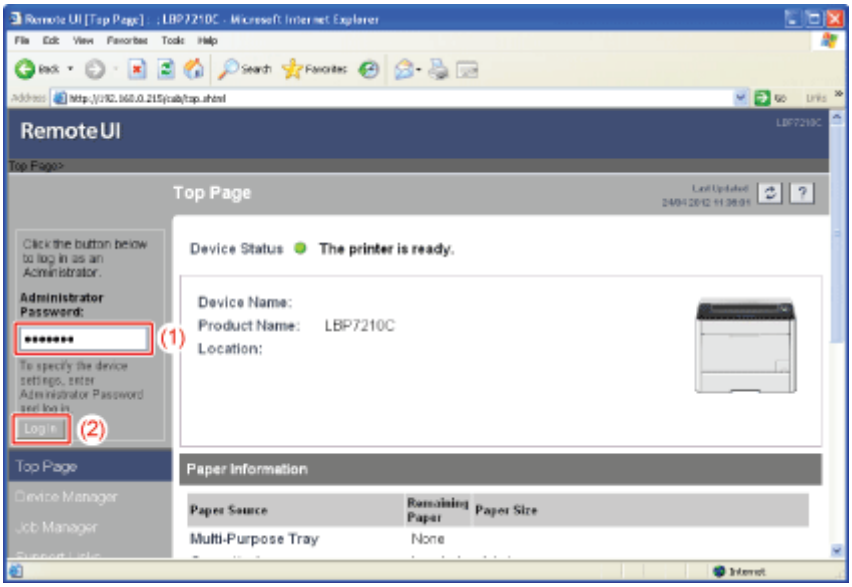


Changing Support Links

You can change support links or comments.

1. **Log in as Administrator.**

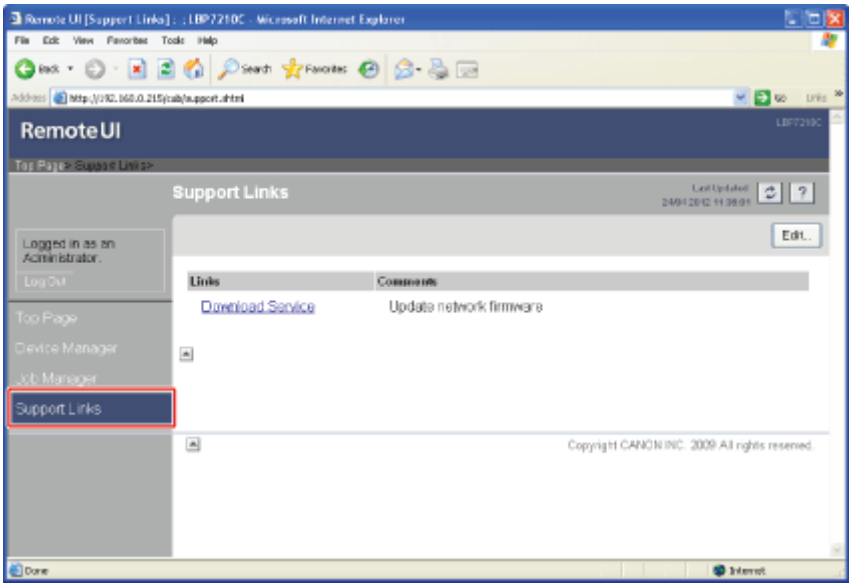
   (1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
   (2) Click [Log In].



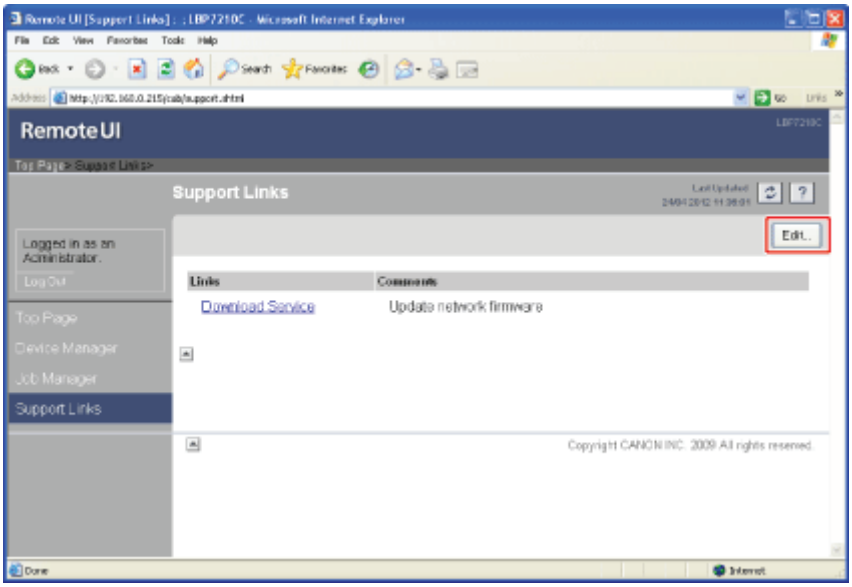
NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
Leave the [Current Password] field blank.
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

2. Select [Support Links].

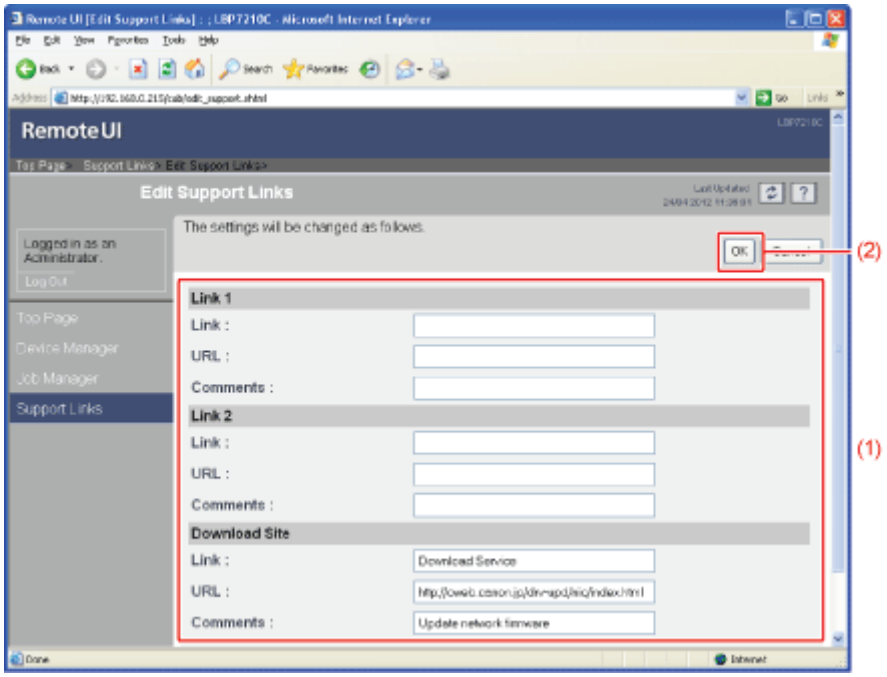


3. Click [Edit].



4. Change the link.

(1) Specify each link as needed.
(2) Confirm the settings, then click [OK].

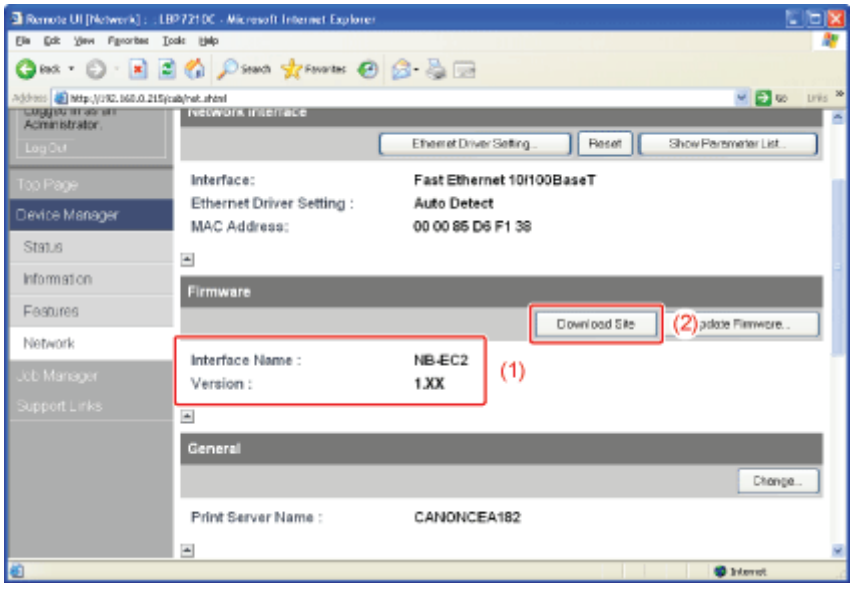


[Link]: Enter the link name.
[URL]: Enter the URL of the link.
[Comments]: Enter a comment for the link.

NOTE

About [Download Site]

The setting for [Download Site] are reflected to the link that is accessed by clicking [Download Site] under [Firmware] in the [Device Manager] - [Network] page.



[J-04] FTP Client

FTP Client allows you to specify the settings for various information about the printer as well as configure the network and security by accessing the FTP server on the printer using Command Prompt.
Also, you can upgrade the firmware.

- Managing the Printer Using FTP Client
- Initializing the Network Settings Using FTP Client

Managing the Printer Using FTP Client

1. **Run Command Prompt.**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Command Prompt].

---

2. **Enter "ftp <the IP address of the printer>", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   - Input Example: "ftp 192.168.0.215"

> **NOTE**
>
> **If you are not sure about the IP address of the printer**
> Refer to the Network Status Print printed in "Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status" or ask your network administrator.

---

3. **Enter "root" as the user name, then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

> **NOTE**
>
> **About the user name**
> You can log in by entering a name other than "root" (or leaving the field blank). In this case, you can perform operations other than settings.

---

4. **Enter the administrator password, then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   If the administrator password has not been specified yet, do not enter any value, but press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

---

5. **Enter "get config<the file name>", and then press [ENTER] on your keyboard.**

→ The config file is downloaded.
The characters entered for <the file name> become the name of the downloaded

config file.

NOTE

When upgrading the firmware
Enter "put<the update file of the firmware> FLASH", and then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.
For details on the update file of the firmware, see "Updating the Network Board Firmware".

If the config file cannot be found
Search for the config file using the file search function of your operating system.
(The download directory for the config file varies depending on the operating system or settings.)

6. **Edit the downloaded config file in Notepad or a similar text editor.**
For details on descriptions of each option, see "Setting Items".

7. **Enter "put<the file name> CONFIG", and then press [ENTER] on your keyboard.**
In <the file name>, enter the name of the config file that was entered when the file was downloaded.

8. **Enter "get reset", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
→ After completing the reset of the printer's network board, the settings are effective.
† The settings also become effective by restarting the printer. (Turn off the printer once, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it on.)

9. **Enter "quit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

10. **Enter "exit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
→ Command Prompt closes.

Initializing the Network Settings Using FTP Client

IMPORTANT

Precautions when initializing the network settings
Make sure that the printer is not operating before initializing the network settings.
If you initialize the network settings while the printer is printing or receiving data, the received data may not be printed properly, or may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.

1. **Run Command Prompt.**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [Accessories] → [Command Prompt].

2. **Enter "ftp<the IP address of the printer>", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   - Input Example: "ftp 192.168.0.215"

> **NOTE**
>
> **If you are not sure about the IP address of the printer**
> Refer to the Network Status Print printed in "Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status" or ask your network administrator.

3. **Enter "root" as the user name, then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

> **NOTE**
>
> **About the user name**
> You can log in by entering a name other than "root" (or leaving the field blank). In this case, you can perform operations other than settings.

4. **Enter the administrator password, then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   If the administrator password has not been specified yet, do not enter any value, but press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.

5. **Enter "get defaults", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**
   → The defaults file (the list of the default values of the network settings) is downloaded.

> **NOTE**
>
> **If the defaults file cannot be found**
> Search for the defaults file using the file search function of your operating system.
> (The download directory for the defaults file varies depending on the operating system or settings.)

6. **Enter "put defaults CONFIG", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

7. **Enter "get reset", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

→ After completing the reset of the printer's network board, the network settings are initialized.

† The network settings are initialized also by restarting the printer. (Turn off the printer once, wait at least 10 seconds, and then turn it on.)

8. **Enter "quit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

9. **Enter "exit", then press the [ENTER] key on your keyboard.**

→ Command Prompt closes.

[J-05] NetSpot Device Installer

NetSpot Device Installer is the software to configure the basic protocol settings as well as display the statuses of various printers on a network.
Install the software on your computer or run the software directly from the supplied CD-ROM.

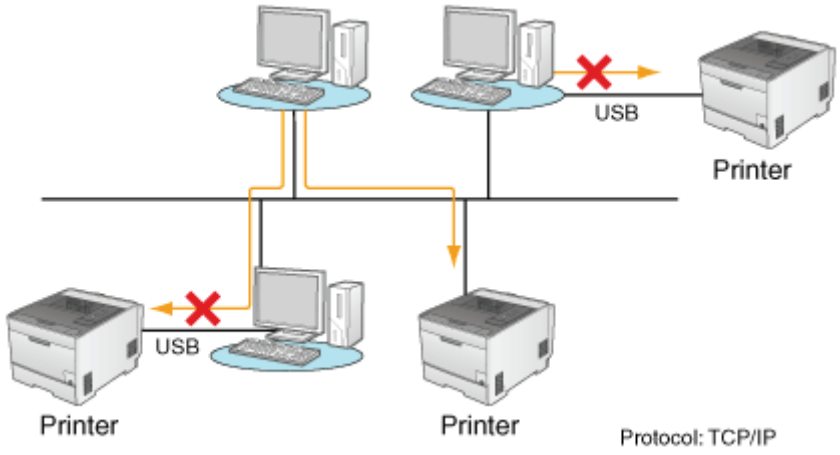
- Types of Devices That Can Be Configured
- NetSpot Device Installer System Requirements
- Installing NetSpot Device Installer
- Running NetSpot Device Installer
- Using NetSpot Device Installer
- Initializing the Network Settings Using NetSpot Device Installer
- Uninstalling NetSpot Device Installer

NOTE

About the screenshots of NetSpot Device Installer
The screenshots may be different from those actually you see on the screen.

Types of Devices That Can Be Configured

You can use NetSpot Device Installer to configure the default network protocol settings of a device connected to the TCP/IP network.
You cannot configure the settings of a device connected to a network other than a TCP/IP network.



NetSpot Device Installer System Requirements

Operating system

- Windows XP Professional or Home Edition
- Windows XP Professional x64 Edition
- Windows Server 2003
- Windows Server 2003 x64 Editions
- Windows Vista (32-bit or 64-bit version)

- Windows Server 2008 (32-bit or 64-bit version)
- Windows 7 (32-bit or 64-bit version)

† For details on the latest NetSpot Device Installer, see the Canon Web site (http://www.canon.com/).

Computer

- A computer on which any one of the above operating systems can run

Hard disk space

- Free disk space of 20 MB or more (to install the software on the computer)

Protocol

- TCP/IP

Protocol stack

- TCP/IP protocol supplied with Windows

Installing NetSpot Device Installer

Use the following procedure to install NetSpot Device Installer.

† You can use NetSpot Device Installer without installing it.
Running NetSpot Device Installer Directly from the Supplied CD-ROM

IMPORTANT

Precautions when installing NetSpot Device Installer

- Close all the other applications before the installation.
- A user without administrative rights cannot perform installation. To perform installation, be sure to log on as a user with administrative rights.

  † Contact your system administrator if you are not sure about your administrative rights.

If Windows Firewall is enabled

You cannot search for printers on a subnet that is different from that of the computer using NetSpot Device Installer.
To search for a printer on a subnet that is different from the one that the computers using NetSpot Device Installer are on, add NetSpot Device Installer to Windows Firewall during the installation.

---

1. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**
   When the following screen appears, click [Exit].

NOTE

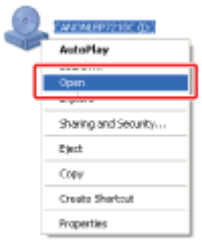
If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Select [Open folder to view files], and then proceed to Step 4.

---

2. **Open [My Computer] or [Computer].**
   - Windows XP and Server 2003
     From the [Start] menu, select [My Computer].
   - Windows Vista and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [Computer].

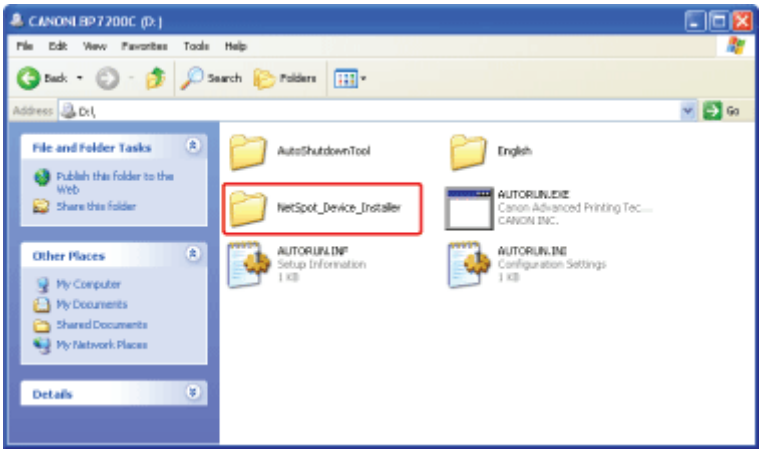
---

3. **Right-click the CD-ROM icon, then select [Open] from the pop-up menu.**

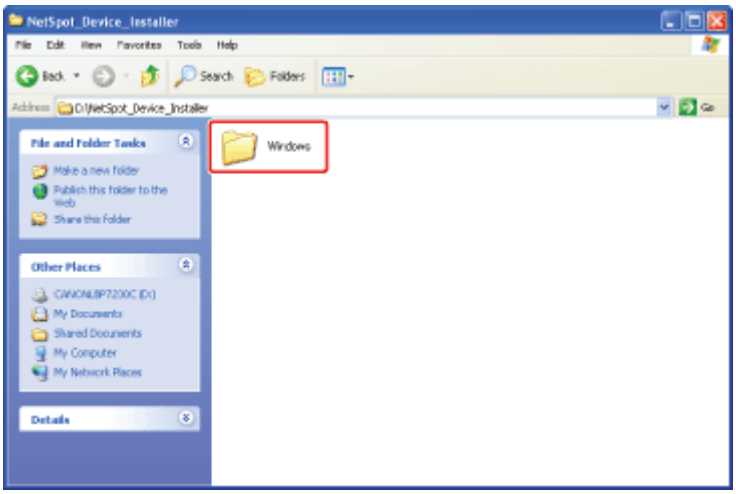


---

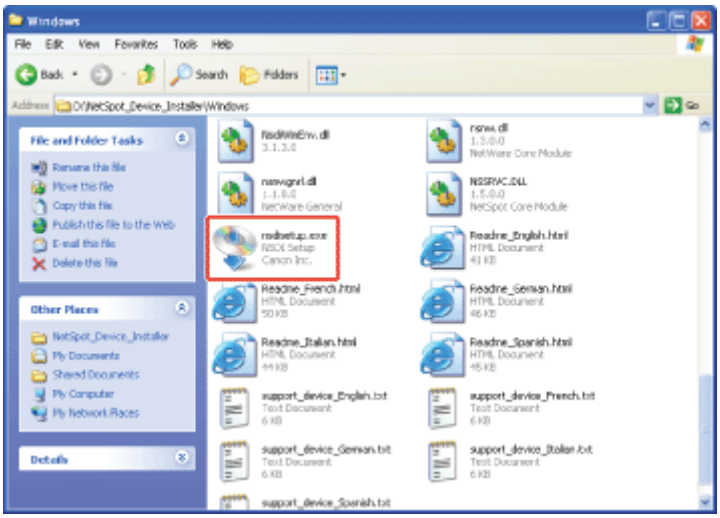
4. **Double-click the [NetSpot_Device_Installer] folder.**



5. **Double-click the [Windows] folder.**



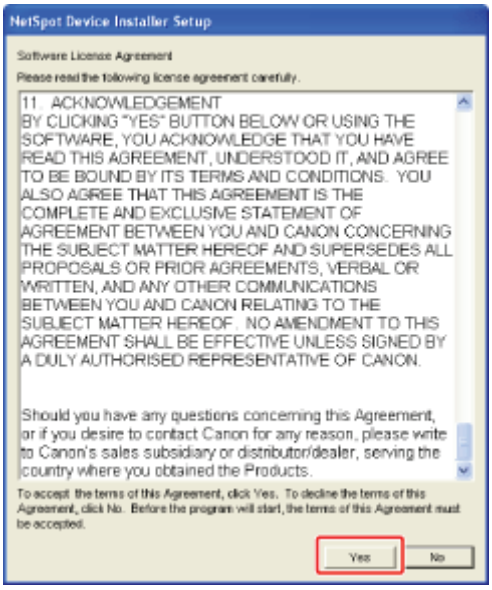
6. **Double-click [nsdisetup.exe].**



NOTE

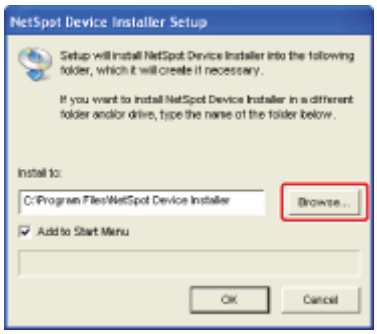
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

7. Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].



---

8. Click [Browse], and then select the installation directory.

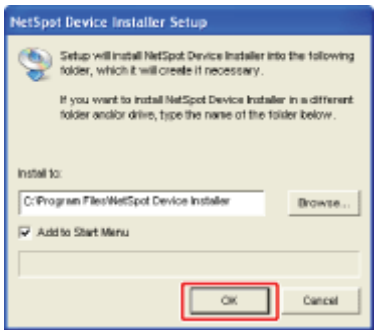


NOTE

When adding NetSpot Device Installer to the [Start] menu
Select the [Add to Start Menu] check box.

---

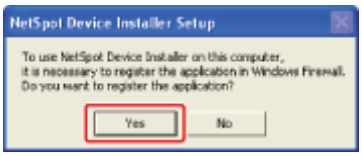
9. Click [OK].



→ The installation starts.

NOTE

If Windows Firewall is enabled
The following screen appears. Click [Yes].



† If you click [No], you cannot search for the printers in which the IP address has not been set yet or printers on a subnet that is different from that of the computer using NetSpot Device Installer.

---

10. **Click [OK].**

---

11. **Click [Cancel].**

NOTE

About Plug-ins
You can expand the functions of NetSpot Device Installer by adding Plug-ins.
For more details on Plug-ins, see Readme of NetSpot Device Installer.

† To display Readme of NetSpot Device Installer, click [ ] in [NetSpot Device Installer for TCP/IP] in the [Additional Software Programs] screen in CD-ROM Setup.

Running NetSpot Device Installer

You can run NetSpot Device Installer in either of the following two ways.

- Running NetSpot Device Installer from a Computer
- Running NetSpot Device Installer Directly from the Supplied CD-ROM

Running NetSpot Device Installer from a Computer

1. **Run NetSpot Device Installer.**
   - Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
     From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [NetSpot Device Installer] → [NetSpot Device Installer].

NOTE

If NetSpot Device Installer is not found in the [Start] menu
Double-click [nsdi.exe] in the folder in which NetSpot Device Installer is installed.

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

Running NetSpot Device Installer Directly from the Supplied CD-ROM

1. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**
   If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

   → CD-ROM Setup appears.
   † It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear
Display it using the following procedure.
(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

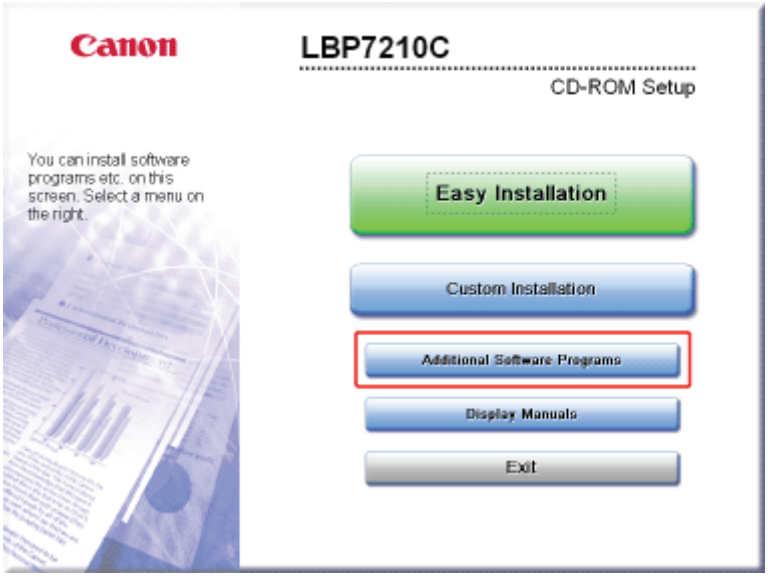
- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:\English\MInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

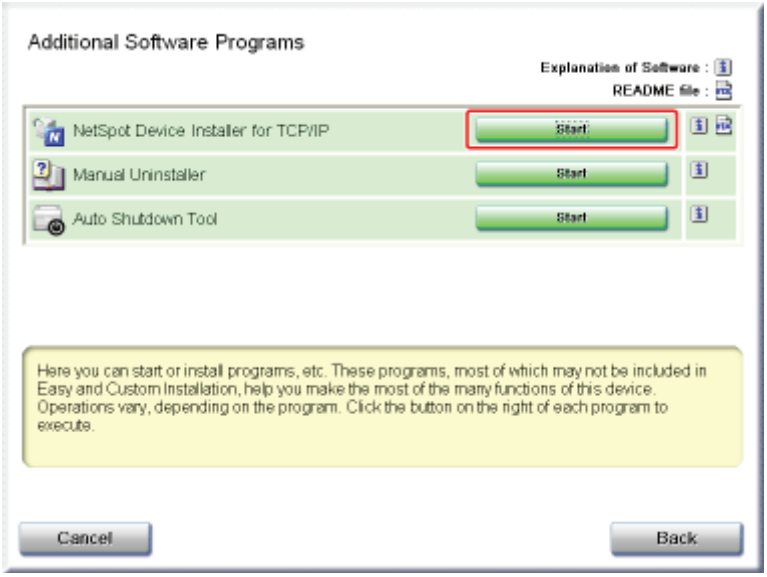
---

2. Click [Additional Software Programs].



---

3. Click [Start] for [NetSpot Device Installer for TCP/IP].



NOTE

If the [License Agreement] dialog box appears
Read the contents of License Agreement, and then click [Yes].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)
Click [Continue].

Using NetSpot Device Installer

NetSpot Device Installer allows you to configure the basic protocol settings as well as display the statuses of various printers on a network.
For details on the procedure for setting the IP address using NetSpot Device Installer, see "Setting the IP Address".
For more details on other procedures for using NetSpot Device Installer, see Help.

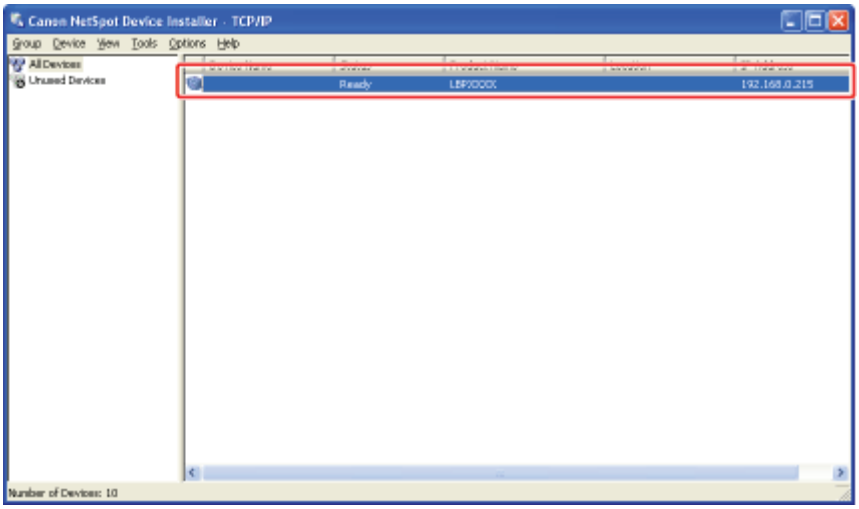
† Help is displayed by clicking [Help] in the [Help] menu.

Initializing the Network Settings Using NetSpot Device Installer

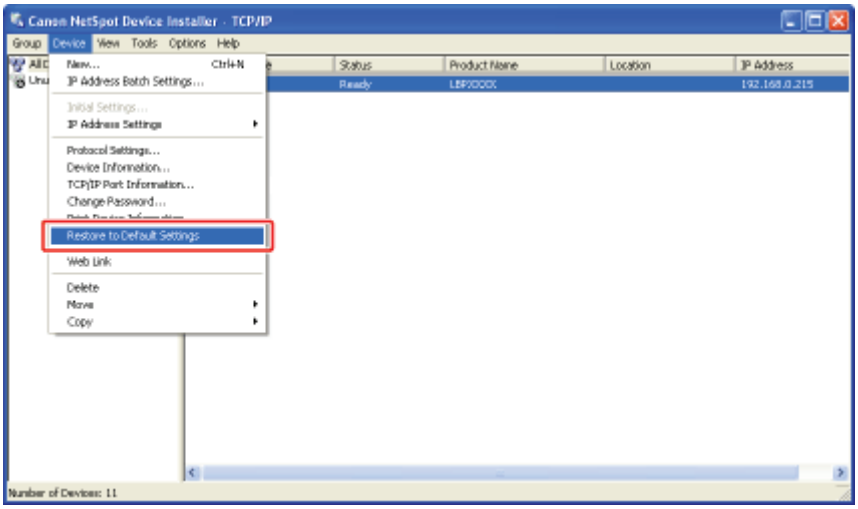
IMPORTANT

Precautions when initializing the network settings
Make sure that the printer is not operating before initializing the network settings.
If you initialize the network settings while the printer is printing or receiving data, the received data may not be printed properly, or may result in paper jams or damage to the printer.

1. **Select the printer for which you want to initialize the network settings.**

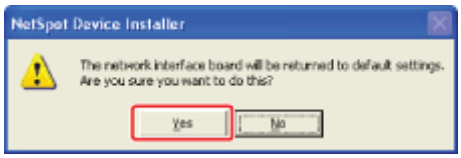


2. **From the [Device] menu, select [Restore to Default Settings].**



---

3. **Click [Yes].**



---

4. **Perform the following procedure.**

If the message <The device has been reset.> appears

Click [OK].
To perform a reset operation properly, wait for approximately 20 seconds or longer as is after clicking [OK].

→ After completing the reset of the printer's network board, the settings are effective.

If the message <Turn the device off and then on again.> appears

Click [OK], and then cycle the power of the printer.

→ The settings are effective after cycling the power of the printer.

Uninstalling NetSpot Device Installer

The process of removing software to restore the computer to the same state as before the software was installed is referred to as uninstallation. Use the following procedure to uninstall NetSpot Device Installer.

---

1. **Uninstall NetSpot Device Installer.**

- Windows XP, Server 2003, Vista, and Server 2008
  From the [Start] menu, select [All Programs] → [NetSpot Device Installer] → [Uninstall NetSpot Device Installer].

→ Command Prompt appears, and the uninstallation starts.
The uninstallation is completed when Command Prompt closes.

NOTE

If NetSpot Device Installer is not found in the [Start] menu
Double-click [rmnsdi.bat] in the following location.

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  "\Documents and Settings\<the user name>\Local Settings\Application Data\canon.com\nsdi" in the drive on which the system is installed
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  "\Users\<the user name>\AppData\Local\canon.com\nsdi" in the drive on which the system is installed

If NetSpot Device Installer cannot be uninstalled completely
See Readme in the folder in which NetSpot Device Installer is installed.

[J-06] Setting and Changing the Administrator Password

You can set the administrator password using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.
- **NetSpot Device Installer**
  You can specify the settings using the Canon software, NetSpot Device Installer, in the supplied CD-ROM.

Only the administrator (user who know the password) can configure the settings or perform the operations related to the printer management by setting the administrator password.
Also, the administrator password can be changed anytime.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

- Setting the Administrator Password
- Changing the Administrator Password

NOTE

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

Specifying the settings using NetSpot Device Installer
"NetSpot Device Installer"

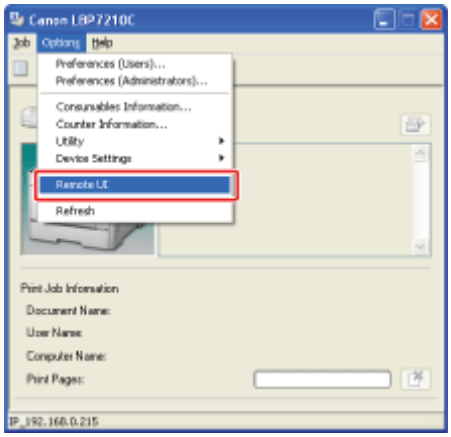
Setting the Administrator Password

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

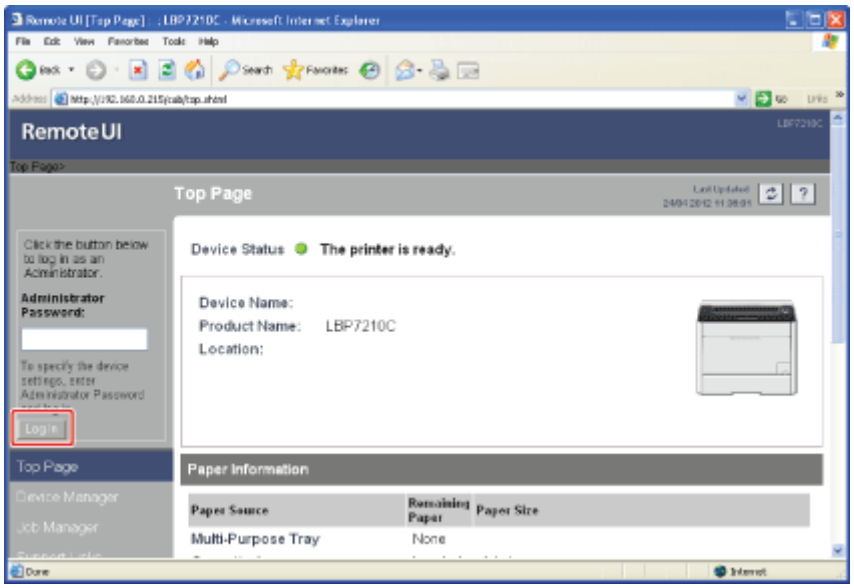
NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. **Click [Log In].**

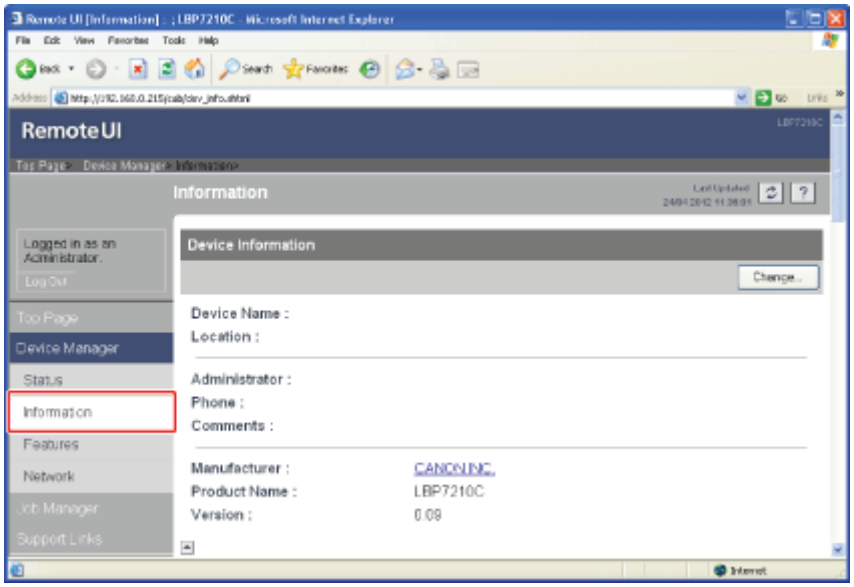


NOTE

About the default administrator password
The administrator password is not set by default. Log in to the Remote UI without entering a password.

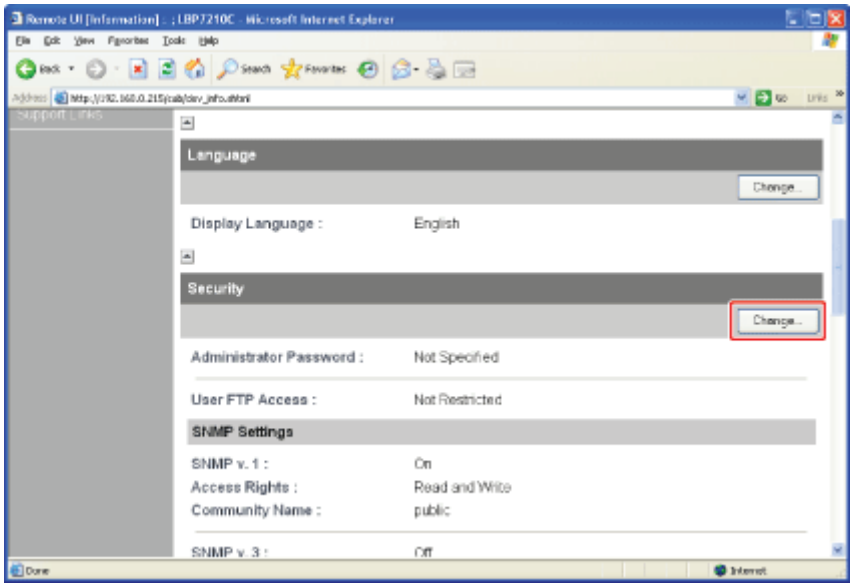
---

4. **Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.**



---

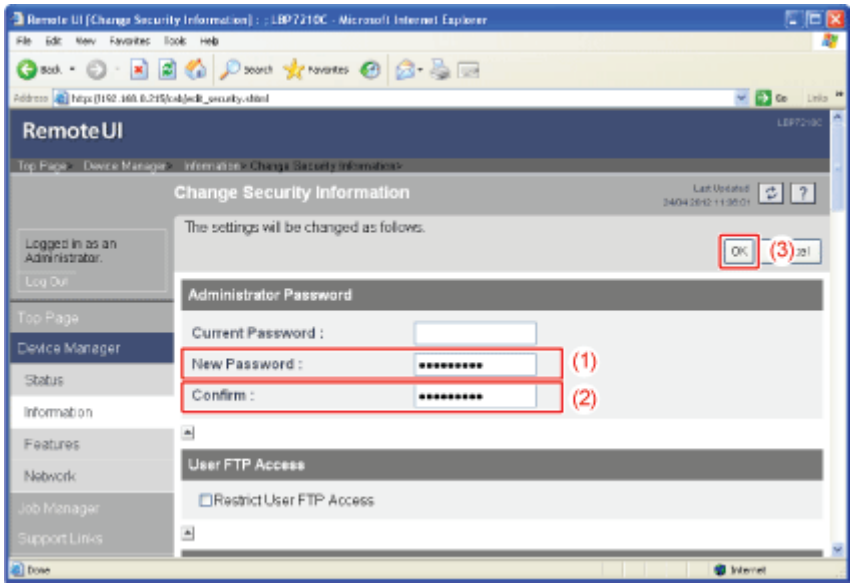
5. Click [Change] under [Security].



---

6. Set the administrator password.

(1) Enter a desired password. Up to 15 characters can be entered.
(2) To confirm the password, enter the entered [New Password] again.
(3) Click [OK].



NOTE

Setting the administrator password for the first time

It is not required to enter any value in [Current Password].

Changing the Administrator Password

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

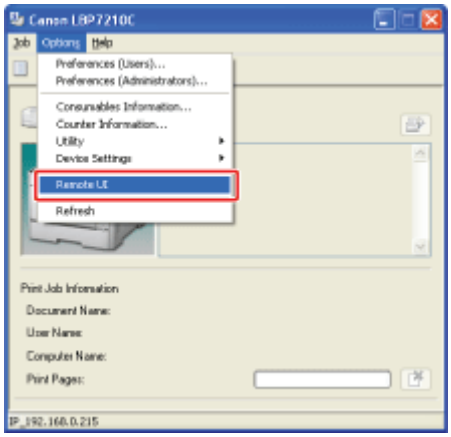
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

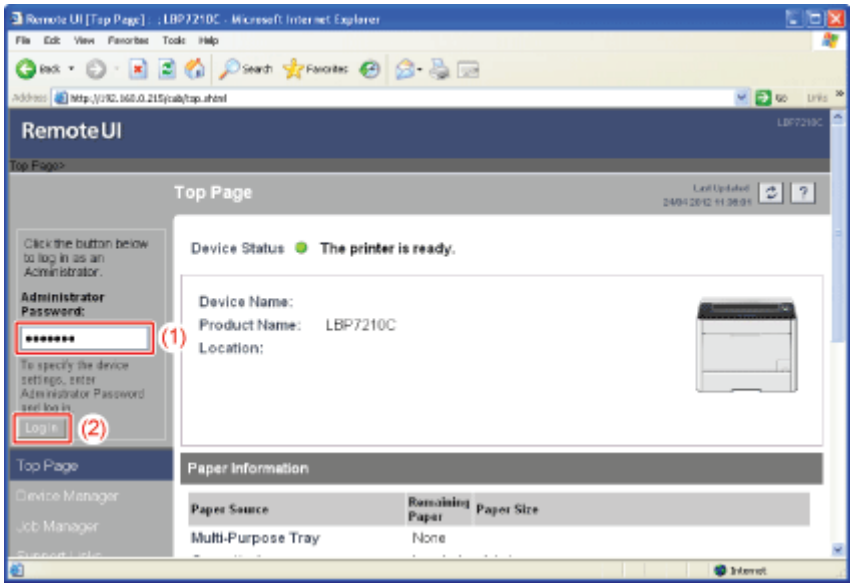
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

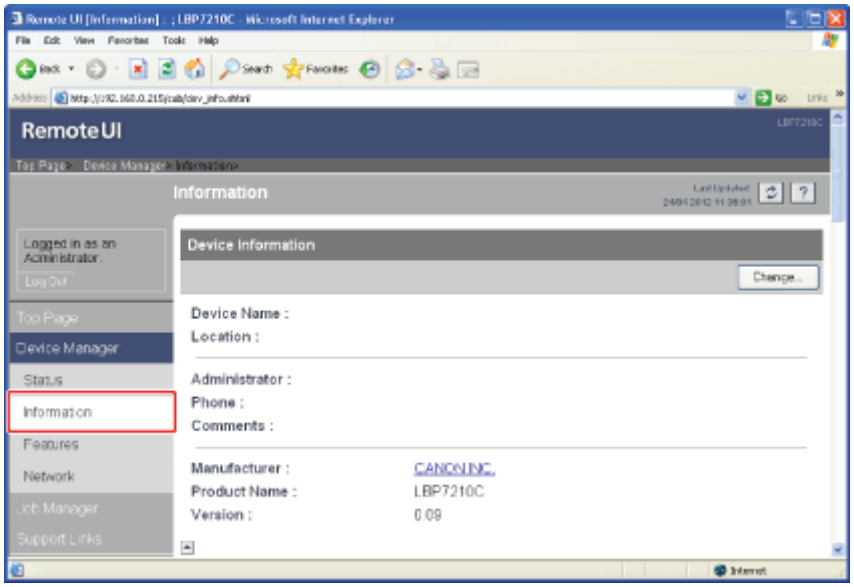
3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].



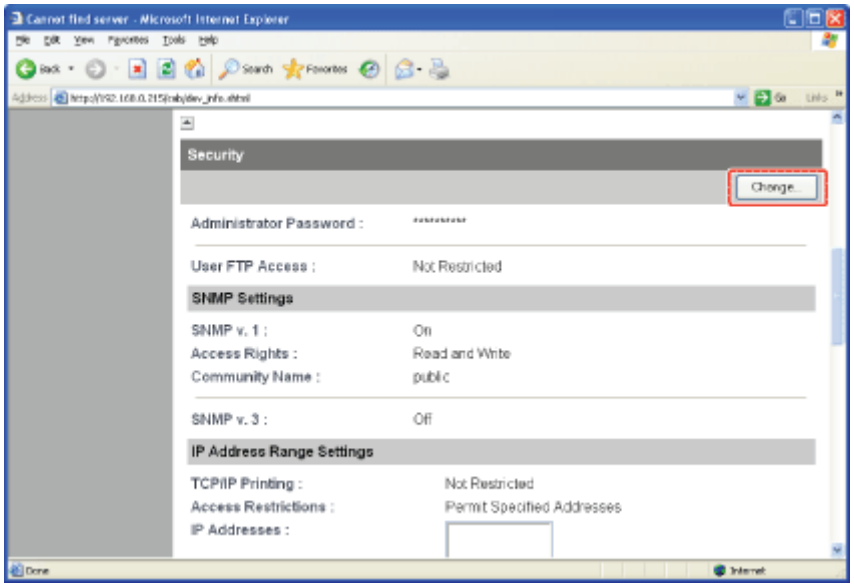
---

4. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



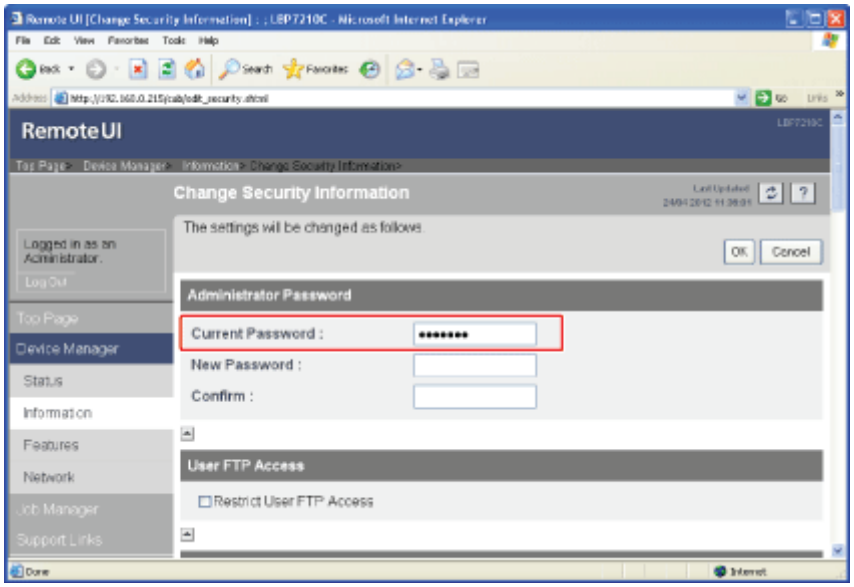
---

5. Click [Change] under [Security].



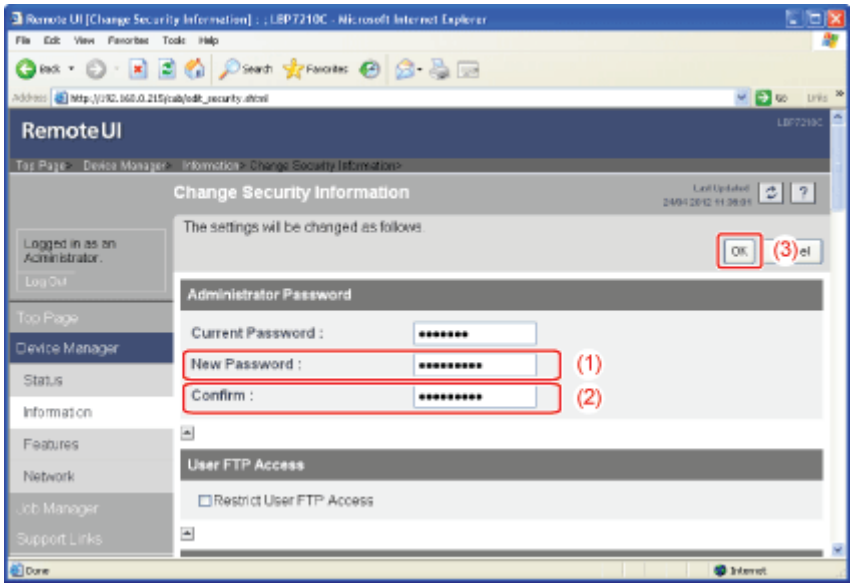
---

6. Enter the password currently being used.



7. Set a new password.

(1) Enter a new desired password. Up to 15 characters can be entered.
(2) To confirm the password, enter the entered [New Password] again.
(3) Click [OK].



[J-07] Specifying and Changing the Device Name or Administrator Information

You can specify and change the device name or administrator information using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.
- **NetSpot Device Installer**
  You can specify the settings using the Canon software, NetSpot Device Installer, in the supplied CD-ROM.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

Specifying the settings using NetSpot Device Installer
"NetSpot Device Installer"

---

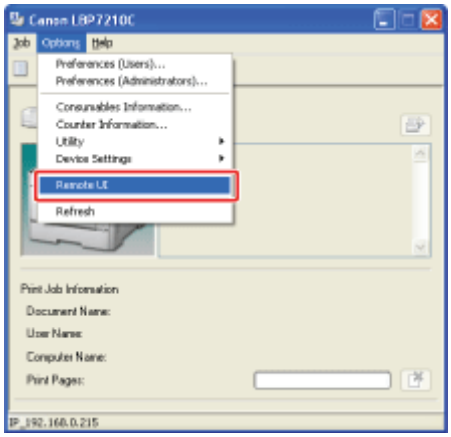
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

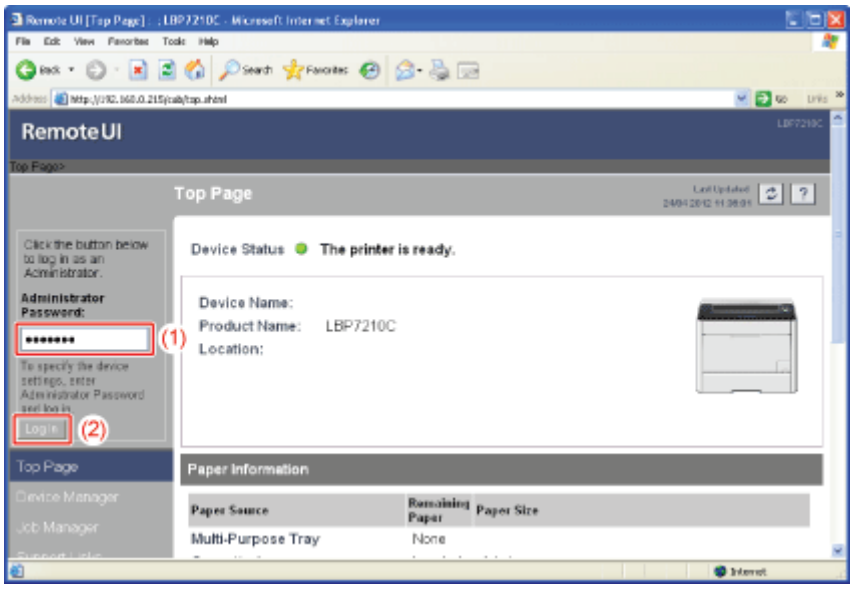
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

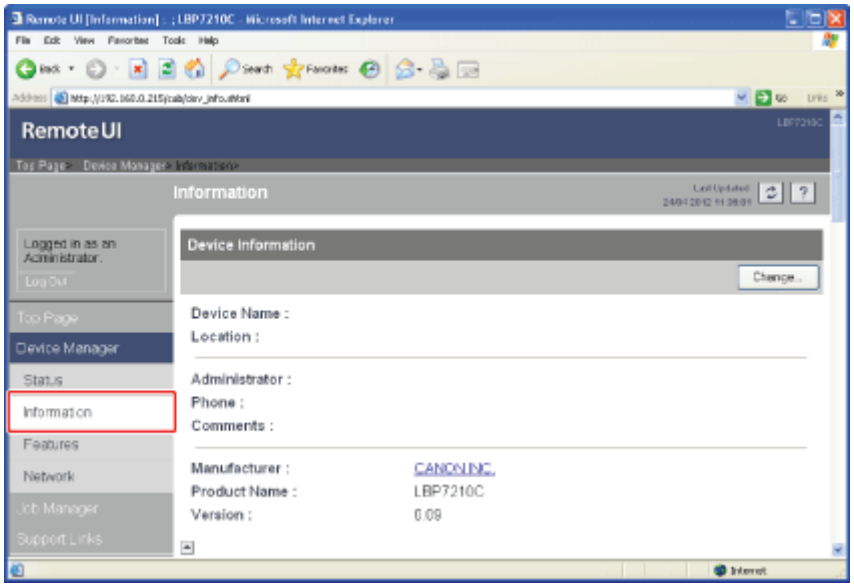


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

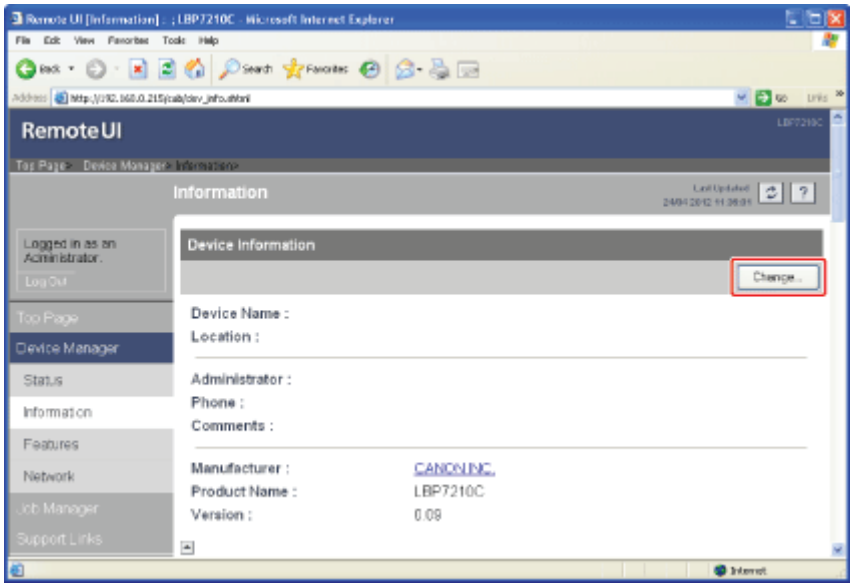
---

4. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



---

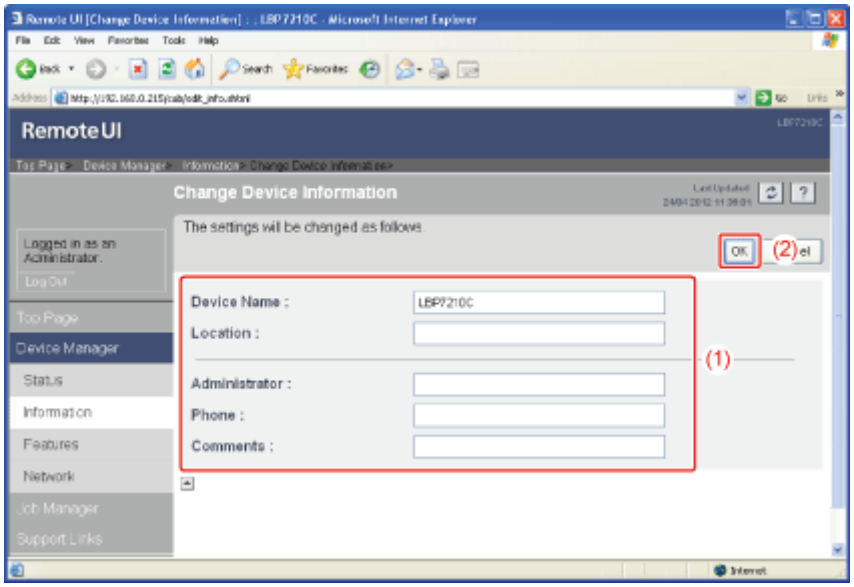
5. Click [Change] under [Device Information].



---

6. Specify and change the device name or administrator information.

(1) Specify and change each setting.
(2) Click [OK].



[Device Name]: Enter the printer name.
[Location]: Enter the location to install the printer.
[Administrator]: Enter the name of the printer administrator.
[Phone]: Enter the telephone number of the printer administrator.
[Comments]: Enter the comments of the printer administrator.

[J-08] Checking by the Remote UI

- Displaying the Remote UI
- Checking the Printer Settings

Displaying the Remote UI

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

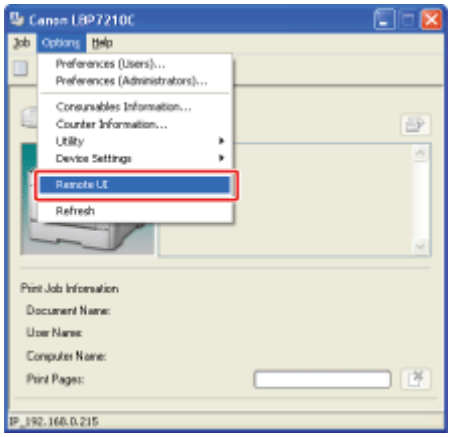
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]

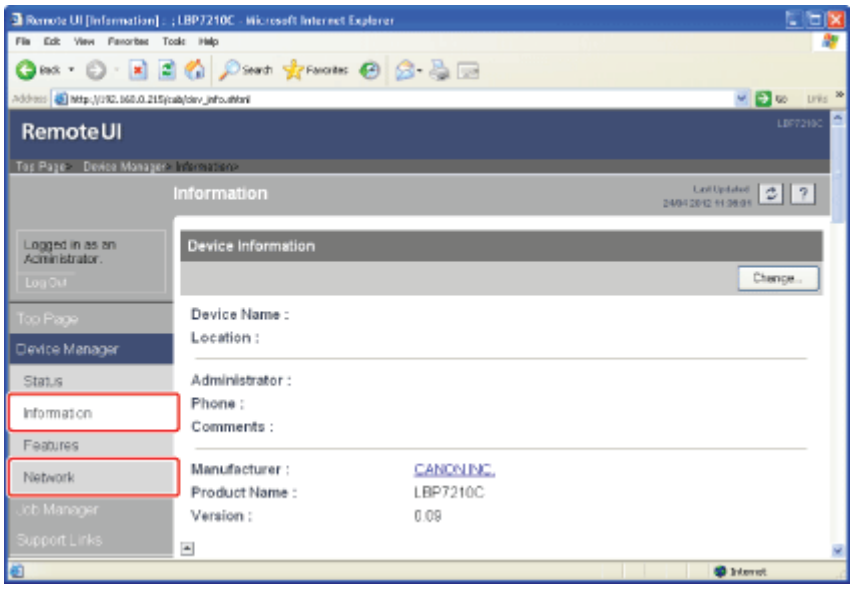
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

Checking the Printer Settings

By obtaining information from the printer, you can display the current printer status and printer information in the Remote UI.
To check the printer settings, select [Information] or [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.

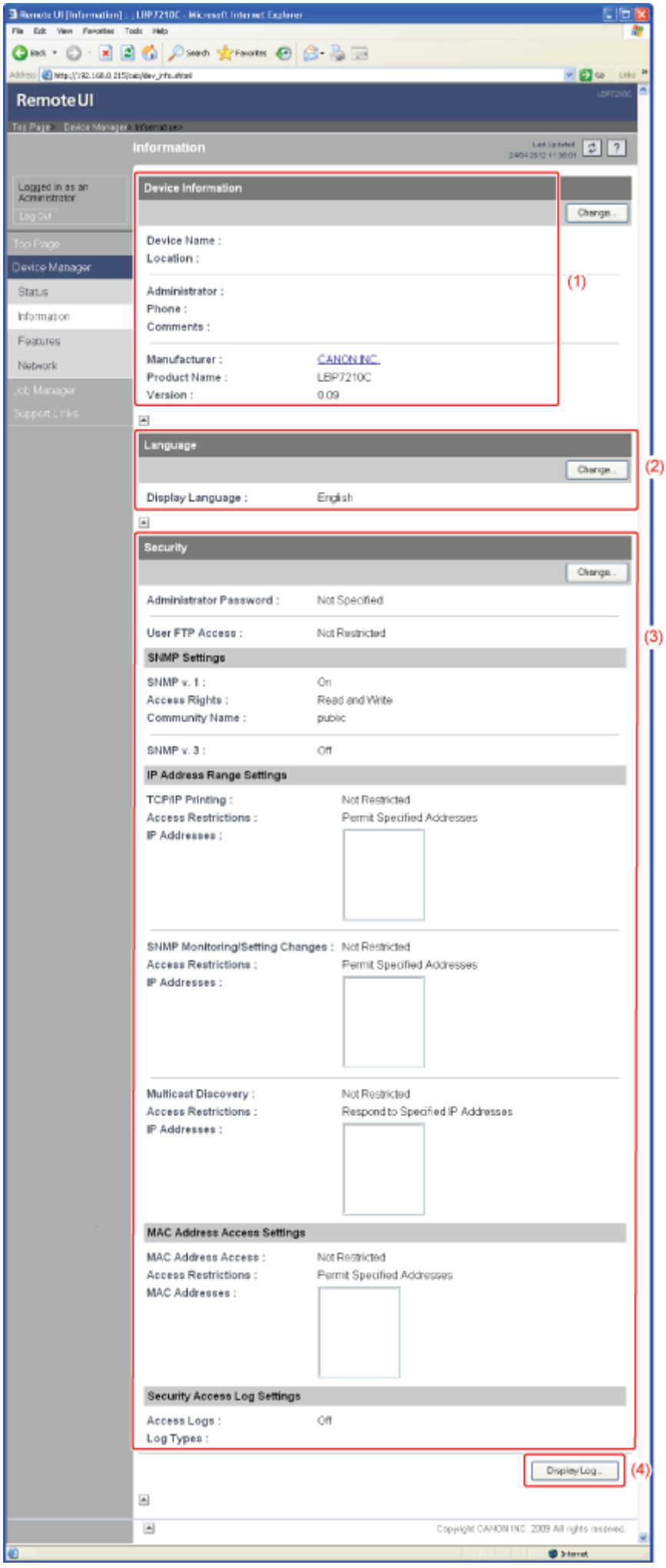


- [Information] Page

  You can check the printer information, security settings, etc.
- [Network] Page

  You can check the network settings etc.

[Information] Page


Remote UI
Information
Logged in as an Administrator.
Log Out
Top Page
Device Manager
Status
Information
Features
Network
Job Manager
Support Links
Device Information
Change...
Device Name :
Location :
Administrator :
Phone :
Comments :
Manufacturer : CANON INC.
Product Name : LBP7210C
Version : 0.09
(1)
Language
Change...
Display Language : English
(2)
Security
Change...
Administrator Password : Not Specified
User FTP Access : Not Restricted
SNMP Settings
SNMP v. 1 : On
Access Rights : Read and Write
Community Name : public
SNMP v. 3 : Off
IP Address Range Settings
TCP/IP Printing : Not Restricted
Access Restrictions : Permit Specified Addresses
IP Addresses :
SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes : Not Restricted
Access Restrictions : Permit Specified Addresses
IP Addresses :
Multicast Discovery : Not Restricted
Access Restrictions : Respond to Specified IP Addresses
IP Addresses :
MAC Address Access Settings
MAC Address Access : Not Restricted
Access Restrictions : Permit Specified Addresses
MAC Addresses :
Security Access Log Settings
Access Logs : Off
Log Types :
(3)
Display Log...
(4)
Copyright CANON INC. 2009 All rights reserved.

(1) [Device Information]:

Displays general information about the printer.

† How to change the settings

"Specifying and Changing the Device Name or Administrator Information"

(2) [Language]:

Displays the display language currently being used in the Remote UI.

† How to change the settings

"Remote UI"

(3) [Security]:

Displays information about the security settings, such as the administrator password and the access restrictions.

† How to change the settings

"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

"Restricting the Users Who Can Print with IP Addresses"

"Restricting the Users Who Can Access with MAC Addresses"

"Restricting the Users Who Can Monitor and Change the Settings Using the SNMP Protocol"

"Restricting the Users Who Can Perform Multicast Discovery"

"Restricting the FTP Access from End-users"

(4) [Display Log]:

Clicking this button displays the [Security Access Log] page that allows you to display or save the obtained security access logs.

You can also display the date and time that the print server obtained from the SNTP server, or update the date and time by obtaining them from the SNTP server.

† How to change the settings

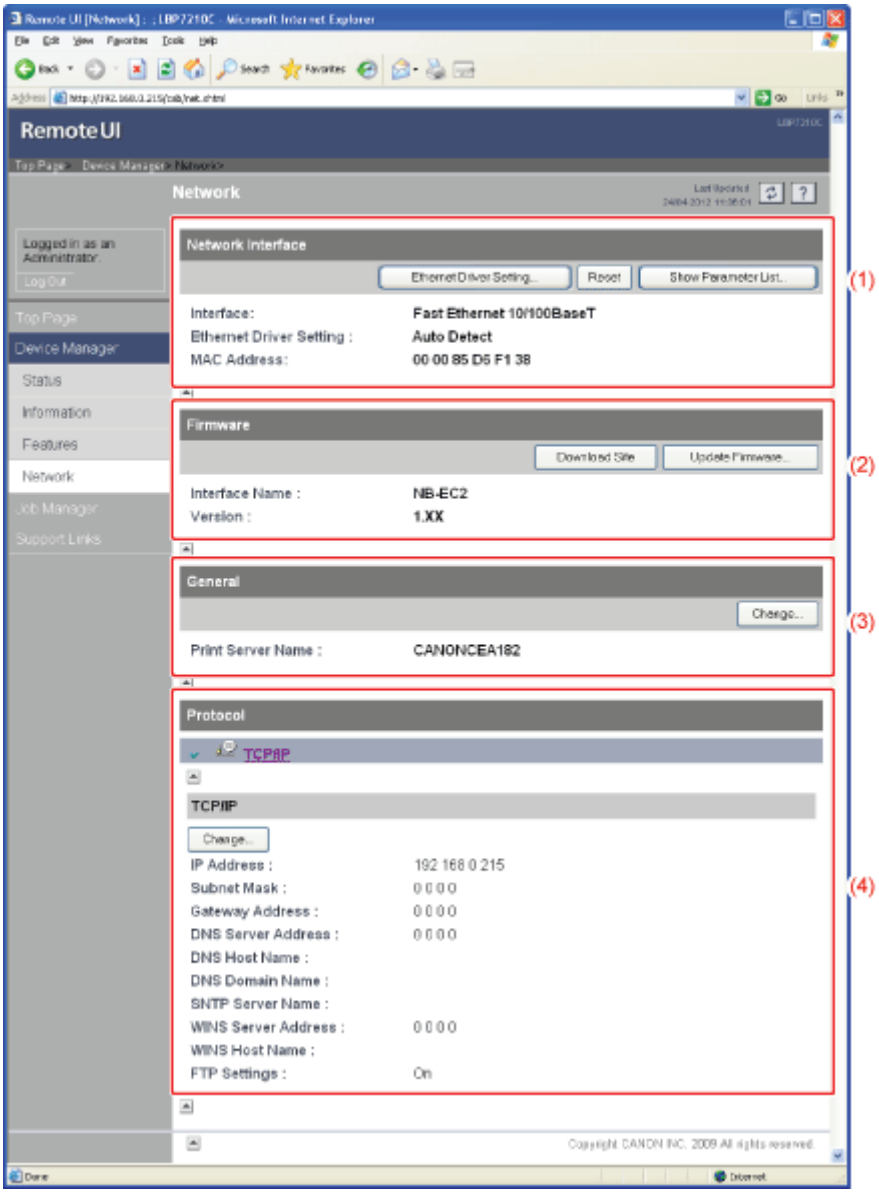
"Obtaining and Checking the Security Access Logs"

NOTE

Changing the settings

You can change the settings only if you have logged in as Administrator.

[Network] Page



(1) [Network Interface]:

Displays information about the network interface etc.

† How to change the settings

"Changing the Network Transmission Speed or Transfer Mode"

(2) [Firmware]:

Displays the name of the current network interface and its version.

† How to update the network board firmware

"Updating the Network Board Firmware"

(3) [General]:

Displays the print server name (port name).

† How to change the settings

"Changing the Port Name of the Printer"

(4) [Protocol]:

Displays the network protocol settings.

† How to change the settings

"Configuring the Protocol Settings"

NOTE

Changing the settings

- You can change the settings only if you have logged in as Administrator.
- After changing the network settings, click [Reset] in the [Network] page to reset the print server. If you do not reset the print server, the changed settings cannot be enabled.

[J-09] Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status

You can check the printer status or network settings by printing Status Print.

- Printing Configuration Page Print
- Printing Network Status Print

Printing Configuration Page Print

Configuration Page Print is used to print the settings of the printer unit, the total number of printed pages, and other printer information.

NOTE

Load A4 size paper.
The Configuration Page Print is set to print on A4 size paper.
Be sure to load A4 size paper when printing the Configuration Page Print.

---

1. **Load A4-size paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer.**
"Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

---

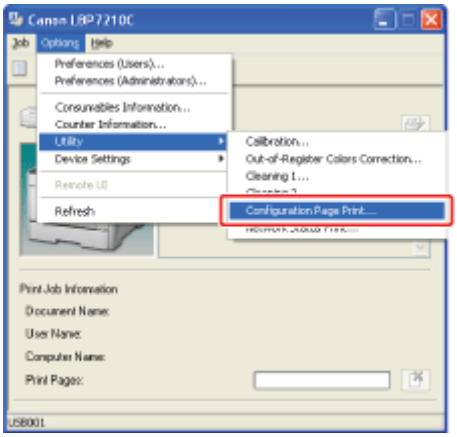
2. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

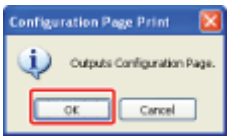
---

3. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Configuration Page Print].**



---

4. Click [OK].



→ Configuration Page Print is printed.

NOTE

Sample of Configuration Page Print

† This is a sample of Configuration Page Print. The contents may differ from the Configuration Page Print printed by your printer.

If Configuration Page Print is not printed properly

"Printing Does Not Work"

Printing Network Status Print

Network Status Print prints the TCP/IP settings including the IP address and information including security settings.

NOTE

Load A4 size paper.
The Network Status Print is designed to be printed on A4 size paper.
Be sure to load A4 size paper when printing the Network Status Print.

---

1. **Load A4-size paper in the multi-purpose tray or paper drawer.**
   "Loading Standard Size Paper (Other Than Index Cards and Envelopes)"

---

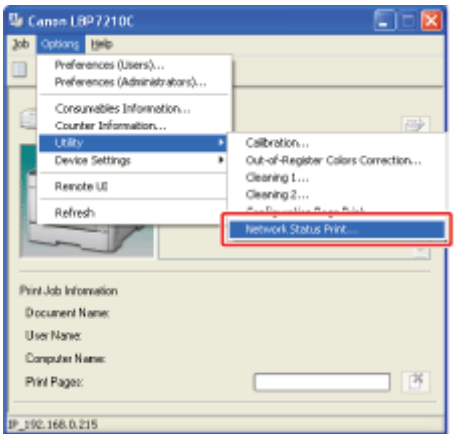
2. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

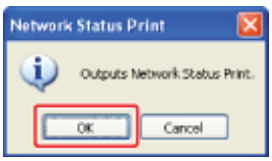
---

3. **From the [Options] menu, select [Utility] → [Network Status Print].**



---

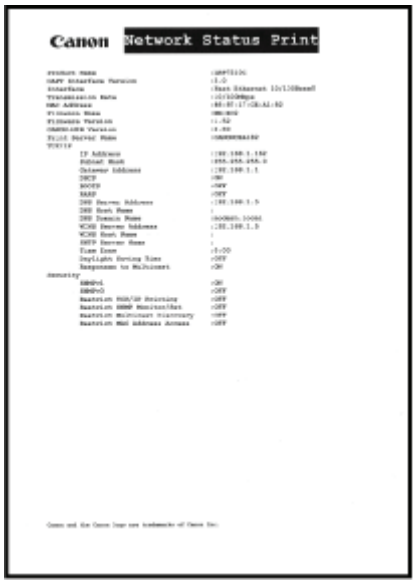
4. **Click [OK].**



→ Network Status Print is printed.

NOTE

Sample of Network Status Print



† This is a sample of Network Status Print. The contents may differ from the Network Status Print printed by your printer.

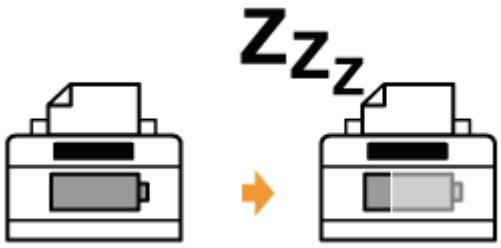
If Network Status Print is not printed properly

"Printing Does Not Work"

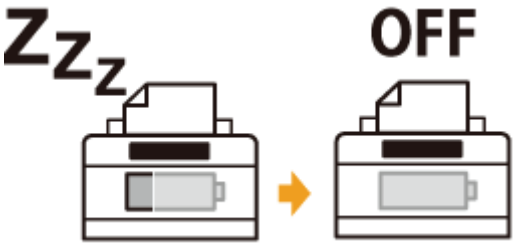
[J-10] Setting the Energy-saving Mode

You can reduce power consumption of the printer efficiently by using a sleep mode or by shutting down the printer when it is not used for a certain time.

- **Sleep Mode**
  You can configure the printer to enter the sleep mode when data is not sent from the computer or when the printer status remains as it is longer than the specified time.



- **Auto Shutdown**
  You can configure the printer to shut down when the specified time is elapsed after entering the sleep mode.



IMPORTANT

Power consumption when the power is off (when the power switch is not pressed)
Even if the power of the printer is turned off, power is consumed only slightly while the power plug is inserted into the AC power outlet. To cut the power consumption completely, unplug the power plug from the AC power outlet.

Sleep Mode

You can specify the settings for sleep mode using the following procedure.

IMPORTANT

Printing immediately after the sleep mode is released
During the sleep mode, calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" is not performed automatically.
If you cannot obtain appropriate printout results when printing immediately after the sleep mode

is released, perform calibration or correction of "Out-of-Register Colors" manually.

"Calibrating the Printer"
"Correcting 'Out-of-Register Colors'"

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

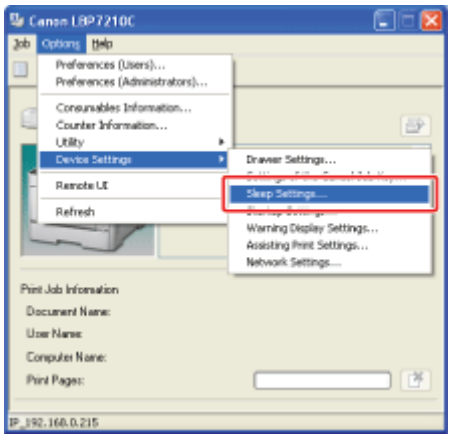
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **From the [Options] menu, select [Device Settings] → [Sleep Settings].**



---

3. **Specify the settings for the sleep mode.**

(1) Select the [Use Sleep Mode] check box.

(2) Specify the time until the printer enters the sleep mode for [Time to Enter Sleep Mode].

NOTE

About the setting for the time to enter the sleep mode

You can select [5], [10], [15], [30], [60], [90], [120], [150], or [180] minutes for [Time to Enter Sleep Mode]. The default value is [5] minutes.

You can configure the printer not to enter the sleep mode.

† We recommend that you use this option in the default setting.

4. **Click [OK].**

NOTE

Situations where the sleep mode is released

- When printing
- When calibrating the printer
- When correcting "Out-of-Register Colors"
- When cleaning the printer
- When the front cover is opened or closed

Auto Shutdown

You can specify the settings for auto shutdown using the following procedure.

NOTE

Precautions when sharing the printer
You cannot change the settings with the shared printer. Change the settings from the environment in which a local printer is installed.

1. **Turn on the computer and start Windows.**

2. **Log on as a user with administrative rights.**

IMPORTANT

If you are not sure about your administrative rights
Contact your system administrator.

If a wizard or dialog box appears through the Plug and Play automatic setup
Click [Cancel], turn off the printer, and then use this procedure.

3. **Insert the supplied CD-ROM "User Software" into the CD-ROM drive of your computer.**

If the CD-ROM is already in the drive, eject the disk and reinsert it into the drive.

→ CD-ROM Setup appears.

† It may take time to display CD-ROM Setup depending on your environment.

NOTE

If CD-ROM Setup does not appear

Display it using the following procedure.

(The CD-ROM drive name is indicated as "D:" in this manual. The CD-ROM drive name may differ depending on the computer you are using.)

- Windows XP and Server 2003
  1. From the [Start] menu, select [Run].
  2. Enter "D:EnglishMInst.exe", and then click [OK].
- Windows Vista and Server 2008
  1. Enter "D:EnglishMInst.exe" in [Start Search] under the [Start] menu.
  2. Press the [ENTER] key on the keyboard.

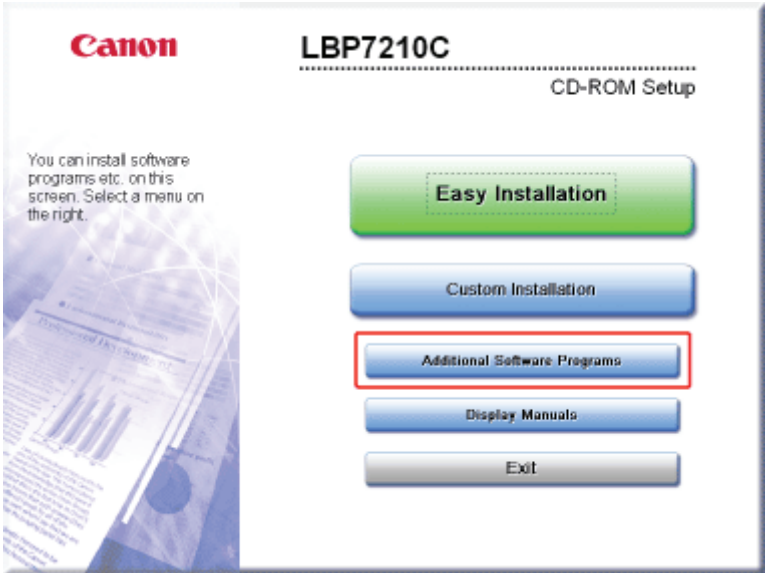
If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

Click [Run AUTORUN.EXE].

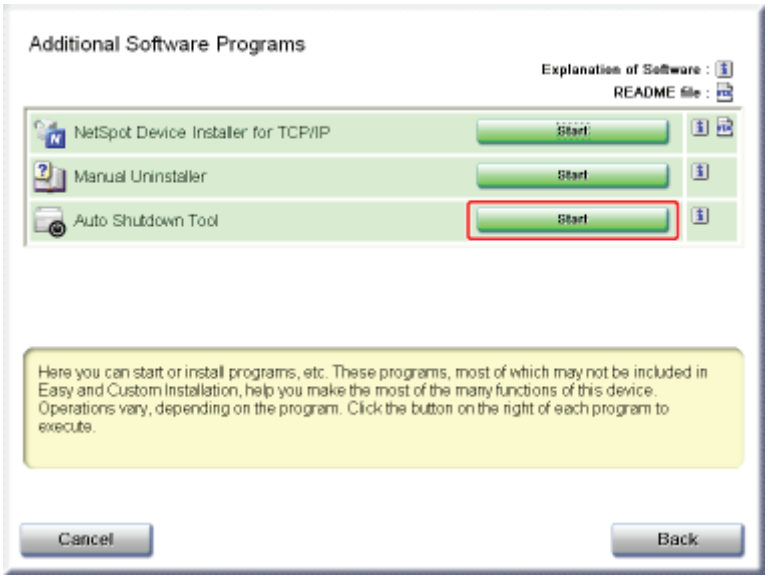
If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears (Windows Vista and Server 2008)

Click [Continue].

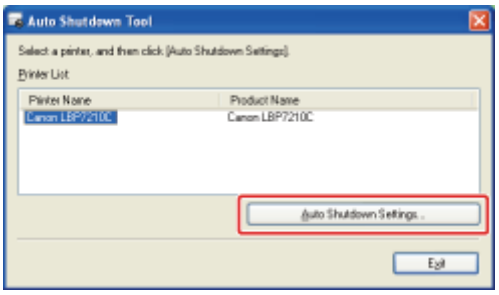
4. **Click [Additional Software Programs].**



5. **Click [Start] in [Auto Shutdown Tool].**

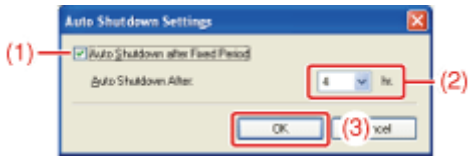


6. Select a printer, and then click [Auto Shutdown Settings].



7. Specify the settings for auto shutdown.

(1) Select the [Auto Shutdown after Fixed Period] check box.
(2) Specify the time to shut down in [Auto Shutdown After].
(3) Click [OK].



NOTE

About the setting for the time to execute auto shutdown

When [Auto Shutdown After] is changed during sleep mode, the specified time to execute auto shutdown is reset.

You can specify [Auto Shutdown After] for auto shutdown with 1 hour increments between [1hr] and [8hr].

† If you specify the setting for this option shorter than the default setting, this may shorten the life of the toner cartridges (the default setting is "4" hours).

[J-11] Updating the Network Board Firmware

To update the firmware, specify the update file, and then update the printer's network board firmware.

- Downloading the Firmware
- Updating the Firmware

Downloading the Firmware

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**

→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]

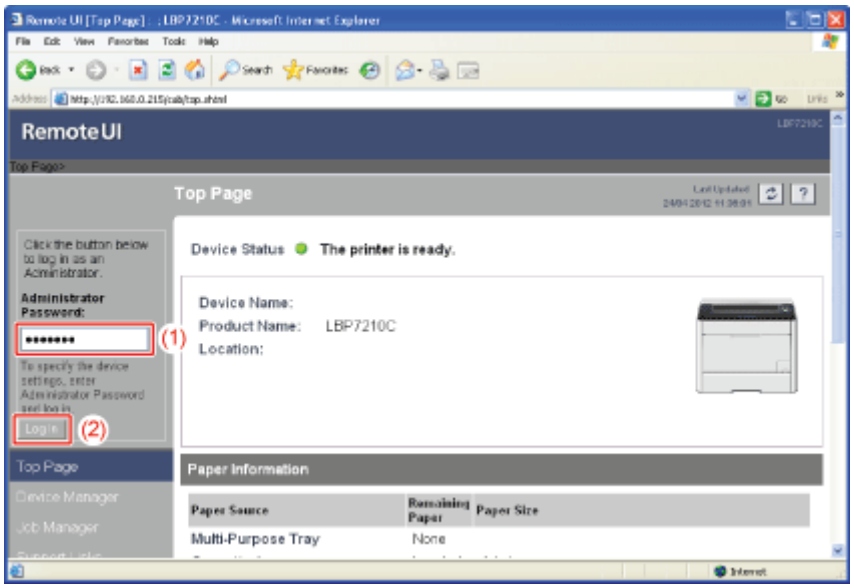
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

3. **Log in as Administrator.**

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

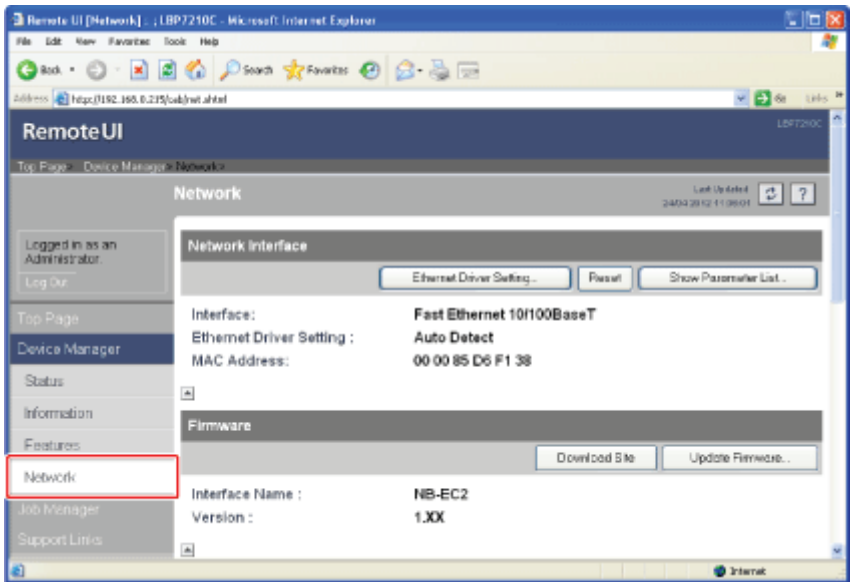


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

---

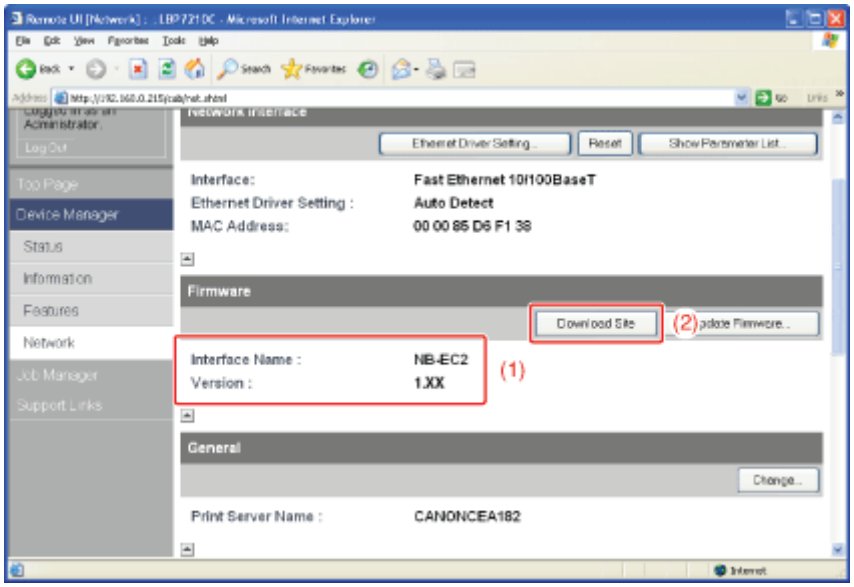
4. Select [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.



---

5. Display the download site.

(1) Check the name and version of the current firmware.
(2) Click [Download Site] under [Firmware].



→ The firmware download site is displayed.

NOTE

[Download Site] button link

You can change the link in the [Support Links] page.

"Remote UI"

---

6. **Download the firmware from the firmware download site.**

Updating the Firmware

IMPORTANT

Precautions when updating the firmware

Make sure that the printer is not operating before updating the firmware. Do not print during the firmware update. Otherwise, the firmware cannot be updated properly.

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

2. Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.

→ The Remote UI is displayed.

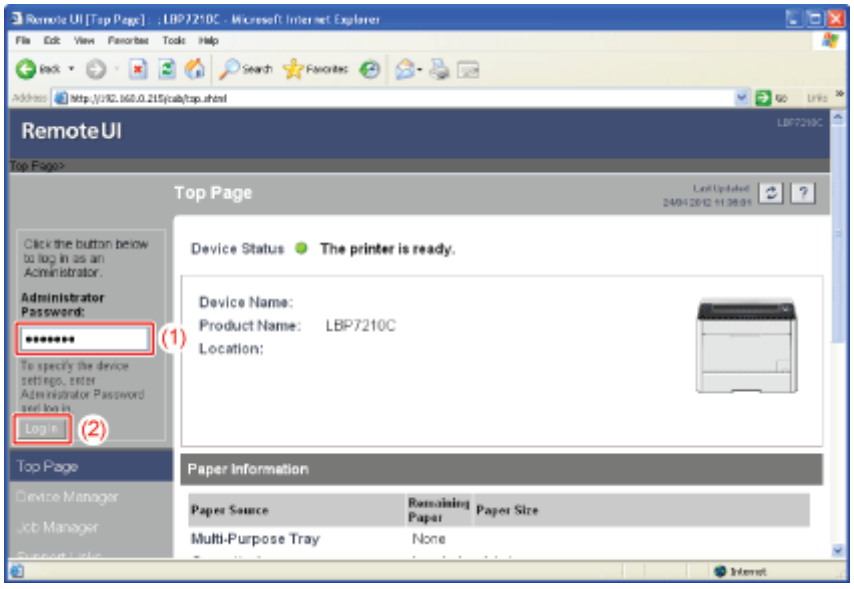
NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].



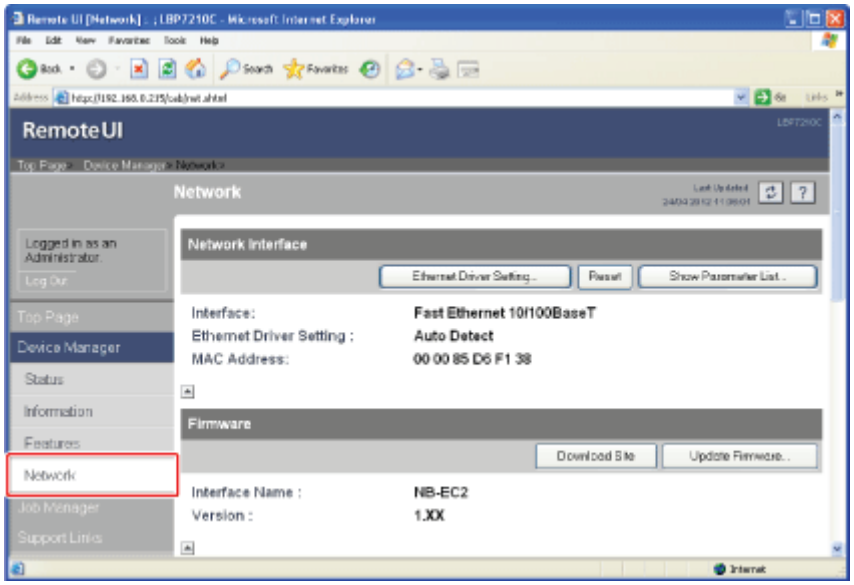
NOTE

If the administrator password is not set

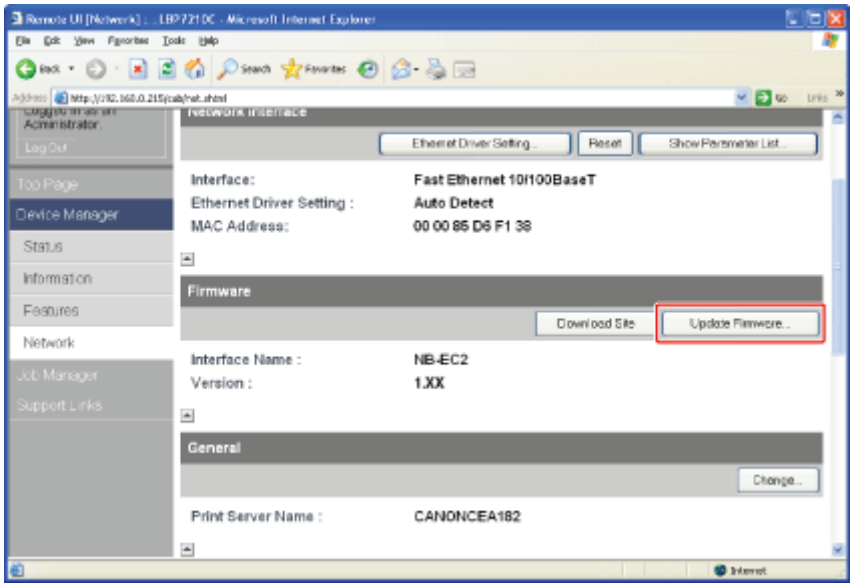
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

4. Select [Network] from the [Device Manager] menu.



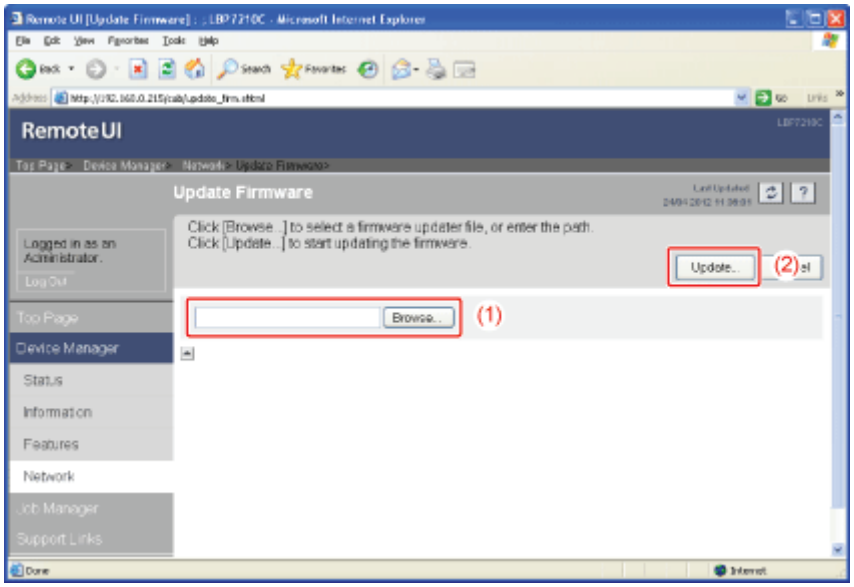
5. Click [Update Firmware] under [Firmware].



6. Update the firmware.

(1) Click [Browse] to select the update file for the firmware or enter the path for the saved update file.

(2) Click [Update].



→ The firmware is updated.

† After updating the firmware, check if the default values are set properly in the [Parameter List] page in the Remote UI or with the Network Status Print.

"Printing Status Print to Check the Printer Status"

IMPORTANT

If the firmware cannot be updated successfully

See the Readme file supplied with the firmware.

[J-12] Restricting the Users Who Can Print with IP Addresses

The following software allows you to restrict the users who can print with IP addresses.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

† This function restricts print commands only, not access from the Remote UI.

NOTE

About a computer whose IP address is rejected to print

- If you try to print from a computer whose IP address is rejected to print, the message <Cannot Print> appears in the Printer Status Window.
- If you are using a computer whose IP address is rejected to print, some options cannot be executed from the [Options] menu in the Printer Status Window.

Specifying the settings using FTP Client

"FTP Client"

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

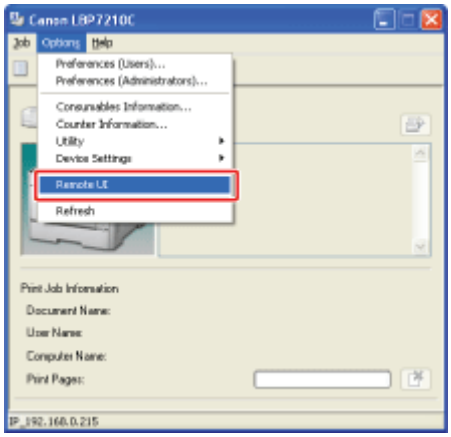
NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver

Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

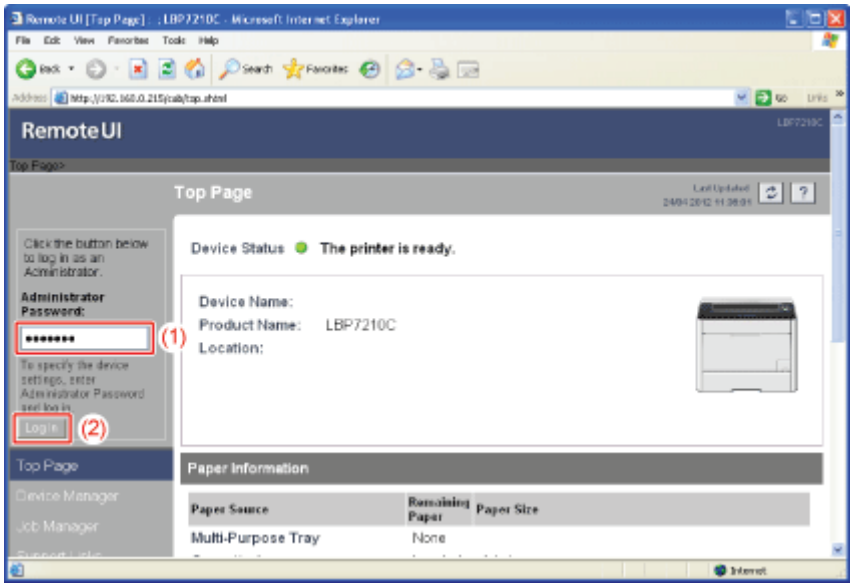
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

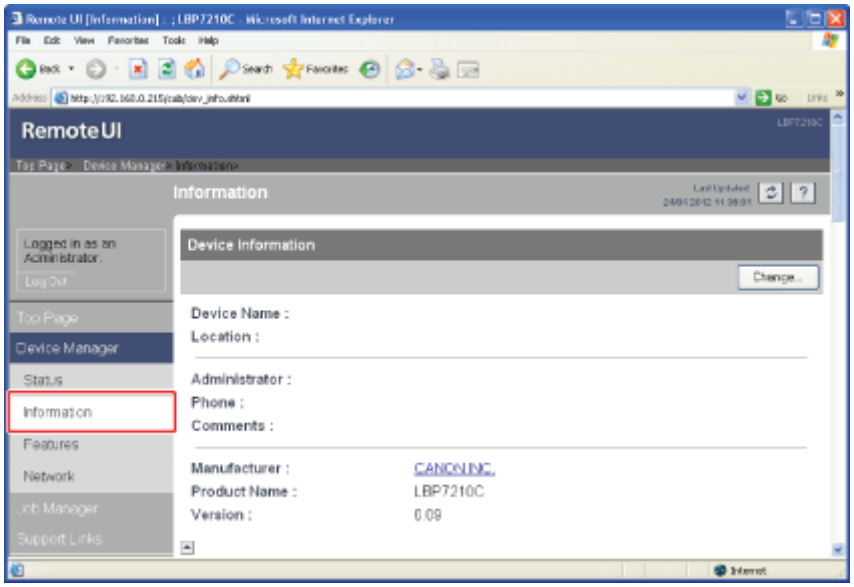


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

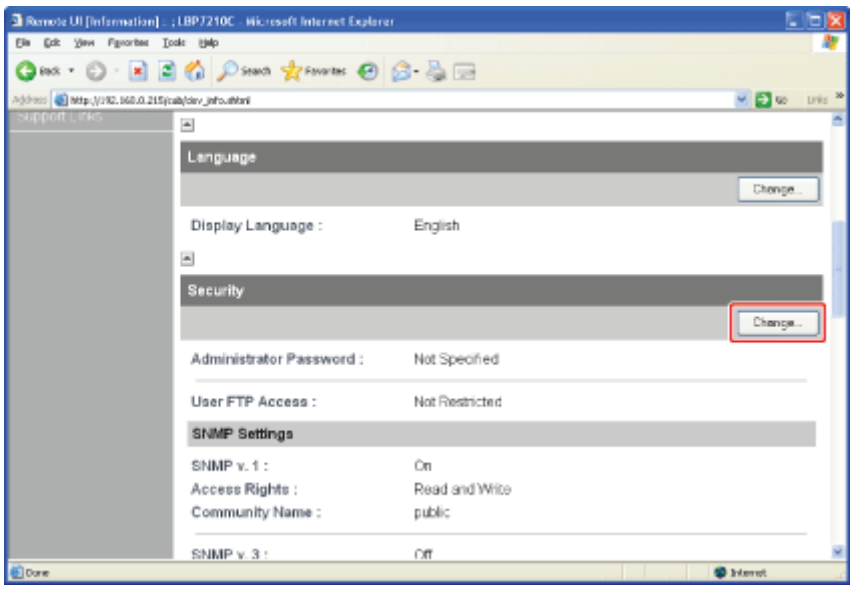
---

4. **Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.**



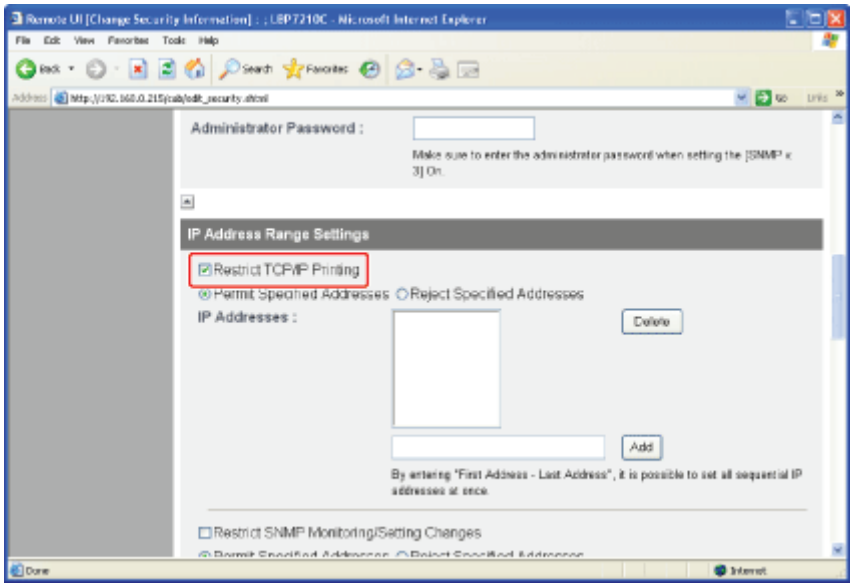
---

5. **Click [Change] under [Security].**

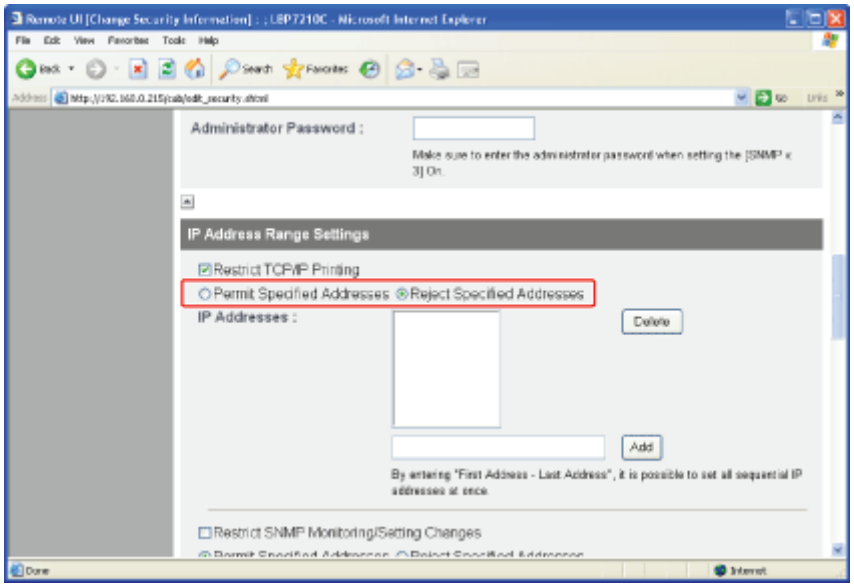


---

6. **Select the [Restrict TCP/IP Printing] check box.**



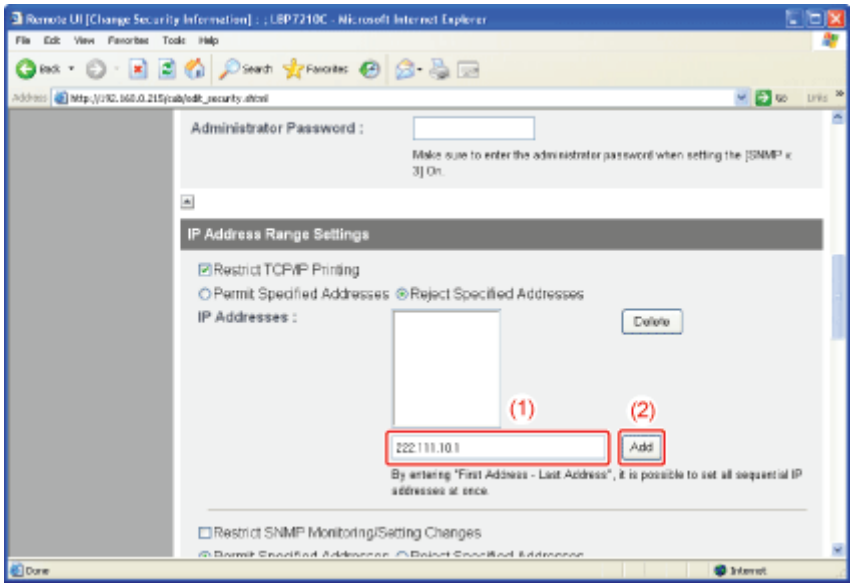
7. Select [Permit Specified Addresses] or [Reject Specified Addresses].



[Permit Specified Addresses]: Only users specified in [IP Addresses] can perform printing.
[Reject Specified Addresses]: Users specified in [IP Addresses] cannot perform printing.

8. Set the IP address.

(1) Enter the IP address of a computer of which you want to permit or reject to print.
† Enter the IP address by separating the numbers with "." (period), for example, AAA.BBB.CCC.DDD.
(2) Click [Add].



You can also enter IP addresses as follows.

Input example of the IP addresses	Method for entering IP addresses
AAA.BBB.CCC.15-AAA.BBB.CCC.18	If you want to enter the IP addresses of consecutive numbers, place "-" (hyphen) between the address of the smallest number and that of the largest number. The example on the left is equivalent to entering addresses from AAA.BBB.CCC.15 to AAA.BBB.CCC.18.
AAA.BBB.CCC.*	Entering "*" (asterisk) is equivalent to entering the numbers from 0 to 255. The example on the left is equivalent to entering addresses from AAA.BBB.CCC.0 to AAA.BBB.CCC.255.

NOTE

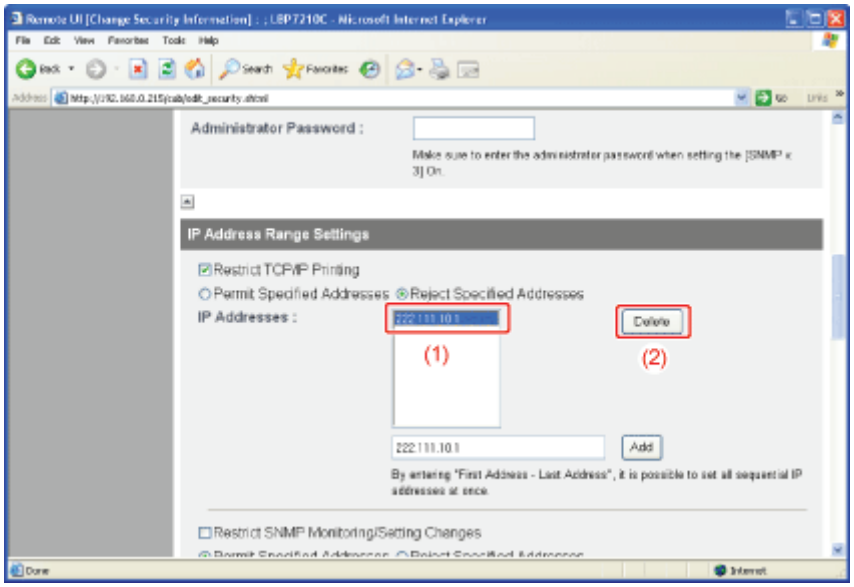
The specifiable number of characters for the IP address
Up to 255 characters can be set.

† The number of characters is counted as follows.

- Example: "192.168.0.215" = 13 characters
- Example: "192.168.0.215-192.168.0.218" = 27 characters

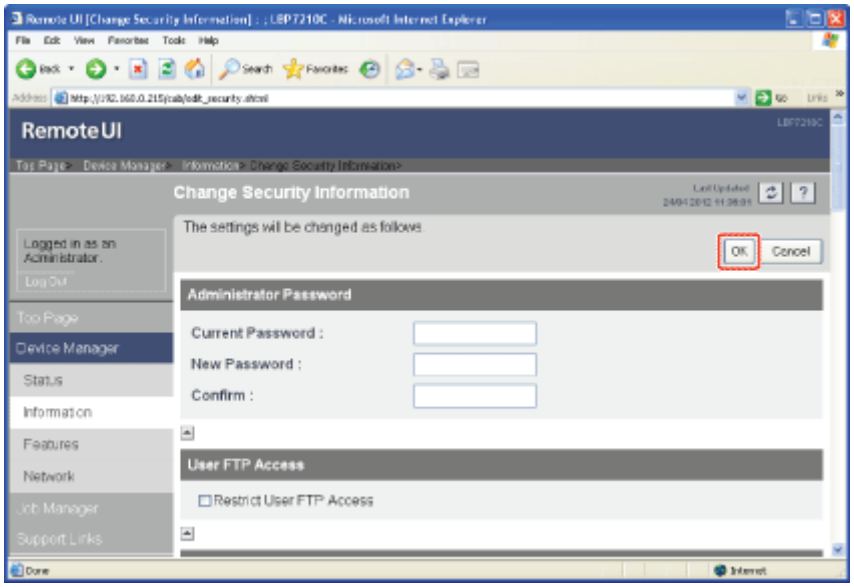
When deleting a set IP address

(1) Select an IP address you want to delete.
(2) Click [Delete].


Administrator Password :
IP Address Range Settings
Restrict TCP/IP Printing
Permit Specified Addresses
Reject Specified Addresses
IP Addresses :
(1)
Delete
(2)
Add
Restrict SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes

---

9. **Click [OK].**


RemoteUI
Change Security Information
The settings will be changed as follows.
OK
Cancel
Administrator Password
Current Password :
New Password :
Confirm :
User FTP Access
Restrict User FTP Access
Top Page
Device Manager
Status
Information
Features
Network
Job Manager
Support Links

[J-13] Restricting the Users Who Can Monitor and Change the Settings Using the SNMP Protocol

The following software allows you to restrict the users who can monitor and change the settings using the SNMP protocol.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**

→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]

You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

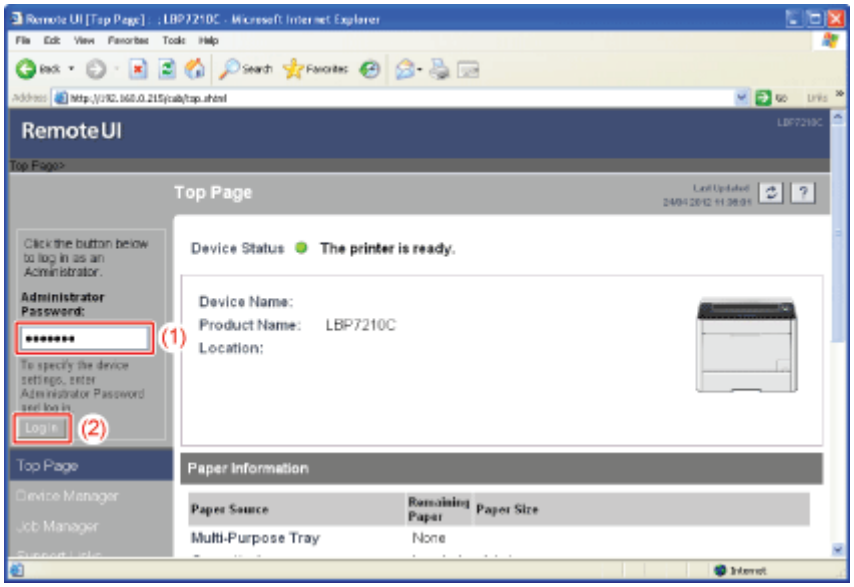
When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].



NOTE

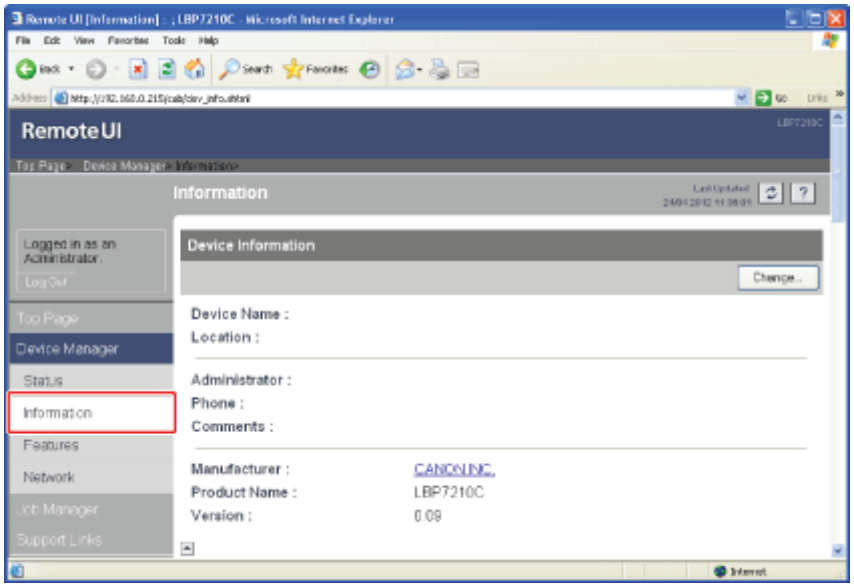
If the administrator password is not set

It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

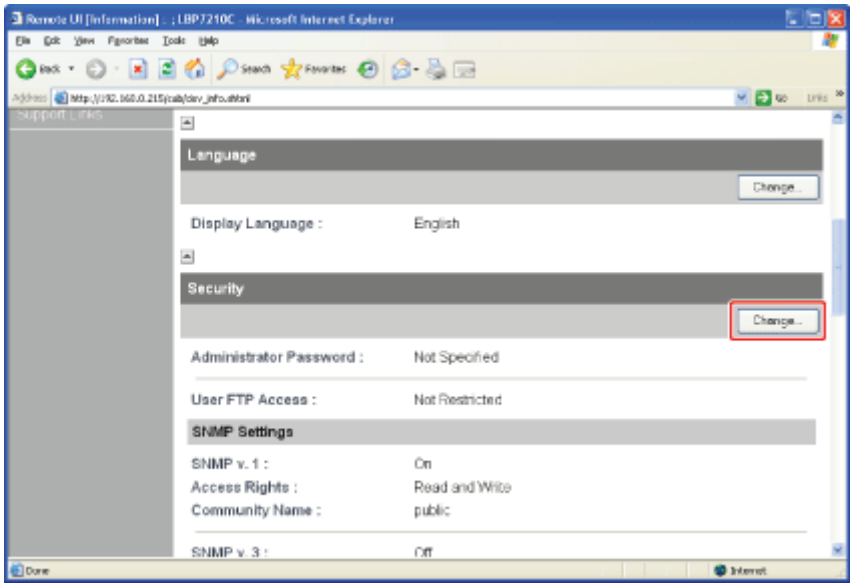
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

---

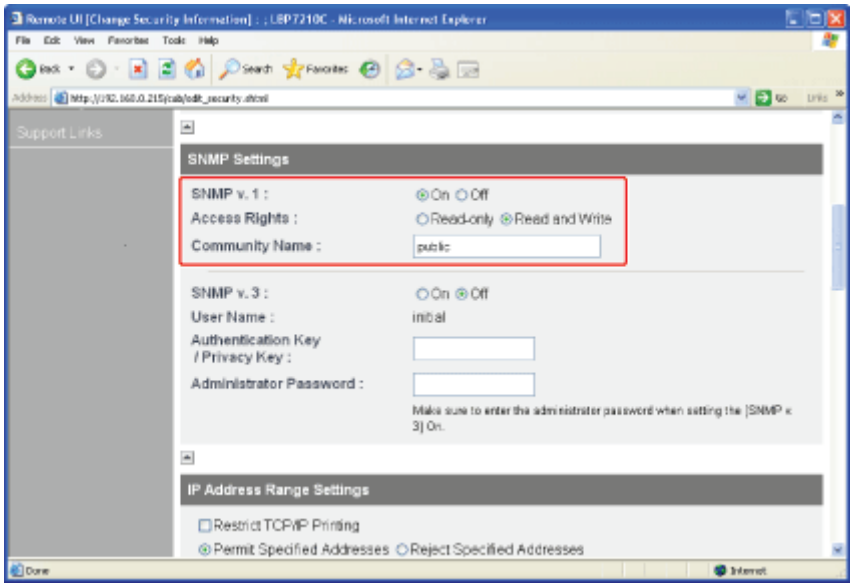
4. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



5. Click [Change] under [Security].



6. Configure the SNMP v. 1 protocol.



If you want to use the SNMP v. 1 protocol

1. Set [SNMP v. 1] to [On].
2. For [Access Rights], select in which mode the SNMP v. 1 agent can operate, [Read-only] or [Read and Write].
3. Specify the community name of SNMP in [Community Name].

If you do not want to use the SNMP v. 1 protocol

Set [SNMP v. 1] to [Off].

IMPORTANT

If [Access Rights] is set to [Read-only]

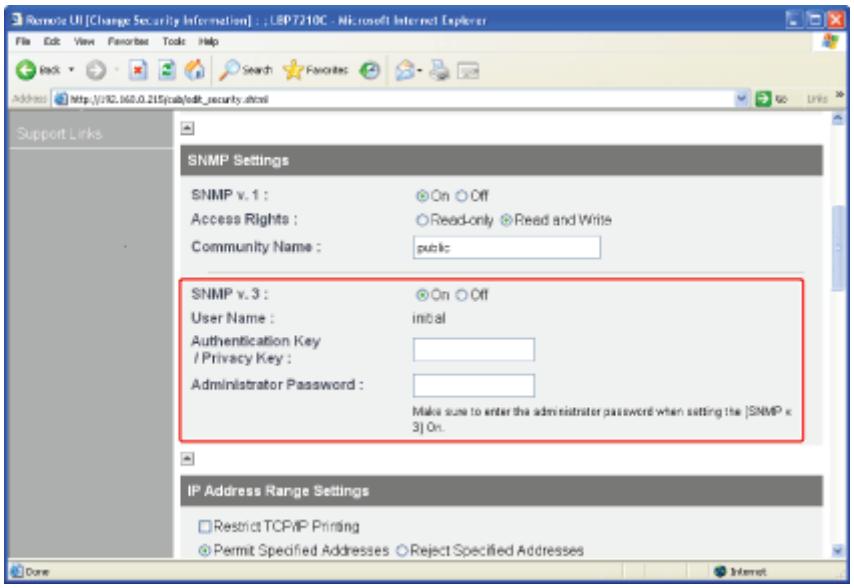
Selecting [Read-only] disables overwriting, and you may not be able to use some functions of

Canon utility software or to use the software properly due to an error occurring.

If [SNMP v. 1] is set to [Off]
You may not be able to use the Canon utility software.
Consult your network administrator before selecting [Off].

---

7. Configure the SNMP v. 3 protocol.



If you want to use the SNMP v. 3 protocol

1. Set [SNMP v. 3] to [On].
2. Specify the authentication key or privacy key to be used in SNMP v. 3 in [Authentication Key/Privacy Key].
3. Enter the administrator password for the Remote UI in [Administrator Password].

If you do not want to use the SNMP v. 3 protocol

Set [SNMP v. 3] to [Off].

IMPORTANT

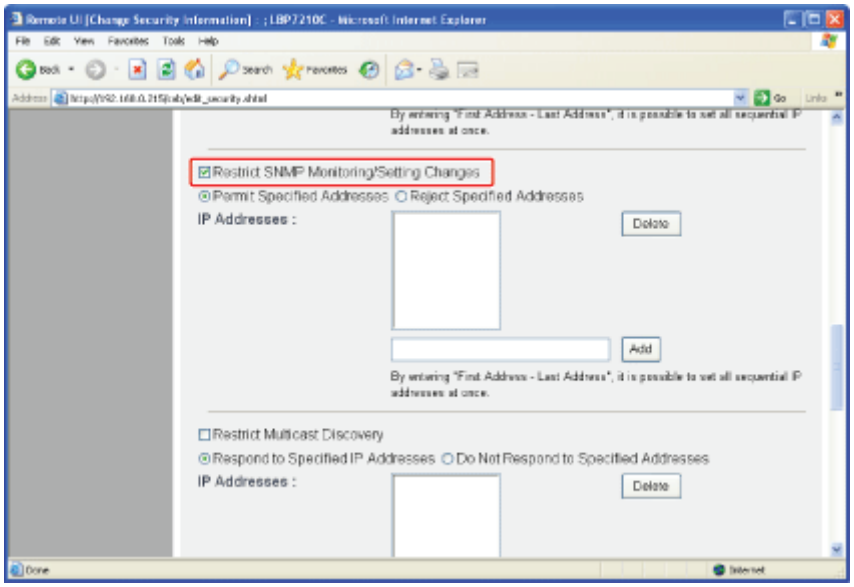
If the SNMP v. 3 protocol is specified using an application other than the Remote UI
The SNMP v. 3 protocol settings are not displayed in the Remote UI.
To display the settings again, reset the network settings to the default values.
"Initializing the Network Settings"

NOTE

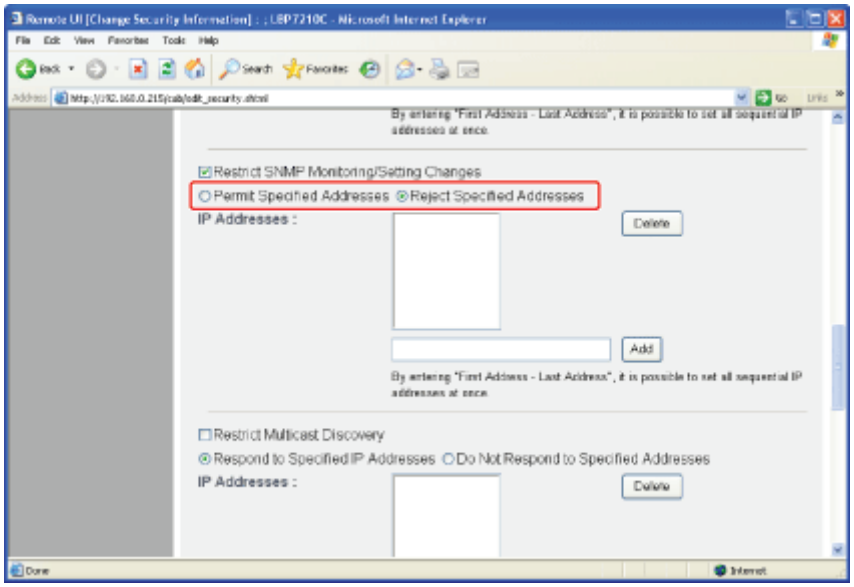
About the user name to be used for the SNMP v. 3 protocol
The user name to be used for the SNMP v. 3 protocol is set to "initial".

If the administrator password for the Remote UI is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

8. Select the [Restrict SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes] check box.



9. Select [Permit Specified Addresses] or [Reject Specified Addresses].



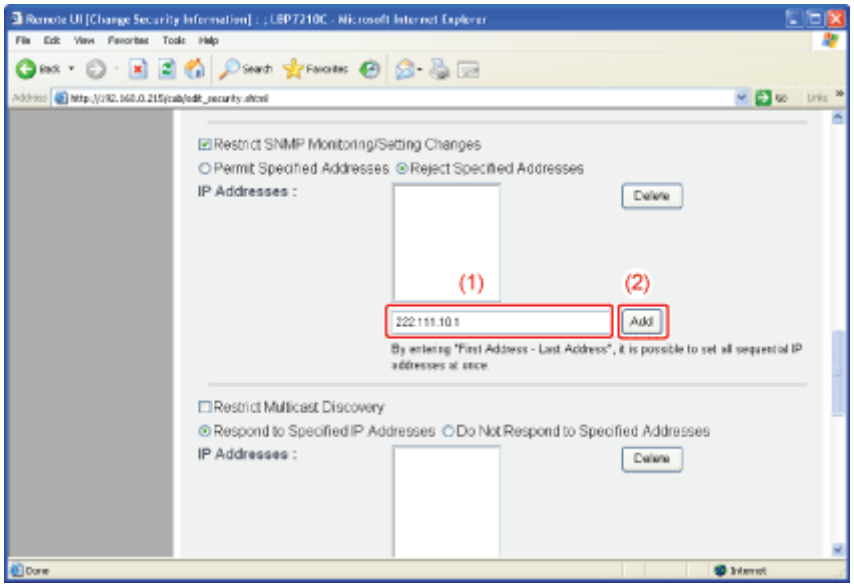
[Permit Specified Addresses]:	Only users specified in [IP Addresses] can monitor and change the settings.
[Reject Specified Addresses]:	Users specified in [IP Addresses] cannot monitor and change the settings.

10. Set the IP address.

(1) Enter the IP address of a computer of which you want to permit or reject to monitor and change the settings using the SNMP protocol.

† Enter the IP address by separating the numbers with "." (period), for example, AAA.BBB.CCC.DDD.

(2) Click [Add].



You can also enter IP addresses as follows.

Input example of the IP addresses	Method for entering IP addresses
AAA.BBB.CCC.15-AAA.BBB.CCC.18	If you want to enter the IP addresses of consecutive numbers, place "-" (hyphen) between the address of the smallest number and that of the largest number. The example on the left is equivalent to entering addresses from AAA.BBB.CCC.15 to AAA.BBB.CCC.18.
AAA.BBB.CCC.*	Entering "*" (asterisk) is equivalent to entering the numbers from 0 to 255. The example on the left is equivalent to entering addresses from AAA.BBB.CCC.0 to AAA.BBB.CCC.255.

NOTE

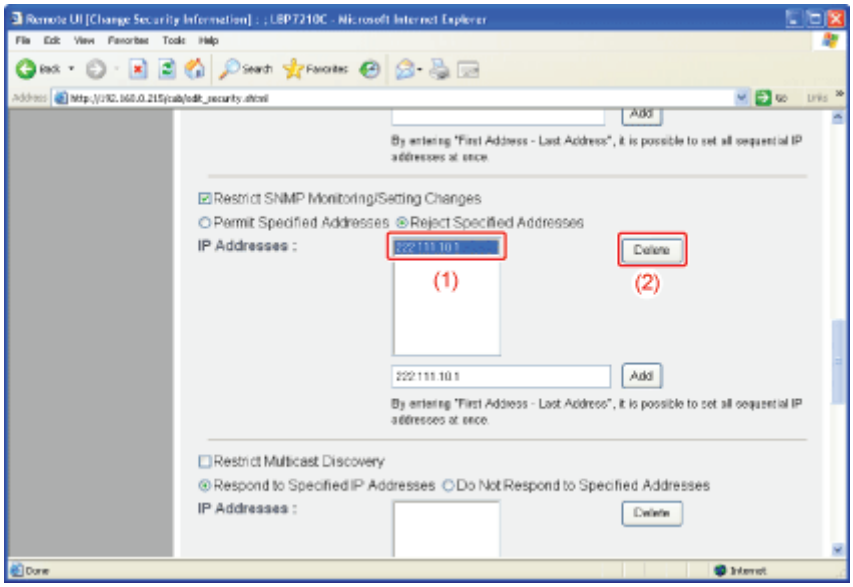
The specifiable number of characters for the IP address
Up to 255 characters can be set.

† The number of characters is counted as follows.

- Example: "192.168.0.215" = 13 characters
- Example: "192.168.0.215-192.168.0.218" = 27 characters

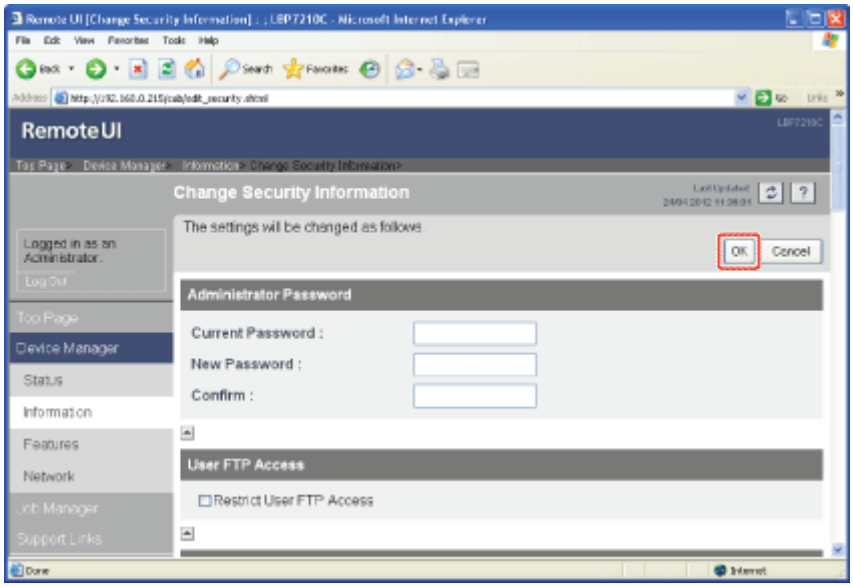
When deleting a set IP address

(1) Select an IP address you want to delete.
(2) Click [Delete].


Restrict SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes
Permit Specified Addresses
Reject Specified Addresses
IP Addresses :
Delete
(1)
(2)
Add
Restrict Multicast Discovery
Respond to Specified IP Addresses
Do Not Respond to Specified Addresses
IP Addresses :
Delete

---

11. Click [OK].


RemoteUI
Change Security Information
The settings will be changed as follows.
OK
Cancel
Administrator Password
Current Password :
New Password :
Confirm :
User FTP Access
Restrict User FTP Access
Top Page
Device Manager
Status
Information
Features
Network
Job Manager
Support Links

[J-14] Restricting the Users Who Can Perform Multicast Discovery

The following software allows you to restrict the users who can perform multicast discovery.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

Multicast discovery
This is a function that searches for certain devices using Service Location Protocol (SLP).
By using the multicast discovery function, you can search for only the devices whose values in [Scope Name] are verified, using the service location protocol (SLP) from utility software, such as NetSpot Device Installer.

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

---

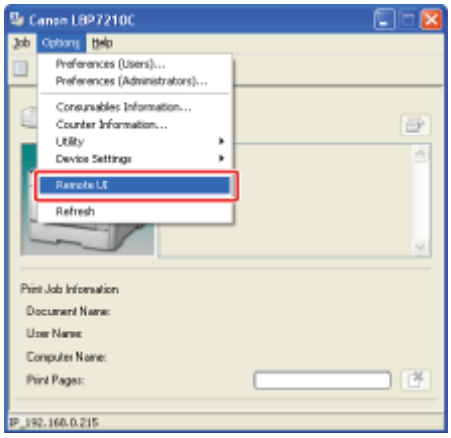
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

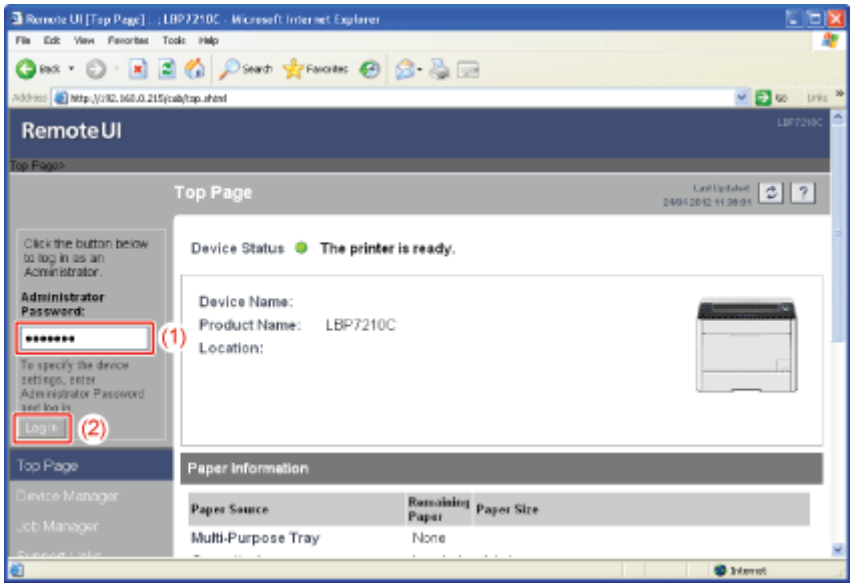
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

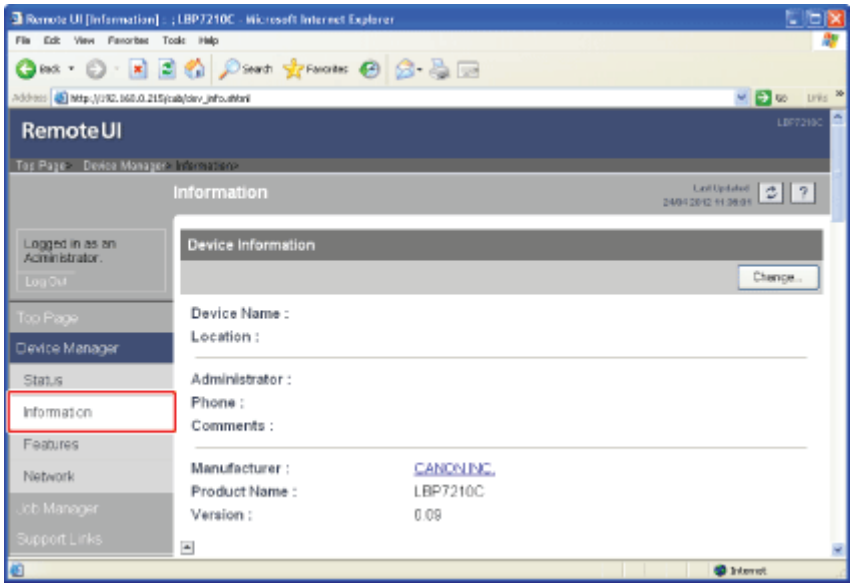


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

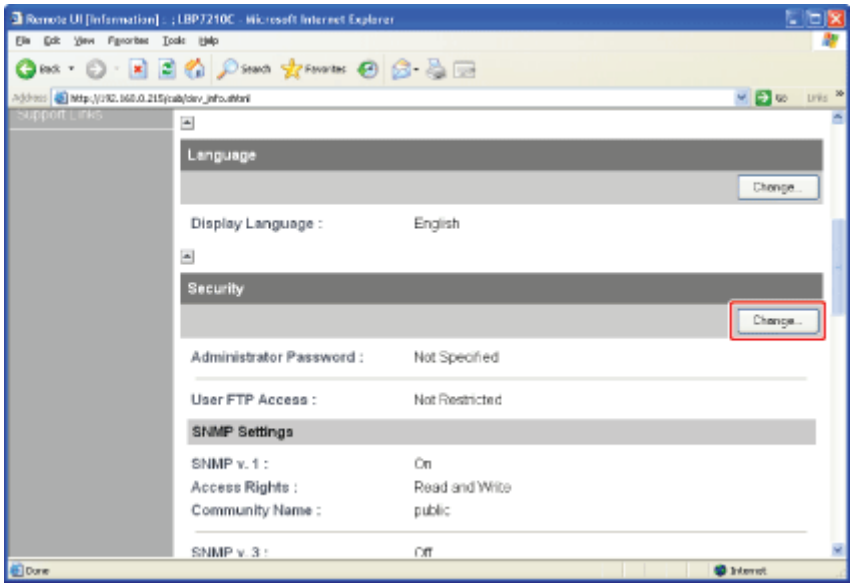
---

4. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



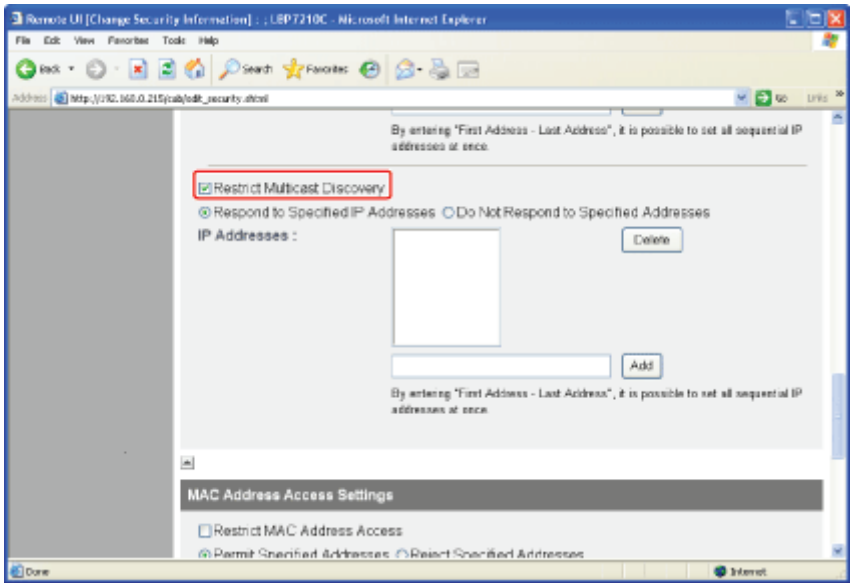
---

5. Click [Change] under [Security].

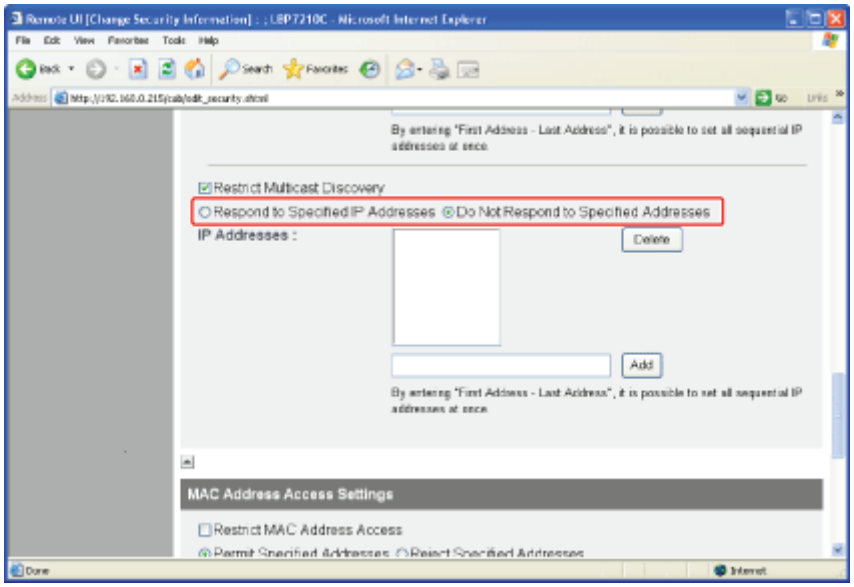


---

6. Select the [Restrict Multicast Discovery] check box.



7. Select [Respond to Specified IP Addresses] or [Do Not Respond to Specified Addresses].



[Respond to Specified IP Addresses]: **Only users specified in [IP Addresses] can respond to searches that used the multicast discovery function.**

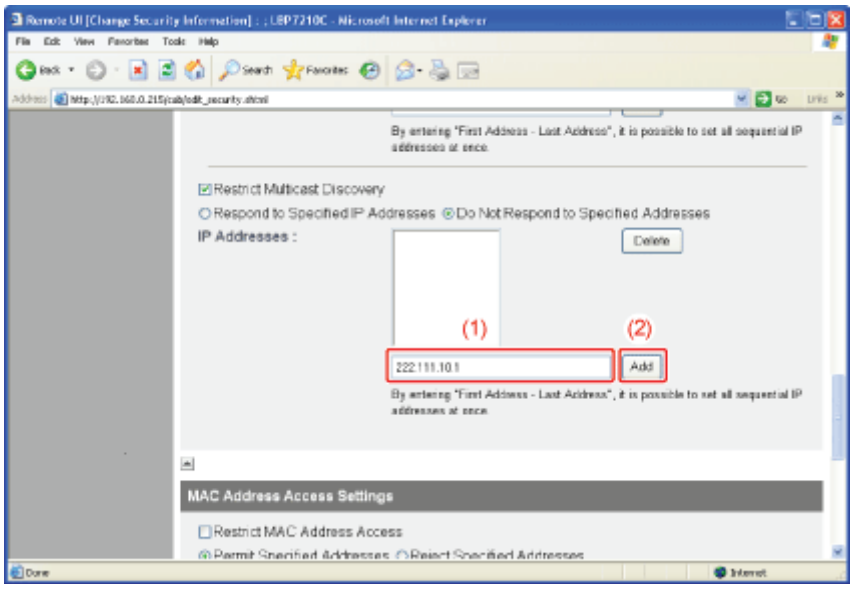
[Do Not Respond to Specified Addresses]: **Users specified in [IP Addresses] cannot respond to searches that used the multicast discovery function.**

8. Set the IP address.

(1) Enter an IP address that can respond or cannot respond to searches that used the multicast discovery.

† Enter the IP address by separating the numbers with "." (period), for example, AAA.BBB.CCC.DDD.

(2) Click [Add].



You can also enter IP addresses as follows.

Input example of the IP addresses	Method for entering IP addresses

AAA.BBB.CCC.15-AAA.BBB.CCC.18	If you want to enter the IP addresses of consecutive numbers, place "-" (hyphen) between the address of the smallest number and that of the largest number. The example on the left is equivalent to entering addresses from AAA.BBB.CCC.15 to AAA.BBB.CCC.18.
AAA.BBB.CCC.*	Entering "*" (asterisk) is equivalent to entering the numbers from 0 to 255. The example on the left is equivalent to entering addresses from AAA.BBB.CCC.0 to AAA.BBB.CCC.255.

NOTE

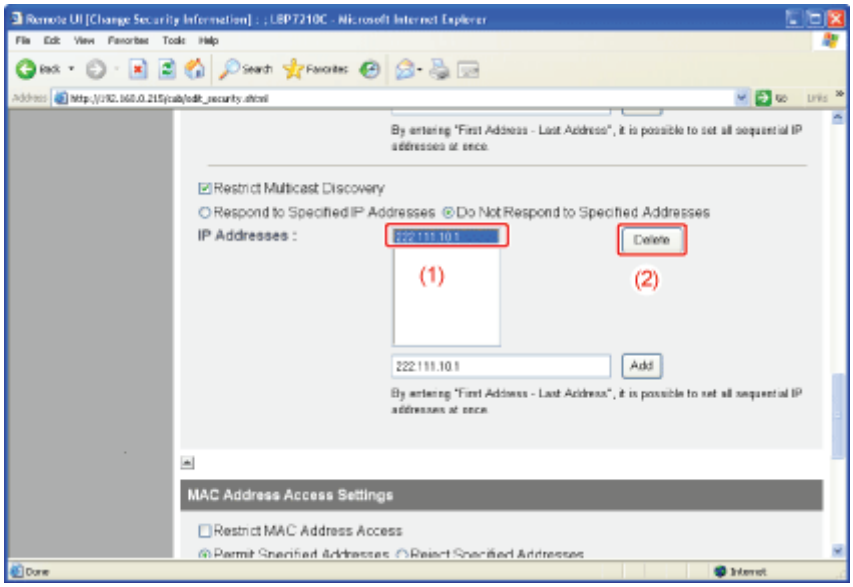
The specifiable number of characters for the IP address
Up to 255 characters can be set.

† The number of characters is counted as follows.

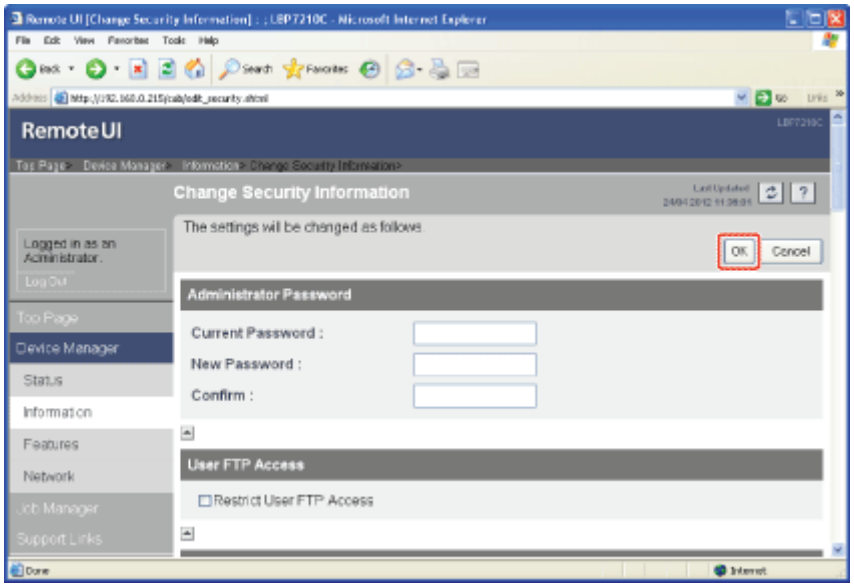
- Example: "192.168.0.215" = 13 characters
- Example: "192.168.0.215-192.168.0.218" = 27 characters

When deleting a set IP address

(1) Select an IP address you want to delete.
(2) Click [Delete].



9. Click [OK].


Remote UI
Change Security Information
The settings will be changed as follows.
OK
Cancel
Logged in as an Administrator.
Log Out
Top Page
Device Manager
Status
Information
Features
Network
Job Manager
Support Links
Administrator Password
Current Password :
New Password :
Confirm :
User FTP Access
Restrict User FTP Access

[J-15] Restricting the Users Who Can Access with MAC Addresses

The following software allows you to restrict the users who can access with MAC addresses.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

If you access to print or perform some other operation from a computer whose MAC address is rejected to access the printer
The message <Network Board Error> appears in the Printer Status Window.

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**

→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

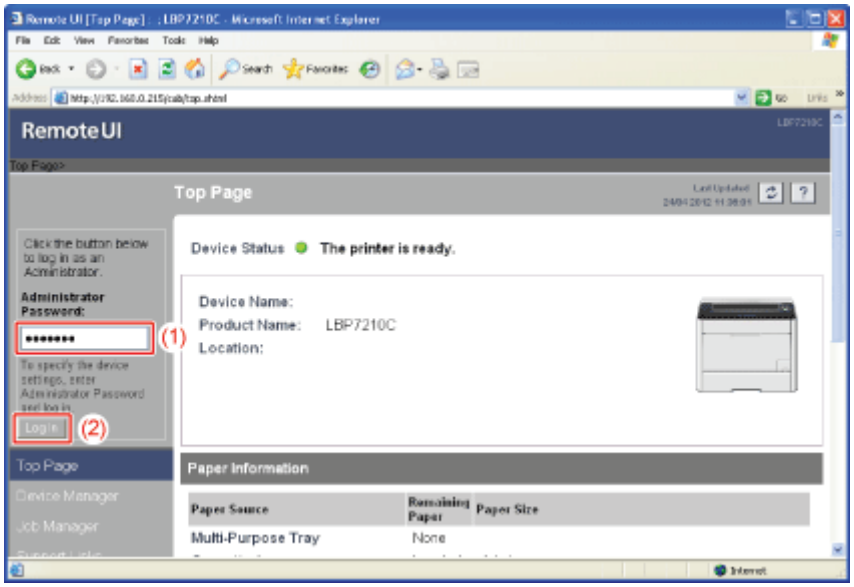
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

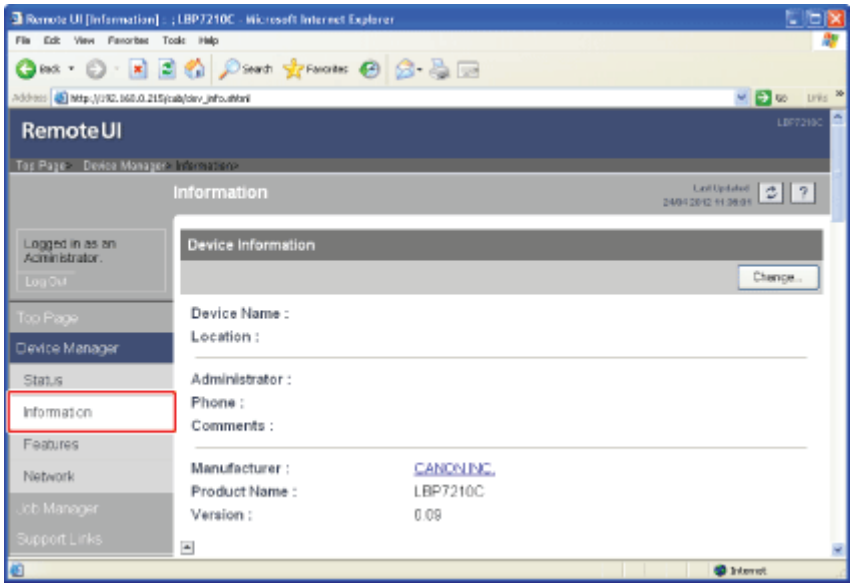


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

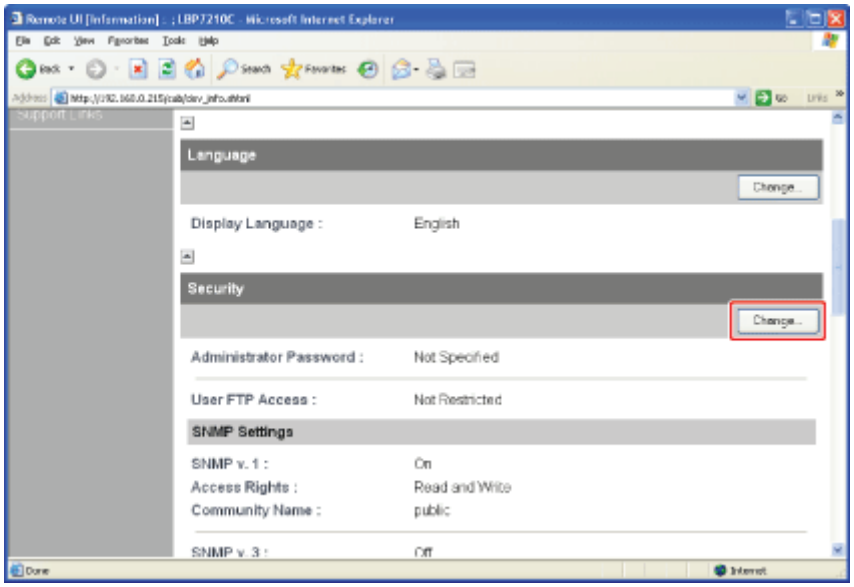
---

4. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



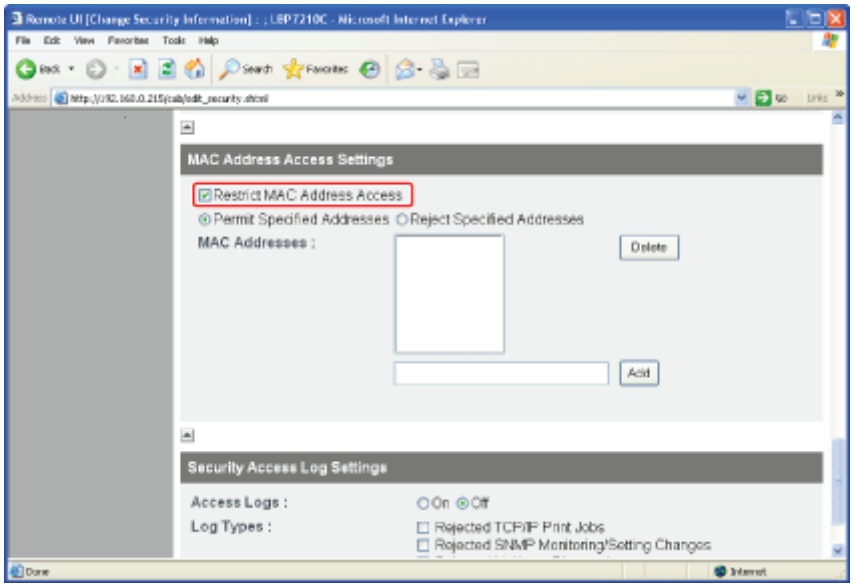
---

5. Click [Change] under [Security].

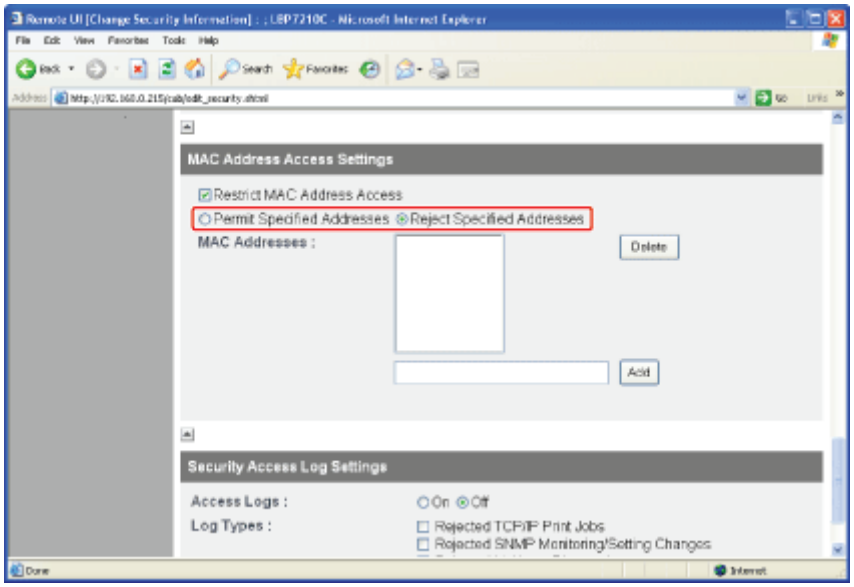


---

6. Select the [Restrict MAC Address Access] check box.



7. Select [Permit Specified Addresses] or [Reject Specified Addresses].



IMPORTANT

When [Permit Specified Addresses] is selected

You cannot access from an unauthorized MAC address. Therefore, confirm the MAC address when entering it.

If there is no corresponding MAC address, you cannot access the network. In this case, you can access the network by initializing the network settings.

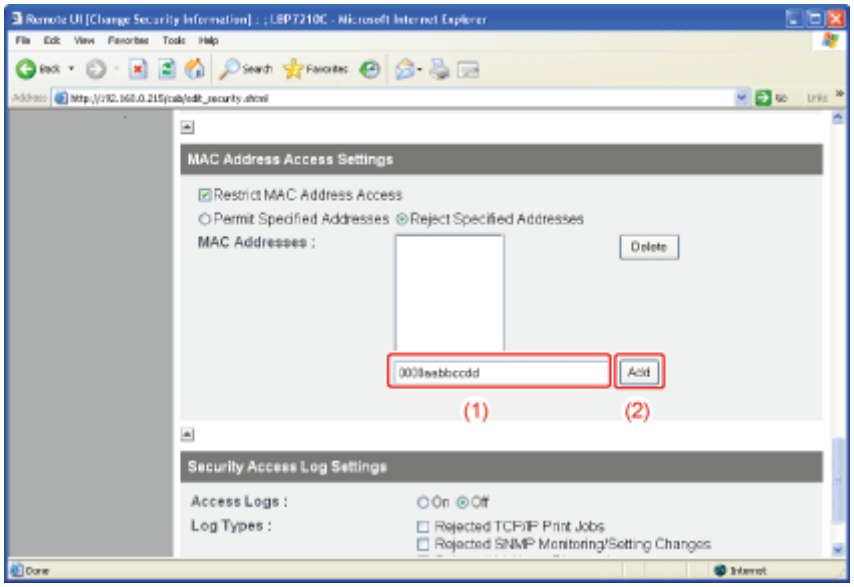
"Initializing the Network Settings"

8. Set the MAC address.

(1) Enter the MAC address of a device of which you want to permit or reject to access.

† Enter twelve-digit alphanumeric characters as 0123456789ab without separating them with "-" (hyphen) or ":" (colon).

(2) Click [Add].



NOTE

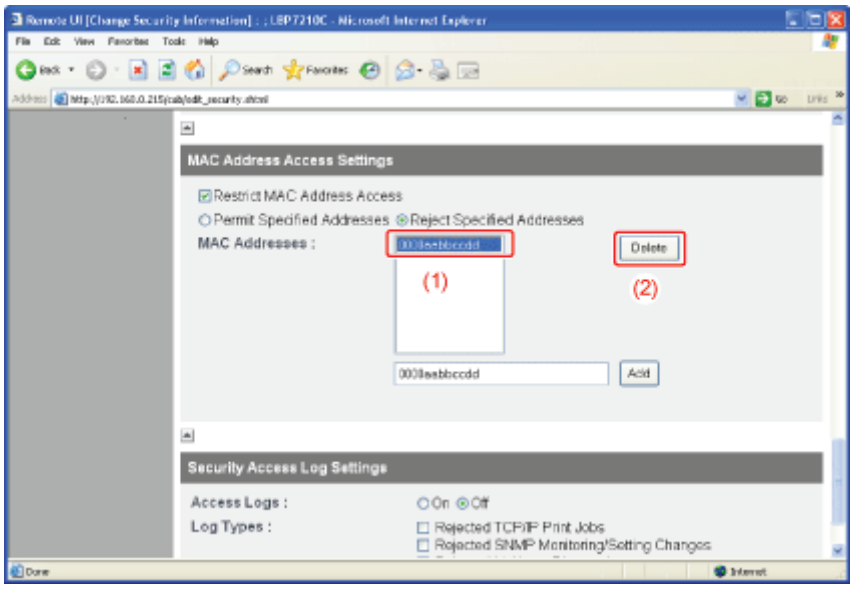
The number of MAC addresses that can be set

Up to 20 MAC addresses can be set.

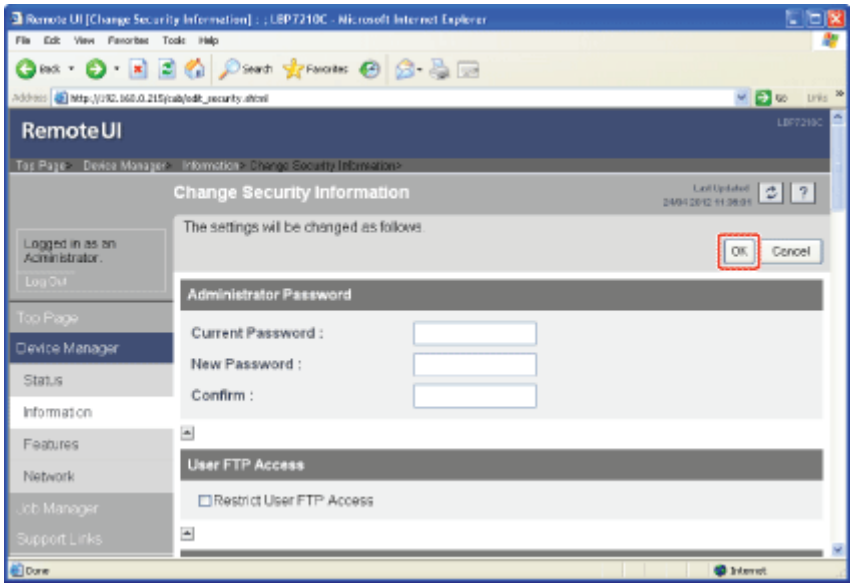
When deleting a set MAC address

(1) Select a MAC address you want to delete.

(2) Click [Delete].



9. **Click [OK].**


Remote UI
Change Security Information
The settings will be changed as follows.
OK
Cancel
Logged in as an Administrator.
Log Out
Top Page
Device Manager
Status
Information
Features
Network
Job Manager
Support Links
Administrator Password
Current Password :
New Password :
Confirm :
User FTP Access
Restrict User FTP Access

[J-16] Restricting the FTP Access from End-users

You can restrict the FTP Client access from end-users using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

---

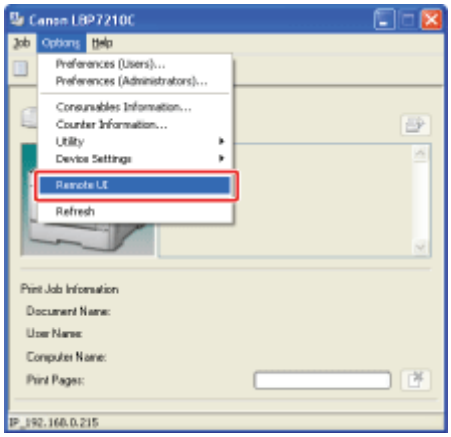
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

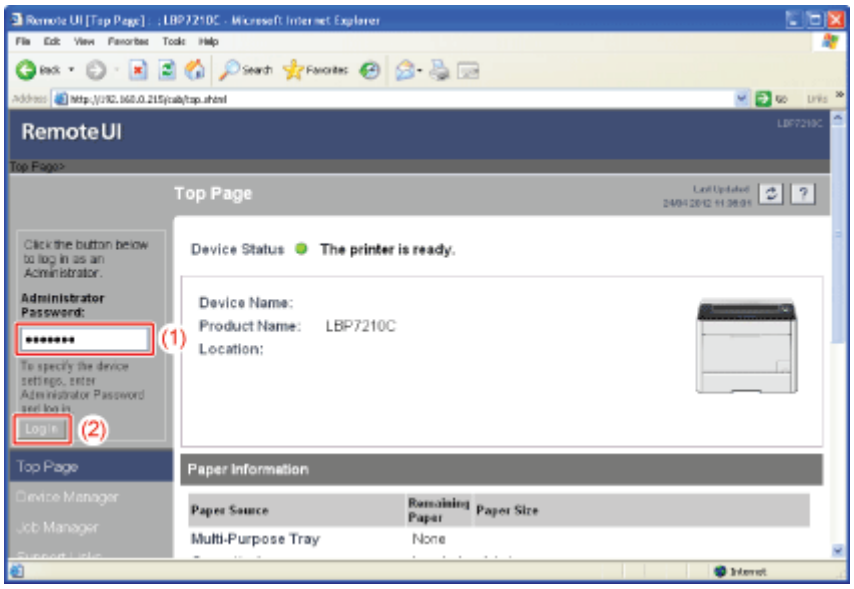
When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser

"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].



NOTE

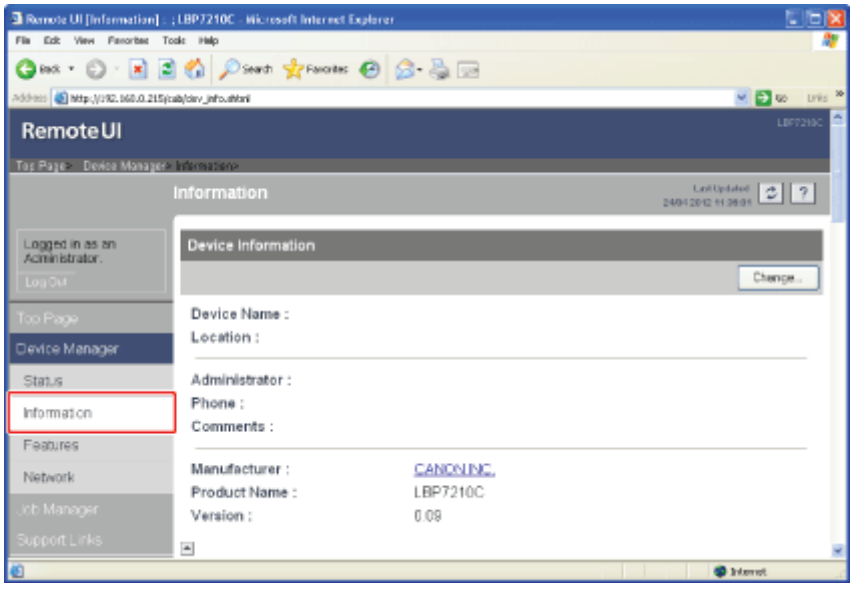
If the administrator password is not set

It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].

"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

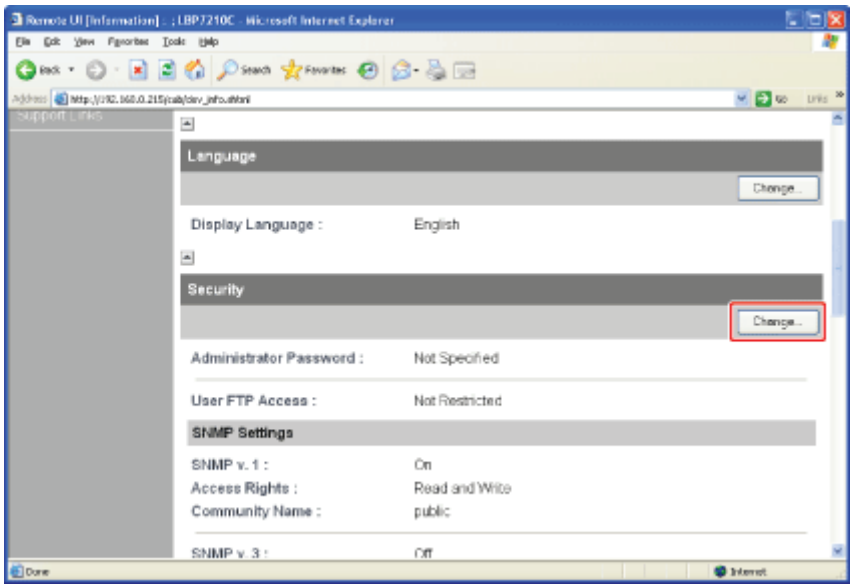
---

4. Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.



---

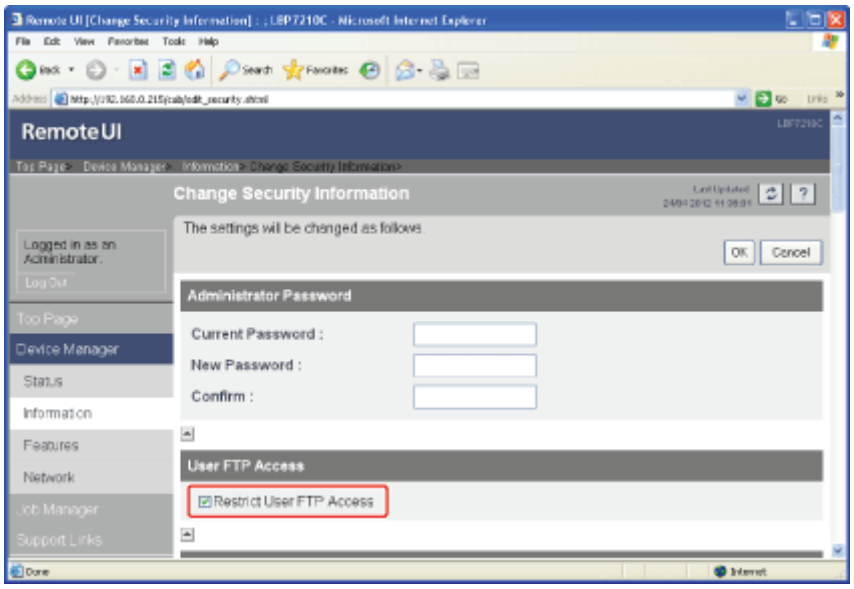
5. **Click [Change] under [Security].**



---

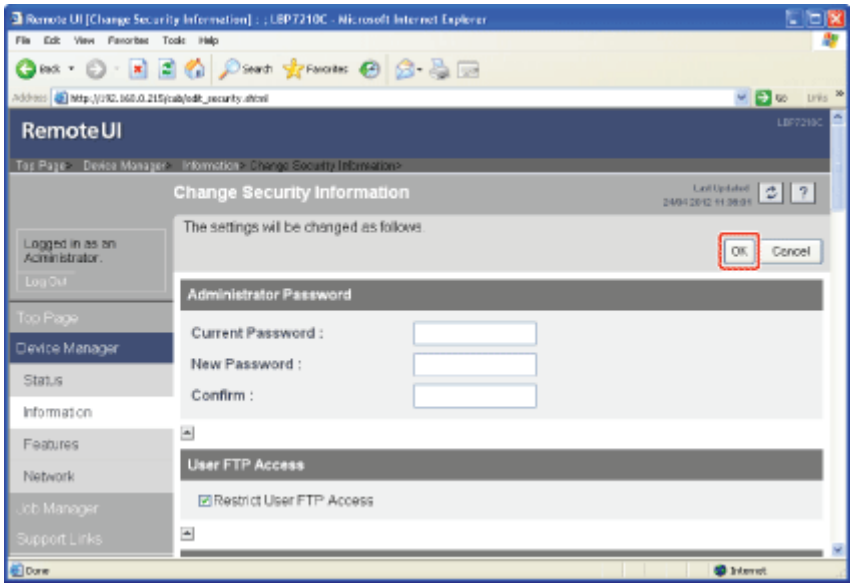
6. **Select the [Restrict User FTP Access] check box.**

If the check box for this option is cleared, all the users can access using FTP Client.



---

7. **Click [OK].**


Remote UI
Change Security Information
The settings will be changed as follows.
OK
Cancel
Logged in as an Administrator.
Log Out
Top Page
Device Manager
Status
Information
Features
Network
Job Manager
Support Links
Administrator Password
Current Password :
New Password :
Confirm :
User FTP Access
Restrict User FTP Access

[J-17] Obtaining and Checking the Security Access Logs

You can obtain and check the security access logs (information about the date and time when the access was blocked, IP address, port number, and restriction type) when access from a user restricted in [IP Address Range Settings] is blocked.

- Obtaining the Security Access Logs
- Checking the Security Access Logs

Obtaining the Security Access Logs

You can specify the settings to obtain the security access logs using the following software.

- **Web browser (Remote UI)**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the printer from your web browser via the network.
- **FTP Client**
  You can specify the settings by accessing the FTP server of the printer using Command Prompt.

This section describes the procedure for specifying the settings using a web browser (Remote UI).

NOTE

Specifying the settings using FTP Client
"FTP Client"

---

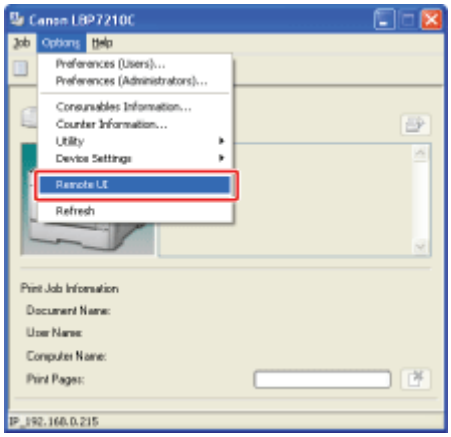
1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**
   Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

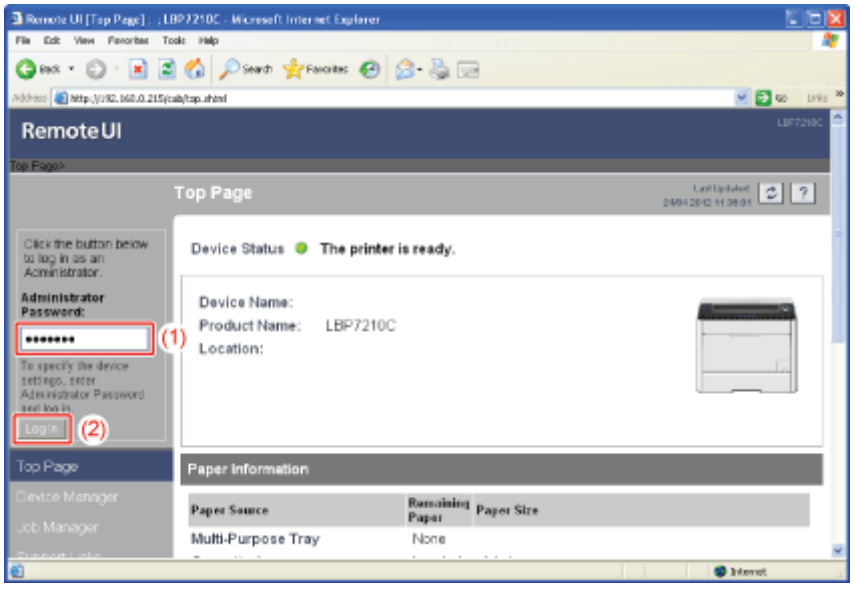
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

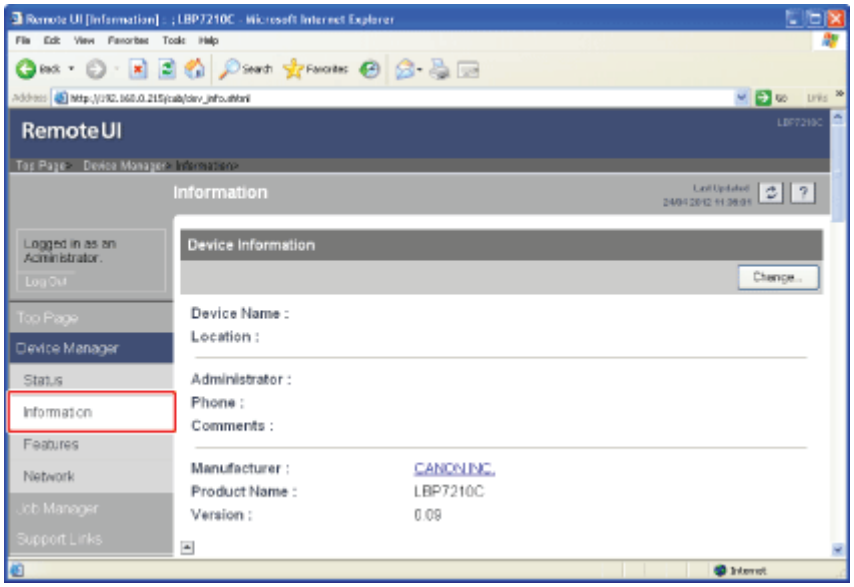


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

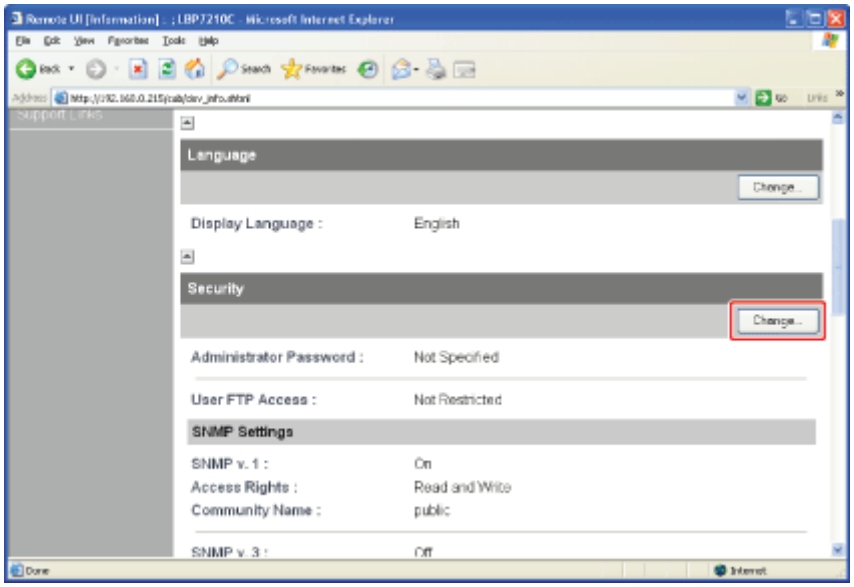
---

4. **Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.**



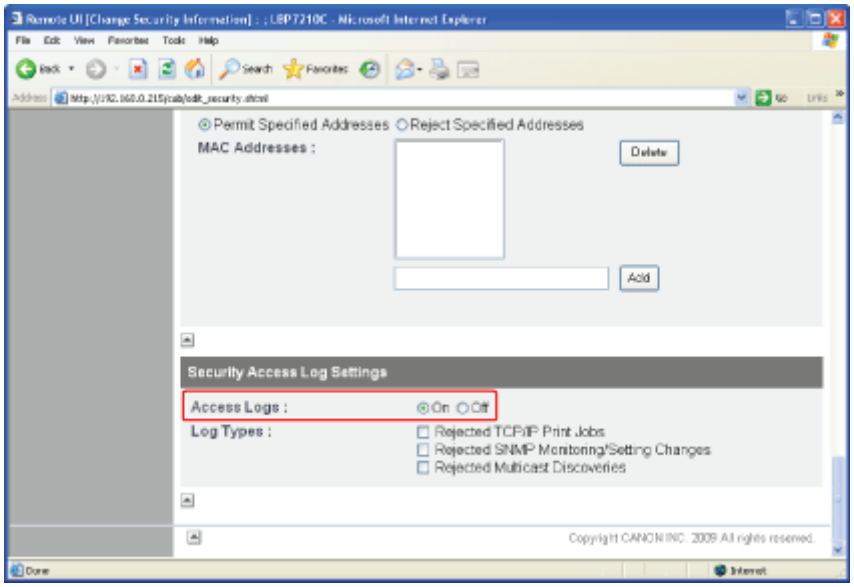
---

5. **Click [Change] under [Security].**



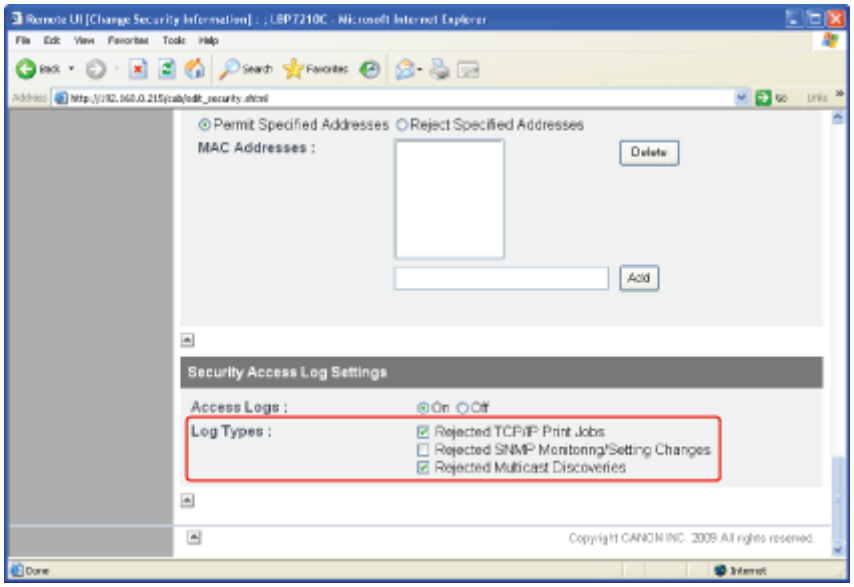
---

6. **Select whether to obtain security access logs.**



---

7. If [On] is selected for [Access Logs], select the type of log that you want to obtain.



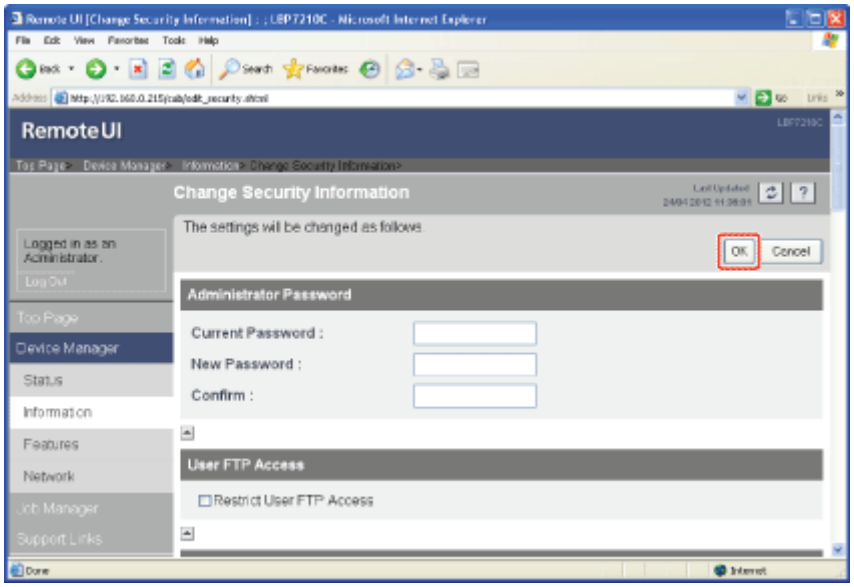
[Rejected TCP/IP Print Jobs]: The security access log is recorded when access from a user who is rejected to perform the TCP/IP printing is blocked.

[Rejected SNMP Monitoring/Setting Changes]: The security access log is recorded when access from a user who is rejected to monitor/change the SNMP setting is blocked.

[Rejected Multicast Discoveries]: The security access log is recorded when access from a user who is rejected to perform the multicast discovery is blocked.

---

8. Click [OK].



IMPORTANT

The number of security access logs that can be obtained
Up to 100 logs can be obtained.
When the number of logs exceeds 100, the logs are deleted starting from the oldest one.

Checking the Security Access Logs

You can check the obtained security access logs using the Remote UI.
It also allows you to save or clear the security access logs.

---

1. **Display the Printer Status Window.**

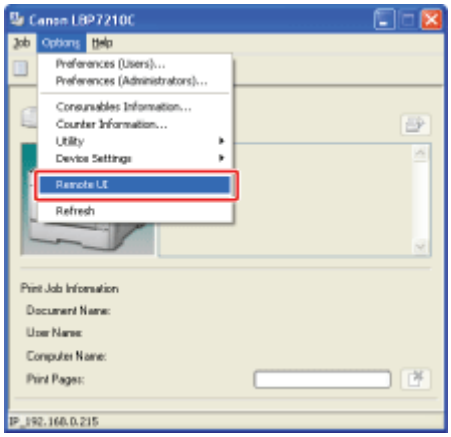
Click [ ] in the Windows task tray, and then select the printer name.

NOTE

When displaying the Printer Status Window from the printer driver
Click [ ] (Display Printer Status Window) in locations such as in the [Page Setup] sheet.

---

2. **Select [Remote UI] from the [Options] menu.**



→ The Remote UI is displayed.

NOTE

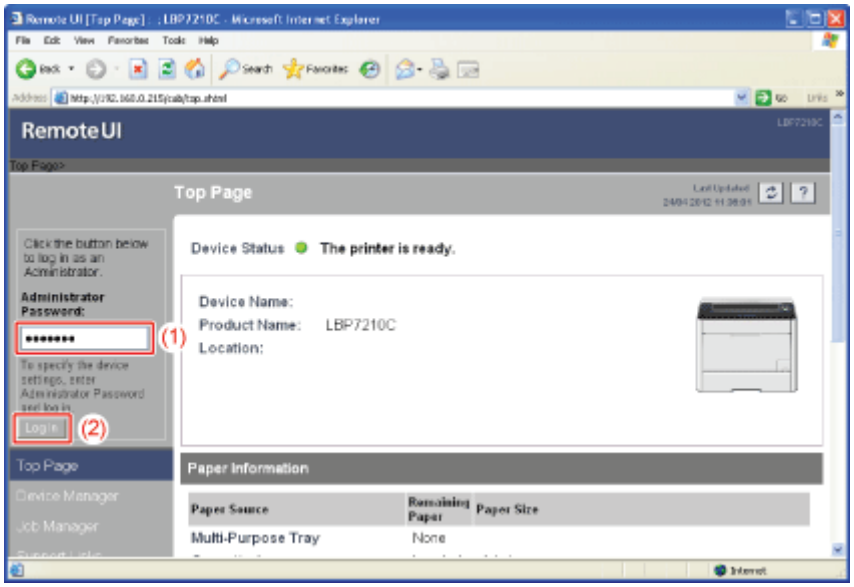
If you cannot select [Remote UI]
You cannot select [Remote UI] if the printer and computer cannot communicate via a network.

When starting the Remote UI directly from a web browser
"Remote UI"

---

3. Log in as Administrator.

(1) Enter a password in [Administrator Password].
(2) Click [Log In].

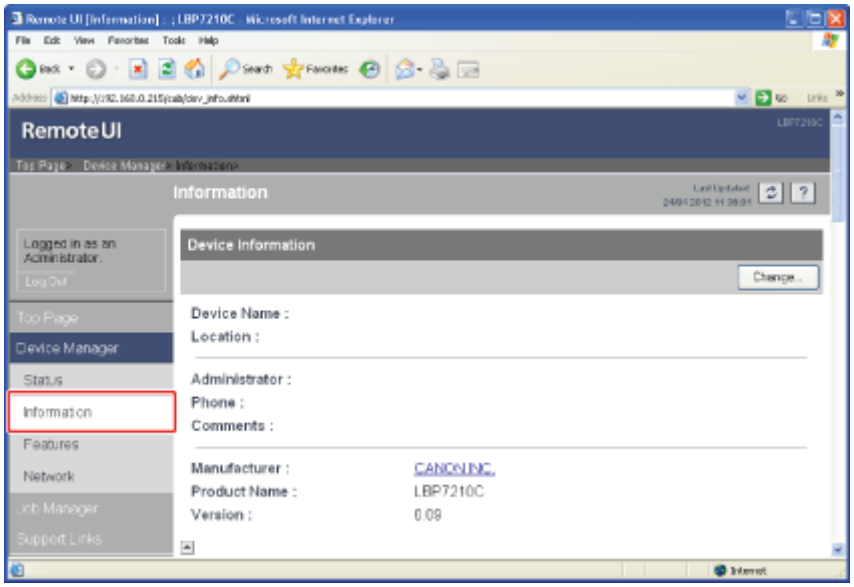


NOTE

If the administrator password is not set
It is not required to enter any value in [Administrator Password].
"Setting and Changing the Administrator Password"

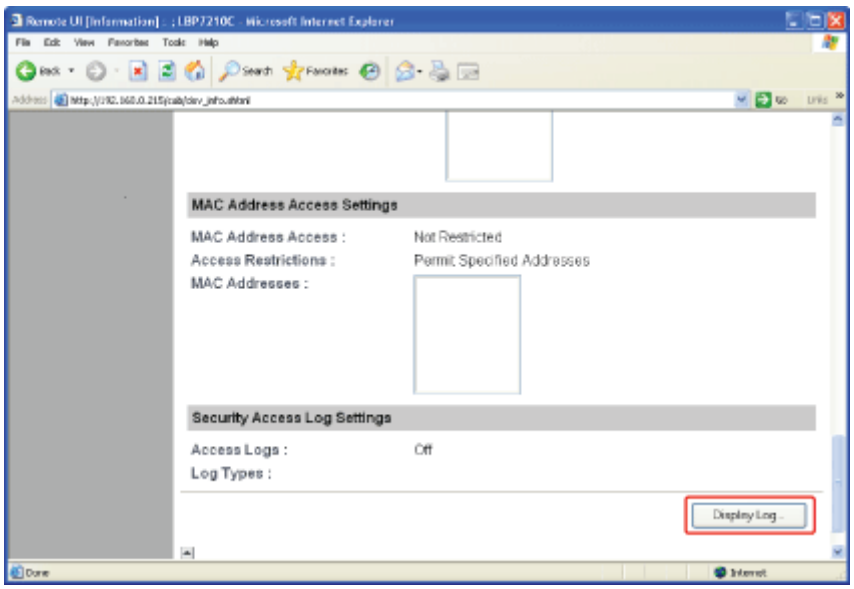
---

4. **Select [Information] from the [Device Manager] menu.**



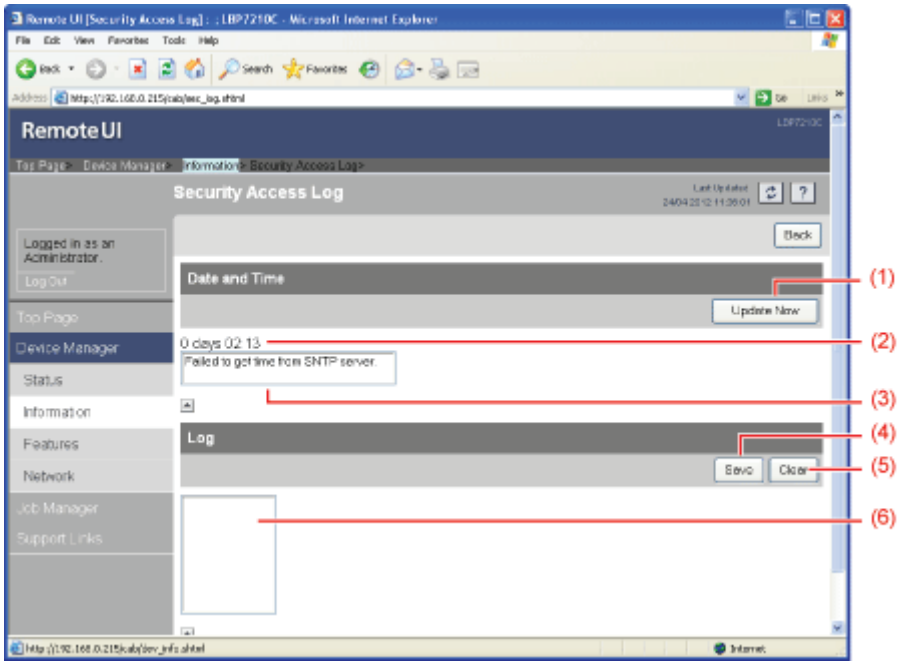
---

5. **Click [Display Log] under [Security Access Log Settings].**



---

6. **Check the security access logs or other information.**



(1) [Update Now]:
Clicking this button obtains information about the date and time from the SNTP server.
Reflects the obtained status to [Date and Time] and [SNTP Server Log] according to success or failure of obtaining information.

† For details on the SNTP settings, see "Configuring the Protocol Settings".

(2) [Date and Time]:
Displays the date and time obtained from the SNTP server.
The local time of the printer is displayed when the time and date could not be obtained from the SNTP server for some reason, such as that the SNTP server address is not specified.

(3) [SNTP Server Log]:
Displays the obtained status from the SNTP server.

When succeeded in obtaining the status:	Synchronized with the SNTP server at <The date and time when they were obtained>. Next synchronization in <The date and time when they are to be obtained next>.
While in the process of obtaining the status:	Getting time from SNTP Server.
When failed to obtain the status:	Failed to get time from SNTP Server.

(4) [Save]:
Saves the obtained security access log in text format.

(5) [Clear]:
Clears the obtained security access logs.

(6) [Security Access Log]:
Displays the obtained security access logs.
The date and time when the access was blocked, IP address, port number, and restriction type* are displayed.

* "PRINT" (Rejected TCP/IP Print Jobs), "SNMP" (Rejected SNMP Monitoring or Setting Changes), or "SLP" (Rejected Multicast Discoveries)

IMPORTANT

The number of security access logs that can be obtained
Up to 100 logs can be obtained.
When the number of logs exceeds 100, the logs are deleted starting from the oldest one.